

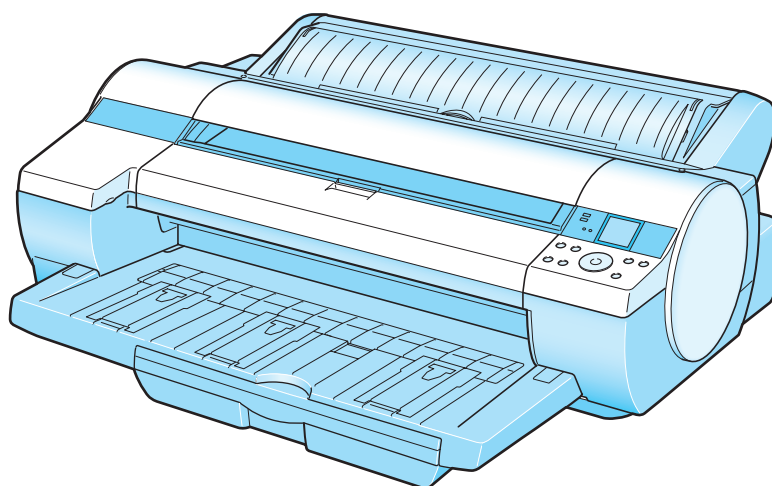


Large Format Printer

 imagePROGRAF

iPF610

User Manual



Contents

Introduction 1

How to use this manual	1
About This User Manual	1
Viewing Videos of Explanations	3
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing.....	4

Printer Parts 8

Printer parts	8
Front	8
Back	10
Top Cover (Inside)	11
Tray Feed Area.....	12
Roll Feed Unit Cover (Inside)	13
Carriage.....	14
Ink Tank Cover (Inside).....	15
Control Panel.....	16
Vents	18
Cassette	18
Control Panel	19
Turning the Printer On and Off	19
Printer Modes	21
Switching Modes	26
Printer Menu Operations	29
Main Menu Operations	30
Menu Structure.....	35
Main Menu Settings.....	50
Main Menu Settings (During Printing)	61
Submenu Display	62
Status Print.....	64
Optional accessories	71
Stand	71
Roll Holder Set	72
IEEE 1394 Expansion Board.....	73
Printer Specifications	74
Specifications	74
Basic Environmental Performance	79
Print Area.....	80

Basic Printing Workflow	82
Printing procedure	82
Loading and Printing on Rolls	82
Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Cassette	87
Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot	89
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets	91
Printing from Windows	92
Printing from Mac OS X.....	93
Printing from Mac OS 9.....	95
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)	97
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)	99
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9).....	101
Canceling print jobs	103
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel	103
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows.....	105
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X.....	107
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 9	109
Handling Paper	111
Paper	111
Paper.....	111
Types of Paper	112
Paper Sizes	117
Handling rolls	120
Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source.....	120
Loading Roll on the Roll Holder.....	121
Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder	123
Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit	124
Removing Roll from the Roll Feed Unit	128
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll).....	130
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll).....	131
Feeding Roll Paper Manually	132
Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper	133
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically	134
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls	135
Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls	140
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls.....	141
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper	144
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)	148
Roll Holder Set	149
Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder	150
Feeding Paper from the Roll Feed Unit.....	152
Removing the Roll Feed Unit	153
Installing the Roll Feed Unit	154
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)	155
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)	157
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)	158

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9).....	159
Handling sheets	160
Selecting the Cassette as the Paper Source.....	160
Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source.....	161
Loading Sheets in the Cassette	162
Loading Sheets Manually	165
Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette).....	172
Selecting the Paper Type (Tray).....	173
Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette)	174
Removing Paper from the Cassette	175
Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot	176
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette	177
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray	182
Handling sheets for paper feed slots	185
Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source.....	185
Loading Sheets Manually	186
Selecting the Paper Type (Tray).....	193
Selecting the Paper Size (Tray).....	194
Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot	195
Removing Heavyweight Paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot	196
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray	197
Output Stacker	200
Using the Output Stacker	200
Output Stacker Precautions	201

Enhanced Printing Options

202

Print quality and color settings.....	202
Choosing a Paper for Printing	202
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing	203
Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS 9)	207
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)	209
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS 9)	211
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)	212
Printing Office Documents.....	213
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver	214
Printing in Monochrome	217
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows).....	219
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)	221
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9).....	224
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)	227
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)	230
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9).....	233
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Windows).....	236
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS X)	238
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS 9).....	241
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows).....	244
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X).....	246
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9)	249

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)	252
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)	254
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9).....	256
Printing Office Documents (Windows).....	258
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)	260
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9)	262
Printing Photos and Images (Windows)	264
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)	266
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)	269
Printing enlargements or reductions	272
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size	272
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width	273
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.....	274
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER.....	275
Reducing Originals that Exceed the Maximum Supported Size for the Cassette	276
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows).....	277
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X).....	279
Reducing Originals that Exceed the Maximum Supported Size for the Cassette (Windows)	281
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows).....	283
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X).....	285
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9)	288
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)	292
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)	294
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9).....	297
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)	300
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)	302
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9).....	304
Printing at full size.....	307
Printing on Oversized Paper	307
Borderless Printing at Actual Size	309
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)	311
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)	313
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9).....	316
Printing at Full Size (Windows)	320
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X).....	322
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9)	325
Borderless Printing	327
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size.....	327
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width.....	329
Borderless Printing at Actual Size	331
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)	333
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)	335
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9).....	338
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows).....	342
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)	344
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)	347
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows).....	351
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)	353
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)	356

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes	360
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)	360
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes	361
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)	362
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X)	366
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9)	368
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)	371
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X)	375
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9)	378
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet	382
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other	382
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously	384
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet	385
Printing Posters in Sections	386
Printing Large Posters (Windows)	387
Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9)	389
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)	391
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X)	393
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)	395
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X)	396
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9)	398
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)	400
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X)	402
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9)	405
Centering originals	407
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls	407
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets	408
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)	409
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)	411
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9)	414
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)	417
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)	419
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9)	421
Conserving roll paper	424
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees	424
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins	425
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)	426
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X)	428
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9)	431
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)	433
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X)	435
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9)	438
Printing CAD Drawings	440
Printing CAD Drawings	440
HP-GL/2 Printing	440
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)	441
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)	443
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)	445

Other useful settings	447
Printing With Watermarks	447
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation	448
Using Favorites	449
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing	449
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals	450
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)	451
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)	452
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9)	454
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)	456
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)	458
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9)	460
Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)	462
Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9)	464

Software 466

Windows	466
Printer Driver Settings (Windows)	466
Confirming Print Settings (Windows)	468
Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows)	470
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows)	471
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)	472
Using Favorites (Windows)	473
Main Sheet (Windows)	475
Page Setup Sheet (Windows)	479
Layout Sheet (Windows)	481
Favorites Sheet (Windows)	483
Utility Sheet (Windows)	484
Support Sheet (Windows)	485
Device Settings Sheet (Windows)	486
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows)	487
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)	489
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	490
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	491
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	492
Digital Photo Front-Access	493
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)	494
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)	496
Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows)	498
Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows)	502
Confirming the Print Image Before Printing	504
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)	505
Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows)	506
Page Options Dialog Box (Windows)	507
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)	508
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)	510
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows)	511

Mac OS X	512
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)	512
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)	513
Checking the Layout Before Printing	515
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X)	516
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X)	517
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X)	518
Main Pane (Mac OS X)	519
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X)	521
Utility Pane (Mac OS X)	523
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)	524
Support Pane (Mac OS X)	525
Using Favorites (Mac OS X)	525
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)	526
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)	528
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X)	529
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X)	531
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)	532
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X)	533
Mac OS 9	534
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)	534
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)	535
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9)	537
Main Pane (Mac OS 9)	538
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9)	541
Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9)	543
Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)	544
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)	545
Using Favorites (Mac OS 9)	546
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)	548
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9)	550
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9)	552
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9)	555
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)	557
Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)	558
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9)	559

Network Setting 560

Network Setting	560
Network Environment	560
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer	562
Initializing the Network Settings	563
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings	564
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel	566
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands	567
Specifying Printer-Related Information	569
Using RemoteUI	570
Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur	571

Network Setting (Windows)	572
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings	572
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type	574
Specifying NetWare Print Services	576
Specifying NetWare Protocols	579
Configuring NetWare Network Settings	581
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)	582
Sharing the Printer in Windows	583
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	585
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	586
Network Setting (Macintosh)	587
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings	587
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)	588
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)	589
Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)	593
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)	597

Maintenance **599**

Adjusting the Printhead	599
Correcting Print Misalignment	599
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically	599
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually	601
Adjusting the Printhead Height	603
Adjusting the feed amount	604
Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically	604
Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually	607
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength	610
Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy	611
Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets	613
Ink Tanks	615
Ink Tanks	615
Replacing Ink Tanks	616
Checking Ink Tank Levels	622
When to Replace Ink Tanks	623
Printheads	624
Printhead	624
Checking the Print Quality	624
Improving the Print Quality	624
Checking for Nozzle Clogging	625
Cleaning the Printhead	626
Replacing the Printhead	627
Maintenance Cartridge	634
Maintenance Cartridge	634
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge	634
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity	640
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge	641

Cleaning the Printer	642
Cleaning the Printer Exterior	642
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover	644
Cleaning the Paper Retainer	647
Cleaning the Pick Up Roller	648
Cleaning the Printhead	649
Other Maintenance	650
Preparing to Transfer the Printer	650
Updating the Firmware	655

Troubleshooting **656**

Frequently Asked Questions	656
Frequently Asked Questions	656
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver	658
Printing does not start	659
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up	659
The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent	659
The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink	659
Cannot print over a network	660
Cannot connect the printer to the network	660
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually	661
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network	662
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks	662
Cannot print over a NetWare network	663
The printer stops during a print job	664
An error message is shown on the Display Screen	664
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper	664
Problems with the printing quality	665
Printing is faint	665
Paper rubs against the Printhead	666
The edges of the paper are dirty	667
The surface of the paper is dirty	668
The back side of the paper is dirty	668
Banding in different colors occurs	668
The contrast becomes uneven during printing	668
Colors in printed images are uneven	669
Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper	670
Lines are misaligned	670
The length of printed images is inaccurate	670
Documents are printed in monochrome	670
Printed colors are inaccurate	671
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs	671
Documents are printed crooked	671
Fine Scratches Appear on Glossy Paper from the Cassette	672
Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper	672
Line thickness is not uniform (Windows)	672

Thin lines are not printed after switching to Economy Printing mode.....	672
Installation problems	673
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly.....	673
Removing Installed Printer Drivers.....	674
Clearing jammed paper	675
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper	675
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)	679
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray	680
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette	683
HP-GL/2 problems	689
Lines or images are missing in the HP-GL/2 data that was printed.	689
With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned.....	689
Lines Are Printed Too Thick or Thin During HP-GL/2 Printing.....	689
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color).	689
HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time.	689
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving).....	689
Replotting with HP-GL/2 jobs is not possible.	690
Printed Colors in Line Drawings are Inaccurate During HP-GL/2 Printing	690
If the Printer makes a strange sound.....	691
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound	691
Other problems	692
The printer consumes a lot of ink	692
A message to check the Maintenance Cartridge is not cleared after you replace the Maintenance Cartridge	692
Paper is not cut straight.....	692
Paper cannot be cut	692
Depression on the leading edge is left	693
Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper	693
The printer does not go on	693
Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot.....	693
Cannot load sheets in the tray.....	693
The Front Tray Guides are in the Front Paper Feed Slot.	693
Ink level detection.....	694

Error Message 696

Responding to Messages	696
Responding to Messages.....	696
Error Messages	698
Messages regarding paper	700
Paper Mismatch	700
Paper Type Mismatch.....	700
Paper Size Mismatch	701
This paper cannot be used.....	701
Insufficient paper for job	702
Media Type not compatible with cassette.....	702
No cassette loaded.....	702

Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.....	703
Roll printing is selected.	703
Sheet printing is selected.	703
Wrong paper feed slot for this paper type.	703
Manual printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.....	704
Cannot feed paper.....	704
Borderless printng not possible.	705
Paper loaded askew.	706
Paper size not detected.....	706
Cannot detect papr.....	707
End of paper feed.....	707
Cannot feed paper.....	707
Paper jam.	708
Cannot cut paper.	708
The roll is empty.	709
Roll feed unit err	709
No Roll Feed Unit.	709
Messages regarding ink.....	710
Ink Level: Check.....	710
No ink tank loaded.....	710
Ink insufficient.....	711
Ink tank is empty.....	712
Ink tank error.	712
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.	712
Messages regarding printing or adjustment.....	713
Use another paper.....	713
Cannot print as specified.....	713
Cannot adjust band.	713
Cannot adjust printhead.	713
Messages regarding printheads	714
Cannot adjust printhead.	714
Cannot adjust band.	714
PHead needs cleaning.	714
Problem with Printhead	715
Printhead error	715
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge	716
No maintenance cartridge.....	716
Prepare for maint cart replacement.....	716
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.....	716
Maintenance cartridge full.	716
Maintenance cartridge problem.....	716
Messages regarding HP-GL/2	717
This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.	717
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)	717
GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.....	717
GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.	717
There is no data.	717

Other Messages 718

 GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 718

 Top cover is open. 718

 ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)..... 718

 Unknown file 718

 Prepare for parts replacement..... 718

 Parts replacement time has passed. 719

 Multi-sensor error 719

 Roll feed unit err 719

 No Roll Feed Unit. 719

 Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 719




Introduction

How to use this manual

■ ■ ■ About This User Manual

- Symbols

The following symbols are used in this User Manual to indicate safety information and explanations on restrictions or precautions in use.

	Important	Indicates important information that must be followed when using the printer. Be sure to read this information to prevent printer damage or operating errors.
	Caution	Indicates caution items for which operating error poses a risk of injury or damage to equipment or property. To ensure safe use, always follow these precautions.
	Note	Indicates helpful reference information and supplemental information on particular topics.

- Button names and user interface elements

Key and button names on the control panel and user interface elements in software (such as menus and buttons) are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Control Panel Buttons	Example: Press the OK button.
Control Panel Interface Items and Messages	Example: Head Cleaning is displayed.
Software Interface Items (Menus and Buttons)	Example: Click OK .
Keyboard Keys	Example: Press the Tab key.

- Part Names

Names of printer parts are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Printer part names	Example: Open the Top Cover.
--------------------	------------------------------

- Cross-reference

Other pages or manuals that provide related information are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Cross-Reference in the Same User Manual	Example: see “Turning the Printer On and Off”. (→P.19) Click the link to jump to the corresponding page.
Cross-Reference in Related Manuals	Example: See the Paper Reference Guide .
Other Cross-Reference	Example: See the printer driver help.

- Figures and software screens

- Figures in this User Manual may be different from the actual appearance of the printer in some cases.
- Screens depicted in this User Manual for the printer driver or other software may be different from the actual screens because of subsequent updates.
- Windows XP screens are used in explanations of Windows operations in this User Manual.

- Trademarks

- Canon, the Canon logo, and imagePROGRAF are trademarks or registered trademarks of Canon Inc.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Other company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

- Copyright

© 2007 Canon Inc.

- Unauthorized reproduction of this User Manual in whole or part is prohibited.

- May we request

Thank you for understanding the following points.

- The information in this User Manual is subject to change without notice.
- We strive to ensure accuracy of information in this User Manual, but if you notice errors or omissions, please contact us.

Viewing Videos of Explanations

To view videos related to topic pages, click the **View Video** button. The video will play in a separate window. This way, you can learn by watching demonstrations of the actual procedures.

Video Requirements: In Windows, Adobe Flash Player must be installed to view the videos.

If it is not installed, download it by clicking the following URL.

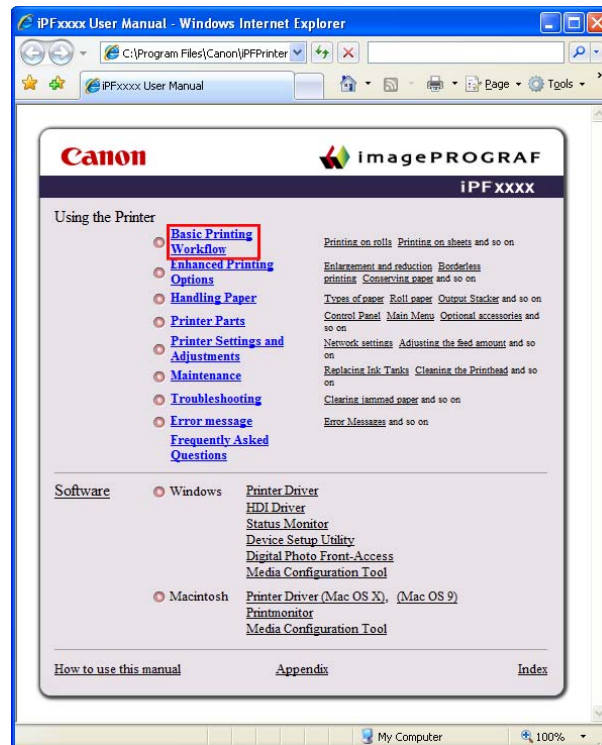
<http://www.adobe.com/products/flashplayer/>

Note that this URL is subject to change. If you cannot access this URL, download Adobe Flash Player by visiting the main Adobe website and navigating to the appropriate page.

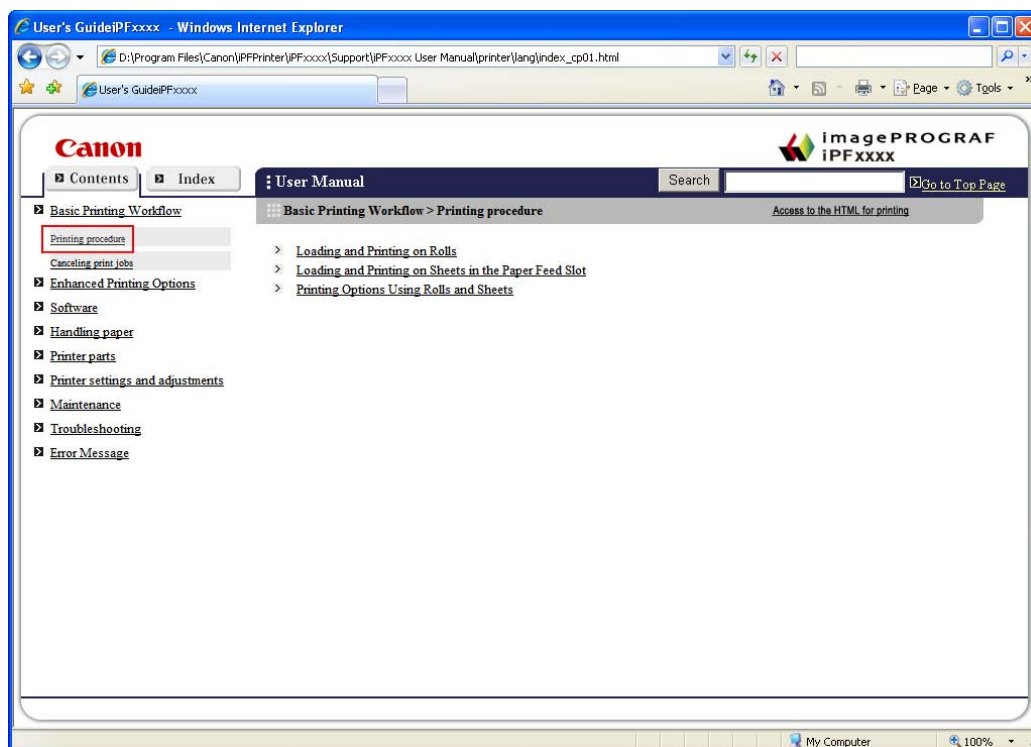
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing

For your convenience when printing this manual, HTML versions of the sections in “Using the Printer” on the top page are available. All topics in a section are combined in one file for printing. This section describes how to print sections of the manual, using the content of **Printing Procedure** in **Basic Printing Workflow** as an example.

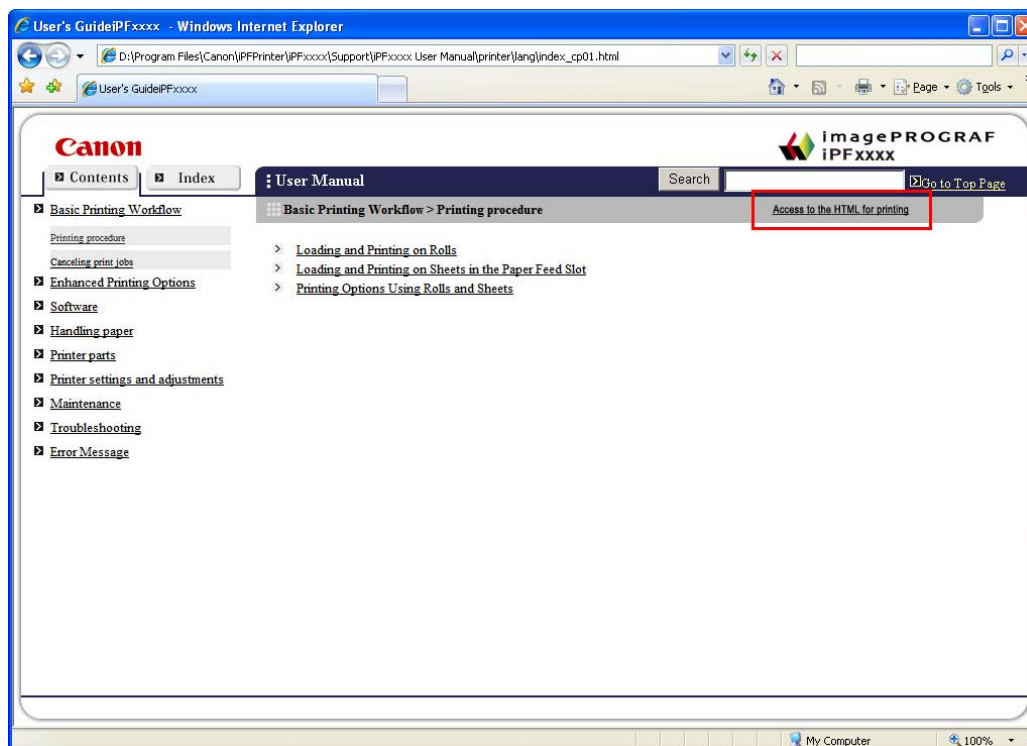
1. On the top page, click **Basic Printing Workflow**.



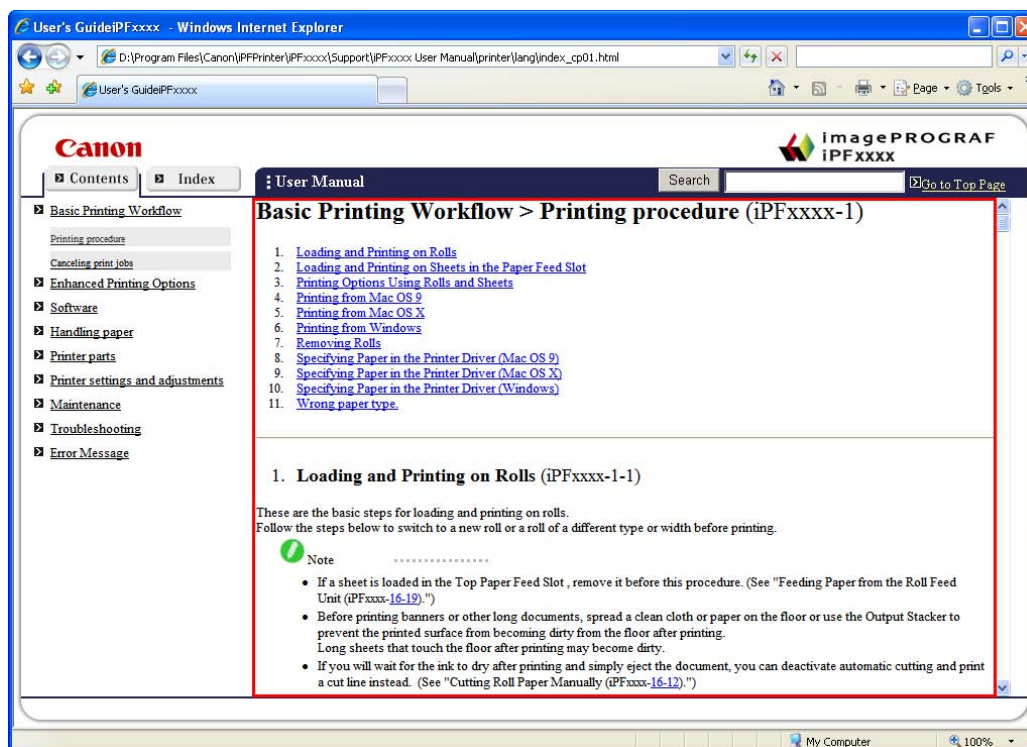
2. Under **Basic Printing Workflow** in the left frame, click **Printing Procedure**.



3. In the title area of **Printing Procedure**, click **Access to the HTML for printing**.



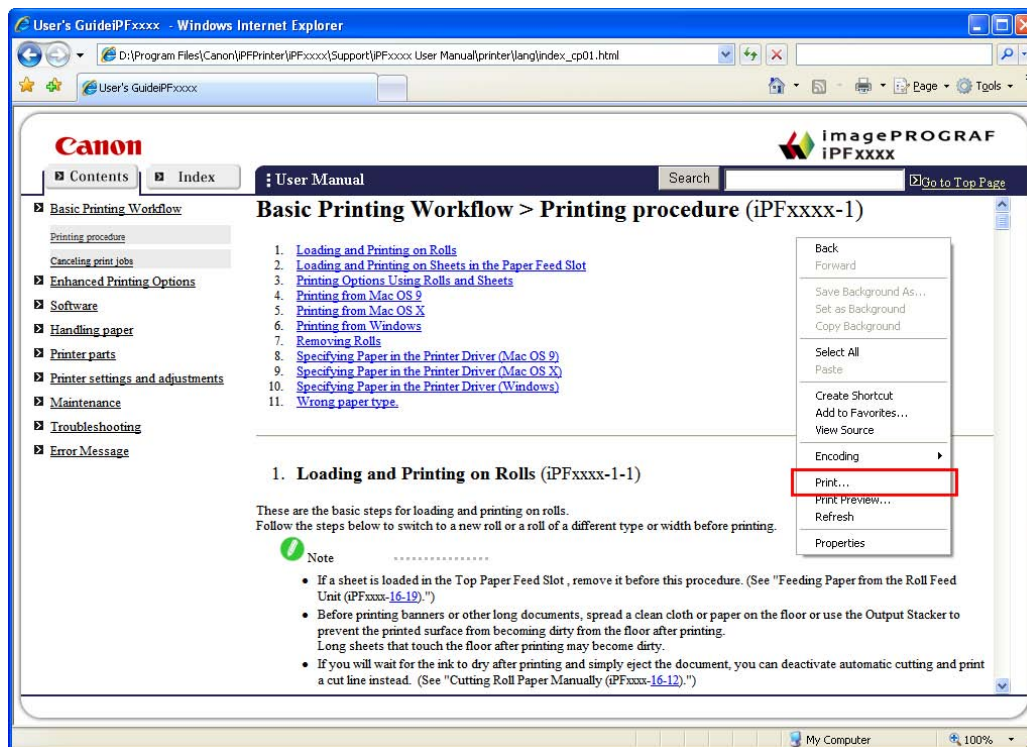
An HTML version of the topics in **Printing Procedure** is displayed, suitable for printing.



4. Access the printing dialog box as follows, depending on your computer's operating system.

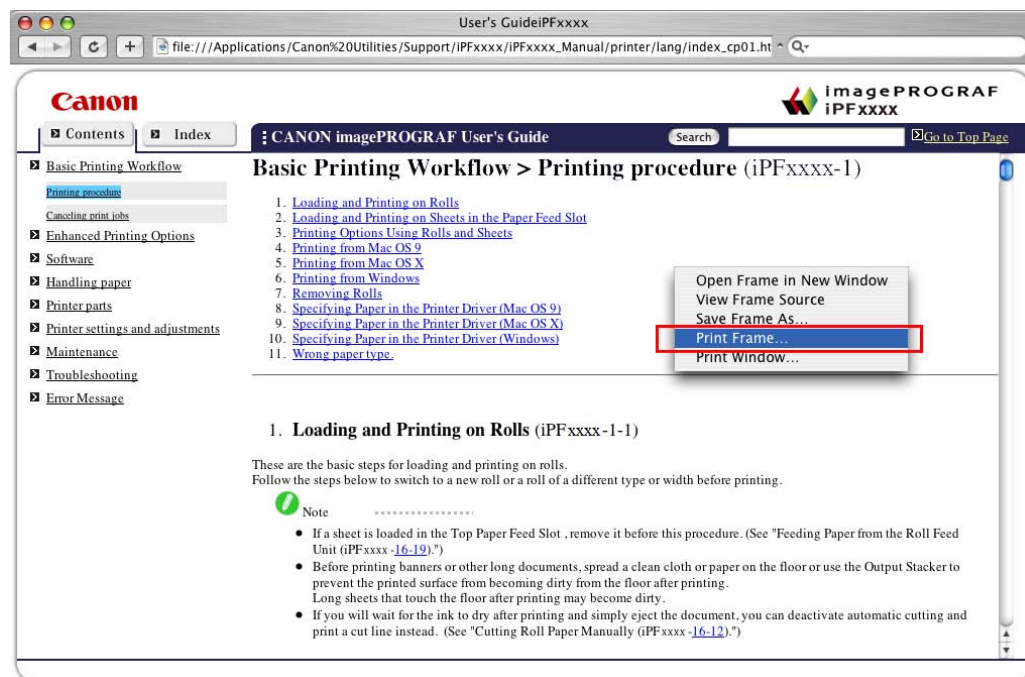
• Windows

In Windows, right-click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link. In the shortcut menu, click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.



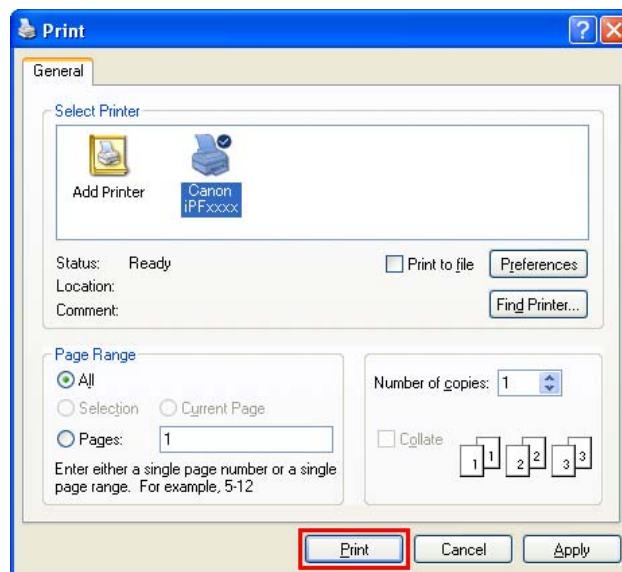
• Macintosh

On a Macintosh computer, click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link while holding the Ctrl key. In the shortcut menu, click **Print Frame** to display the **Print** dialog box.

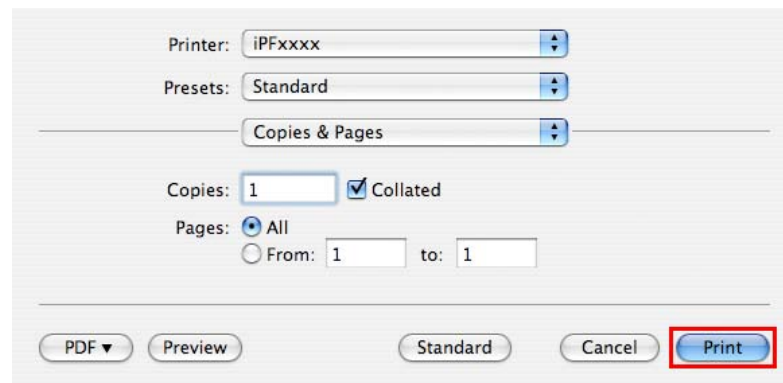


5. Specify conditions as needed, and then click **Print** (Windows) or **Print** (Macintosh).

- Windows



- Macintosh



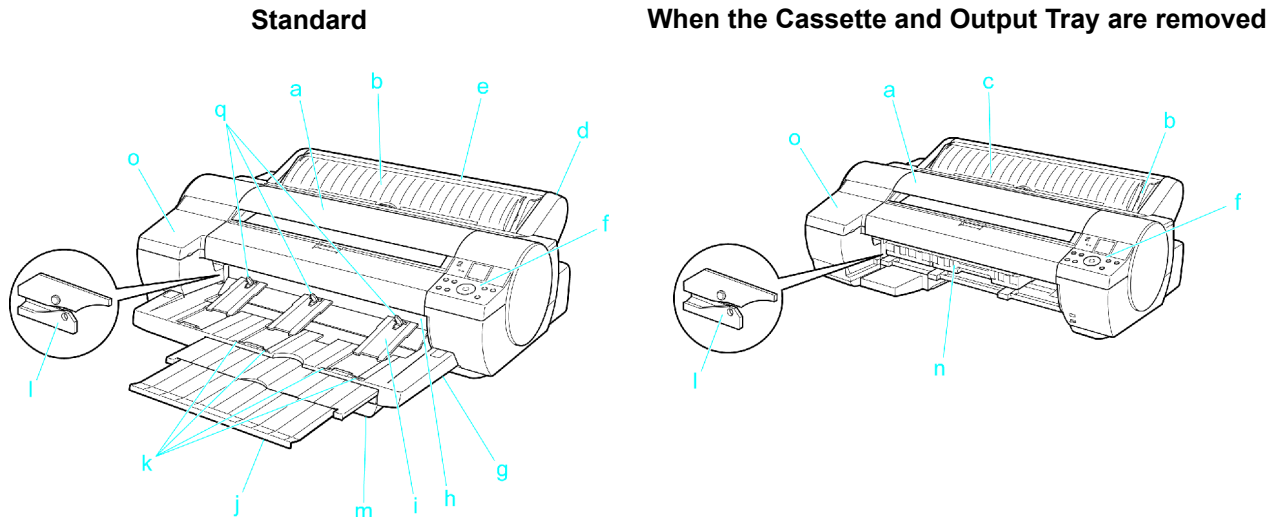
Note

- To print “Software” on the top page or individual topics that are displayed, follow steps 4 and 5.

Printer Parts

Printer parts

Front



a. Top Cover

Open this cover to install the Printhead and remove any jammed paper from inside the printer, as needed. (→P.11)

b. Paper Tray Cover

Open this cover to load sheets in the Tray. (→P.12)

c. Roll Feed Unit

Load rolls in this unit. You can also load sheets in this unit manually.

d. Roll Feed Unit Cover

Open this cover to load rolls. (→P.13)

e. Control Panel

Use this panel to operate the printer and check the printer status. (→P.16)

f. Output Tray

Printed documents are ejected into the output tray.

g. Output Tray (Front Paper Feed Slot)

All printed documents are ejected to the output tray. Also, use this slot when loading heavyweight paper. (→P.12)

h. Vertical Paper Guides

Raise the guides before printing on rolls to prevent paper jams. The guides will support the paper after ejection. Lifting the guides when printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot will automatically raise the Front Tray Guides, making it easier to load paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot.

i. Output Tray Extension

An extension to prevent ejected paper from falling to the floor. Pull out the extension to match the paper size before printing.

j. Paper Alignment Line

When loading heavyweight paper, ensure the paper edge is parallel to this line.

k. Cutter Unit

A round-bladed cutter for automatic cutting of roll paper. The cutter is retracted inside when not cutting.

l. Cassette

Load sheets in this tray.

m. Maintenance Cartridge

Absorbs excess ink.

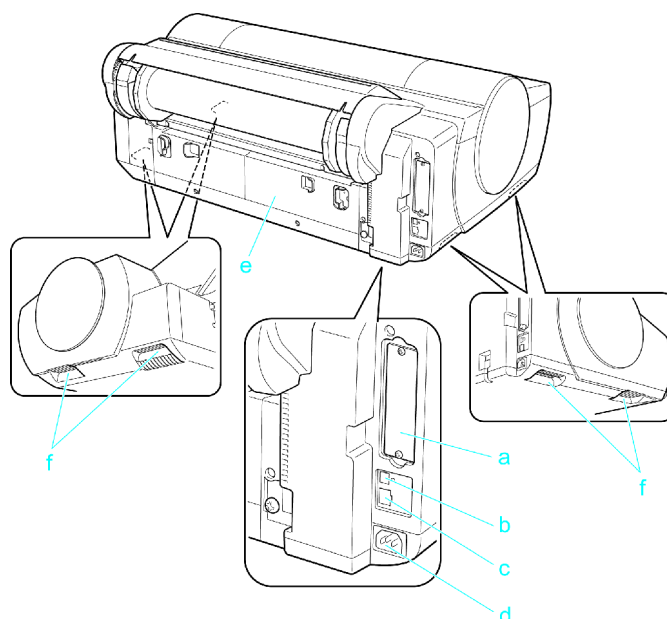
n. Ink Tank Cover

Open this cover to replace Ink Tank. (→P.15)

o. Front Tray Guides

Lifting the Vertical Paper Guides when printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot will automatically raise the guides, making it easier to load paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot.

Back



a. Expansion Board Slots

For installing an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board, as desired.

b. USB Port

Connect a USB cable to this port. This port is compatible with High Speed USB 2.0.

c. Ethernet Port

Connect an Ethernet cable to this port.

d. Power Supply Connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

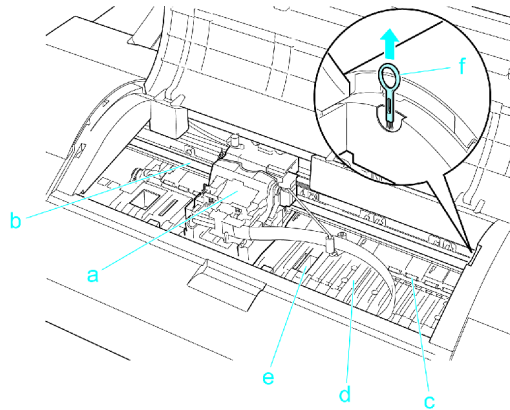
e. Back Cover

Open this cover to remove any jammed paper when printing from the Cassette, as needed.

f. Carrying Handles (Four Positions)

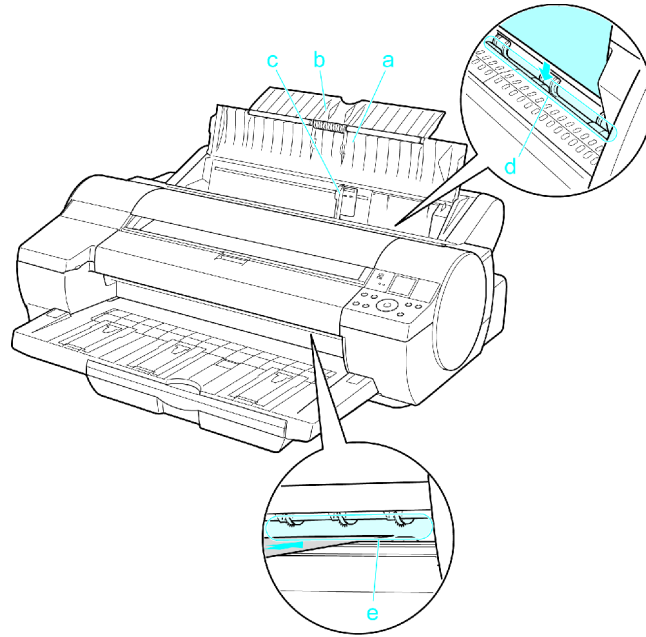
When carrying the printer, hold it by these handles under both sides.

Top Cover (Inside)



- a. Carriage
Moves the Printhead. It serves a key role in printing. (→P.14)
- b. Carriage Shaft
The Carriage slides along this shaft.
- c. Paper Retainer
Important in supplying the paper. This retainer holds paper as it is fed.
- d. Platen
The Printhead moves across the platen during printing. Vacuum holes on the platen hold paper in place.
- e. Borderless Printing Ink Grooves
For catching ink outside the edges of paper during borderless printing.
- f. Cleaning Brush
When cleaning inside the printer under the Top Cover, use this brush to sweep away paper dust on the Platen.

Tray Feed Area



a. Tray

Load sheets manually in this tray.

b. Tray Extension

When loading sheets, open the Paper Tray Cover before opening this tray.

c. Width Guide

When loading the sheets, move the guide to match the paper size.

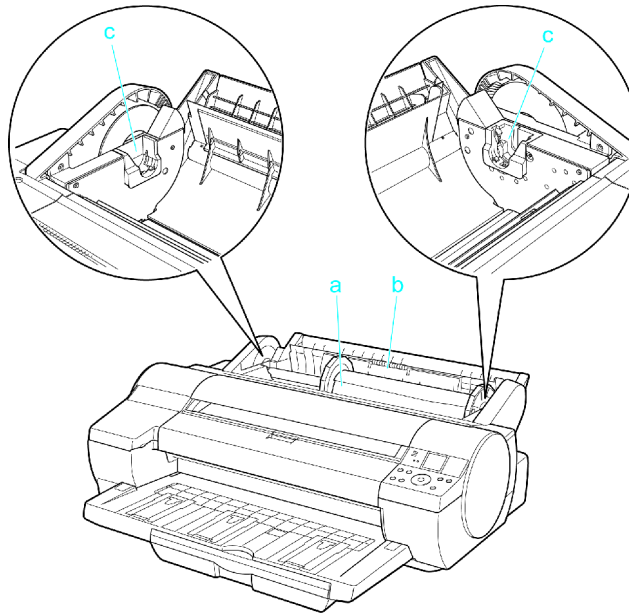
d. Top Paper Feed Slot

When loading sheets, insert them here.

e. Front Paper Feed Slot (Output Tray)

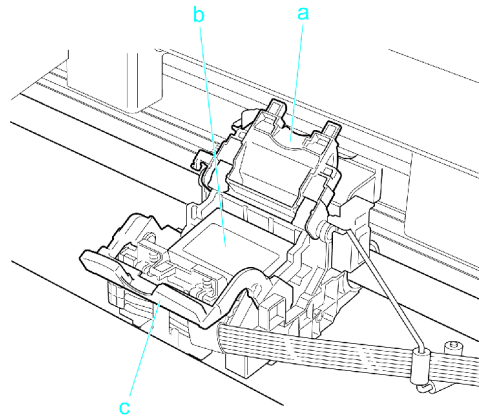
When loading heavyweight paper, insert it here. Also, all printed documents are ejected from this slot.

Roll Feed Unit Cover (Inside)



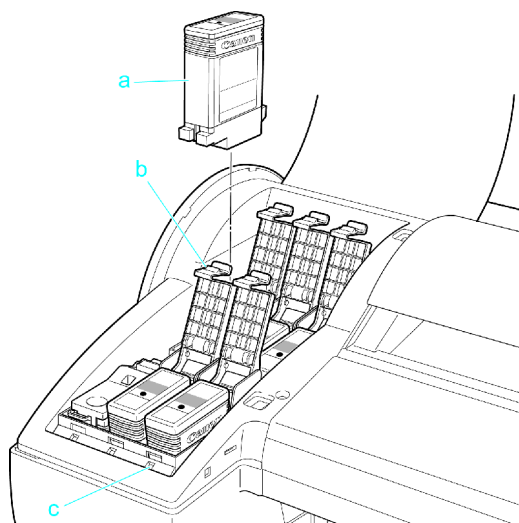
- a. Roll Holder
Load rolls on this holder.
- b. Holder Stopper
Secure rolls on the Roll Holder with this part.
- c. Roll Holder Slot
Slide the Roll Holder into this guide slot.

Carriage



- a. Printhead Fixer Cover
Holds the Printhead in place.
- b. Printhead
The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. It serves a key role in printing.
- c. Printhead Fixer Lever
Locks the Printhead Fixer Cover.

■ Ink Tank Cover (Inside)



a. Ink Tank

Cartridges of ink in various colors.

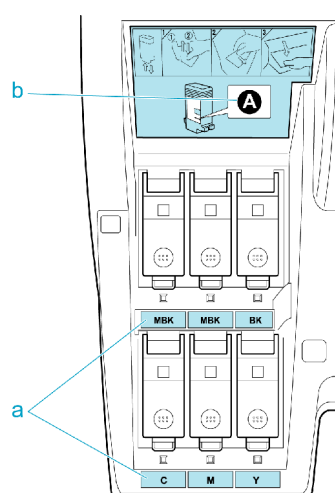
b. Ink Tank Lock Lever

A lever that locks the Ink Tank in place and protects it. Open or close the lever when replacing an Ink Tank.

c. Ink Lamp (Red)

Indicates the state of the Ink Tank as follows when the Ink Tank Cover is opened.

- On
On: The Ink Tank is installed correctly.
- Off
Off: No Ink Tank is installed, or the ink level detection function is disabled.
- Flashing Slowly
Not much ink is left.
- Flashing Rapidly
There is no more ink.



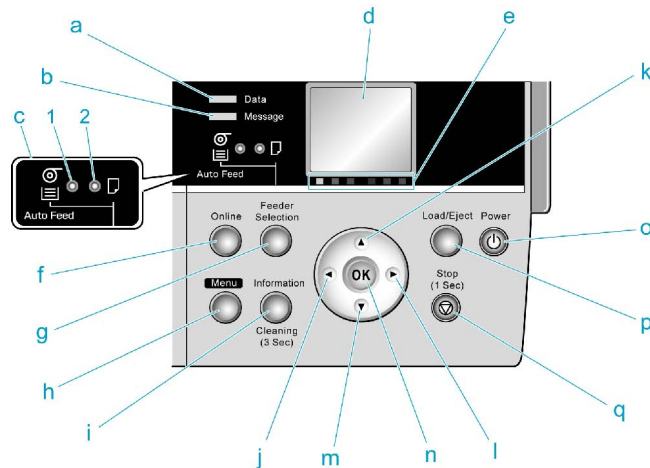
a. Ink Color Label

Load an Ink Tank corresponding to the color and name on these labels.

b. Ink Set

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter "A" in a black circle on the side. When purchasing an Ink Tank, make sure an "A" is printed on the label. (→P.615)

Control Panel



a. Data lamp (Green)

- Flashing
During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the printer is paused or updating the firmware.
- Off
There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

b. Message lamp (Orange)

- On
A warning message is displayed.
- Flashing
An error message is displayed.
- Off
The printer is off or is operating normally.

c. Paper Source Section

After you press the **Feeder Selection** button, the lamp for your chosen paper source is lit.

1. Auto Feed lamp (Green) (Cassette or Rolls)

- On
Shows whether a Cassette or roll is selected as the paper source.
- Off
Shows whether the Tray or Front Paper Feed Slot is selected as the paper source.

2. Paper Tray lamp (Green)

- On
Shows whether the Tray or Front Paper Feed Slot is selected as the paper source.
- Off
Shows whether a Cassette or roll is selected as the paper source.

d. Display Screen

Shows the printer menu, as well as the printer status and messages.

e. Color Label

These labels indicate the Ink Tank colors and names. The labels correspond to the ink levels on the Display Screen.

f. **Online Button**

Switches the printer online and offline. (→P.26)

- On (Green)
The printer is online.
- Flashing
In mode transition.
- Off
The printer is offline.

g. **Feeder Selection Button**

Switches the paper source. Each time you press this button, the paper source switches between auto feed (when the paper source is a Cassette or roll) and manual feed (when the paper source is the Tray or the Front Paper Feed Slot). The corresponding lamp in the paper source section is lit.

h. **Menu Button**

Displays the main menu of the printer. (→P.50)

i. **Information Button**

Displays printer submenus. Press this key to display information about ink, paper, and so on. (→P.62)

You can also hold down this button for three seconds to clean the Printhead (**Head Cleaning A**).

j. ◀ **Button**

Menu mode: Press this button to display the previous menu item or setting value.

k. ▲ **Button**

Offline mode: Press this button to rewind rolls manually. (→P.132)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level higher.

l. ▶ **Button**

Menu mode: Press this button to display the next menu item or setting value.

m. ▼ **Button**

Offline mode: Press this button to feed the roll manually in the direction of ejection, as needed. (→P.132)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level lower.

n. **OK Button**

In menu mode, press this button to confirm or execute the selected item or setting.

o. **Power Button**

Turns the printer on and off. (→P.19)

p. **Load/Eject Button**

You can check instructions on loading, replacing, and removing paper. Instructions for loading or replacing paper are shown on the Display Screen if pressed when no paper is loaded, and instructions for removing paper are shown if paper is loaded.

q. **Stop Button**

Hold down for at least a second to cancel print jobs in progress or end the ink drying period.

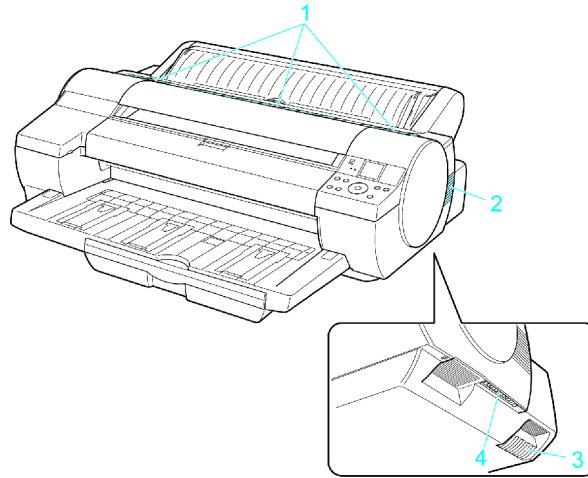
During display of instructions on loading sheets, for example, you can hold down this button for one second to pause the current screen.

**Note**

- In Sleep mode, you can press any button except the **Power** button to bring the printer online again.

Vents

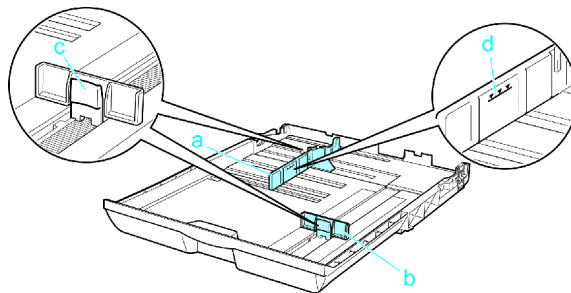
The vents are on top (1), on the right (2), and on the bottom on the right (3 and 4).



Caution

- Do not block these vents when the printer is on.
- Avoid setting paper or other light objects near the vents.

Cassette



a. Width Guide

Adjust this guide to hold paper widthwise.

b. Length Guide

Adjust this guide to hold paper lengthwise.

c. Guide Lever

Squeeze these levers to slide the guides.

d. Maximum Capacity Line

A guide line indicating how many sheets can be loaded. Do not load paper over this line.

Control Panel

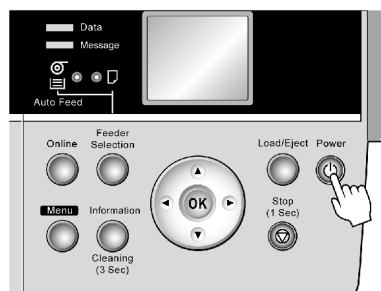
Turning the Printer On and Off

Turning the printer on

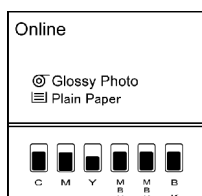
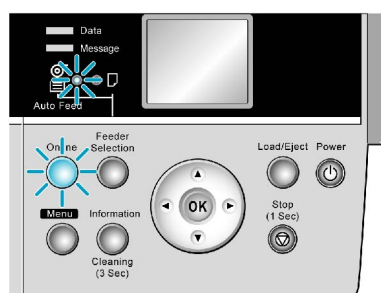
1. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.

The printer will now start up.

After the Display Screen shows the Canon logo, **Starting up... Please wait.** is displayed.



2. The printer goes online in preparation for printing after startup, and the Online lamp and paper source section lamp remain lit.



The printer will not go online in the following situations. Take action as needed.

- The Top Cover is open
Close the Top Cover.
- The Ink Tank Cover is open
Close the Ink Tank Cover.
- The Printhead is not installed
Install the Printhead. For the instruction, see "Replacing the Printhead". (→P.627)
- Ink Tank is not installed
Install the Ink Tanks. For the instruction, see "Replacing Ink Tanks". (→P.616)
- If "ERROR" is shown on the Display Screen
Turn off the printer and contact your Canon dealer.
- The Online lamp and **Message lamp** are not lit (even once), and nothing appears on the Display Screen
Make sure the printer is plugged in correctly. Check the connection at the plug and electrical outlet.

- No paper is loaded
Load paper. (→P.82) (→P.89)



Important

- Starting the printer when it is connected via the USB cable to a Macintosh computer that is off may cause the computer to start up at the same time. To prevent this, disconnect the USB cable before starting the printer. Connecting the printer to the computer via a USB hub may solve this issue.

Turning the printer off

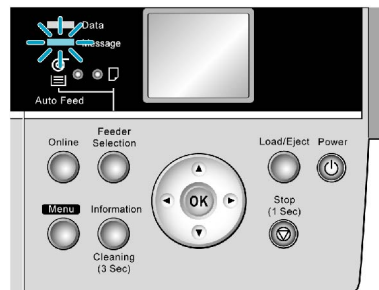


Important

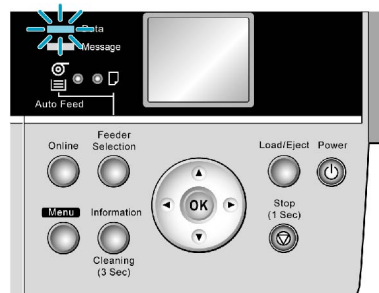
- Never turn the printer off or unplug it during a print job. This could damage the printer.

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.

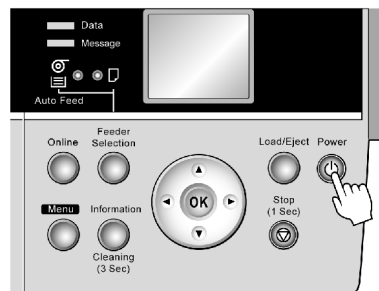
If the **Message lamp** is flashing, check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.698)



If the **Data lamp** is flashing, the printer is receiving a print job. Turn off the printer only after printing is finished.



2. Hold down the **Power** button for more than a second.



After **Shut Down.. Please Wait..** is shown on the Display Screen, the printer shuts off.

Printer Modes

Printer modes are classified as follows and described in this topic.

- Modes (→P.21)
- Mode transition (→P.22)
- Online, and state of the Control Panel (→P.23)
- Offline, and state of the Control Panel (→P.24)
- Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.25)
- Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.25)

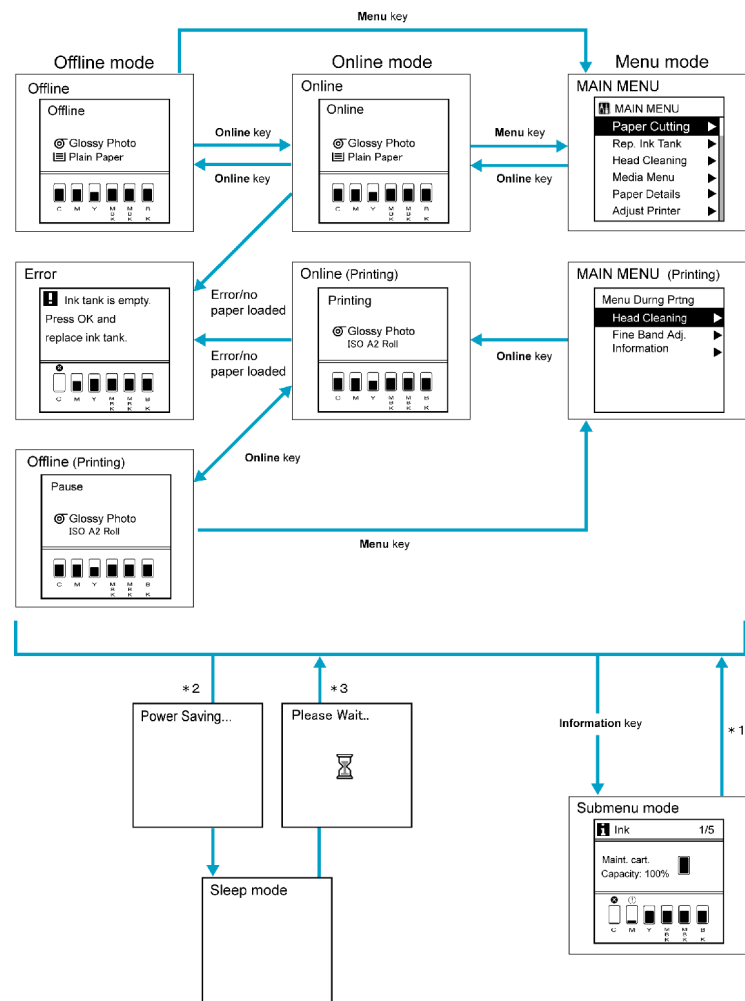
Modes

The printer has five modes as follows:

- Online
The printer is ready to receive jobs sent from the computer. Jobs sent from the computer are processed immediately. If jobs are received in other modes, they are printed the next time the printer goes online.
- Offline
Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being processed.
While the printer is offline, you can feed or cut roll paper manually.
The printer goes offline automatically if jobs cannot be processed, such as if errors occur.
- Menu mode
Menus are displayed on the printer, and you can select, set, or execute menu items. Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.
- Submenu mode
Submenus are displayed regarding ink and paper information. Jobs can be received and printing is possible while submenus are displayed and the printer is online. In other modes, any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed while submenus are displayed.
- Sleep mode
The printer is in power-saving mode. The printer automatically enters Sleep mode to conserve power if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed.
You can specify the period before the printer enters Sleep mode in the **Sleep Timer** menu. (→P.50)
If any print jobs are received when the printer is in Sleep mode (after it was originally online), the printer goes online and prints the jobs.

Mode transition

The printer mode transitions are as follows:



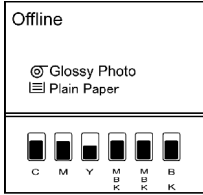
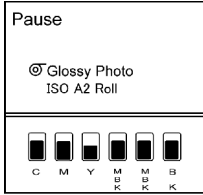
- *1: When submenus are displayed, you can press any button other than the **Information** button to return to the previous mode.
- *2: The printer automatically enters Sleep mode if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. However, it does not enter Sleep mode while error messages are displayed.
- *3: In Sleep mode, the printer can be restored to the previous state by pressing any button. Sleep mode is also terminated if a print job is received or a command is issued from RemoteUI.

Online, and state of the Control Panel


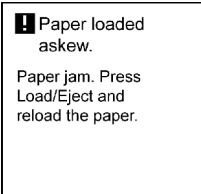
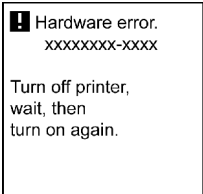

Not printing	Printing in progress (receiving or processing print jobs)
<div><div>Online</div><div><div><div></div><div>Glossy Photo</div></div><div><div></div><div>Plain Paper</div></div></div><div><div><div></div><div>C</div></div><div><div></div><div>M</div></div><div><div></div><div>Y</div></div><div><div></div><div>M</div><div>B</div><div>K</div></div><div><div></div><div>M</div><div>B</div><div>K</div></div><div><div></div><div>B</div><div>K</div></div></div></div>	<div><div>Printing</div><div><div><div></div><div>Glossy Photo</div></div><div><div></div><div>ISO A2 Roll</div></div></div><div><div><div></div><div>C</div></div><div><div></div><div>M</div></div><div><div></div><div>Y</div></div><div><div></div><div>M</div><div>B</div><div>K</div></div><div><div></div><div>M</div><div>B</div><div>K</div></div><div><div></div><div>B</div><div>K</div></div></div></div>
<div>Display Screen</div> <div><div>• Top Level of the Display Screen</div><div>The printer status is displayed here. The selected paper source is indicated by an icon in the upper-right corner.</div><div>Any warning messages are displayed here on lines 2-4. Take action as needed. (→P.698)</div><div>• Middle Level of the Display Screen</div><div>The first and second lines display the paper type and size.</div><div>• Bottom Level of the Display Screen</div><div>Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.622)</div></div> <div>Control Panel</div> <div><div>• Online lamp</div><div>Lit when the printer is online.</div><div>• Data lamp</div><div>Flashes when print jobs are being received or processed.</div><div>• Message lamp</div><div>Lit when warning messages are displayed.</div></div>	

Offline, and state of the Control Panel


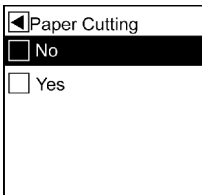
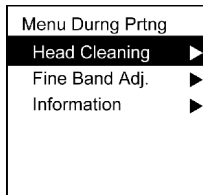
Offline

Not printing	Printing is paused
	
<p>Display Screen</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display Screen The printer status is displayed here. The selected paper source is indicated by an icon in the upper-right corner. Any warning messages are displayed here on lines 2-4. Take action as needed. (→P.698) • Middle Level of the Display Screen The first and second lines display the paper type and size. • Bottom Level of the Display Screen Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.622) <p>Control Panel</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Message lamp Lit when warning messages are displayed. 	

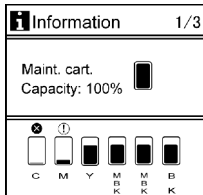
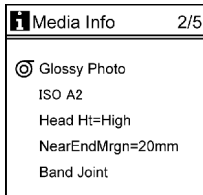
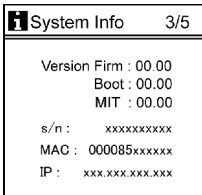
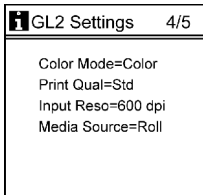
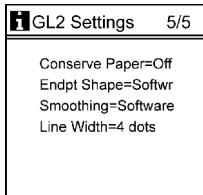
Error Messages

If action can be taken		If no action can be taken	
			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top and Middle Levels of the Display Screen Error messages are displayed. • Bottom Level of the Display Screen Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.622) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top and Middle Levels of the Display Screen Error messages are displayed. • Bottom Level of the Display Screen The corrective actions are displayed here. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top and Middle Levels of the Display Screen The error message is displayed with the following instructions: Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display Screen “ERROR” is displayed, followed by the error code and Call for service..
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Data lamp Flashes when print jobs are being received. • Message lamp Flashes when error messages are displayed. 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Data lamp Flashes when print jobs are being received. • Message lamp Flashes when error messages are displayed. 	
Take action as needed. (→P.698)		Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is still displayed after this, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact the Canon dealer for assistance.	

Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel

Main menu	Menu items and settings	Main menu (during printing)
		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display Screen Pressing the Menu button when printing is not in progress displays the main menu. The title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menus immediately under the current menu are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. The lower level menus are available if “►” is displayed at right. (→P.30) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display Screen The title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menu items or settings are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. (→P.30) The menu of options available during printing (top figure) can be displayed by pressing the ► button when the main menu is displayed (left figure). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display Screen Menus available during printing are displayed if you press the Menu button during printing. If you select a menu, the title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menus immediately under the current menu are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. The lower level menus are available if “►” is displayed at right. (→P.30)

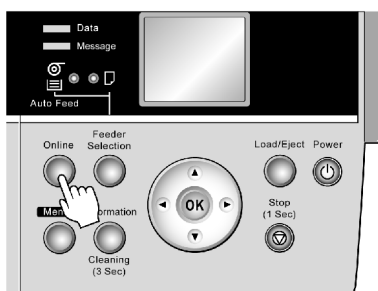
Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel

Ink levels and the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity	Information of the loaded paper	Printer information	GL2 Settings	
				
Press the Information button to display this information, one after another: the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, paper information, printer information, and GL2 settings information. (→P.62)				

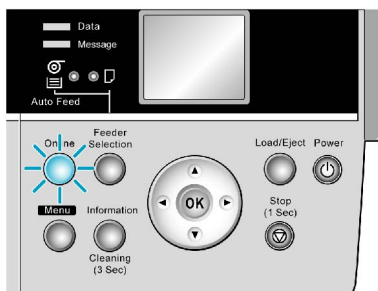
Switching Modes

Switching the Printer Online/Offline

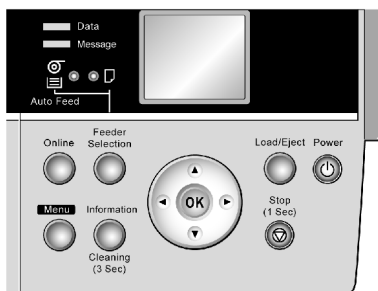
Press the **Online** button to switch the printer online or offline.



The Online lamp is lit in Online mode. Printing is possible in this mode.



The Online lamp is off in Offline mode.

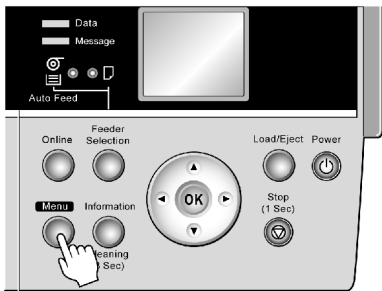


Depending on the status, the printer switches online and offline as follows.

Printer Status	When the Online Button is Pressed
Online	The printer switches offline and the Online lamp goes off.
Online, printing	Switches offline and printing is paused. When printing is paused, the Printing menu is available.
Offline	Switches online and the Online lamp is lit.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	In the case of error messages other than those shown below or if paper is not loaded, the printer remains offline until you solve the problem. The Online lamp remains off.
	<p>If the following error messages are displayed, the printer switches online and printing is resumed. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insufficient paper for job • PHead needs cleaning. • Pap Size Mismatch • Pap Type Mismatch
Menu mode	Switches online and the Online lamp is lit.
Menu mode, printing	Switches online and the Online lamp is lit. Printing is resumed.

Switching to Menu Mode

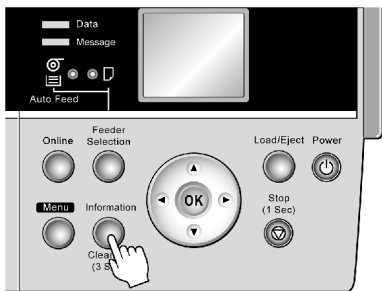
Press the **Menu** button to display the main menu.



Depending on the status, the printer switches to Menu mode as follows.

Printer Status	When the Menu Button is Pressed
Online	Switches to Menu mode.
Online, printing	The printer stays online. It does not switch to Menu mode.
Offline	Switches to Menu mode.
Offline, printing	Menus available during printing are displayed.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	Not switch to Menu mode until the problem is solved.

Press the **Information** button to display the submenus.



Press the **Information** button to display the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, as well as information on the loaded paper and the printer. Press the **Information** button repeatedly to change the information displayed. (→P.62)

Press any button other than the **Information** button to restore the previous mode.

After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about ten seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.



Note

- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more. (→P.626)

Printer Menu Operations

For instructions on selecting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)

For details on menu levels and menu items, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.35)

The printer menu structure is made up of a main menu and submenus.

Access the main menu by pressing the **Menu** button on the Control Panel. The principal settings available in the main menu are as follows:

- Paper Settings
Specify the type and size of paper.
- Print Settings
Adjust or clean the Printhead, or adjust the paper feed amount.
- Printer Settings
Configure the network settings, set the sleep timer, and specify the unit of measurement on the display.



Note

- By default, main menu settings apply to all print jobs. However, for settings that are also available in the printer driver, the values specified in the printer driver take priority.

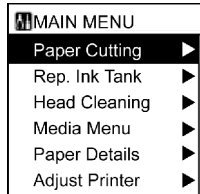
Access the submenu by pressing the **Information** button on the Control Panel. You can check the following information in submenus.

- Ink levels
- Maintenance Cartridge capacity
- Size and type of paper that is selected
- Amount of roll paper left

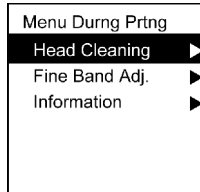
Main Menu Operations

Press the **Menu** button to display the main menu. For details, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.50)

- Main menu when no print job is in progress



- Main menu during printing



Note

- The main menu will not be displayed in the following cases even if you press the **Menu** button.
 - An error message is displayed
You can access the Menu mode after you have solved the problem.
- Pressing the **Menu** button when printing is paused (because you have pressed the **Online** button) displays main menu items that are available during printing.

To access each function menu from the main menu, and set or execute menu items, use buttons on the Control Panel.

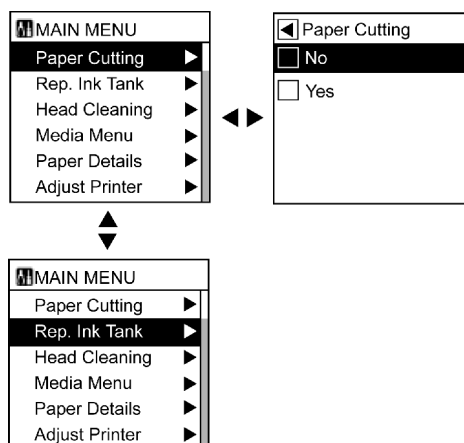
The following section describes menu operations and how they are presented in this **User Manual**.

- Accessing Menus (→P.31)
- Specifying menu items (→P.32)
- Specifying numerical values (→P.33)
- Executing menu commands (→P.34)

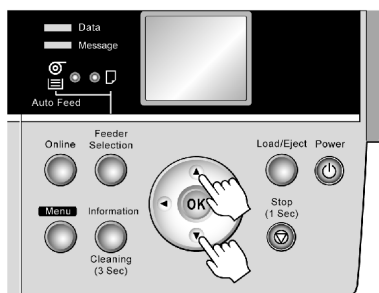
Accessing Menus

Printer menus are grouped by function.

Menus are displayed with the upper line selected. Use the buttons on the Control Panel to access each menu.

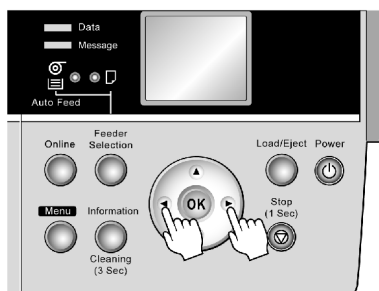


- Press ▲ to access a higher menu in the menu list, and press ▼ to access a lower one. If items of the menu list are more than the lines of the screen, press ▲ and ▼ to scroll the menu. If you navigate to the lowest-level menu and press the ▼ button again, the display switches to the top-level menu screen. If you navigate to the top-level menu and press the ▲ button again, the display switches to the lowest-level menu screen. Items you select are highlighted.



The scroll bar at right indicates the current position in the overall menu.

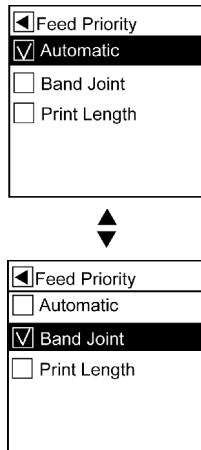
- The lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. To access these lower level menus, select a menu and press ►.
- The upper level menus are available if "◀" is displayed at left. To access these upper level menus, select a menu and press ◀.



Specifying menu items

Follow the steps below to specify menu items.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to access menus, and then press the ► button.
Repeat these steps until the desired menu options are displayed.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to move to the setting item, and then press the **OK** button.
The check box at left is selected, and the setting is confirmed.



After two seconds, the display reverts to the upper level menu.

3. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



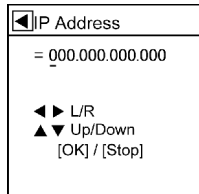
Note

- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer goes online.

Specifying numerical values

Follow the steps below to enter numbers for items such as network settings.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Setting**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ◀ or ▶ to move the cursor () to each field for entering numbers.



6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the number, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.
- Make sure the IP address you enter for the printer is not the same as any computer IP address in your network.

7. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to continue entering numbers.
8. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



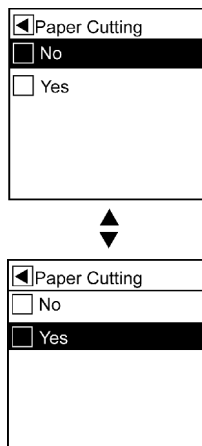
Note

- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer goes online.

Executing menu commands

Follow the steps below to execute menu commands.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a menu, and then press the ► button.
Repeat these steps until the desired menu options are displayed.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to move to the command you want to execute, and then press the **OK** button.



After two seconds, the menu command is executed. After commands are executed, the printer commonly reverts to the state before the menu operation, either online or offline.

Menu Structure

Main Menu

The structure of the main menu is as follows. Values at right indicated by an asterisk “*” are the defaults.

For instructions on menu operations, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)

For details on menu items, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.50)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Paper Cutting	No *			
	Yes			
Rep. Ink Tank	No *			
	Yes			
Head Cleaning	Head Cleaning A			
	Head Cleaning B			
Media Menu	Cas Paper Type	Plain Paper (*5)		
		Plain Paper HQ (*5)		
		Plain Paper HG (*5)		
		PlainP_ConsMBK (*5)		
		High Resolution (*5)		
		Coated Paper (*5)		
		Premium MatteP (*5)		
		Matte Photo (*5)		
		HW GlossyPhoto2 (*5)		
		HW SemiGIPhoto2 (*5)		
		Glossy Paper (*5)		
		Photo Paper Pro (*5)		
		Photo PaperPlus (*5)		
		PhotoPlusSemiGI (*5)		
		CAD Trace Paper (*5)		
		Special # (Here, the number is 1-5) (*5)		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
	Cas Paper Size	ISO A2		
		ISO A3		
		ISO A3+		
		ISO A4		
		JIS B3		
		JIS B4		
		17"x22"(ANSI C)		
		11"x17" (Ledger)		
		13"x19" (Super B)		
		Letter (8.5"x11")		
		Legal (8.5"x14")		
		12"x18" (ARCH B)		
		14"x17"		
		12"x16"		
		10"x12"		
		10"x15"		
		8"x10"		
		16"x20"		
		13"x22"		
	Manual PaperType	Plain Paper (*5)		
		Plain Paper HQ (*5)		
		Plain Paper HG (*5)		
		PlainP_ConsMBK (*5)		
		Recycled Coated (*5)		
		High Resolution (*5)		
		Coated Paper (*5)		
		HW Coated (*5)		
		Ex HW Coated (*5)		
		Premium MatteP (*5)		
		Matte Photo (*5)		
		Glossy Photo (*5)		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		Semi-GI Photo (*5)		
		HW GlossyPhoto2 (*5)		
		HW SemiGIPhoto2 (*5)		
		SatinPhoto 190 (*5)		
		Glossy Paper (*5)		
		Photo Paper Pro (*5)		
		Photo PaperPlus (*5)		
		PhotoPlusSemiGI (*5)		
		Syn. Paper (*5)		
		Adh. Syn. Paper (*5)		
		Proofing Paper (*5)		
		News Proof 1 (*5)		
		News Proof 2 (*5)		
		Colored Coated (*5)		
		CAD Trace Paper (*5)		
		CAD Matte Film (*5)		
		POP Board (*5)		
		Special # (Here, the number is 1-5) (*5)		
	Manual PaperSize	ISO A1		
		ISO A2		
		ISO A2+		
		ISO A3		
		ISO A3+		
		ISO A4		
		ISO B2		
		ISO B3		
		ISO B4		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		JIS B2		
		JIS B3		
		JIS B4		
		22"x34"(ANSI D)		
		17"x22"(ANSI C)		
		11"x17" (Ledger)		
		13"x19" (Super B)		
		Letter (8.5"x11")		
		Legal (8.5"x14")		
		24"x36" (ARCH D)		
		18"x24" (ARCH C)		
		12"x18" (ARCH B)		
		9"x12" (ARCH A)		
		DIN C2		
		DIN C3		
		DIN C4		
		20"x24"		
		18"x22"		
		14"x17"		
		12"x16"		
		10"x12"		
		10"x15"		
		16"x20"		
		20"x30"		
		13"x22"		
		300x900mm		
	Roll Media Type (*1)	Plain Paper (*5)		
		Plain Paper HQ (*5)		
		Plain Paper HG (*5)		
		PlainP_ConsMBK (*5)		
		Recycled Coated (*5)		
		Coated Paper (*5)		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		HW Coated (*5)		
		Ex HW Coated (*5)		
		Premium MatteP (*5)		
		Glossy Photo (*5)		
		Semi-GI Photo (*5)		
		HW GlossyPhoto2 (*5)		
		HW SemiGIPhoto2 (*5)		
		SatinPhoto 190 (*5)		
		Syn. Paper (*5)		
		Adh. Syn. Paper (*5)		
		Proofing Paper (*5)		
		News Proof 1 (*5)		
		News Proof 2 (*5)		
		Colored Coated (*5)		
		CAD Trace Paper (*5)		
		CAD Matte Film (*5)		
		Special # (Here, the number is 1-5) (*5)		
	Chk Remain.Roll	Off *		
		On		
	Roll Length Set (*2)	### m		
		### feet (*9)		
Paper Details	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*5)	Roll DryingTime	Off	
			30 sec.	
			1 min.	
			3 min.	
			5 min.	

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
			10 min.	
			30 min.	
			60 min.	
		Scan Wait Time	Off	
			1 sec.	
			3 sec.	
			5 sec.	
			7 sec.	
			9 sec.	
		Feed Priority	Automatic *	
			Band Joint	
			Print Length	
		Adjust Length	From -0.70% to 0.70%	
		Head Height	Automatic *	
			Highest	
			High	
			Standard	
			Low	
			Lowest	
		Skew Check Lv.	High Accuracy	
			Standard	
			Loose	
			Off	
		VacuumStrngth	Automatic *	
			Strongest	
			Strong	
			Standard	
			Weak	
			Weakest	
		NearEnd RollMrgn	3mm	
			20mm	
		Cut Speed	Fast	
			Standard	
			Slow	

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		Trim Edge First	Automatic	
			Off	
			On	
		Cutting Mode	Automatic	
			Eject	
			Manual	
		Bordless Margin	Automatic	
			Fixed	
		CutDustReduct.	On	
			Off	
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn	3mm	
			20mm	
		Manual Feed	Front	
			Top	
		Return Defaults	No	
			Yes	
GL2 Settings	GL2 Replot	No		
		Yes		
	GL2 BufferClear	No		
		Yes		
	Color Mode	Color *		
		Monochrome		
	Print Quality	Fast		
		Standard *		
		High		
	Input Resolution	600dpi *		
		300dpi		
	Media Source	Automatic *		
		Roll Paper		
		Cassette		
		Manual		
	Conserve Paper	Off *		
		On		
	Line Cap	Software *		
		Rounded		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
	Smoothing	Software *		
		Smooth		
	Line Width	1 dot		
		2 dots		
		3 dots		
		4 dots *		
		5 dots		
		6 dots		
		7 dots		
	ThickenFineLines	Off *		
		On		
	AdjustFaintLines	Off		
		On *		
Adjust Printer	Auto Head Adj.	Standard Adj.	No	
			Yes	
		Advanced Adj.	No	
			Yes	
		Auto Print	Off	
			On *	
	Manual Head Adj	No		
		Yes		
	Auto Band Adj.	Standard Adj.	No	
			Yes	
		Advanced Adj.	No	
			Yes	
	Manual Band Adj	No		
		Yes		
	Adj Far Ed Feed	No		
		Yes		
	Adjust Length (*3)	No		
		Yes		
		Return Defaults	No	
			Yes	
Interface Setup	EOP Timer	10 sec.		
		30 sec.		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		1 min.		
		2 min.		
		5 min.		
		10 min. *		
		30 min.		
		60 min.		
	TCP/IP	IP Mode	Automatic	
			Manual *	
		Protocol (*4)	DHCP	On
				Off *
			BOOTP	On
				Off *
			RARP	On
				Off *
		IP Setting	IP Address	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255
			Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255
			Default G/W	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255
	NetWare	NetWare	On	
			Off *	
		Frame Type (*6)	Auto Detect	
			Ethernet 2	
			Ethernet 802.2 *	
			Ethernet 802.3	
			Ethernet SNAP	
		Print Service (*6)	BinderyPServer	
			RPrinter	
			NDSPServer *	
			NPrinter	
	AppleTalk	On		
		Off *		
	Ethernet Driver	Auto Detect	On *	
			Off	
		Comm.Mode (*7)	Half Duplex *	

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
			Full Duplex	
		Ethernet Type (*7)	10 Base-T *	
			100 Base-TX	
		Spanning Tree	Not Use *	
			Use	
		MAC Address		
	Ext. Interface	No		
		IEEE1394		
	Return Defaults	No		
		Yes		
Maintenance	Repl. maint cart	No		
		Yes		
	Replace P.head	No		
		Yes		
	Move Printer	No		
		Yes		
	Clean Roller	No		
		Yes		
	Clean Platen	No		
		Yes		
System Setup	Warning	Buzzer	Off	
			On *	
		Detect Mismatch	Pause	
			Warning	
			None *	
	Keep Media Size	Off *		
		On		
	Paper Size Basis	Sht Selection	ISO A3+ *	
			13"x19"(Super B)	
		Roll Selection 1	ISO A3 (297mm) *	
			300mm Roll	
		Roll Selection 2	10in. (254mm)	
			JIS B4 (257mm) *	
	TrimEdge Reload	Automatic		
		Off		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		On		
	Noz. Check Freq.	Off		
		1 page		
		10 pages		
		Automatic *		
	Sleep Timer	5 min. *		
		10 min.		
		15 min.		
		20 min.		
		30 min.		
		40 min.		
		50 min.		
		60 min.		
		240 min.		
	Length Unit	meter *		
		feet/inch		
	Time Zone	0:London (GMT)		
		+1:Paris,Rome		
		+2:Athens,Cairo		
		+3:Moscow		
		+4:Eerevan,Baku		
		+5:Islamabad		
		+6:Dacca		
		+7:Bangkok		
		+8:Hong Kong		
		+9:Tokyo,Seoul *		
		+10:Canberra		
		+11NewCaledonia		
		+12:Wellington		
		-12:Eniwetok		
		-11:Midway is.		
		-10Hawaii(AHST)		
		-9:Alaska(AKST)		
		-8:Oregon (PST)		
		-7:Arizona(MST)		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		-6:Texas (CST)		
		-5:NewYork(EST)		
		-4:Santiago		
		-3:Buenos Aires		
		-2:		
		-1:Cape Verde		
	Date Format	yyyy/mm/dd *		
		dd/mm/yyyy		
		mm/dd/yyyy		
	Date & Time	Date	yyyy/mm/dd (*8)	
			Time	hh:mm
	Language	[English]*		
		日本語		
		[Français]		
		[Italiano]		
		[Deutsch]		
		[Español]		
		[Русский]		
		中文 (简体字)		
		한국어		
	Contrast Adj.	-4, -3, -2, -1, 0*, +1, +2, +3, +4		
	Reset PaprSetngs	No		
		Yes		
Test Print	Status Print	No		
		Yes		
	Media Details	No		
		Yes		
	Print Job Log	No		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
		Yes		
	Menu Map	No		
		Yes		
	Nozzle Check	No		
		Yes		
Information	System Info			
	Error Log	##### -####		
	Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	Document Name	
			User Name	
			Page Count	
			Job Status	
			Print Start Time	
			Print End Time	
			Print Time	
			Print Size	
			Media Type	
			Interface	
			Ink Consumed	

*1: Available only if a roll is loaded.

*2: Available only if **Chk Remain.Roll** is **On**.

*3: Available only if **Feed Priority** is **Print Length**.

*4: Available only if **IP Mode** is **Automatic**.

*5: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.

(→P.112) The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

*6: Available only if **NetWare** is **On**.

*7: Available only if **Auto Detect** is **Off**.

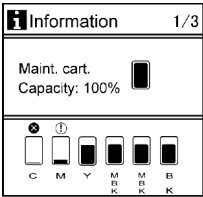
*8: Follows the setting in **Date Format**.

*9: Follows the setting in **Length Unit**.

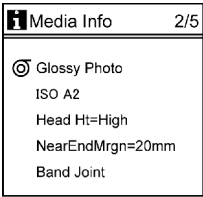
Submenus

Each time you press the **Information** button on the Control Panel, printer information is displayed in the following order.

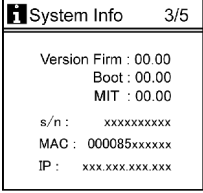
- The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels



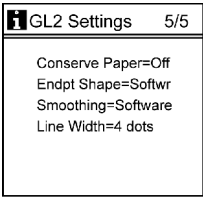
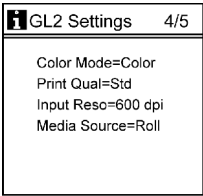
- Information of the loaded paper



- Printer information



- HP-GL/2 settings information



For details on submenu screens, see “Submenu Display”. (→P.62)

Main menu during printing

The structure of the main menu during printing is as follows.

For instructions on menu operations, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)

For details on menu items, see “Main Menu Settings (During Printing)”. (→P.61)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Menu Durng Prtng	Head Cleaning	Head Cleaning A		
		Head Cleaning B		
	Fine Band Adj. (*1)	From -5 to 5		
	Information	System Info		
		Error Log	#####-####	
		Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	Document Name
				User Name
				Page Count
				Job Status
				Print Start Time
				Print End Time
				Print Time
				Print Size
				Media Type
				Interface
				Ink Consumed

*1: Available if **Feed Priority** is **Automatic** or **Band Joint**.

Main Menu Settings

Main menu items are described in the following tables.

For instructions on selecting or setting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”.. (→P.30)

For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.35)

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Paper Cutting	This command is available only if a roll is loaded. Choose Yes to cut the roll at the current position. However, if paper cannot be advanced to the cut position, it will not be cut. In this case, manually advance the roll before cutting it. (→P.132)
Rep. Ink Tank	When replacing the Ink Tank, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.616)
Head Cleaning	Specify Printhead cleaning options. (→P.626) Choose Head Cleaning A if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose Head Cleaning B if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by Head Cleaning A .
Media Menu	Specify the type and size of paper. (→P.51)
Paper Details	Specify detailed paper-related settings, including the ink drying time and borderless printing options. (→P.52)
GL2 Settings	Specify settings for HP-GL/2 printing. (→P.54)
Adjust Printer	Adjust the Printhead alignment or amount of feed by printing a test pattern. (→P.55)
Interface Setup	Configure the EOP timer and network settings. (→P.56)
Maintenance	Access maintenance settings when replacing the Printhead or preparing to move the printer. (→P.57)
System Setup	Specify the printer system settings, including the date format and display language. (→P.58)
Test Print	Choose Status Print to print information about the printer. Choose Media Details to print the paper settings as specified in Paper Details . Choose Print Job Log to print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink used, and so on. (Information on ink consumption is general, not specific in nature.) Choose Menu Map to print a list of the main menu options. Choose Nozzle Check to print a test pattern for checking the nozzles.
Information	Displays information about the printer and record of print jobs. (→P.60)

Media Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Cas Paper Type (*1)	Select the type of paper in the cassette. (→P.172)
Cas Paper Size (*1)	Specify settings for HP-GL/2 printing. (→P.174)
Manual PaperType (*1)	Choose the type of paper in the tray. (→P.173)
Manual PaperSize (*1)	Select the size of paper to be loaded manually. (→P.194)
Roll Media Type (*1)	Choose the type of roll. (→P.130)
Chk Remain.Roll	Choose On to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose Off if you prefer not to print the barcode.
Roll Length Set	Displayed if Chk Remain.Roll is On . If a barcode is not printed on rolls, specify the roll length. The roll length is displayed in meters or feet, depending on the setting in Length Unit .

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.
(→P.112) The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).



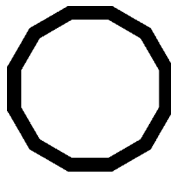
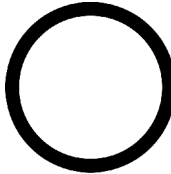
Paper Details

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
(The paper type is displayed here.)(*1)	Roll DryingTime Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.
	Scan Wait Time Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry between each scan in bidirectional printing, in consideration of how quickly the ink dries. Note that printing will take longer if you specify a wait time.
	Feed Priority Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, select Automatic . Choose Print Length if you prefer to feed the paper an exact amount. However, note that choosing Print Length may result in slight banding in the direction of Carriage scanning.
	Adjust Length Displayed if Feed Priority is Print Length . Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper. Enter either the adjustment results from Print Pattern or the discrepancy that you measured (as a percentage). For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount by choosing a higher adjustment value. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by choosing a lower adjustment value.
	Head Height Adjust the Printhead height. (→P.603)
	Skew Check Lv. If you print on Japanese paper (washi) or other handmade paper that has an irregular width, choose Loose for a higher skew detection threshold, or choose Off to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is Off , note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
	VacuumStrngth Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen. (→P.610)
	NearEnd RollMrgn Specify the minimum margin at the leading edge of roll paper to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose 3mm , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge. It may also cause the Platen to become soiled.
	Cut Speed Choose the cutting speed. If you use adhesive paper, choosing Slow helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp.
	Trim Edge First If a roll is loaded, the end of the paper will be cut.
	Cutting Mode Specify whether or not to cut with the standard round-bladed cutter. Choose Automatic to have the roll cut automatically after printing. If you choose Manual , the paper will not be cut after printing. Instead, a line will be printed at the cut position. Choose Eject if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry.

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
(The paper type is displayed here.)(*1)	Bordless Margin	Adjust the margin during borderless printing. Choose Automatic to have the printer automatically detect the paper width and configure the margin settings for borderless printing. If margins are mistakenly created when Automatic is selected, choose Fixed . In this case, the paper width is not detected automatically, and the document is printed without borders, using the margin settings required by the printer.
	CutDustReduct.	Choose On to reduce the amount of debris generated when cutting film and similar media by printing a line at the cut position. This option reduces the amount of debris given off after cutting. It also helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you use adhesive paper. (→P.140)
	Manual Feed	When printing manually, choose the Paper Feed Slot. Normally, choose Top . For heavyweight paper such as POP Board, choose Front .
	NearEnd Sht Mrgn	Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose 3mm , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge.
	Return Defaults	Choose Yes to restore Paper Details to the factory default values.

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.
(→P.112)The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

GL2 Settings

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
GL2 Replot	Print the last printed job (still stored in the printer memory) again.
GL2 BufferClear	Delete the last job printed using HP-GL/2, still stored in the printer memory.
Color Mode	Choose the color mode.
Print Quality	Choose the print quality.
Input Resolution	Choose the printer input resolution, 600dpi or 300dpi .
Media Source	Choose the media source for HP-GL/2 printing.
Conserve Paper	Conserves paper when printing.
Line Cap	<p>Choose the shape of the end point, determined by Software or Rounded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you choose Software Operation is determined by the application. If nothing is specified by the application, the result is as shown in the figure.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you choose Rounded 
Smoothing	<p>Choose whether to print arcs as smooth curved lines or as multiple connected line segments.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you choose Software Operation is determined by the application. If nothing is specified by the application, the result is as shown in the figure.  <p>Note: By default, this is a 72-sided figure</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you choose Smooth 
Line Width	Choose the width for printing lines if no width is specified in the data. Dots in the line width are 300 dpi each.
ThickenFineLines	Select On to print fine lines more distinctly.
AdjustFaintLines	If fine lines are printed in colors that do not match the colors of other shapes, selecting Off may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

Adjust Printer

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Auto Head Adj.	Standard Adj.	Choose Yes to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. (→P.599)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose Yes to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the nozzle, ink tank, and printing direction. (→P.599)
	Auto Print	Choose On to have the printer automatically execute the Advanced Adj. operations after you replace the Printhead. (→P.599)
Manual Head Adj		Choose Yes to print a test pattern for adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. Enter the adjustment value manually based on the resulting pattern. (→P.601)
Auto Band Adj.	Standard Adj.	Choose Yes to have the printer print and read a band adjustment test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. (→P.604)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose this option when using paper other than genuine Canon paper, or paper for purposes other than checking output. Choose Yes to have the printer print and read a band adjustment test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. Note that this function takes more time and requires more ink than Standard Adj. (→P.604)
Manual Band Adj		Choose Yes to print a test pattern for adjusting the feed amount based on the paper type. (→P.607)
Adj Far Ed Feed		Choose Yes for adjustment of the feed amount of the trailing edge.
Adjust Length		Choose Yes to print a test pattern for adjustment relative to paper stretching or shrinkage, after which you can enter the amount of adjustment. (→P.611)

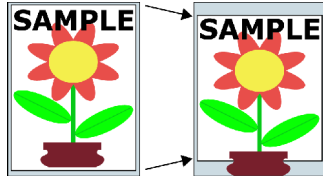
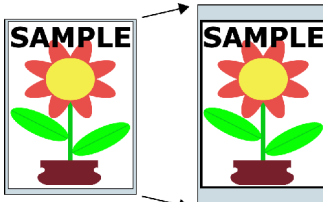
Interface Setup

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
EOP Timer		Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
TCP/IP	IP Mode	Choose whether the printer IP address is configured automatically or a static IP address is entered manually.
	Protocol	DHCP
		BOOTP
		RARP
	IP Setting	IP Address
		Subnet Mask
		Default G/W
NetWare	NetWare	Specify the NetWare protocol. To apply your changes, choose Register Setting .
	Frame Type	Specify the frame type to use.
	Print Service	Choose the print service.
AppleTalk		Specify whether to use the AppleTalk protocol. To apply your changes, choose Register Setting .
Ethernet Driver	Auto Detect	Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose Register Setting . Choose On for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol. Choose Off to use settings values of Comm.Mode and Ethernet Type .
	Comm.Mode	Choose the LAN communication method.
	Ethernet Type	Choose the LAN transfer rate.
	Spanning Tree	Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address.
Ext. Interface		Choose the expansion interface.
Return Defaults		Return Defaults/Execute? is displayed if you press the ▼ button. Choose OK to restore the network settings to the default values.

Maintenance

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Repl. maint cart	When replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.634)
Replace P.head	Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When replacing the Printhead, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.627)
Move Printer	Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When transferring the printer to another location, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.650)
Clean Roller	Choose Yes to clean the Feed Roller . If printed documents are soiled, this may improve printing results.
Clean Platen	Use this function to clean inside the Top Cover. After you select Yes , the Carriage is moved in preparation for Platen cleaning. (→P.644)

System Setup

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Warning	Buzzer	Set the buzzer. Choose On for the buzzer to sound once for warnings and three times for errors.
	Detect Mismatch	Choose Warning for notification (display of a warning message) during printing if the paper type specified in the printer menu does not match the paper type in the printer driver. Choose None to continue to print without notification. Choose Pause to have printing paused under these circumstances. In this case, you can continue printing by pressing the Online button.
Keep Media Size		<p>Choose On to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed.</p>  <p>Choose Off to use the printer driver settings instead. Even if the margin setting of the printer driver is smaller than that of the printer menu, text or images will not be cut off. However, this requires longer paper because the actual margin will be equal to the margin setting of the printer driver plus the margin setting of the printer menu.</p> 
Paper Size Basis	Sht Selection	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether ISO A3+ or 13"x19"(Super B) is applied when an intermediate size is detected.
	Roll Selection 1	If roll size detection is activated, choose whether ISO A3 (297mm) or 300mm Roll is applied when a roll of an intermediate width is detected.
	Roll Selection 2	If roll size detection is activated, choose whether 10in. (254mm) or JIS B4 (257mm) is applied when a roll of an intermediate width is detected.
TrimEdge Reload		Choose On to cut the leading edge of the roll.
Noz. Check Freq.		Specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose 1 page to check once per printed page. Choose 10 pages to check once per ten printed pages. Choose Automatic to have the printer automatically adjust the timing for checks based on the frequency of nozzle use.
Sleep Timer		Specify the period before the printer enters Sleep mode.

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Length Unit		Choose the unit of measurement when roll length is displayed. You can switch the unit displayed for Roll Length Set and the remaining paper amount displayed in the submenu.
Time Zone		Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.
Date Format		Specify the date format.
Date & Time	Date	Set the current date.
	Time	Set the current time.
Language		Specify the language used on the Display Screen.
Contrast Adj.		Adjust the Display Screen contrast level.
Reset PaprSetngs		Restores settings that you have changed with Media Configuration Tool to the factory default values.

Information

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
System Info	Version	Firm	Displays the version of the printer and firmware.
		Boot	Displays the version of the boot ROM.
		MIT	Displays the version of the MIT database format.
	s/n		Displays the printer's serial number.
	MAC		Displays the MAC address of the printer.
	IP		Displays the printer's IP address.
Error Log	#####-####		Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	Document Name	Displays the document name in the last print job.
		User Name	Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count	Displays the number of pages in the print job.
		Job Status	Displays the results of the print job processed.
		Print Start Time	Displays the time when the print job was started.
		Print End Time	Displays the time when the print job was finished.
		Print Time	Displays the time required to print the job.
		Print Size	Displays the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	Displays the paper type in the print job.
		Interface	Displays the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumed	Displays the ink consumption.

Main Menu Settings (During Printing)

Main menu items during printing are described in the following tables.

For instructions on menu operations, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)

For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.35)

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Head Cleaning	Specify Printhead cleaning options. (→P.626) Choose Head Cleaning A if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose Head Cleaning B if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by Head Cleaning A .
Fine Band Adj.	Displayed during print jobs. For fine-tuning the feed amount.
Information	Displays information about the printer and record of print jobs. (→P.61)

Information

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
System Info	Version	Firm Displays the printer firmware version.
		Boot Displays the version of the boot ROM.
		MIT Displays the version of the MIT database format.
	Ext I/F	Displays the name of interfaces compatible with the expansion slot.
	s/n	Displays the printer's serial number.
	MAC	Displays the MAC address.
	IP	Displays the printer's IP address.
Error Log	#####-####	Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	Document Name Displays the document name in the last print job.
		User Name Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count Displays the number of pages in the print job.
		Job Status Displays the results of the print job processed.
		Print Start Time Displays the time when the print job was started.
		Print End Time Displays the time when the print job was finished.
		Print Time Displays the time required to print the job.
		Print Size Displays the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type Displays the paper type in the print job.
		Interface Displays the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumed Displays the ink consumption.

Submenu Display

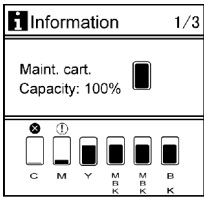
Press the **Information** button to display this information, one after another: the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, paper information, and printer information. Each time you press the **Information** button, the following submenus are displayed.



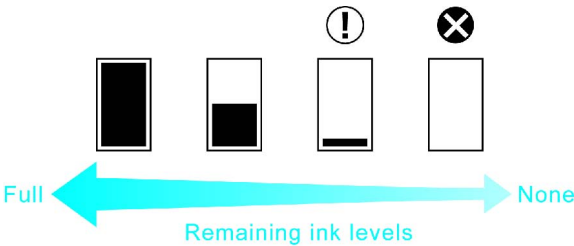
Note

- Press any button other than the **Information** button to restore the previous mode.
- After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about ten seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.

Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels



The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is shown on the top level of the Display Screen. The remaining level of each ink is shown on the bottom level of the Display Screen. Ink levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the color labels on the bottom of the Display Screen. These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: “!” if ink is low, “x” if no ink is left, and “?” if you have deactivated ink level detection. Remaining ink is indicated as follows.



Information of the loaded paper

Here, the paper size, type, and related printer settings are displayed.



Printer information

Displays the firmware version, serial number, MAC address, IP address, and interface information.

System Info	3/5
Version Firm : 00.00 Boot : 00.00 MIT : 00.00 s/n : xxxxxxxxxx MAC : 000085xxxxxx IP : xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	

GL2 Settings

The following settings information is displayed on two screens: HP-GL/2 **Color Mode**, **Print Quality**, **Input Resolution**, **Media Source**, **Conserve Paper**, **Line Cap**, **Smoothing**, and **Line Width**.

GL2 Settings	4/5
Color Mode=Color Print Qual=Std Input Reso=600 dpi Media Source=Roll	

GL2 Settings	5/5
Conserve Paper=Off Endpt Shape=Softwr Smoothing=Software Line Width=4 dots	

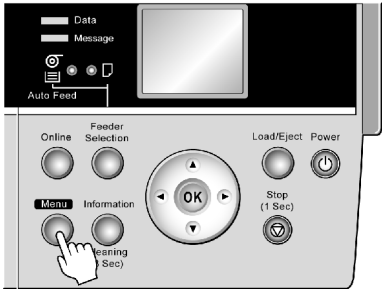
Status Print

You can print a **Status Print** report indicating the current status of the printer.

With **Status Print**, information is printed regarding the printer firmware version, various settings, and the utilization level of consumables.

Printing Status Print Reports

- 1. Load paper.
If using sheets, load paper A4/Letter-sized. You will need at least four sheets.
- 2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the ► button.
- 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Status Print**, and then press the ► button.
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Checking the information in the Status Print report

The following information is included in the **Status Print** report.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Status Print		Printer model
Firm	Firmware Version	
Boot	Boot ROM Version	
MIT(DBF)	MIT Database Format Version	
MIT(DB)	MIT Database Version	
S/N	Printer serial number	
MC	Maintenance Cartridge capacity (%)	
C, M, Y, MBK, MBK2, BK	Ink levels. The remaining ink is displayed in a five-level scale.	

Media Menu			Information on the loaded paper.
	Cassette Paper Type		
	Cassette Paper Size		
	Manual Paper Type		
	Roll Media Type		
	Check Remain. Roll		
	Cut Sheet Type		
Adjust Printer			Current printer settings.
		Head Adjust	Printhead adjustment value.
		Auto Print	
		A1-F2	
Feed Priority			Settings related to paper feeding.
Adjust Length			
HP-GL/2 Settings			HP-GL/2 setting values.
	Color Mode		
	Print Quality		
	Input Resolution		
	Media Source		
	Conserve Paper		
	Line Cap		
	Smoothing		
	Line Width		

Interface Setup				Current network settings.	
	EOP Timer			Sets the elapsed time between receiving last data and canceling printing.	
	TCP/IP			Settings related to TCP/IP .	
		IP Mode			
		Protocol			
			DHCP		
			BOOTP		
			RARP		
		IP Setting			
			IP Address		
			Subnet Mask		
			Default G/W		
	NetWare			NetWare settings.	
		Frame Type			
		Print Service			
	AppleTalk			Values that specify whether AppleTalk is active or not.	
	Ethernet Driver			Ethernet Driver settings.	
		Auto Detect			
		Comm.Mode			
		Ethernet Type			
		Spanning Tree			
		MAC Address			

System Setup			
	Warning		Current warning and error settings.
		Buzzer	
		Detect mismatch	
	Keep Media Size		Current paper-related settings.
	Sheet Selection		
	Roll Selection 1		
	Roll Selection 2		
	TrimEdge Reload		
	Noz. Check Freq.		Nozzle-check settings.
	Sleep Timer		General printer settings.
	Length Unit		
	Time Zone		
	Date Format		
	Language		
	Contrast Adj.		
Information			System information and an error log.
	RAM		
	Error Log		

Network (RemoteUI)		Current network settings used by RemoteUI.
TCP/IP		
	Frame Type	
	Use DHCP	
	Use BOOTP	
	Use RARP	
	Enable DNS Dynamic Update	
	Use Zeroconf Function	
	IP Address*	
	Subnet Mask*	
	Gateway Address*	
	LPD Printing	
	IPP Printing	
	IPP Printer URI	
	RAW Printing	
	Raw Port Number	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	FTP Printing	
	Primary DNS Server Address*	
	Secondary DNS Server Address*	
	DNS Host Name*	
	DNS Domain Name*	
	SMTP Server Address*	
	Multicast DNS Service Name	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

NetWare		Current NetWare settings.
	Frame Type	
	IPX External Network Number*	
	Node Number*	
	Print Service	

*: Depending on the NetWare print service settings, information on one of the following four items is printed.

	Bindery PServer		Values set when NetWare > Print Service > Bindery PServer is selected.
		File Server Name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
		Polling Interval	
	RPrinter		Values set when NetWare > Print Service > RPrinter is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	
	NDS PServer		Values set when NetWare > Print Service > NDS PServer is selected.
		Tree Name*	
		Context name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
	NPrinter		Values set when NetWare > Print Service > NPrinter is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

Control Panel

AppleTalk		Current AppleTalk settings.
	Phase Type	
	Name*	
	Network Number*	
	Zone*	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

HEAD LOT NUMBER		Printhead lot number.
	LOT	

PARTS STATUS		Utilization status of replacement parts that require servicing.
	COUNTER A-V	

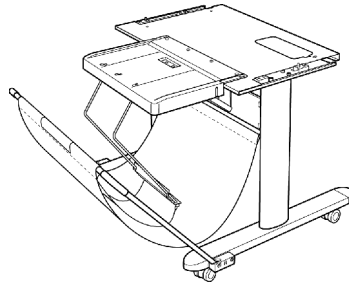
COUNTER			Utilization status of the cutter, media, and other items (indicating how much they have been used).
	CUTTER		
	MEDIA		
	MEDIA1-7		
		NAME	
		TTL	
		ROLL	
		CUTSHEET	
	AFTER INSTALLATION		

Optional accessories

Stand

The printer can be mounted on the following Stand.

- Printer Stand ST-24



Note

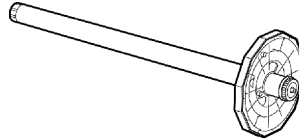
- For details on assembling the Stand, refer to the instructions provided with the Stand.

Roll Holder Set

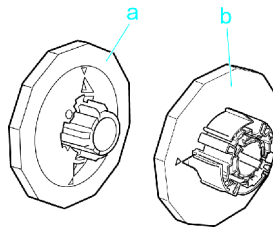
A set of parts including a Roll Holder, Holder Stopper (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores), 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment, and Spacer for Borderless Printing (used for both 2- and 3-inch paper cores).

To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Roll Holder and attach the Holder Stopper for 3-inch paper cores. If you use an A1 (594 mm [23.4 in]) roll or A2 (420 mm [16.5 in]) roll for borderless printing, insert the Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder.

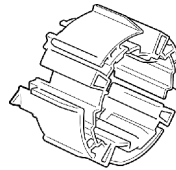
- Roll Holder Set RH2-24
 - Roll Holder



- Holder Stopper (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores (a) and (b))



- 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment



- Spacer for Borderless Printing

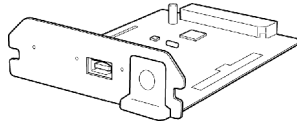


For instructions on installing these parts, see “Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder”. (→P.150)

IEEE 1394 Expansion Board

An interface board to add an IEEE 1394 (also called "FireWire") port.

- IEEE1394 Expansion Board EB-05



For instructions on installing the IEEE 1394 expansion board, refer to the documentation provided with the optional IEEE 1394 expansion board.

Printer Specifications

Specifications



Important

- This information is subject to change as the printer is updated.
- The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Printer

Power supply		100-120 V AC (50/60 Hz), 220-240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Power consumption	In operation	100 W max.
	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (10 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (11 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max. (*1)
Operating noise		Approx. 52 dB (A) max.
Operating environment	Temperature	15-30°C (59-86°F)
	Humidity	10-80%, non-condensing
Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer only	997×810×344 mm (39.3×31.9×13.5 in)
	With stand	999×981×990 mm (39.3×38.6×39.0 in)
Weight (not including the Printhead and Ink Tank)	Printer only	55 kg (121.3 lb)
	With stand	72 kg (158.7 lb)
Space required for installation (*2)	Printer only	1,297×1,910×644 mm (51.1×75.2×25.4 in)
	With stand	1,297×2,081×1,285 mm (51.1×81.9×50.6 in)
Applicable standards		International Energy Star Program, Law on Promoting Green Purchasing, GPN, RoHS, The Eco Declaration, WEEE, U.S. presidential directives

*1: The printer uses a trace amount of power even when turned off. To stop all power consumption, turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

*2: Normally, you will need to ensure an unobstructed space of 800 mm (31.5 in) in front of the printer, 300 mm (11.8 in) behind, 150 mm (5.9 in) on both sides, and 300 mm (11.8 in) above the printer. Only when printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot, leave 1,100 mm (43.3 in) of unobstructed space in front of the printer and 700 mm (27.6 in) behind it.

Printing performance

Print method	Bubblejet
Maximum resolution	2400 dpi horizontally (*1) × 1200 dpi vertically
Printhead	PF-03
Number of nozzles	MBK: 5,120; Others: 2,560 each color

*1: Prints with a minimum 1/2400 inch dot pitch between ink droplets.

Interface

Expansion Board Slots		1
USB 2.0(*1)	Format	Internal port
	Mode	Full-speed (12 Mbps), high-speed (480 Mbps), bulk transfer
	Connector	Series B (4-pin)
Ethernet	Format	Internal port
	Specification	IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T, IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX /Auto-Negotiation, and IEEE 802.3x Full Duplex
	Protocols	IPX/SPX (Netware 4.2, 5.1, 6.0), SNMP, HTTP, TCP/IP, AppleTalk
IEEE 1394 (*2)	Format	Optional boards (slot type)
	Specification	IEEE 1394-1995, conforms to P1394a Specification ver. 2.0, half duplex, Data/Strb differential serial
	Transfer speed	100/200/400 Mbps
	Connector	Conforms to IEEE 1394-1995 (6-pin), no power supply

*1: Use in USB 2.0 High Speed mode requires the following environment:

- Computer: USB 2.0 High-Speed-compatible
- Operating system: Windows Vista/Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000 or Mac OS X ver. 10.3.3 or later
- USB 2.0 driver: Microsoft USB 2.0 driver (available from Windows Update or the Service Pack.)
- USB cable: Certified USB 2.0 cable

*2: One IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board can be installed.

Ink

Ink Tank	BK Ink Tank (Black Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102BK (user-replaceable)
	MBK Ink Tank (Matte Black Ink, or black ink for matte paper)	Pigment ink	PFI-102MBK (user-replaceable)
	C Ink Tank (Cyan Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102C (user-replaceable)
	M Ink Tank (Magenta Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102M (user-replaceable)
	Y Ink Tank (Yellow Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102Y (user-replaceable)
Capacity			130 ml per color (*1)

*1: Printable pages when using the provided Starter Ink Tanks (90 ml per tank)

Paper (*1)

Paper width	203-610 mm (8-24 in)		
Maximum length per page	Sheets	Cassette	594 mm (23.4 in)
		Tray (top)	1,600 mm (63.0 in)
		Tray (front)	914 mm (36.0 in)
	Rolls		18 m (19.7 yd.)
Thickness	Sheets	Cassette	0.08-0.3 mm (0.003-0.012 in)
		Tray (top)	0.08-0.8 mm (0.003-0.031 in)
		Tray (front)	0.5-1.5 mm (0.02-0.06 in)
	Rolls		0.08-0.8 mm (0.003-0.031 in)
Paper size	Sheets	Supported sizes	ISO A1, ISO A2, ISO A2+, ISO A3, ISO A3+, ISO A4, ISO B2, ISO B3, ISO B4, JIS B2, JIS B3, JIS B4, 22"x34"(ANSI D), 17"x22" (ANSI C), 11"x17" (Ledger), 13"x19" (Super B), Letter (8.5"x11"), Legal (8.5"x14"), 24"x36"(ARCH D), 18"x24" (ARCH C), 12"x18" (ARCH B), 9"x12" (ARCH A), DIN C2, DIN C3, DIN C4, 20"x24", 18"x22", 14"x17", 12"x16", 10"x12", 10"x15", US Photo, 20"x30", 13"x22", Poster 300x900 mm
		Cassette	ISO A2, ISO A3, ISO A3+, ISO A4, ISO B3, JIS B4, 17"x22" (ANSI C), 11"x17" (Ledger), 13"x19" (Super B), Letter (8.5"x14"), 12"x18" (ARCH B), 14"x17", 12"x16", 10"x12", 10"x15", 8"x10", US Photo, 13"x22"
		Tray (top)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Width: 203-610 mm (8-24 in) Length: 279-1,600 mm (11-63 in)
		Tray (front)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Width: 203-610 mm (8.0-24 in) Length: 520-914 mm (20.5-36.0 in)
	Rolls		8 inches (203 mm), 10 inches (254 mm), JIS B4 (257 mm), ISO A3/A4 (297 mm), Banner (300 mm), A3+ (329 mm), 14 inches (356 mm), 16 inches (407 mm), ISO A2/A3 (420 mm), 17 inches (432 mm), JIS B2/B3 (515 mm), ISO A1/A2 (594 mm), 24 inches (610 mm)
Print area	Normal size		Printable area <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sheets (Cassette) 3 mm (0.12 in) from each side Sheets (Top Paper Feed Slot) Top: 3 mm (0.12 in); bottom: 3 or 23 mm (0.9 in); left and right sides: 3 mm. Sheets (Front Paper Feed Slot) 3 mm (0.12 in) on top, 23 mm (0.9 in) on bottom, and 3 mm (0.12 in) on both sides Rolls 3 mm (0.12 in) from each side For information on the recommended print area, see "Print Area". (→P.80)
	Borderless printing (*2)		Printable area (rolls) Entire surface

Print area	Oversized (*2), (*3)	Printable area Entire surface
Supported width for borderless printing		10 inches (254 mm), JIS B4 (257 mm), A3+ (329 mm), 14 inches (356 mm), 16 inches (407 mm), ISO A2/A3 (420 mm) (*4), 17 inches (432 mm), JIS B2/B3 (515 mm), ISO A1/A2 (594 mm) (*4), 24 inches (610 mm)

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.

(→P.112)

*2: Printing may not be possible in some cases, depending on the type and size of paper.

*3: Load paper at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 6 mm higher than the size selected in **Page Size** for roll paper and the Cassette. Or, load paper at least 26 mm (1.0 in) higher for the tray.

*4: Borderless printing requires the Spacer for Borderless Printing.

Paper capacity (Cassette)

Paper type	Paper size		
	A4, Letter	13×22 in, A3	17×22 in, A2
Plain Paper	250 sheets	100 sheets	50 sheets
Coated Paper	200 sheets	100 sheets	50 sheets
Photo Paper Plus	20 sheets	20 sheets	-
Premium Matte Paper	30 sheets	20 sheets	-
Glossy Paper	100 sheets	50 sheets	-

- The preceding information is a guideline for the maximum capacity. Load the paper making sure not to exceed the Maximum Capacity Line of the Cassette. (→P.18)
- The maximum paper capacity varies depending on the paper type. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)

Maximum stacking capacity

The Output Tray can accommodate up to 20 sheets of A2/A3+ paper or 50 sheets of A3/A4 paper.

The maximum stacking capacity varies depending on the paper type. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)

Basic Environmental Performance

Printer

Power consumption	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (10 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (11 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max.
Resource efficiency	Weight	55 kg (112.3 lb)
	Dimensions (W × D × H)	997×810×344 mm (39.3×31.9×13.5 in)
	Recycling	Recyclable plastic used for printer body
Product safety	Toxic substances	Structural components: No prohibited brominated flame retardants used (PBB or PBDE)
		Body plastic: No heavy metals (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], or Cd) or halogenated flame retardants used
	Operating noise	Approx. 52 dB (A) max.

Packaging materials

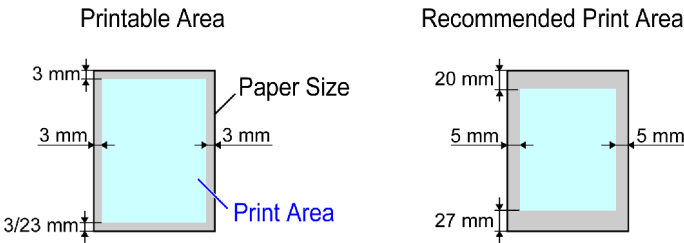
Heavy metal content (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], and Cd)	None (none in packaging)
--	--------------------------

Print Area

A margin required by the printer is added with respect to the size of paper loaded in the printer. Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to the paper size minus the space for this margin.

		Printable Area			Recommended Print Area		
		Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides
Sheets	Top Paper Feed Slot	3 mm (0.12 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	27 mm (1.06 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)
	Front Paper Feed Slot	3 mm (0.12 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)			
Rolls		0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)

Sheets



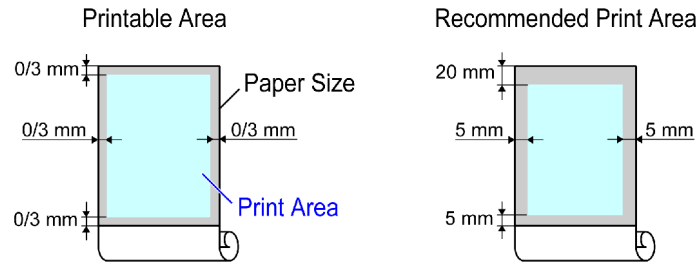
- **Printable Area:**
When printing from the Cassette or Top Paper Feed Slot, a margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides is required.
When printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot, a margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 3 mm (0.12 in) on left and right sides is required.
- **Recommended print area:**
A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 27 mm (1.06 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.



Note

- **Printable area:** The area that can be printed.
- **Guaranteed Print Area:** We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (→P.307)
- You can choose a bottom margin of 3 mm or 23 mm when printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot. In the printer driver, choosing **Manual** in **Media Source** sets the bottom margin at 23 mm.
- The types of paper listed above may be updated, in some cases. For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
- If you set the bottom margin at 3 mm, images in the bottom margin may be distorted. In this case, choose **Manual** in **Media Source** to set the bottom margin at 23 mm.

Rolls



- **Printable Area:**
A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides is required. A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on the top, bottom, and both sides is required. During borderless printing, the margin on all sides is 0 mm. For information on paper compatible with borderless printing, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
- **Recommended print area:**
A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top and 5 mm (0.20 in) on the bottom and left and right sides is required.



Note

- **Printable area:** The area that can be printed.
- **Guaranteed Print Area:** We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (→P.307)

Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure

■ Loading and Printing on Rolls

These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.

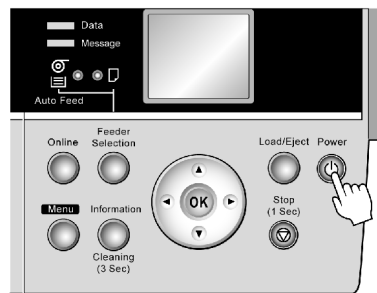
Follow the steps below to switch to a new roll or a roll of a different type or width before printing.



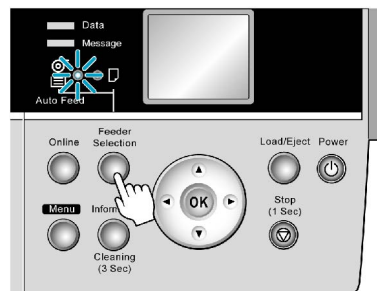
Note

- If a sheet is loaded in the Tray, remove it before this procedure. (→P.152)
- Before printing banners or other large-format documents, spread a clean cloth or paper over the floor. Otherwise, long sheets that touch the floor after printing may become dirty.
- If you will wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and print a cut line instead. (→P.135)

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)



2. Select roll paper as the paper source. (→P.120)

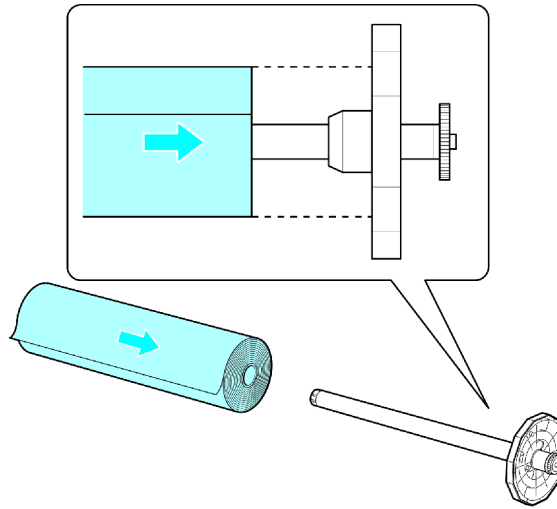


3. Load a roll on the Roll Holder. (→P.121)

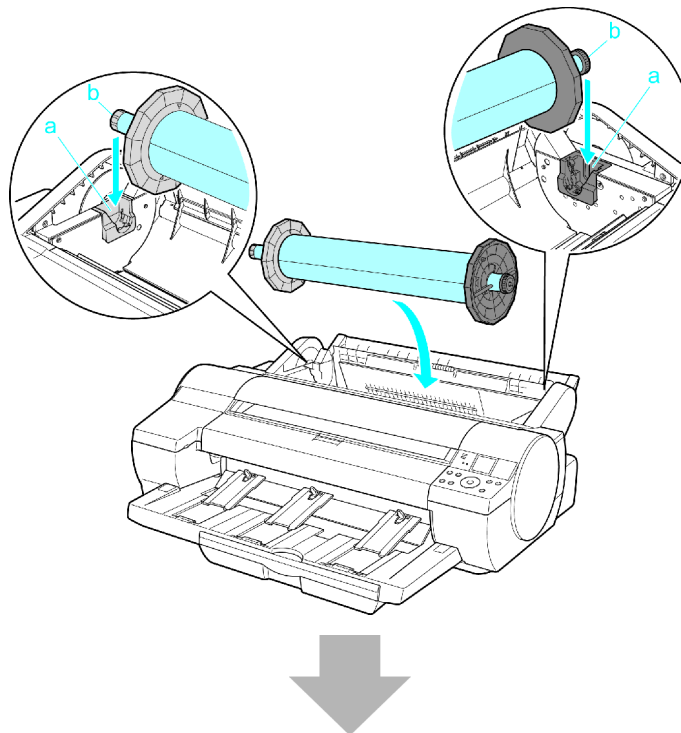


Note

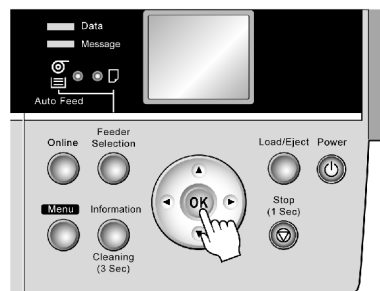
- When switching rolls, first remove the current roll from the Roll Holder. (→P.123)



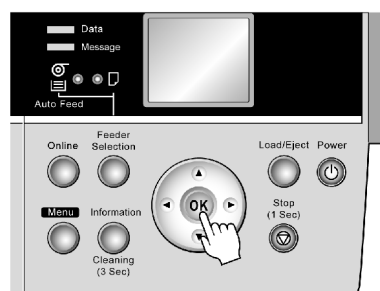
4. Load the roll in the Roll Feed Unit. (→P.124)



5. Select the paper type. (→P.130)

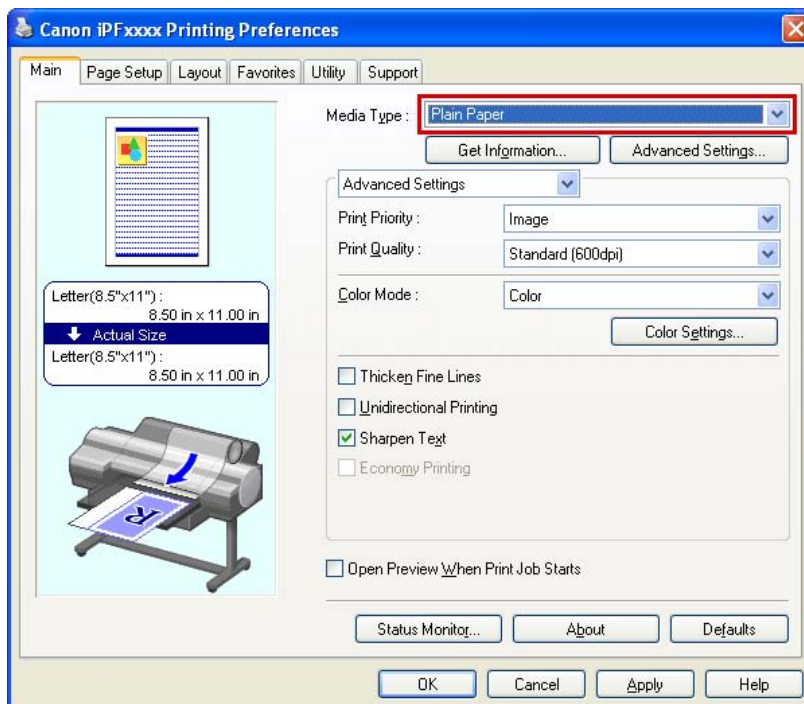


6. Specify the paper length. (→P.131)



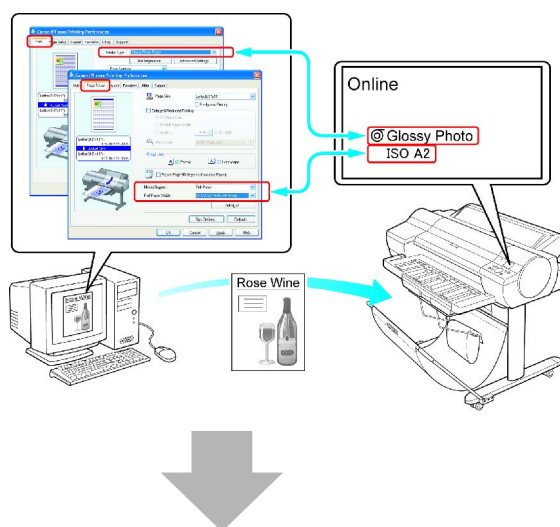
7. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.97)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.99)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.101)



Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
If the type and size do not match, an error message may be displayed and printing may not be possible.
 - Papr Size Mismatch (→P.701)
 - Papr Type Mismatch (→P.700)
 - Paper Mismatch (→P.700)



8. Start printing.

- Printing from Windows (→P.92)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.93)
- Printing from Mac OS 9 (→P.95)



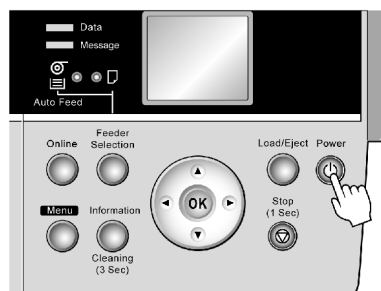
Note

- Steps 5 and 6 are not required, if a barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. The paper type and amount of paper left are automatically detected.
- Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge.
When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting **TrimEdge Reload** to **On** so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing.
- For details on supported sizes and types of the roll that can be loaded, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.117) (→P.112)
- Clean the platen after you have used up a roll. (→P.644)
- When a roll has been advanced, do not pull it out by force. This will prevent the paper from being advanced.
If you accidentally pull out the paper, hold the **Load/Eject** button to enable feeding again. (→P.128)
- When printing on rolls after printing on sheets, if the lit paper selection lamp does not switch from the Paper Tray lamp to the Auto Feed lamp, press the **Feeder Selection** button.

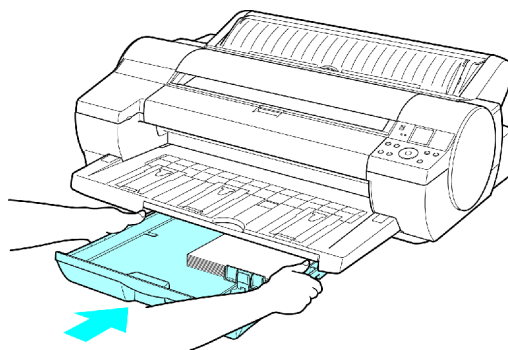
■ Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Cassette

These are the basic steps for loading sheets in the cassette and then printing from the cassette. Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets in the cassette.

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)

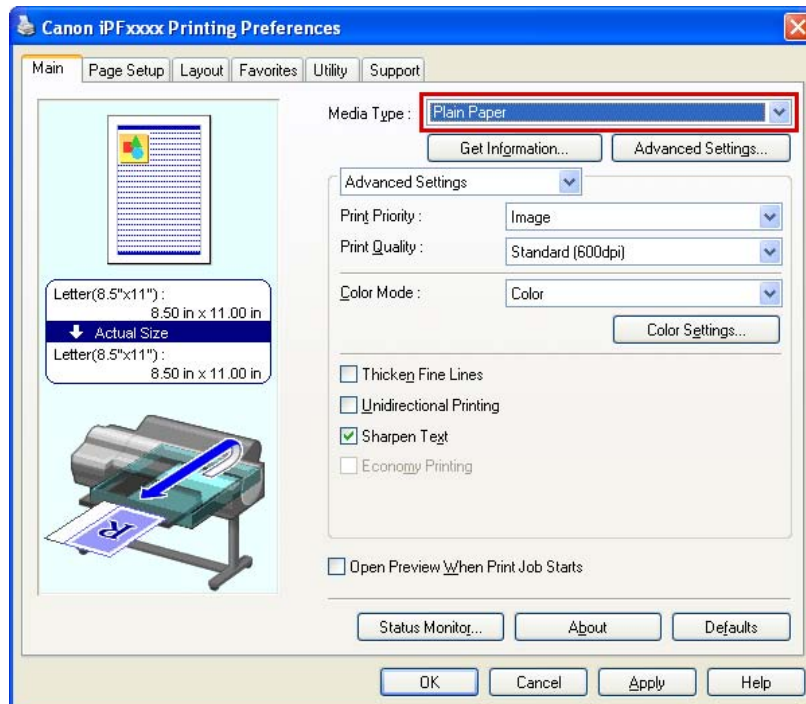


2. Load paper in the Cassette. (→P.162)



3. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.97)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.99)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.101)



4. Send the print job.

- Printing from Windows (→P.92)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.93)
- Printing from Mac OS 9 (→P.95)

Start printing.



Note

- For details on supported paper sizes for the Cassette, see "Paper Sizes" or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.117) (→P.112)

Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot

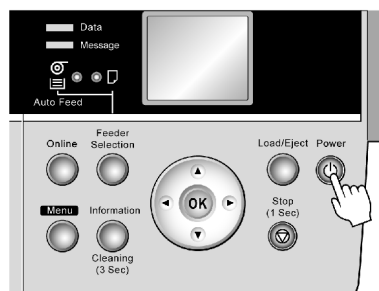
These are the basic steps for loading sheets in the paper feed slot and then printing from this slot. Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets in the paper feed slot.



Note

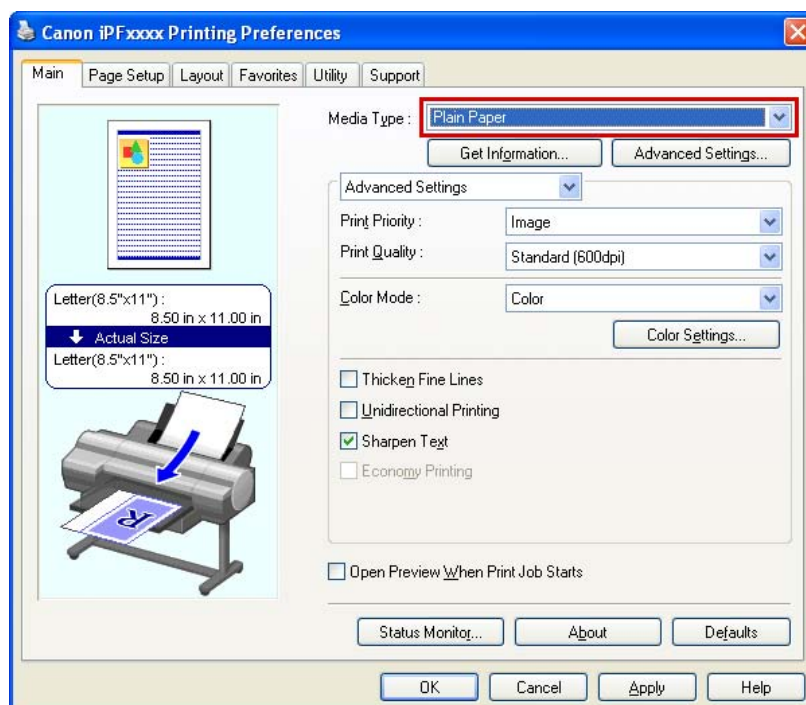
- If a roll is loaded, rewind the roll before this procedure.
(→P.152)

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.19)



2. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type and size of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.97)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.99)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.101)



3. Send the print job.

- Printing from Windows (→P.92)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.93)
- Printing from Mac OS 9 (→P.95)

4. Load sheets manually. (→P.165)

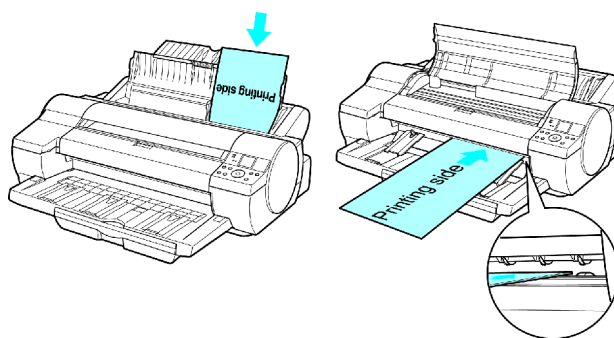
(Top Paper Feed Slot)

(Front Paper Feed Slot)



Note

- If you will load a sheet before sending a print job, you must select the type and size of paper in advance on the printer Display Screen. Follow these steps.
 - Selecting the Paper Type (Tray) (→P.173)
 - Selecting the Paper Size (Tray) (→P.194)



Start printing.



Note

- For details on supported sizes and types of the paper that can be loaded in the tray, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.117) (→P.112)

■ Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets. Take advantage of each type of paper for a wide range of printing applications.

Rolls and Sheets

- Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.
- Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
Sheets are loaded in either the Cassette or the Tray.
Heavyweight paper is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot.

Paper Size

- Page Size: The size of the image to be printed, as specified in the application.
- Paper Size (also called Media Size):
 - In the case of sheets, paper size refers to the actual size of the paper loaded in the printer.
 - In the case of rolls, paper size is an imagined size set as the printing area for a single page.

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

Printing Method	Rolls	Sheets
Large-Format Printing	Easily print vertical or horizontal banners from familiar applications such as Microsoft Office applications. Print banners up to 18 m (19.69 yd) long.	Print documents at the size of the selected paper.
Borderless Printing	Print without a margin (border) around posters or photos.	This feature is not available.
Free Layout (Windows)	Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.	
Free Layout (Macintosh)		
Banner Printing	Print pages of a multi-page document consecutively without blank space between pages.	This feature is not available.



Important

- If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, be sure to attach the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. If you print without attaching it, the Platen may be soiled, which may cause ink to adhere to the unprinted side of the paper. (→P.150)

Printing from Windows

Print from the application software menu.



Important

- The Windows printer driver can be used in the following versions of Windows:
 - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
 - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
 - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
 - Windows Vista
- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

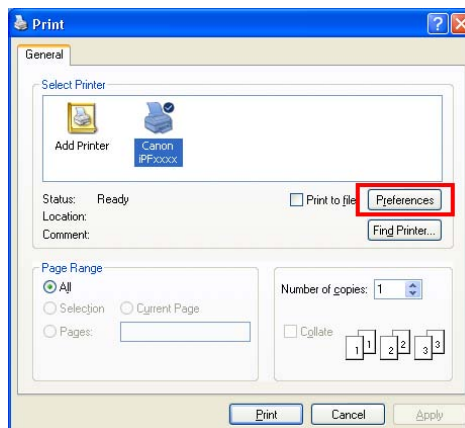
1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. After confirming that the printer is selected in the dialog box, click **Print** or **OK** to start printing.



Note

- The appearance of the dialog box varies depending on the application software. In most cases, the dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Note

- If another printer is selected, select the printer you want to use under **Select Printer** or in the dialog box displayed after clicking **Printer**.

Settings for many printing methods (including enlarged or reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on) are displayed in the printer driver dialog box. There are two ways to access the printer driver dialog box, as follows:

- From the application software
(→P.494)
- From the operating system menu
(→P.496)

■ ■ ■ Printing from Mac OS X

Print from the application menu after registering the printer.



Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Registering the printer

Before printing, you must register the printer in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**).

For instructions on registering the printer, see “Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)”.
(→P.588)



Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed among available printers if it is off or disconnected.
- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer. You must enable the AppleTalk protocol before using the printer in an AppleTalk network. For instructions on activating AppleTalk protocol, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.589)



Note

- When registering the printer, choose **USB** if the printer is connected via USB, **Canon FireWire(iPF)** if connected via IEEE 1394, or **AppleTalk**, **Canon IP(iPF)**, or **Bonjour** if connected via a network.
- For **Canon IP(iPF)** connections, enter the printer's IP address.

Printing from the application software

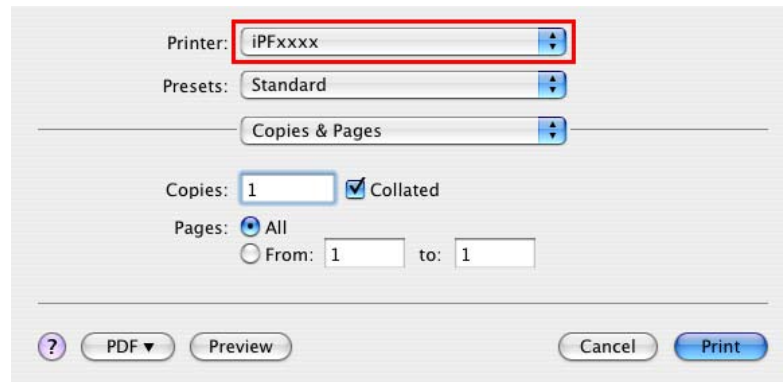
1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.



Note

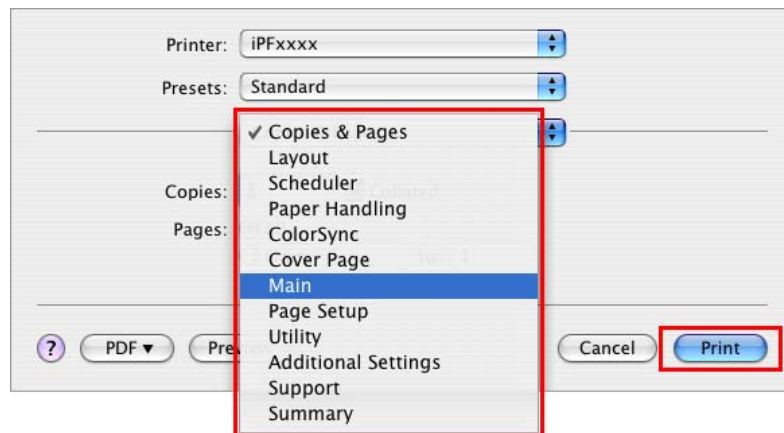
- This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



■ ■ ■ Printing from Mac OS 9

After selecting the printer in **Chooser** from the Apple menu, print by using menus in the application software.



Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Selecting the printer

Before printing, you must confirm that the printer is selected in **Chooser**.

For instructions on selecting the printer, see “Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)”. (→P.588)



Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed in **Chooser** if it is off or disconnected.
- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer. You must enable the AppleTalk protocol before using the printer in AppleTalk network. For instructions on activating AppleTalk protocol, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.589)



Note

- In **Chooser**, choose **GARO Printer Driver**.
- In **Destination**, choose **USB** if the printer is connected via USB, **FireWire** if connected via IEEE 1394, or **AppleTalk**, **IP Print**, or **IP Print (Auto)** if connected via network.
- If the printer is connected via **AppleTalk**, click **Active** under **AppleTalk** in the lower-right corner of the **Chooser** window.
- If the printer is connected via **IP Print**, click **Registering IP Address** under the **Destination** list to register the printer’s IP address, and then click **IP Print**.

Printing from the application software

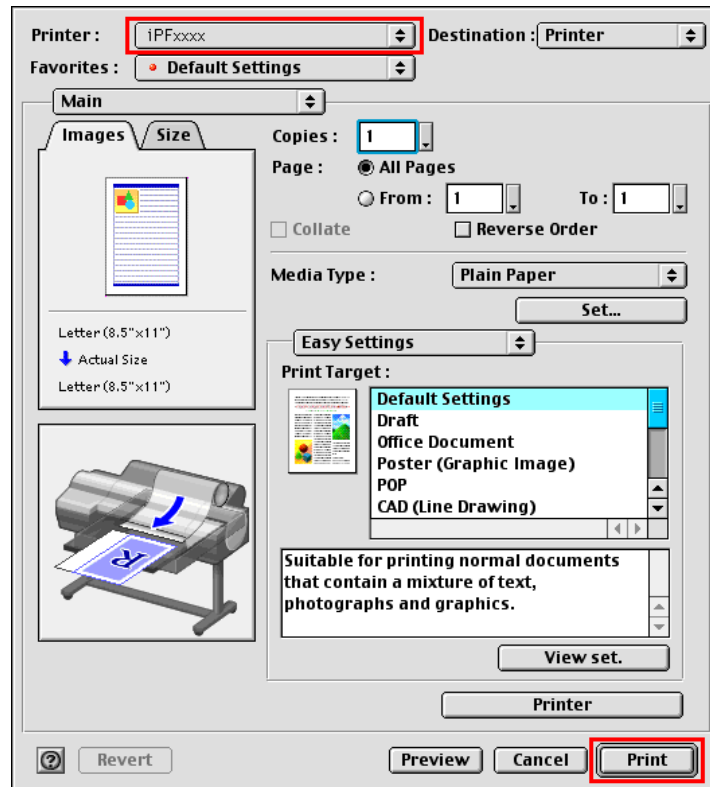
1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.



Note

- This dialog box includes basic printing options for the range of pages, number of copies, and so on. You can also specify enlargement or reduction, borderless printing, and a variety of other print settings.

2. Make sure the printer is selected in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

■ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

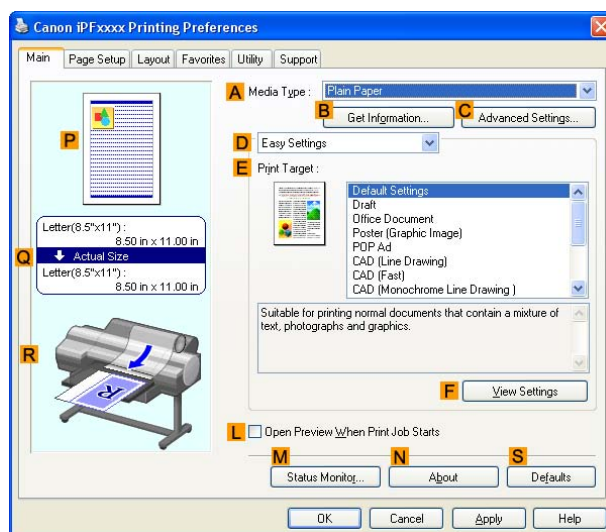
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.



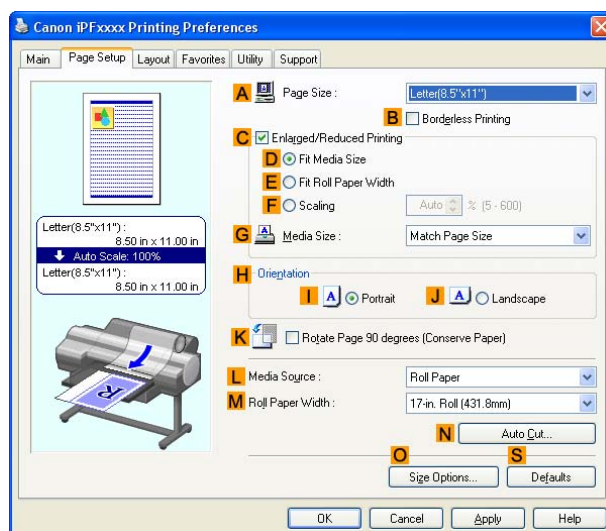
Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the **A Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.
7. In the **L Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
8. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **L Media Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in **M Roll Paper Width**.



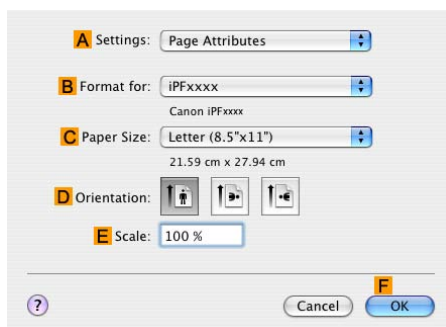
Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.466)

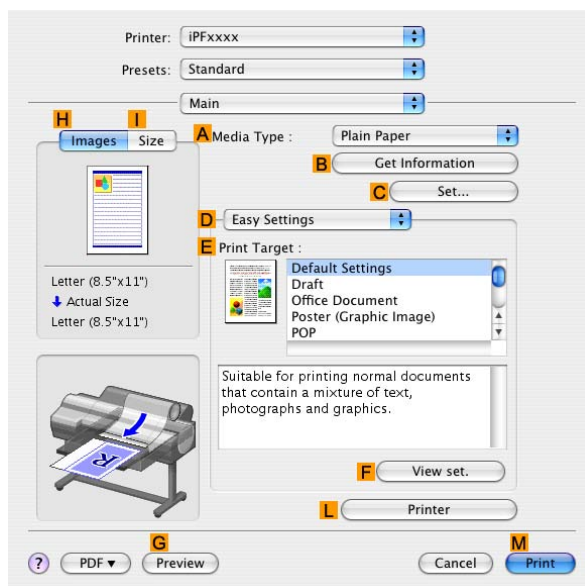
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

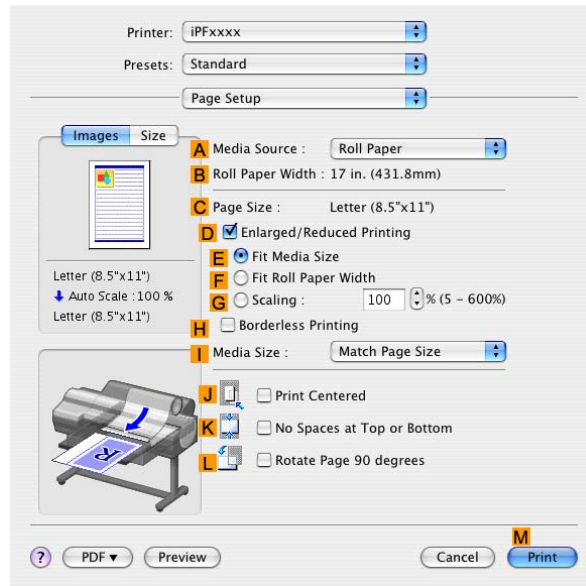


2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



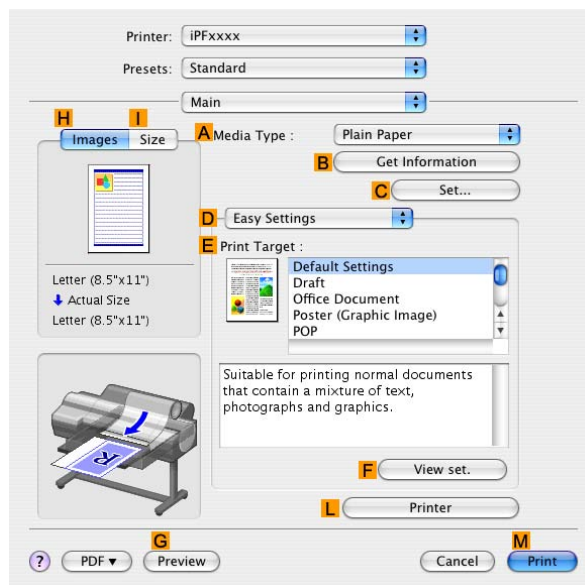
9. In the **A Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

10. If you have selected **Cut Sheet** or **Manual** in **A Media Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in **C Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **A Media Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**.



Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



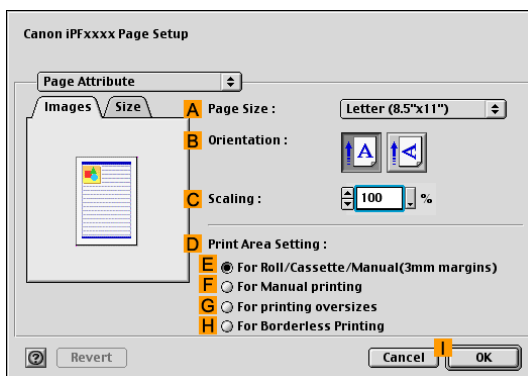
Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.512)

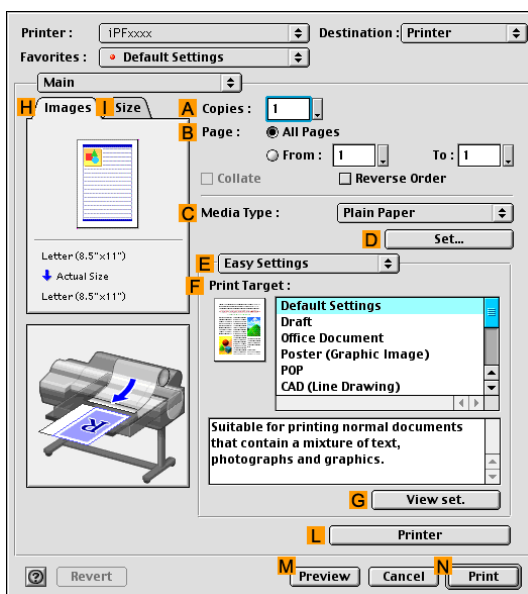
■ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

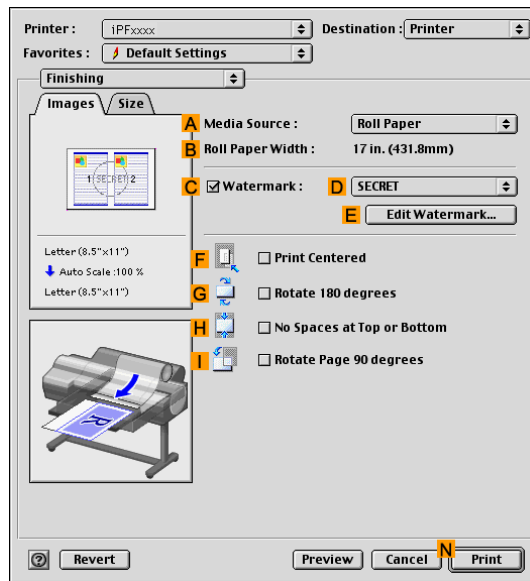


3. Choose the original size in the **A** **Page Size** list.
4. Click **I** **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Access the **Finishing** pane.



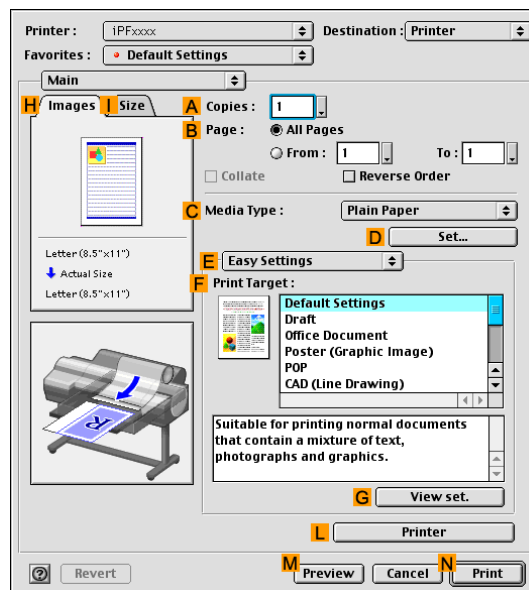
9. In the **A Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

10. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **A Media Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**.



Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



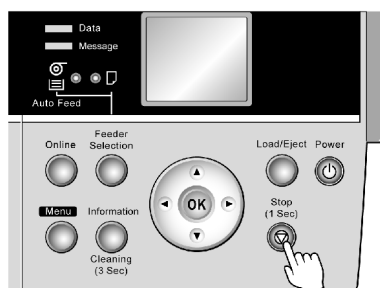
Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)". (→P.534)

Canceling print jobs

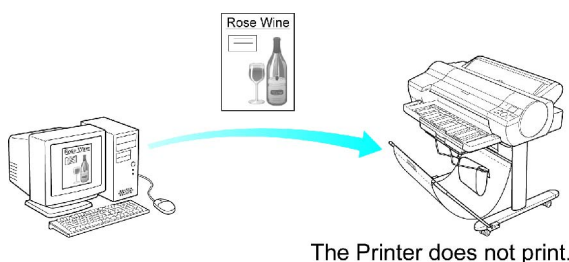
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel

Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel print jobs or ink drying in progress when the printer is online, offline, or in Menu mode.

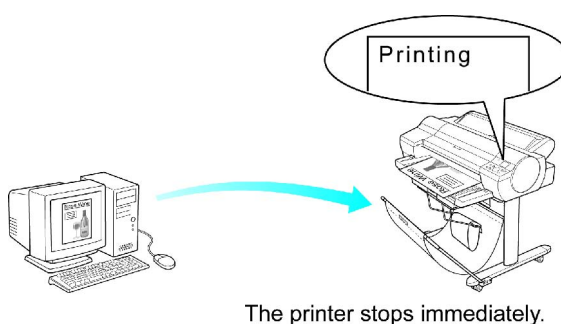


Printer operation varies depending on the status when you hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more during printing.

- If you press the **Stop** button before printing starts
Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more before printing cancels the print job and brings the printer online.
When the roll is selected as the paper source, the printer goes online, and when sheet is selected, the printer goes offline.

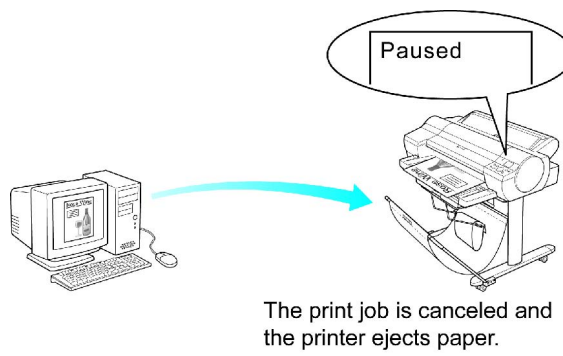


- If you press the **Stop** button during printing
Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more during printing stops printing immediately.



Canceling print jobs

- If you press the **Stop** button when printing is paused
Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more when printing is paused cancels the print job.



Canceling Print Jobs from Windows

You can cancel print jobs in the printer window.

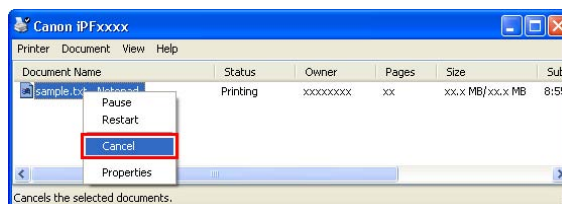
1. Click the printer icon in the taskbar to display the printer window.



Note

- You can also display this window by double-clicking the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) folder, accessible through the Windows **start** menu.

2. Right-click the job to cancel and select **Cancel**.

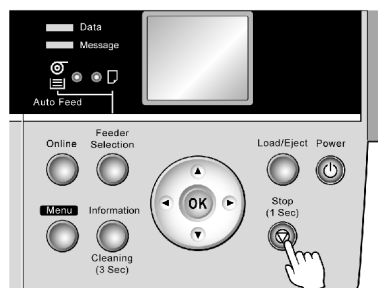


Note

- The print job is displayed on the printer screen during the transmission of print data from the computer. When the transmission is finished, the job is not displayed even during printing.

To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

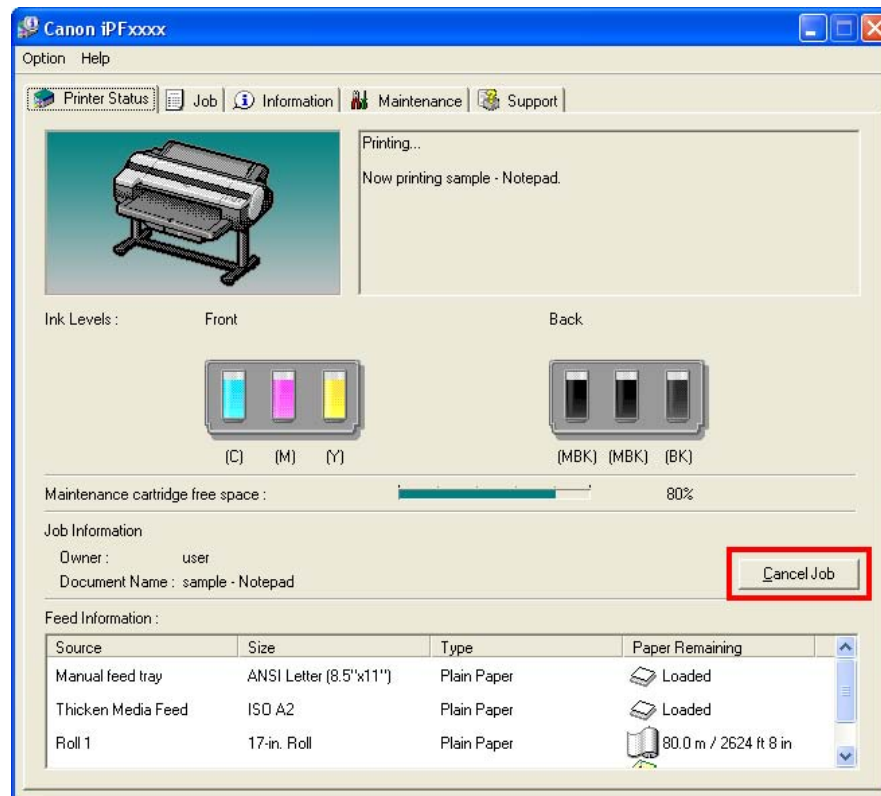
1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to stop printing.



Canceling print jobs

Do the following if no print jobs are shown in the printer window (because they have already been sent to the printer).

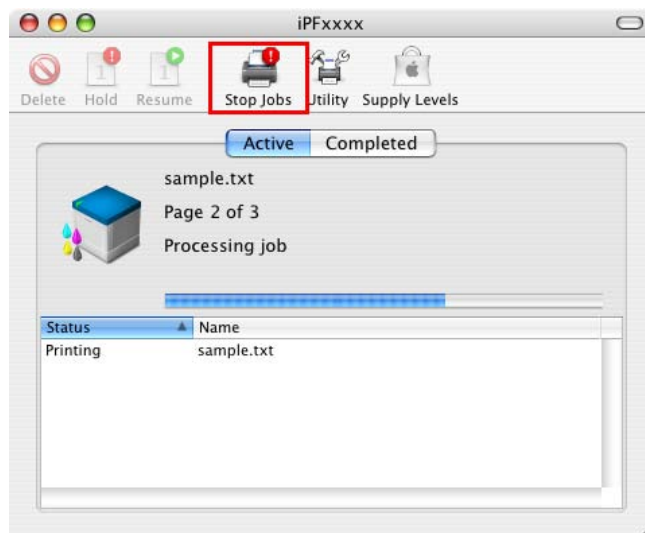
1. Double-click the taskbar icon to access the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.
2. On the **Printer Status** sheet, click **Cancel Job**.



Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X

You can cancel print jobs in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.

1. Click the printer icon in the **Dock** to display the printer window.
2. Click **Stop Jobs** to stop printing.



In this window, you can cancel jobs sent to the printer.

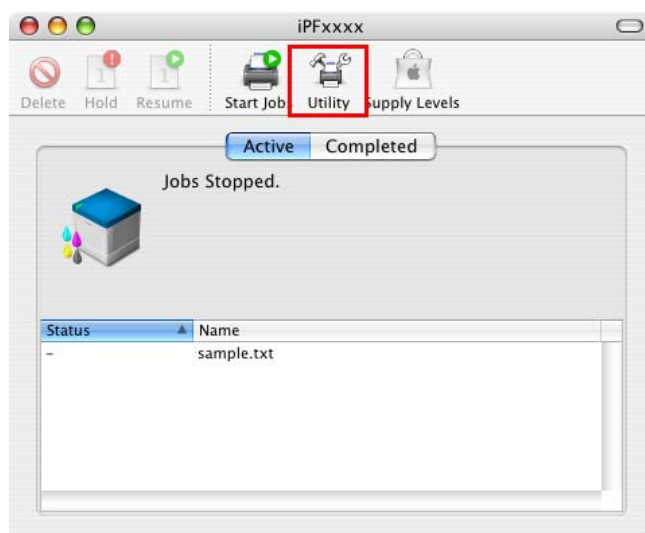


Note

- The print job is displayed on the printer's screen during the transmission of print data from the computer. When the transmission is completed, the job is not displayed even during printing.

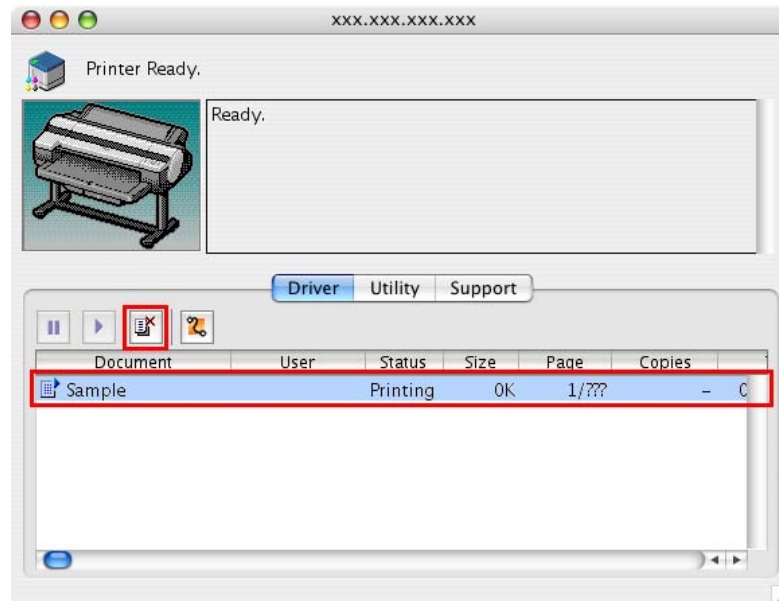
Alternatively, you can cancel print jobs as follows.

1. Click **Utility** to display **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.



Canceling print jobs

2. Select the print job to cancel and click the **Cancel Job** button to remove the print job.



The job sent to the printer is canceled.



Note

- The print job is displayed on the **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** window while the printer receives the print data from the computer. It is not displayed before transmission of print data to the printer, even if the computer has started the process of the data.

3. Exit **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**. In the printer window, click **Start Jobs**.

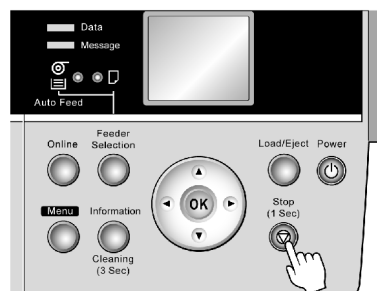


Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs. If you do not restart job processing, the next job cannot be printed.

To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.

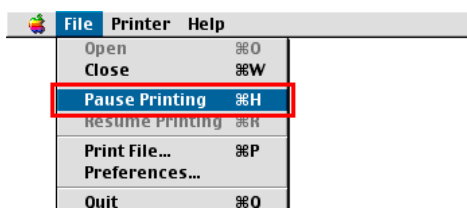


Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 9

How to cancel print jobs varies depending on whether you are printing in the foreground or background.

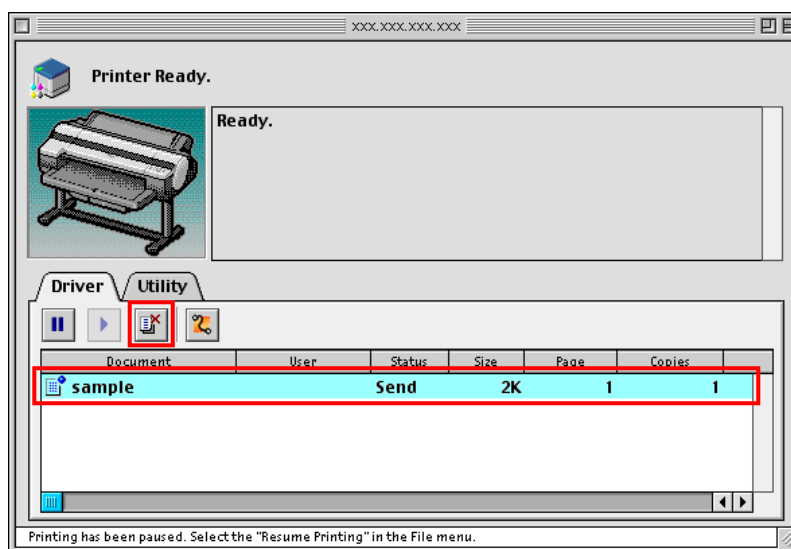
Canceling background print jobs

1. Open the **GARO Printer Extra** folder, which was installed on the hard disk at the same time as the printer driver.
2. Open **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.
3. Choose **Pause Printing** in the **File** menu to stop print processing.



The job status changes from **Sending** to **Send**.

4. Select the print job to cancel and click the **Cancel Job** button to remove the print job.



5. Choose **Resume Printing** in the **File** menu.

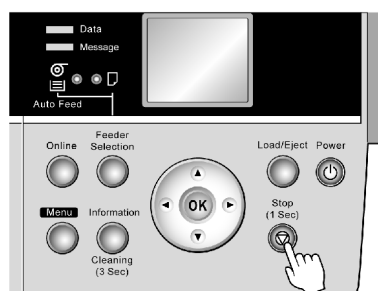


Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs. If you do not restart the print queue, the next job cannot be printed.

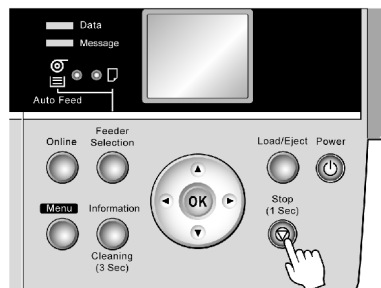
To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.



Canceling foreground print jobs

1. When the progress indicator is displayed, hold down the Command key and press the period (.) key to cancel print jobs.
2. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.



Handling Paper

Paper

■ Paper

The printer supports the following types of paper.

Paper Type

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)

Paper Size

Roll	Paper width	203-610 mm (8-24 in)
	Outer diameter	Up to 150 mm (6 in)
	Inner diameter of paper core	2 or 3 inches
	Printing surface	Top (outside)
Sheets		203 × 279 mm to 610 × 1,600 mm (8.0 × 11.0 in to 24.0 × 63.0 in)



Note

- Paper quality varies among manufacturers. Before buying paper, contact the Canon dealer where you purchased the printer.

Types of Paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . This guide identifies supported plain paper, coated paper, photo paper (such as glossy photo paper), proofing paper, CAD paper, and other types of paper. The Paper Reference Guide identifies types and specifications of paper, as well as information on printer driver settings and tips on handling paper.

You can update paper information in the Paper Reference Guide , on the printer Control Panel, and in the printer driver by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website.



Note

- The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media. For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.

Viewing the Paper Reference Guide

You can access the Paper Reference Guide as follows. Follow the steps for your particular operating system.

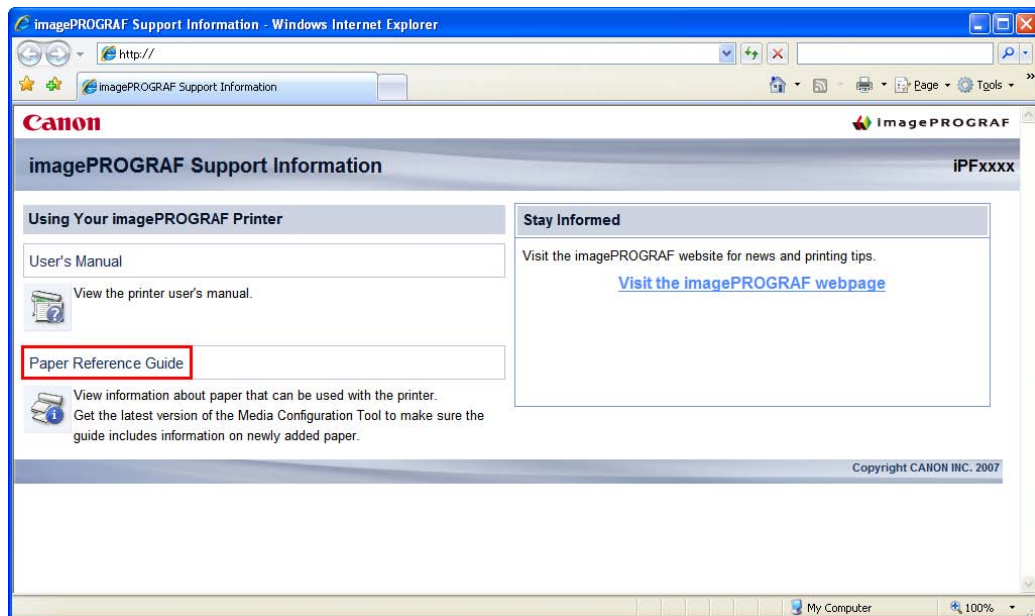
- Windows

1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)

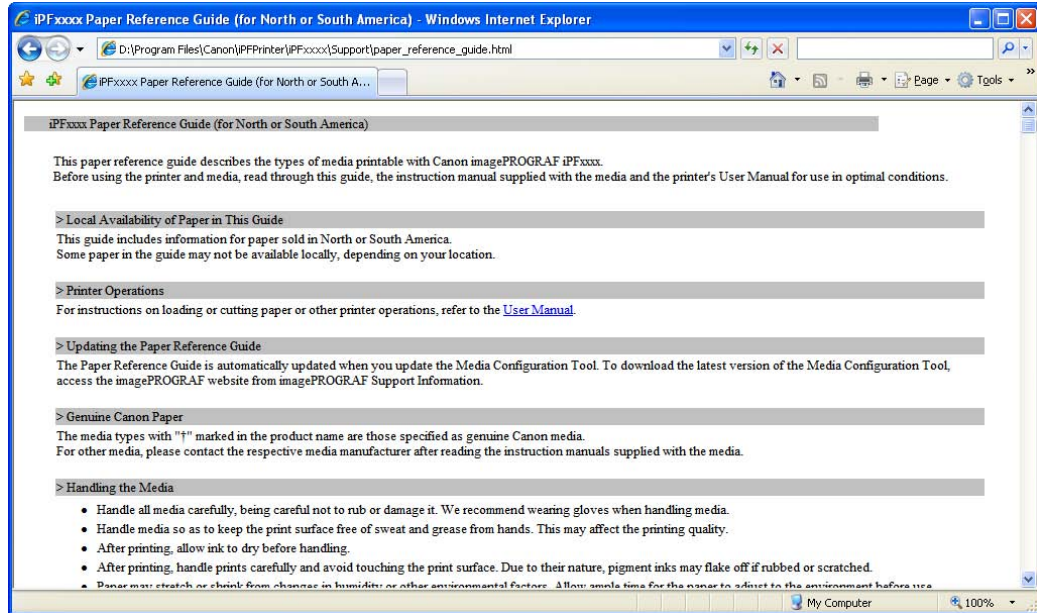


The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Paper Reference Guide**.



The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



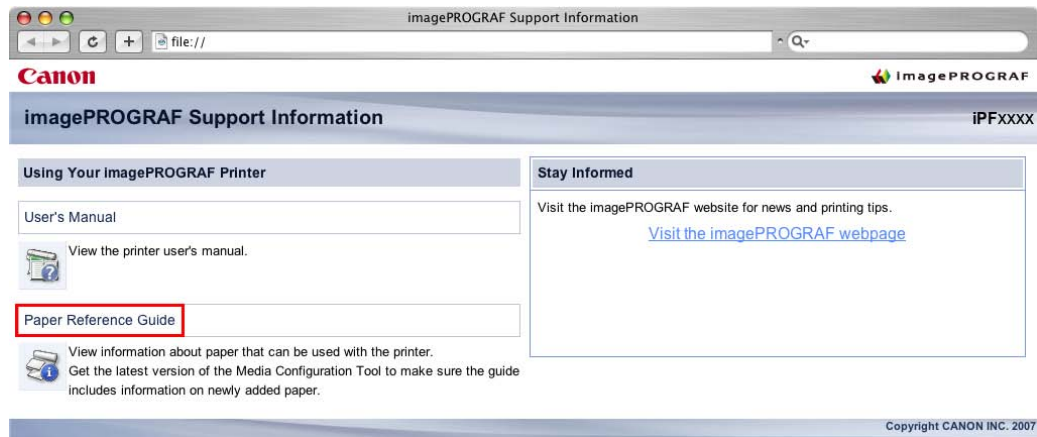
- Mac OS X

1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

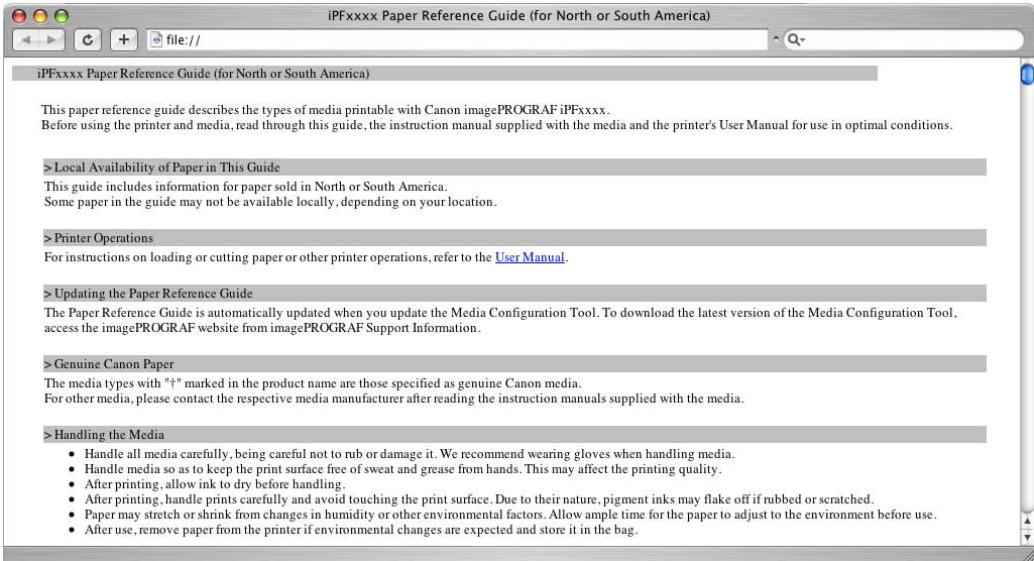


The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Paper Reference Guide**.



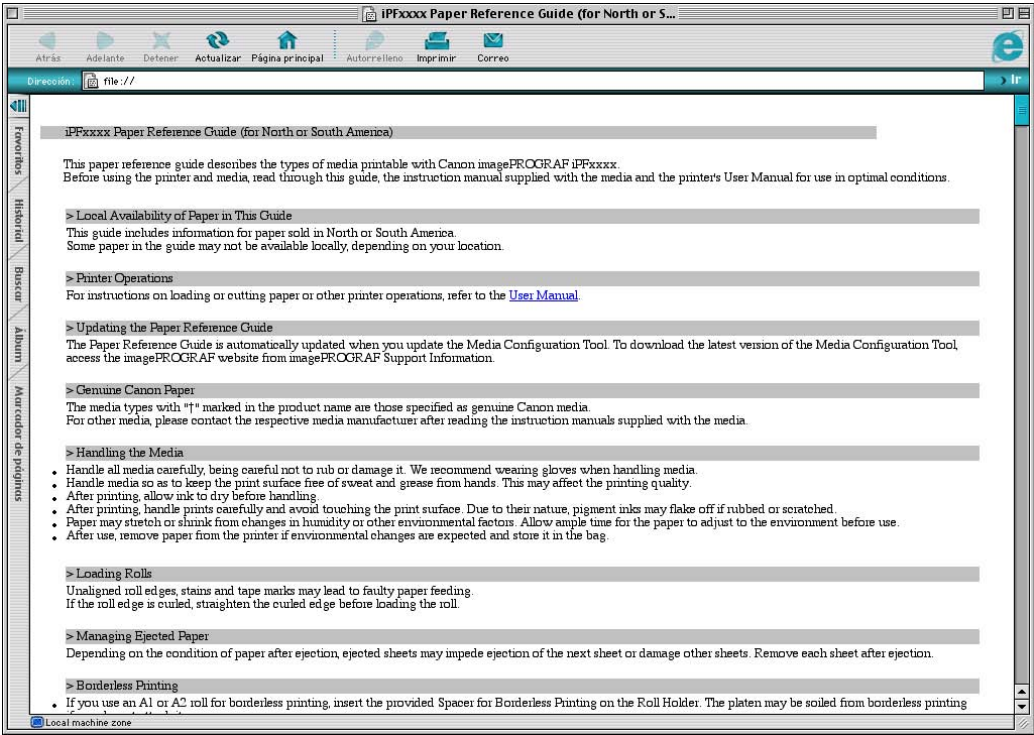
The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



- Mac OS 9
 1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)



The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



Updating paper information

You can update paper information in the Paper Reference Guide and on the printer by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

Follow these steps to access the imagePROGRAF website.



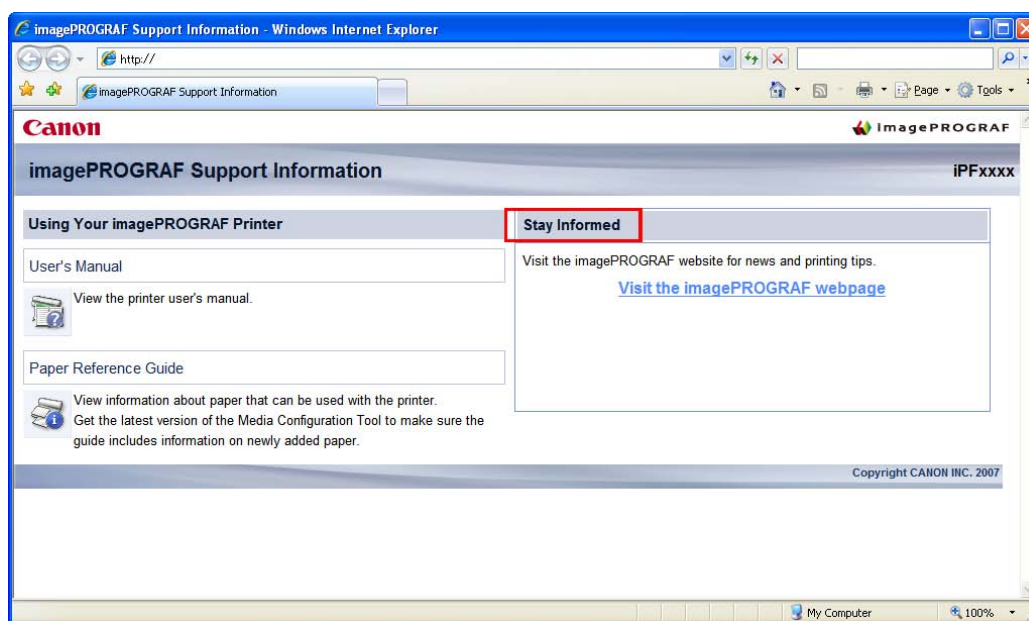
Important

- When you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool, the paper type setting on the Control Panel, in the printer driver, and in related software is updated.
- Windows
 1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)



The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Stay Informed**.



The default browser is started, and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

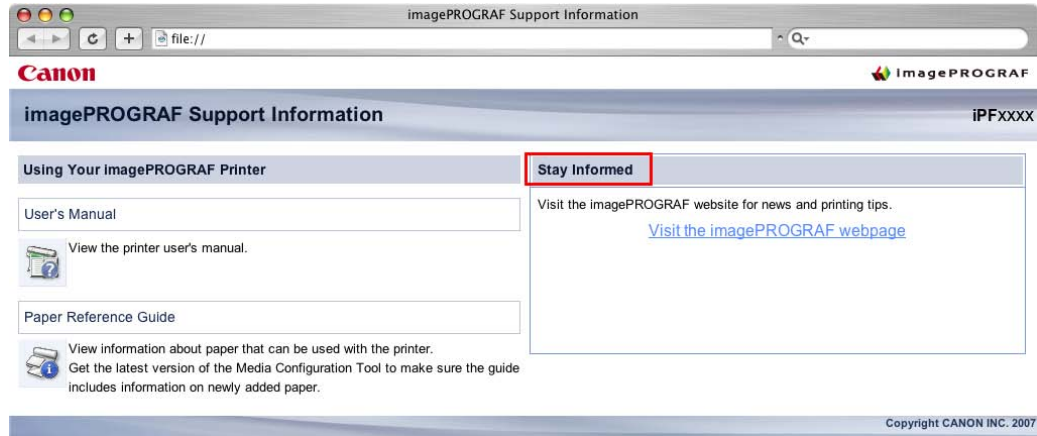
- Mac OS X

1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.



The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Stay Informed**.



The default browser is started, and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.



Note

- In Windows, you can also access the imagePROGRAF webpage by clicking the **start** menu, selecting **Programs** > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model) > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool to start the Media Configuration Tool, and clicking Extra Information.
- On a Macintosh computer, you can also access the imagePROGRAF website from the Finder by selecting Applications (in Mac OS X or OS 9) > Canon Utilities > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model) > MCTxxxx to start the Media Configuration Tool and then clicking Extra Information.

Paper Sizes

You can use the following sizes of paper.

Sheets

You can use sheets in the following sizes, up to 610 mm (24 in) wide.

Paper Size	Dimensions	Feeding from Cassette
ISO A1	594 × 841 mm (23 × 33 in)	No
ISO A2	420 × 594 mm (16.5 × 23 in)	Yes
ISO A2+	432 × 610 mm (17 × 24 in)	No
ISO A3	297 × 420 mm (12 × 17 in)	Yes
ISO A3+	329 × 483 mm (13 × 19 in)	Yes
ISO A4	210 × 297 mm (8 × 12 in)	Yes
ISO B2	500 × 707 mm (20 × 28 in)	No
ISO B3	353 × 500 mm (14 × 20 in)	No
ISO B4	250 × 353 mm (10 × 14 in)	No
JIS B2	515 × 728 mm (20 × 29 in)	No
JIS B3	364 × 515 mm (14 × 20 in)	Yes
JIS B4	257 × 364 mm (10 × 14 in)	Yes
22"x34"(ANSI D)	559 × 864 mm (22 × 34 in)	No
17"x22"(ANSI C)	432 × 559 mm (17 × 22 in)	Yes
11"x17" (Ledger)	279 × 432 mm (11 × 17 in)	Yes
13"x19" (Super B)	330 × 483 mm (13 × 19 in)	Yes
Letter (8.5"x11")	216 × 279 mm (9 × 11 in)	Yes
Legal (8.5"x14")	216 × 356 mm (9 × 14 in)	Yes
24"x36" (ARCH D)	610 × 914 mm (24 × 36 in)	No
18"x24" (ARCH C)	457 × 610 mm (18 × 24 in)	No
12"x18" (ARCH B)	305 × 457 mm (12 × 18 in)	Yes
9"x12" (ARCH A)	229 × 305 mm (9 × 12 in)	No
DIN C2	458 × 648 mm (18 × 26 in)	No
DIN C3	324 × 458 mm (13 × 18 in)	No
DIN C4	229 × 324 mm (9 × 13 in)	No
20"x24"	508 × 610 mm (20 × 24 in)	No
18"x22"	457 × 559 mm (18 × 22 in)	No
14"x17"	355 × 432 mm (14 × 17 in)	Yes
12"x16"	304 × 406 mm (12 × 16 in)	Yes
10"x12"	254 × 305 mm (10 × 12 in)	Yes
10"x15"	254 × 381 mm (10 × 15 in)	Yes

Paper Size		Dimensions	Feeding from Cassette
8"x10" (*1)		203 × 254 mm (8 × 10 in)	Yes
US Photo 16"x20"		406 × 508 mm (16 × 20 in)	Yes
Poster 20"x30"		508 × 762 mm (20 × 30 in)	No
13"x22"		329 × 558 mm (13 × 22 in)	Yes
Poster 300x900mm		300 × 900 mm (12 × 35 in)	No
Custom Media Size	Top Paper Feed Slot	203 × 279 mm (8 × 11 in) - 610 × 1600 mm (24 × 63 in)	No
	Front Paper Feed Slot	203 × 520 mm (8 × 21 in) - 610 × 914 mm (24 × 36 in)	No

*1: **8"x10"** is only supported when printing from the Cassette. This size is not supported when printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot or Front Paper Feed Slot.



Note

- When you are printing at particular media sizes from the cassette, originals that were created at a size larger than the maximum supported paper size for the cassette can be reduced before printing. For instructions on printing originals that exceed the maximum supported size for the cassette, see "Reducing Originals that Exceed the Maximum Supported Size for the Cassette". (→P.276)

Rolls

Rolls that meet the following conditions are supported.

- Outer diameter: up to 150 mm (6 in)
- Inner diameter of paper core: 2 or 3 inches
- Printing side out

Identification in Roll Paper Width in Printer Driver (*1)	Borderless Printing (*1)
24-in. Roll (610mm)	Yes
ISO A1/A2 Roll (594mm)	Yes (*2)
JIS B2/B3 Roll (515mm)	Yes
17-in. Roll (432mm)	Yes
ISO A2/A3 Roll (420mm)	Yes (*2)
16-in. Roll (407mm)	Yes
14-in. Roll (356mm)	Yes
A3+ Roll (329mm)	Yes
300mm Roll (300mm)	No
ISO A3/A4 Roll (297mm)	No
JIS B4 Roll (257mm)	Yes
10-in. Roll (254mm)	Yes
8-in. Roll (203mm)	No

*1: For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide (→P.112)

*2: Requires the Spacer for Borderless Printing.



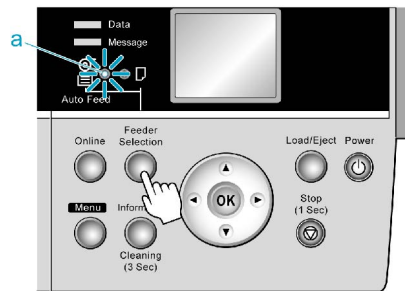
Note

- In the printer driver, paper sizes are categorized into groups based on the “size system,” such as ISO A and JIS. In Windows and Mac OS 9, some size systems are not available by default.
- For details on non-standard **Custom Media Size**, see “Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes”. (→P.361)
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.

Handling rolls

■ Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source

You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. The Auto Feed lamp is lit when paper is supplied automatically, and the Paper Tray lamp is lit for sheets. You must specify the auto paper feed method when using rolls. Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the Auto Feed lamp (a).



Caution

- Paper jams may occur if you load paper other than the paper specified in the paper settings for the media source.



Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
 - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.696)
 - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
Select the paper source after printing.
 - If a printer menu operation is in progress
Select the paper source after the menu operation.
 - When in the process of loading paper
Finish loading the paper before selecting the paper source.
 - When in the process of replacing Ink Tanks
Finish replacing the Ink Tanks before selecting the paper source.
 - If the Top Cover is open
Close the Top Cover before selecting the paper source.

At this point, load the roll. (→P.124)



Note

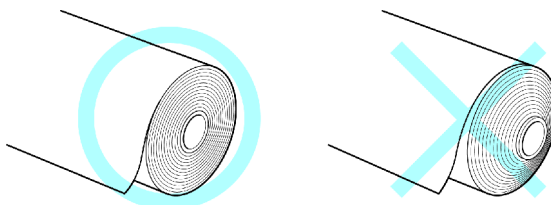
- If any paper is loaded that will not be used, remove it before loading the roll.
(→P.128)
(→P.176)

Loading Roll on the Roll Holder



Note

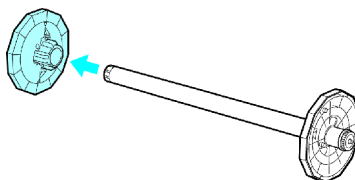
- For details on supported sizes and types of the roll that can be loaded, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.117) (→P.112)
- Align the edges of the paper on both ends of the roll.



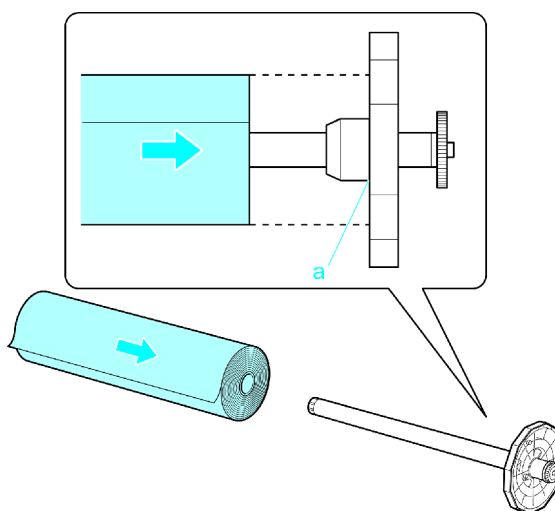
- If the edge of the roll is bent or soiled, use the **Paper Cutting** operation of the printer to cut the edge of the paper manually. (→P.135)
- If the paper is badly creased or bent, cut the edge of the roll with scissors before loading the roll in the printer, and then cut the edge of the paper manually using the **Paper Cutting** operation of the printer. (→P.135)
- To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the roll holder and attach the 3-Inch Paper Core Holder Stopper. (→P.150)
- If you use a roll A1, A2 or larger for **Borderless Printing**, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder.

Follow the steps 3 and 4 below.

1. Remove the Holder Stopper from the Roll Holder.



2. With the Roll Holder sideways and the edge of the roll paper facing forward as shown, insert the roll in the Roll Holder from the left. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange (a) of the Roll Holder.

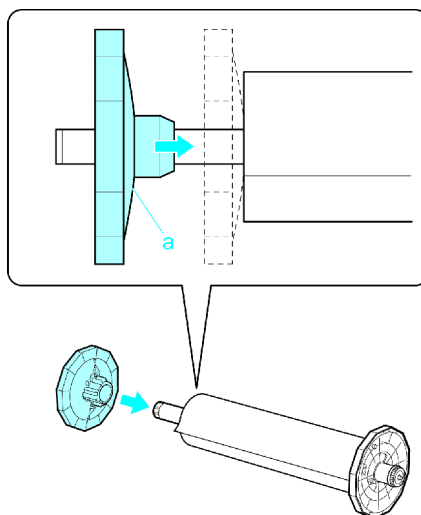




Important

- Always put the Roll Holder sideways when loading rolls. If you accidentally load a roll when the Roll Holder is upright, it may damage the Roll Holder.
- Set the roll on a table or other flat surface so that it does not roll or fall. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.

3. Insert the Holder Stopper from the left in the Roll Holder as shown, pushing it firmly in until the flange (a) of the Holder Stopper touches the roll.

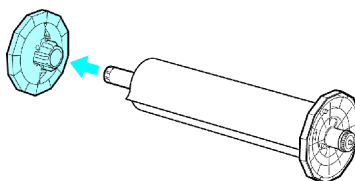


Important

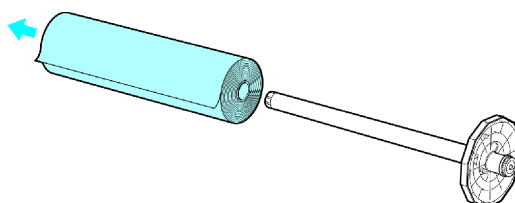
- Insert the roll firmly until it touches the Holder Stopper. If it does not touch the stopper, feeding problems may occur.

■ ■ ■ Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder

1. Remove the Holder Stopper from the Roll Holder.



2. Remove the roll from the Roll Holder.



Important

- After removal, store the roll in the original bag or box, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. If paper is not stored properly, the printing surface may become scratched, which may affect the printing quality when you use it again.

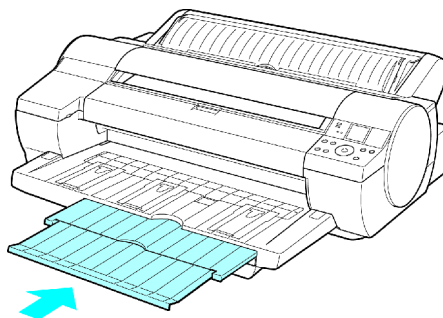


Note

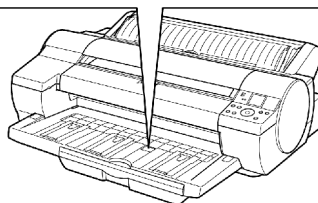
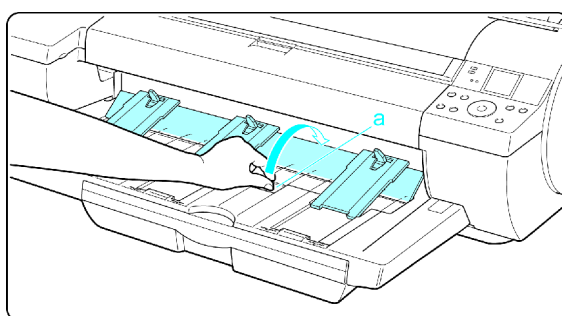
- How to remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment : (→P.150)
- How to remove the Spacer for Borderless Printing : (→P.150)

■ Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit

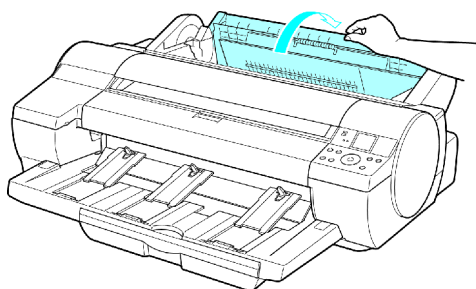
1. Push in the Output Tray Extension.



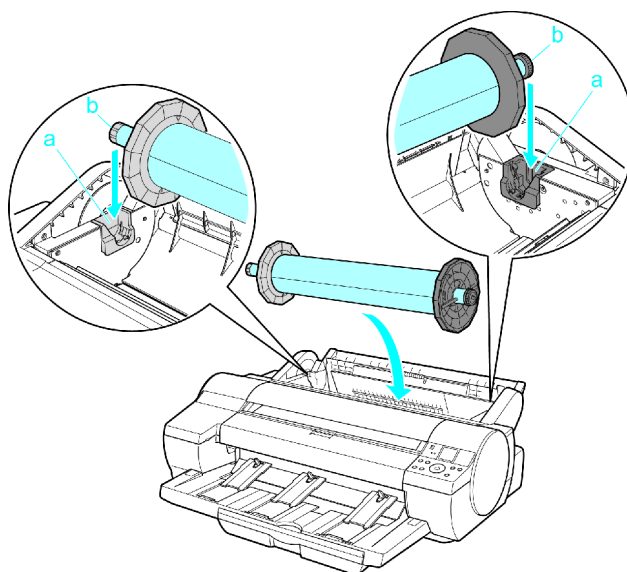
2. Insert your fingers under the Vertical Paper Guides on the Output Tray at the positions shown (a) and lift the guides.



3. Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover with one hand, as shown.



4. With the edge of the roll paper facing up toward you, insert the Roll Holder shaft into the guide grooves (a) of the Roll Holder Slot on both sides. Make sure that the colors of the Roll Holder shaft ends (b) and the guide grooves match.

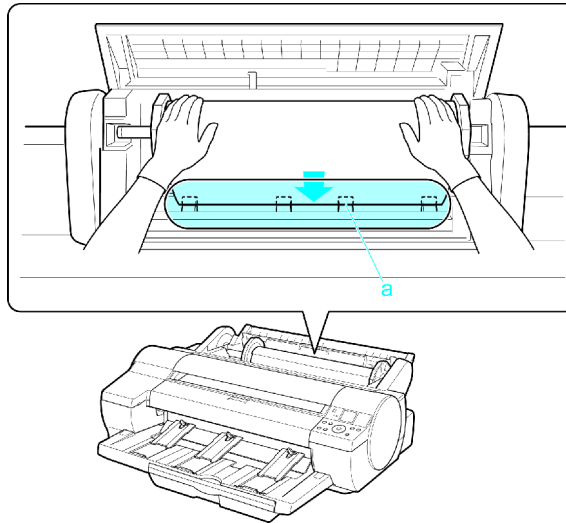
**Caution**

- Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the guide grooves (a) and the Roll Holder shaft (b) when loading rolls.

**Note**

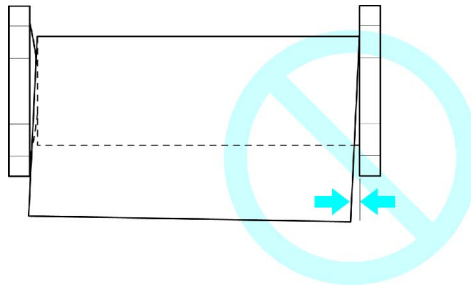
- If it is difficult to load rolls from the front, load them from behind the printer.

5. Insert the edge of the roll paper into the Paper Feed Slot (a) and feed it manually until you hear the paper feed tone.



Important

- Be careful not to soil the printing surface of roll paper as you pull it out. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
- Load paper straight so it is not fed askew.

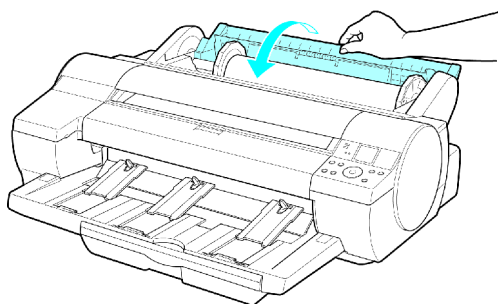


The printer now starts advancing the paper.

6. Specify the type and length of the paper.

How the printer operates after the paper is fed varies depending on the setting for automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, as well as the barcode printed on rolls.

Automatic Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper	Barcodes	Printer Operation After the Paper is Fed
On	Printed	The type and amount of paper left is automatically detected based on the barcode printed on the roll. There is no need to specify the type and length of the paper.
	Not printed	You must specify the type and length of the paper. A menu for selection of the paper type and length is automatically shown on the Display Screen. (→P.130) (→P.131)
Off	Printed	You must specify the type of paper. (→P.130)
	Not printed	

7. Close the Roll Feed Unit Cover with one hand, as shown.**8. If the edge of the roll is bent or soiled, cut the edge of the paper.**

1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to feed the roll paper to the position for cutting.
3. Select **Yes** in **Paper Cutting** on Printer Menu, and then press the **OK** button. (→P.135)

Removing Roll from the Roll Feed Unit



Caution

- If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, always follow these steps to remove rolls. You will be unable to manage the amount of roll paper left if you remove the roll before the barcode is printed.

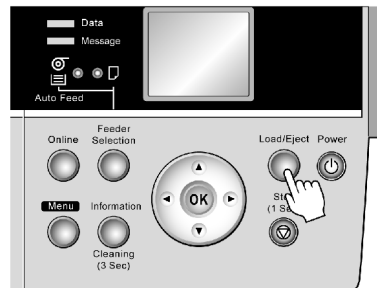


Important

- When a roll has been advanced, do not pull it out by force. This will prevent the paper from being advanced, and you will be unable to manage the amount of roll paper left. If you accidentally pull out the paper, hold down the **Stop** button to enable feeding.

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.

A confirmation message is displayed regarding removal of the roll.



2. Press the **OK** button.

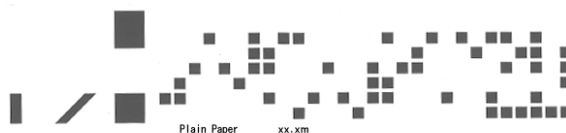
The roll can now be removed.



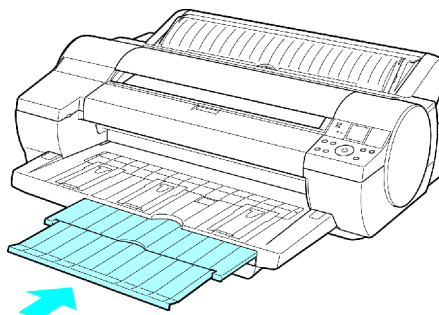
Note

- If you need to cut the roll, select **Paper Cutting** and cut the roll at the desired position. (→P.135)
- If you have selected **Media Menu > Chk Remain.Roll > On** in the printer menu and the printed document has been ejected, a barcode and brief text message are printed on the leading edge of rolls.

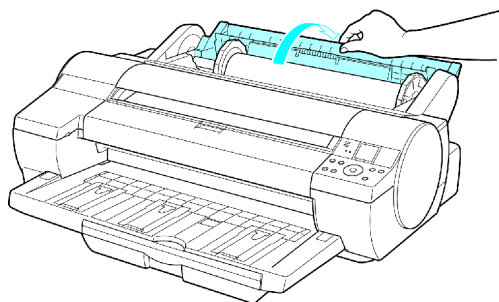
If the document is not cut but kept in the printer, only the text message is printed. This is also the case when printing on 8-inch rolls or clear film.



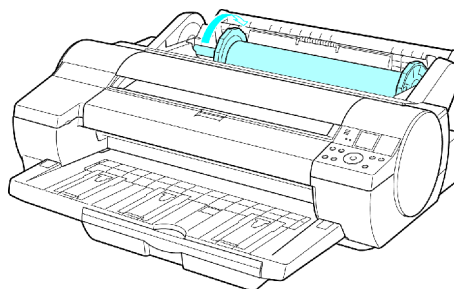
3. Push in the Output Tray Extension.



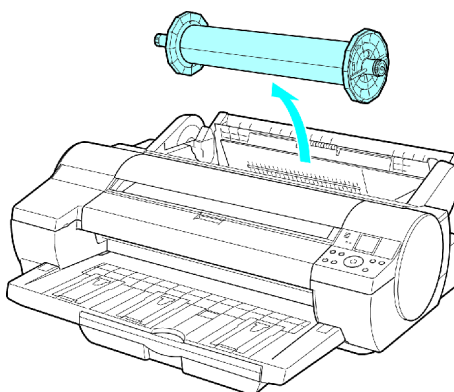
- 4.** Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover with one hand, as shown.



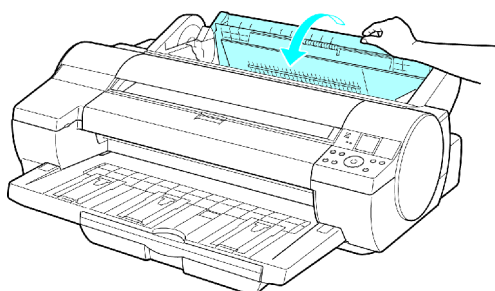
- 5.** Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder toward the back to rewind the roll.



- 6.** Remove the Roll Holder from the Roll Holder Slot.



- 7.** Close the Roll Feed Unit Cover.



■ Selecting the Paper Type (Roll)

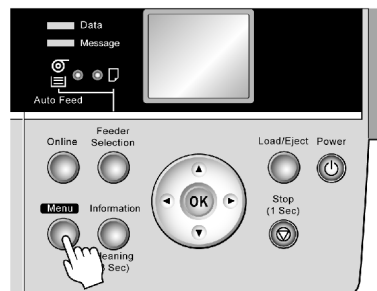
When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.



Note

- After you load the roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll or you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. Select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, specify the roll length after the paper type. (→P.131)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



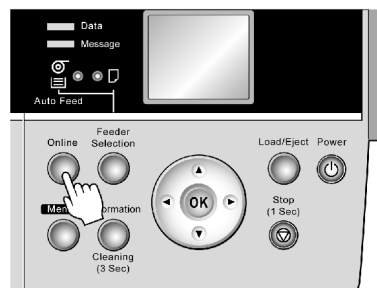
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Media Menu**, and then press the **►** button.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Roll Media Type**, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112) By factory default, Plain Paper is selected.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



■ Specifying the Paper Length (Roll)

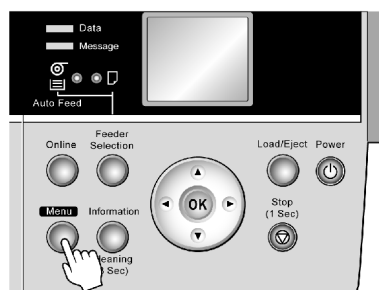
When changing the length of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the length as follows.



Note

- When you specify the roll length in the printer menu, **Chk Remain.Roll** must be set to **On**. If it is **Off**, the **Roll Length Set** menu is not shown.
- After you load a roll and specify the roll type, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the roll length on the Display Screen if no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. Select the roll length, and then press the **OK** button. The printer will automatically go online.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Media Menu**, and then press the **►** button.

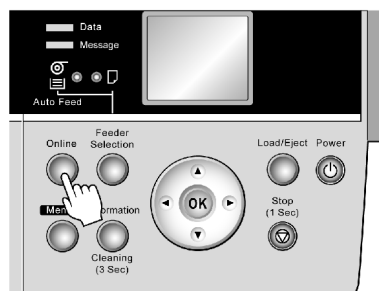
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Roll Length Set**, and then press the **►** button.

4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the length of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Specify the roll length as follows.

1. Press **◀** or **▶** to move the cursor (**_**) to each field for entering numbers.
2. Press the **▲** or **▼** button to enter the value.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to finish entering the value, and then press the **OK** button.

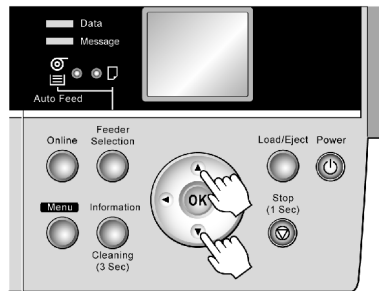
5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



Feeding Roll Paper Manually

You can bring the printer offline by pressing the **Online** button.

When the printer is offline and roll paper is selected as the paper source, you can feed or retract the roll paper by pressing ▲ or ▼.



Press ▲ to retract the roll paper manually.

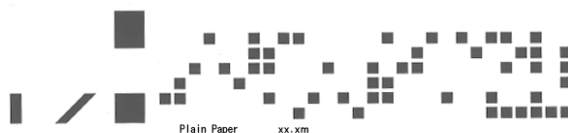
Press ▼ to feed the roll paper manually.

If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for less than a second, the roll paper will move about 1 mm (0.04 in).

If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for more than a second, the paper will move until you release the button. Release the button if **End of paper feed. Cannot feed paper more.** is shown on the Display Screen.

■ ■ ■ Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper

If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, when the roll is ejected, a barcode with text is printed on the roll paper that identifies the type of paper and amount left. If this function is activated and barcodes are printed on the roll paper, the type of paper and amount left are automatically detected when you load a roll. The barcode will be cut off after it has been read.



Note

- If the document is not cut but kept in the printer, only the text message is printed. This is also the case when printing on 8-inch rolls or clear film.

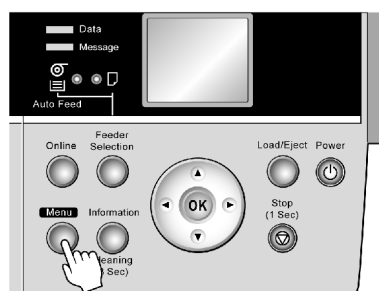


Important

- If the barcode on the roll is not detected, enter the type and length of paper on the Control Panel.

Follow these steps to activate detection of the remaining roll paper.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chk Remain.Roll**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.

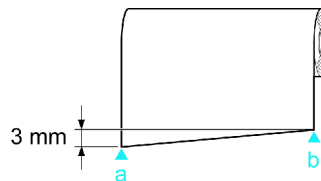
■ Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically

If the leading edge of a roll is crooked or warped, it may cause an error message or printing problems. In this case, set **Trim Edge First** to **Automatic** or **On** on the Control Panel to have the printer cut the leading edge to make the edge straight after you load a roll.

Trim Edge First offers the following options.

- **Automatic**

If the left and right side of the leading edge of the roll ((a) and (b)) are uneven by 3 mm (0.12 in) or more when you load the roll, the edge is cut an amount relative to the slant to ensure a straight edge, and scraps are removed. The edge is not cut if the unevenness is less than 3 mm.

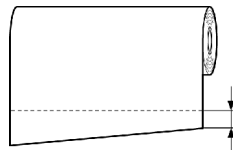


- **Off**

The edge is not cut and scraps are not removed. This setting is **Off** for most types of paper, by default. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)

- **On**

The leading edge is cut off when you load a roll, and scraps are removed. The amount of paper cut off from the leading edge varies depending on the paper type. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)

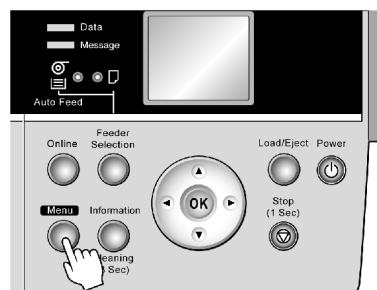


Note

- If you print on paper that has an irregular width, set **Skew Check Lv.** to **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold or to **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.

Follow these steps to change the **Trim Edge First** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **►** button.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of paper, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Trim Edge First**, and then press the **►** button.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.

This setting takes effect the next time you load a roll.

Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls

How a roll is cut after ejection varies depending on the printer settings.

Cutting Method		Menu Settings		Driver Setting	
Automatic	The roll is automatically cut by the Cutter Unit following printer driver settings.	Cutting Mode	Automatic	Auto Cut	Yes
Eject (→P.136)	Choose this setting if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry. To cut the roll using the Cutter Unit, hold down the Stop button for a second or more.		Eject		Yes
Manual (→P.137)	Choose this setting when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit. Cut each page from the roll using scissors. For continuous printing (if you will cut each page later), in Auto Cut , select Yes , or select Print Cut Guideline . (→P.449)		Manual		No Yes Print Cut Guideline
Paper Cutting (→P.139)	Choose this option if you want to cut pages by pressing Cutter Unit buttons for manual cutting after printing when the printer driver is configured to Auto Cut > No or Print Cut Guideline . Otherwise choose this option if you want to cut the roll edge after loading a roll.	Paper Cutting	Yes		No Print Cut Guideline

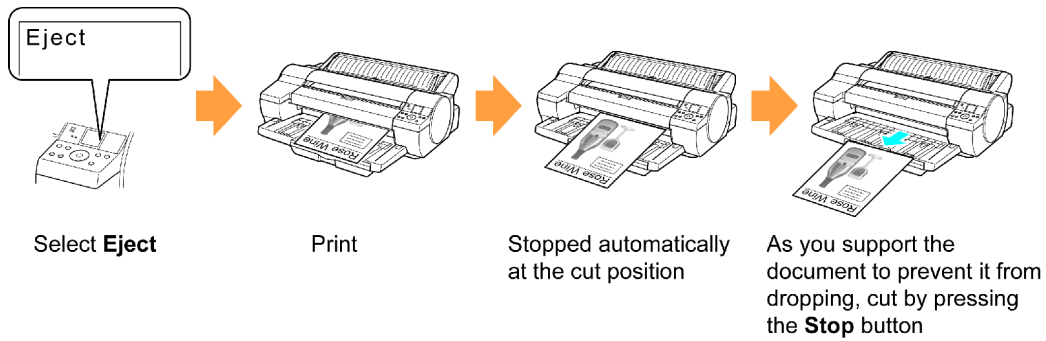


Note

- Automatic and Eject are valid only when you have specified **Auto Cut > Yes** in the printer driver.
- With Eject, printing does not resume after a series of jobs have been printed continuously until the roll is cut.

Cut rolls manually in the following cases:

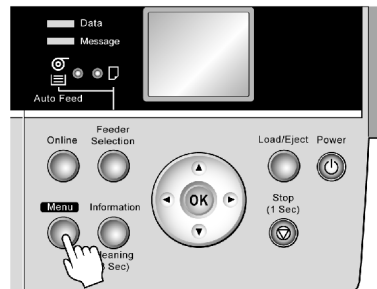
Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing)



Important

- When cutting wide printed documents after ejection, support the documents. If the paper drops, printed documents may be damaged.
- Do not lift the paper when holding printed documents before cutting. If the paper rises, it may affect the printing quality.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **►** button.

3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of paper, and then press the **►** button.

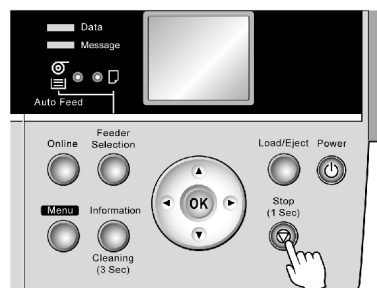
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **►** button.

5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Eject**, and then press the **OK** button.

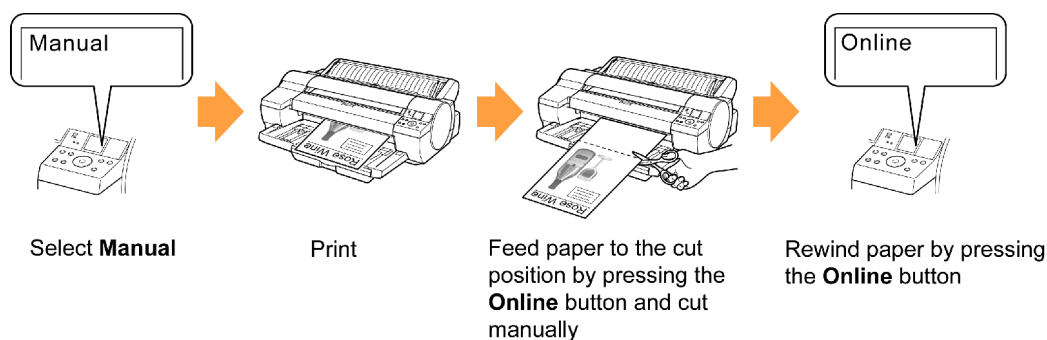
6. Start printing.

Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.

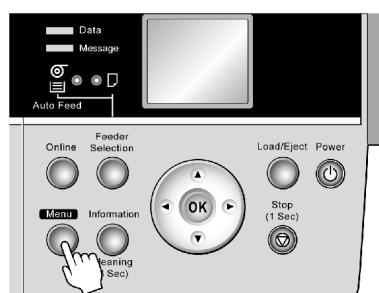
7. As you support the printed document to prevent it from dropping, hold down the **Stop** button for at least a second to cut the roll.



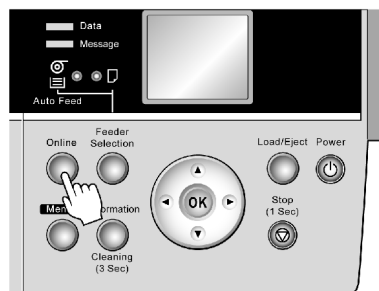
Manual (when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit)



1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

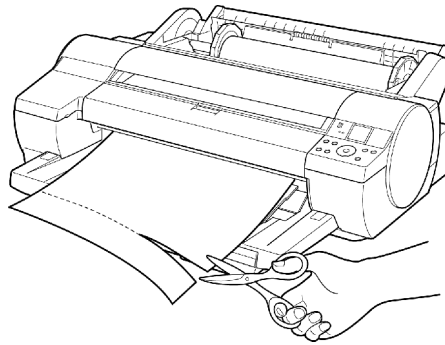


2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **►** button.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of paper, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **►** button.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Start printing.
The printer stops advancing the paper after printing.
7. Press the **Online** button.

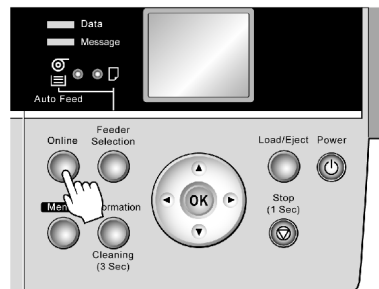


Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.

8. Use scissors to cut the roll paper along the cut line.

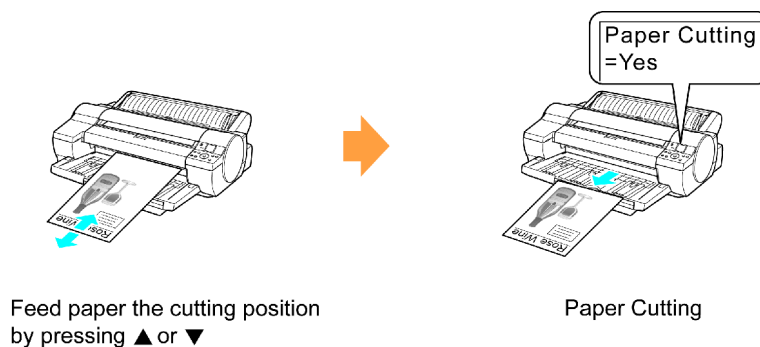


9. Press the **Online** button.

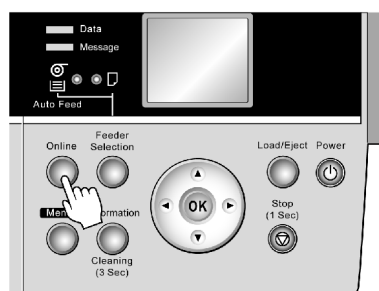


The roll is rewound, and rewinding stops automatically.

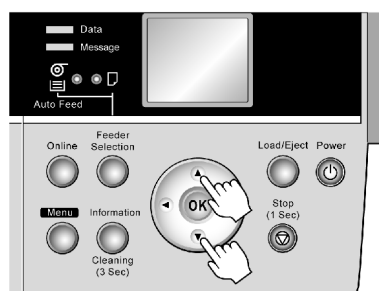
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)



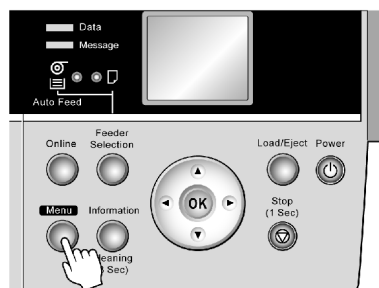
1. If the printer stops operating after printing, press the **Online** button. The printer goes offline.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to feed the roll paper to the position for cutting.



3. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Cutting**, and then press the ► button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

After the roll paper is cut, it is rewound automatically.



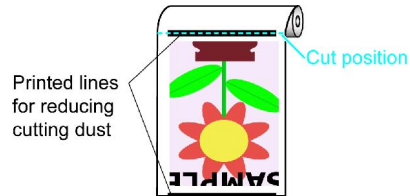
Caution

- If paper would be short when cut at a particular position, the roll may automatically be advanced in some cases before cutting.

■ ■ ■ Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls

The printer is equipped with a function to reduce cutting dust for media such as Backlit Film that are more likely to generate debris when cut. This may improve printing quality and help prevent Printhead damage. You can set up this function to be activated for some types of paper.

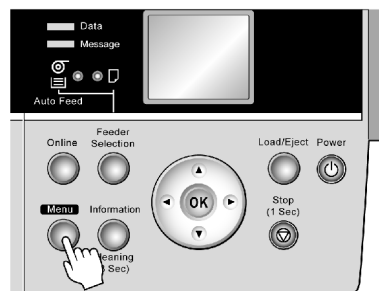
When this function is activated, black lines are printed at the leading and trailing edges of documents.



Important

- Do not activate this function for paper that wrinkles easily, such as Plain Paper or thin paper. This may impair cutting and cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing is not available when this function is activated. Deactivate this function before borderless printing.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **CutDustReduct.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

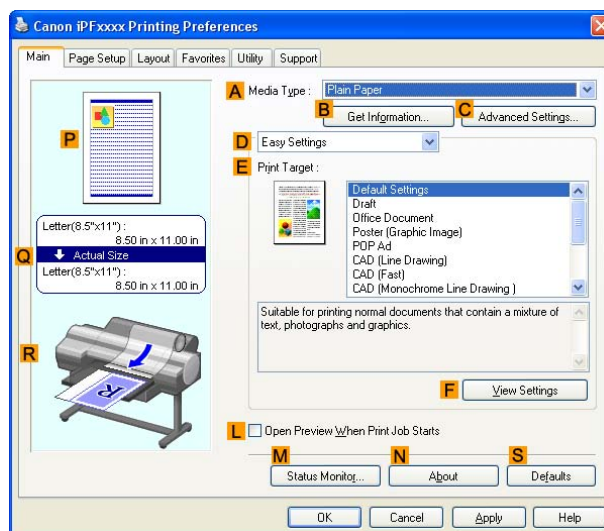
The function to reduce cutting dust is now activated.

■ Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls

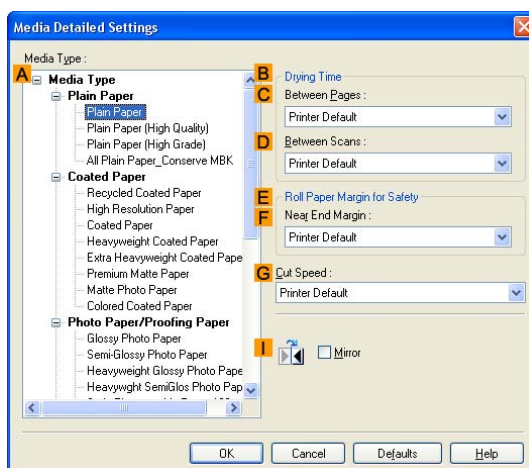
When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere, if the Cutter touches printed surfaces that are still wet, it may damage the paper or cause rough cut edges. Also, ink may be transferred onto the paper surface during ejection, soiling it. You can prevent problems by adjusting the drying time after printing before the paper is cut.

Windows

1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
(→P.496)
2. Select the **Main** sheet and click **C Advanced Settings** in **A Media Type**.

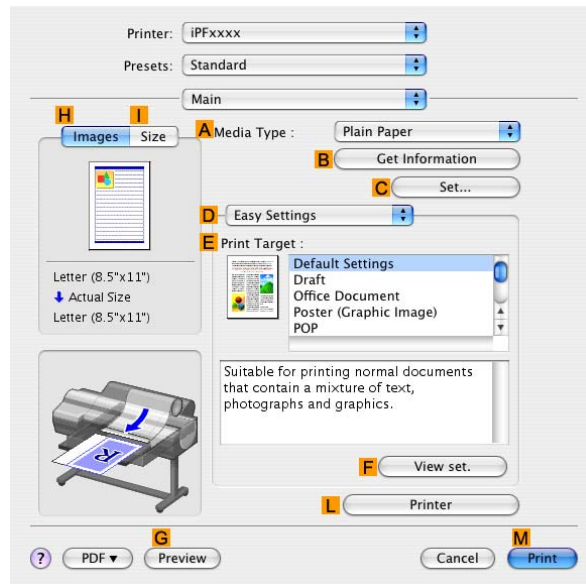


3. In the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.157)

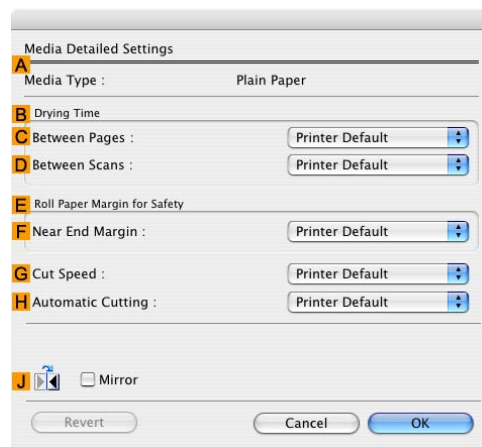


Mac OS X

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the **Main** pane and click **C Settings** in **A Media Type**.

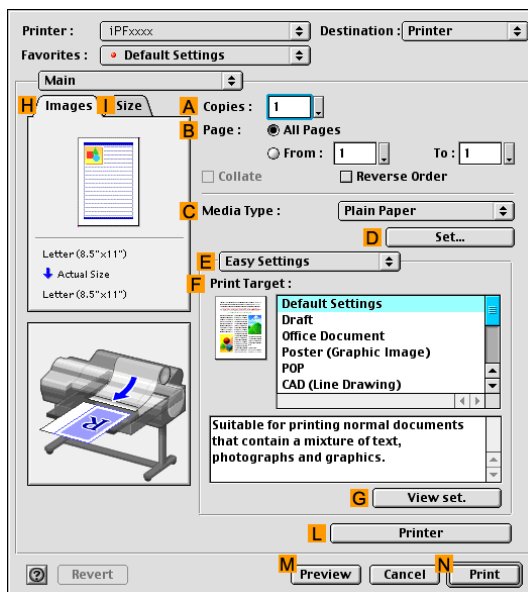


3. In the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.158)



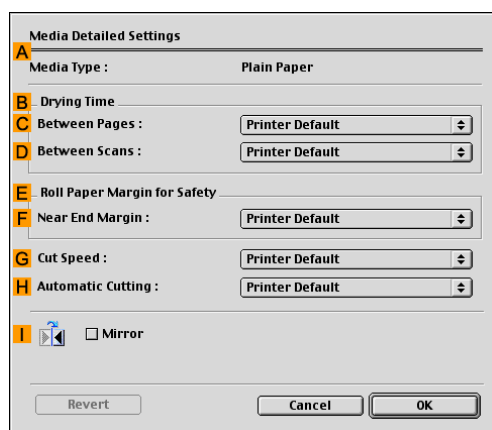
Mac OS 9

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the **Main** pane and click **D Settings** in **A Media Type**.



3. In the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.

(→P.159)



Note

- By factory default, **Drying Time** is deactivated (**Off**) for all paper types.
 - To have the printer wait for ink to dry immediately after printing without releasing paper, set **Cutting Mode** to **Eject** in the printer menu.
- (→P.135)

Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

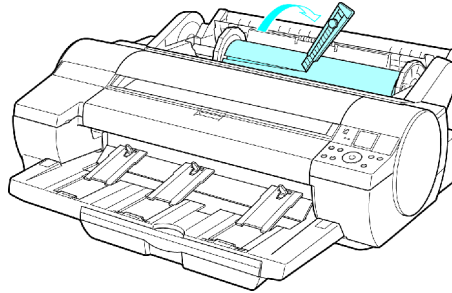
If paper from a roll becomes jammed, **Paper jam.** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.



Note

- For instructions on removing a paper jam from a roll if the scrap of paper remains in the Paper Feed Slot, see “Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)”. (→P.148)

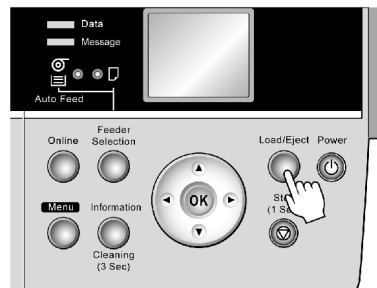
1. Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover. Use a store-bought cutter or the like to cut the paper of the loaded roll.



Caution

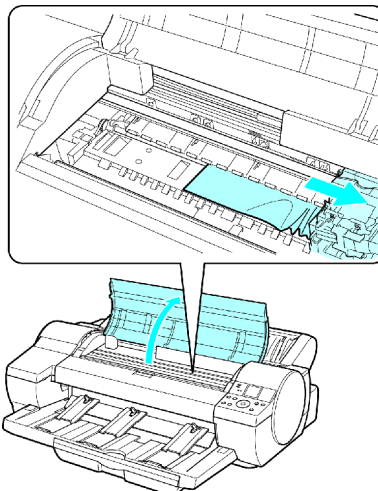
- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid scratching the printer.

2. Press **Load/Eject** button.

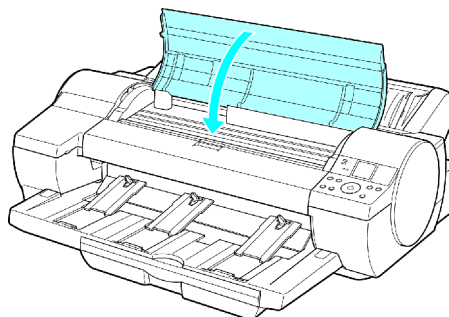


3. Remove the jammed paper.

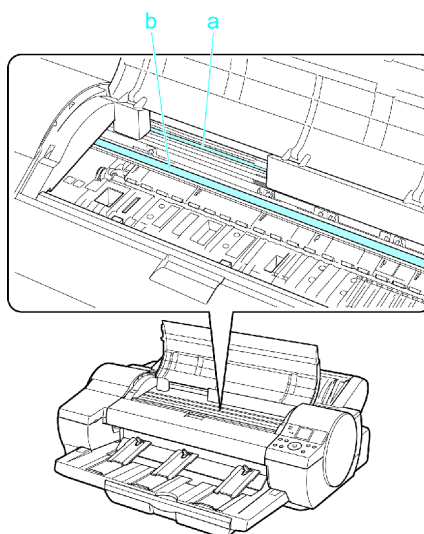
- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.**2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.**

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.**Important**

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



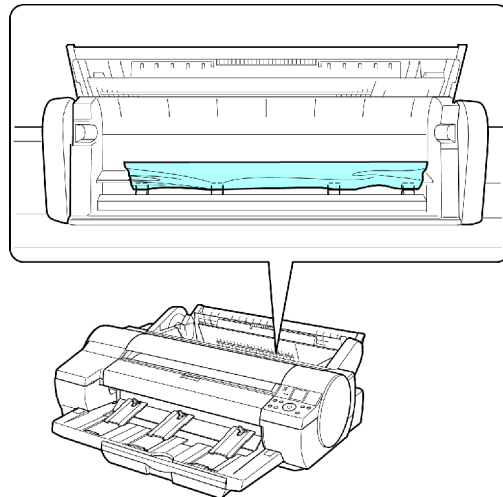
Handling rolls

- If paper from a roll is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot

1. Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover.

2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.

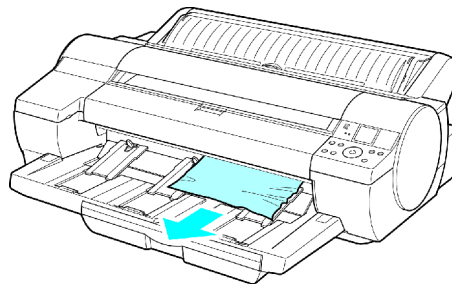
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.147), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.



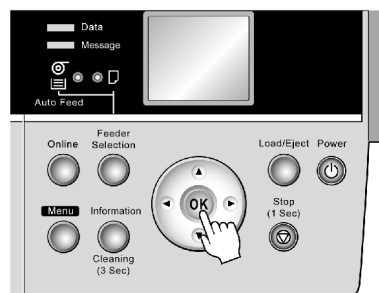
- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray

Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

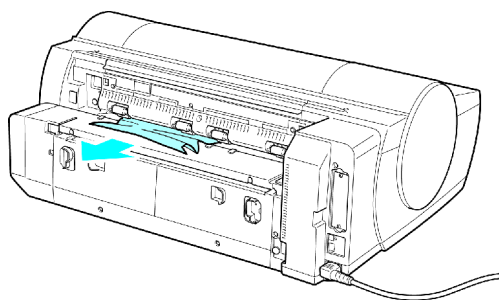


4. Press **OK**.



If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

- 1.** Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer. (→P.153)
- 2.** Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



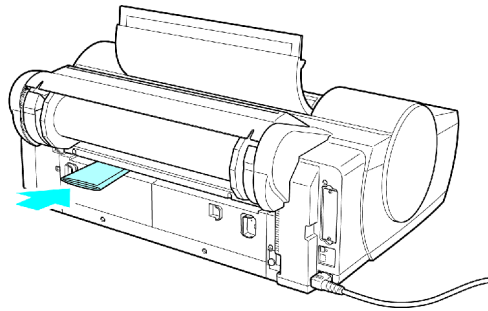
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

- 3.** Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer again. (→P.154)

■ Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)

Follow these steps to remove any scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot after you clear jammed sheets or roll paper.

1. Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the Paper Tray lamp.
2. Press the **Load/Eject** button.
A screen is displayed for paper type selection.
3. Select POP Board and press the **OK** button.
A screen is displayed for paper size selection.
4. Select the desired size and press the **OK** button.
Instructions for feeding POP Board are shown on the Control Panel, but instead of following them, follow this procedure to remove the jammed paper.
5. Open the Top Cover.
6. Fold an A4 sheet lengthwise four times and insert it through the gap of the Back Cover. Push the scrap out toward the Platen.



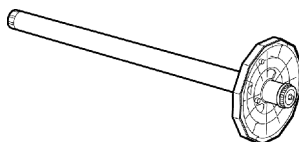
7. Remove the scrap when it is pushed out onto the Platen.
8. If any scraps remain inside the Paper Feed Slot, repeat steps 6 and 7.
9. Close the Top Cover.
10. Turn the printer off. (→P.19)

Roll Holder Set

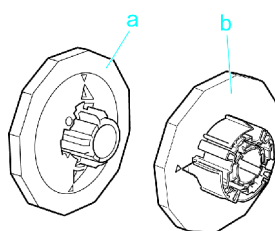
A set of parts including a Roll Holder, Holder Stopper (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores), 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment, and Spacer for Borderless Printing (used for both 2- and 3-inch paper cores).

To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Roll Holder and attach the Holder Stopper for 3-inch paper cores. If you use an A1 (594 mm [23.4 in]) roll or A2 (420 mm [16.5 in]) roll for borderless printing, insert the Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder.

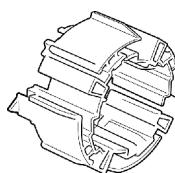
- Roll Holder Set RH2-24
 - Roll Holder



- Holder Stopper (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores (a) and (b))



- 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment



- Spacer for Borderless Printing

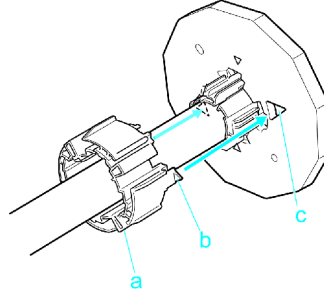


For instructions on installing these parts, see “Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder”. (→P.150)

■ ■ ■ Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder

Mounting the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment

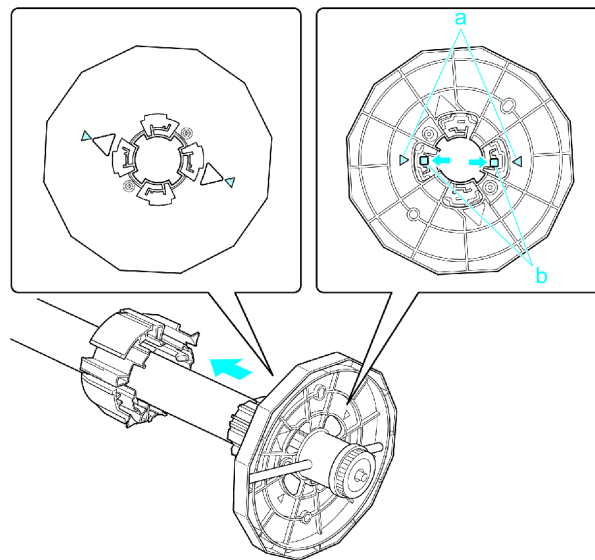
To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Roll Holder. Align the triangular part (b) of the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment (a) with the triangular groove (c) of the Roll Holder as shown, and insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment into the Roll Holder.



Use the Holder Stopper for 3-inch paper cores.

Removing the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment

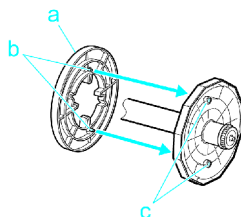
Spread the tips (b) of the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment that protrude by the triangular label (a) of the Roll Holder as shown, and remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment.



Attaching the Spacer for Borderless Printing

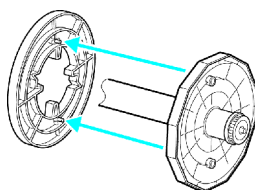
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder.

Insert the protrusions (b) of the Spacer for Borderless Printing (a) into the holes (c) of the Roll Holder, as shown.



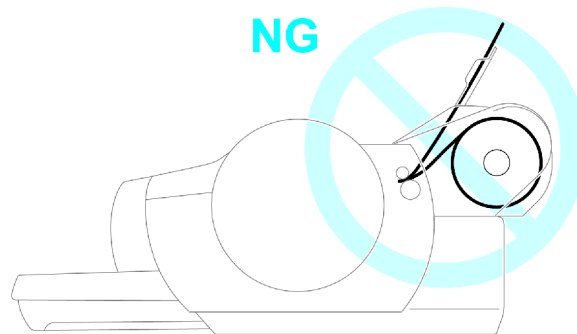
Removing the Spacer for Borderless Printing

Pull out the Spacer for Borderless Printing from the Roll Holder, as shown.



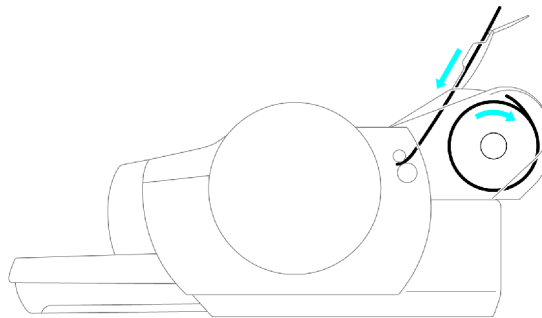
Feeding Paper from the Roll Feed Unit

The Paper Feed Slot used to feed roll paper is the same as the Paper Feed Slot used by the Tray, so both methods of feeding paper cannot be used at the same time.



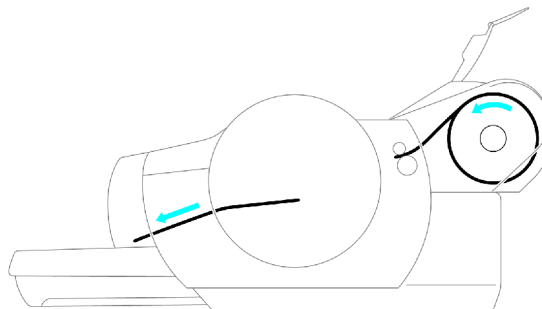
Thus, if a roll has been advanced when you wish to print from the Top Paper Feed Slot or Front Paper Feed Slot, change the paper source.

1. Select the tray as the paper source. (→P.161)
2. After **Remove roll?** is displayed, press the **OK** button.
The roll is rewound automatically.



Similarly, if a sheet is in the Top Paper Feed Slot or Front Paper Feed Slot when you wish to print on a roll, you will need to remove the sheet from the slot and reinsert the roll paper (which has been rewound) in the Paper Feed Slot.

1. Select the roll as the paper source. (→P.120)
2. After **Eject sheet?** is displayed, press the **OK** button.
The sheet is ejected automatically.



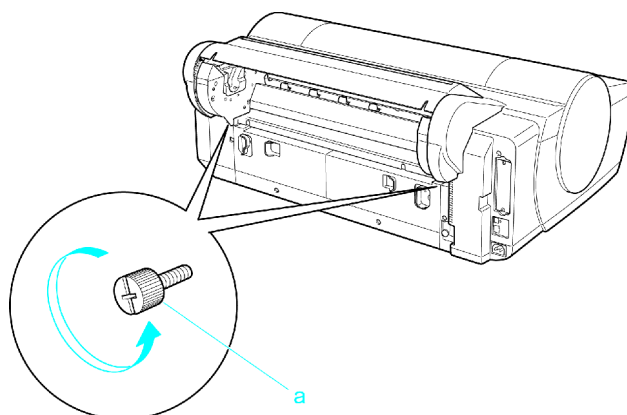
■ Removing the Roll Feed Unit



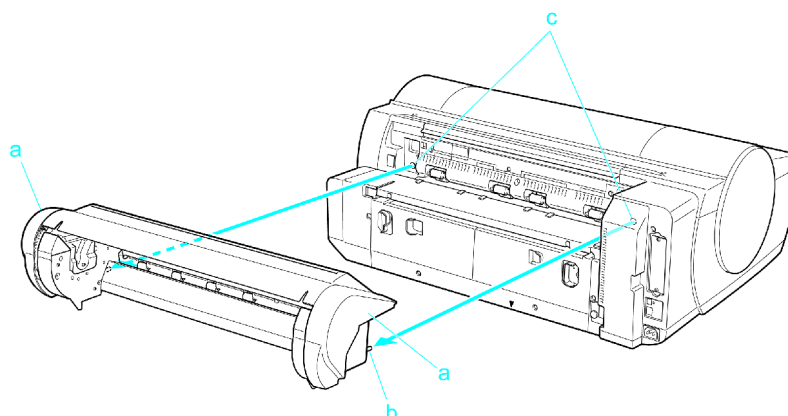
Important

- Always make sure the printer is off before removing the Roll Feed Unit.

1. Remove any rolls in the Roll Feed Unit. (→P.128)
2. Use a coin to loosen the screws on both sides of the back of the Roll Feed Unit (a) and remove the unit from the printer.

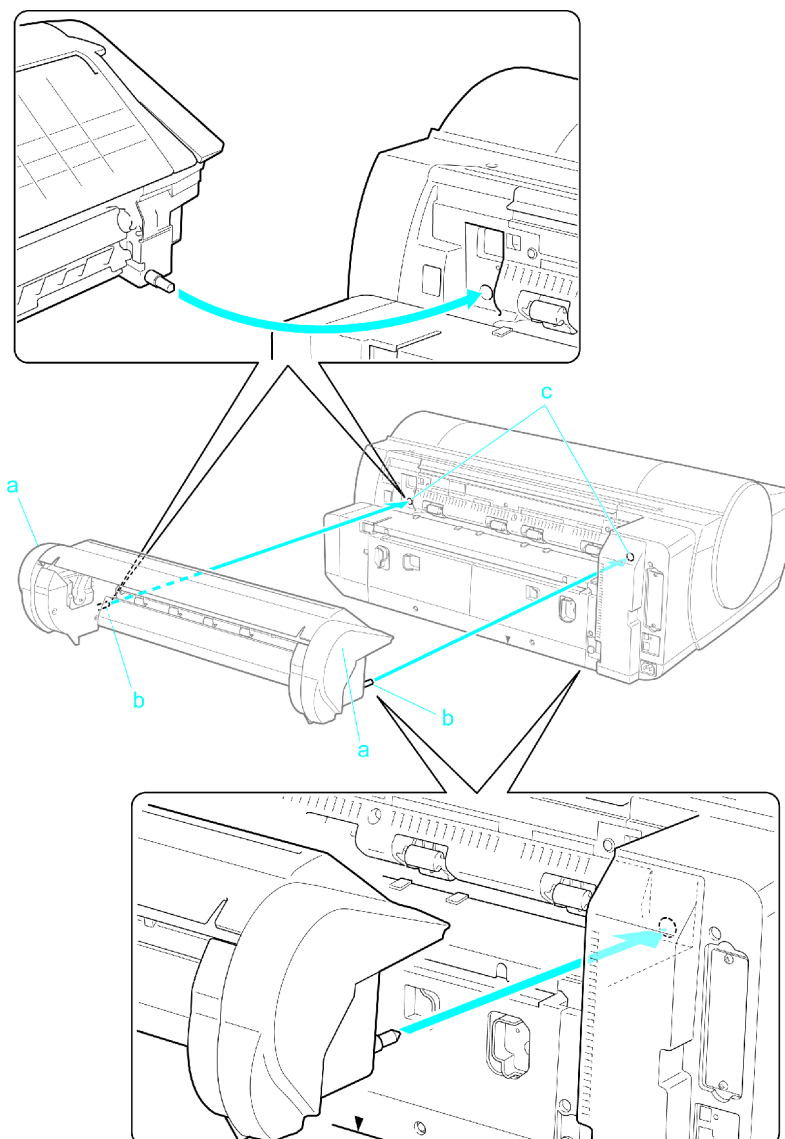


3. Hold the Roll Feed Unit by the Carrying Handles (a) as you remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer.

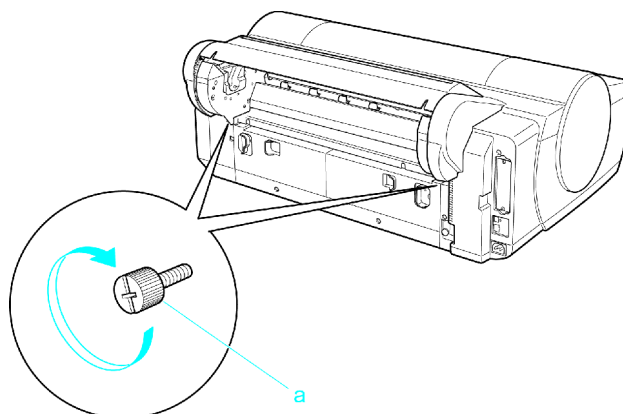


■ Installing the Roll Feed Unit

1. Holding the Roll Feed Unit by the Carrying Handles (a), insert the two pins of the Roll Feed Unit (b) into the each hole on the back of the printer (c).

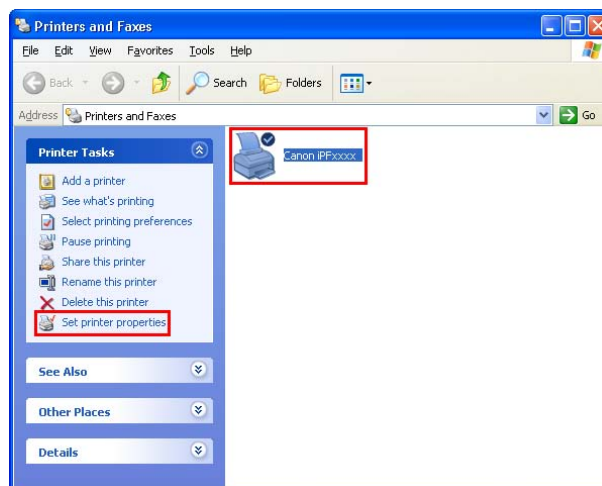


2. Use a coin to tighten the two screws on the back of the Roll Feed Unit (a) to secure it to the printer.

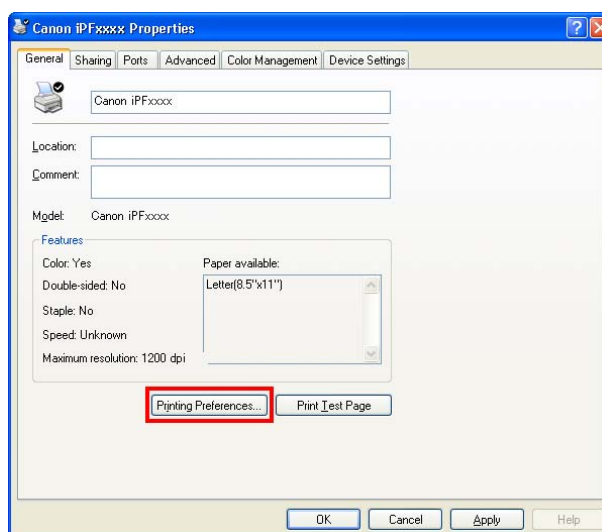


Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)

1. Click **start > Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



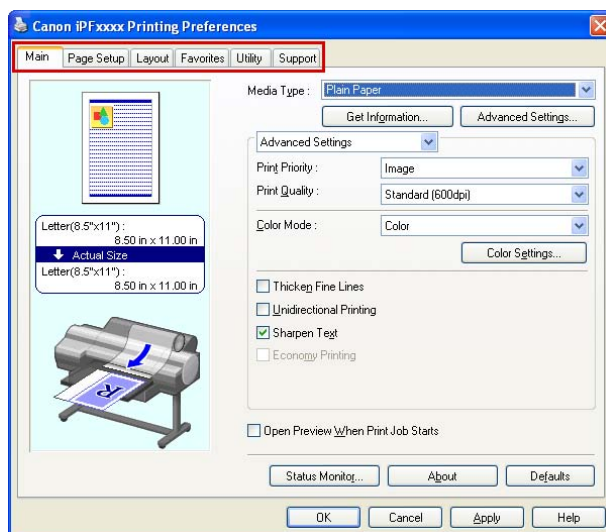
3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Note

- The **Device Settings** sheet is also an extension of the printer driver. (→P.486)

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.

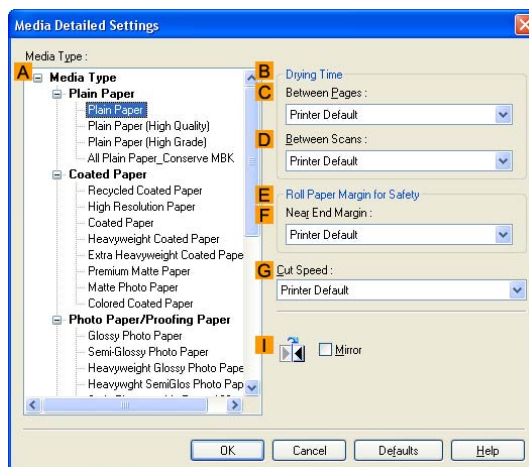


Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)”. (→P.494)

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



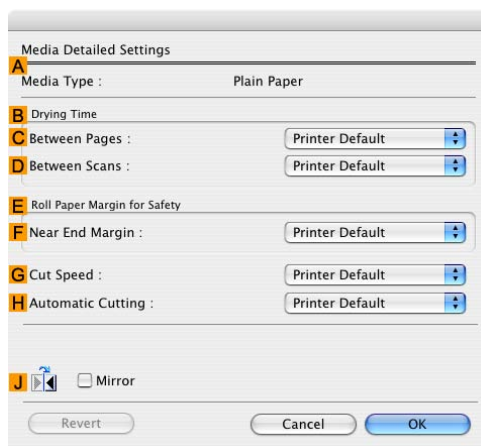
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Settings** by **Media Type**. (→P.475)

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The Drying Time setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.141)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the Near End Margin (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



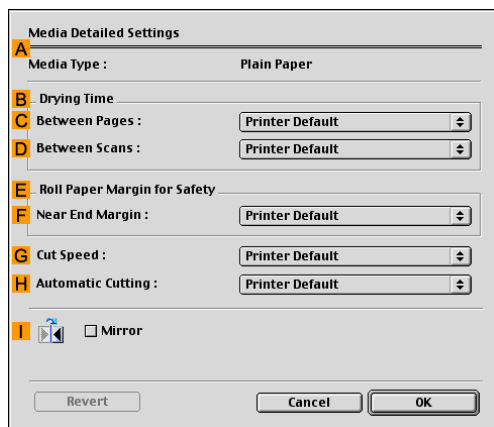
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Settings by Media Type**. (→P.519)

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The Drying Time setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.141)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the Near End Margin (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate Automatic Cutting and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, specify Yes , No , or Print Cut Guideline .
J Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Settings by Media Type**. (→P.538)

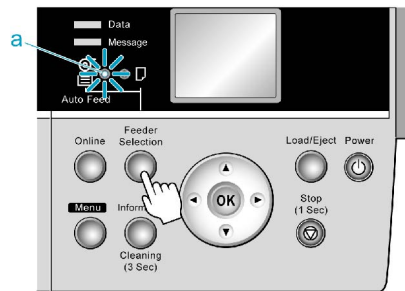
Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The Drying Time setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.141)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the Near End Margin (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. Adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate Automatic Cutting and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, you can specify Yes or No and Print Cut Guideline .
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Handling sheets

■ Selecting the Cassette as the Paper Source

You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. The Auto Feed lamp is lit when paper is supplied automatically, and the Paper Tray lamp is lit when paper is supplied manually.

You must specify the auto paper feed method when using paper from the Cassette. Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the Auto Feed lamp (a).



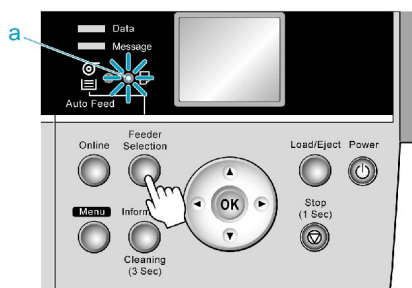
Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
 - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.696)
 - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
Select the paper source after printing is finished.
 - If a printer menu operation is in progress
Select the paper source after the operation is finished.

■ Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source

You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. The Auto Feed lamp is lit when feeding paper automatically, and the Paper Tray lamp is lit when feeding paper manually.

When loading paper in the tray, you must specify manual feed. Press **Feeder Selection** to light up the Paper Tray lamp (a).



Caution

- Paper jams may occur if you load paper other than the paper specified in the paper settings for the media source. If you insert the edge of a roll in the Paper Feed Slot after you have selected sheets as the type of paper in the media source on the Control Panel and specified the type and size of paper, the printer will prepare to print on the roll. If you print under these conditions, an error will occur when the roll is ejected. (→P.708)



Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
 - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.696)
 - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
Wait until printing is finished before selecting the paper source.
 - If a printer menu operation is in progress
Wait until the operation has finished before selecting the paper source.

After the Paper Tray lamp is lit, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen.

And then specify the paper type. (→P.173)

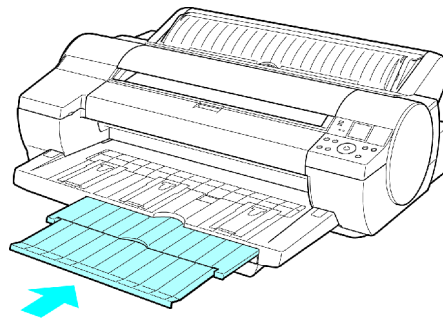
Loading Sheets in the Cassette



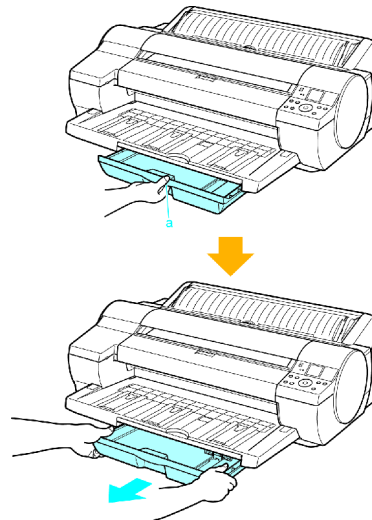
Note

- Load the paper, making sure not to exceed the Maximum Capacity Line of the Cassette. (→P.18)
- For details on the paper capacity, see “Specifications” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.74) (→P.112)
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper skewed will cause an error.

1. Push in the Output Tray Extension.



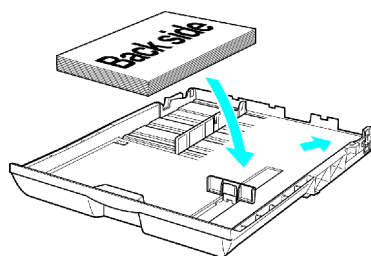
2. Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.



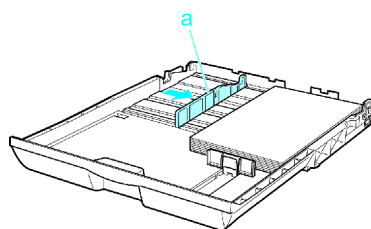
Caution

- When removing the Cassette, do not drag it on the table. This may damage the table.

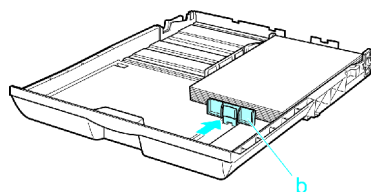
- 3.** Fan the stack before loading. Load the stack printing-side down and aligned lengthwise against the far right corner of the Cassette.



- 4.** Squeeze the Guide Lever of the Width Guide (a) and slide it to the right until it touches the edge of the paper lightly.



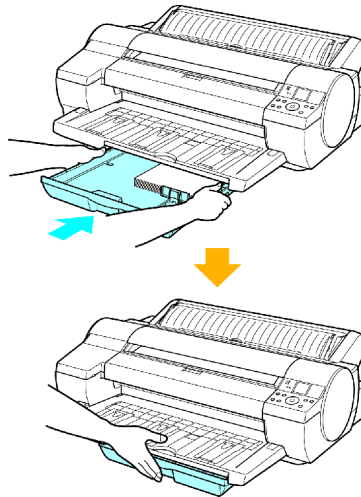
- 5.** Similarly, squeeze the Guide Lever of the Length Guide (b) and slide it back until it touches the edge of the paper lightly.



Important

- Do not set the Width Guide and Length Guide away from the paper or too tight against it. This may cause feeding problems.

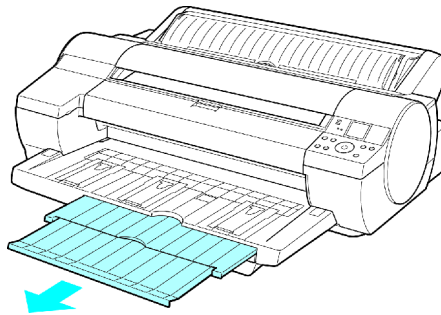
- 6.** Holding the Cassette in the middle on both sides with both hands, insert it firmly into the printer.



Caution

- When removing the Cassette, do not drag it on the table. This may damage the table.

- 7.** Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



Note

- When changing the type or size of paper, select the new type or size in the menu on the Control Panel.
 - Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette) (→P.172)
 - Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette) (→P.174)
- When printing from the Cassette, always make sure the Vertical Paper Guides are stored out of the way. If the Vertical Paper Guides are up and a printed document is left in the Output Tray, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.693)

Loading Sheets Manually

When using the tray, load the paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot. (→P.165) However, if you have specified **POP Board**, insert the sheet in the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.168)

Loading paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot



Note

- You can load only one sheet in the Top Paper Feed Slot. Do not load more than one sheet at a time. This may cause paper jams.
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- Before feeding paper or printing, make sure the sheet is flat against the Paper Tray Cover. The sheet may jam if it curls before feeding or printing and the trailing edge drops toward the front.
- If a roll is loaded, rewind the roll before this procedure. (→P.152)

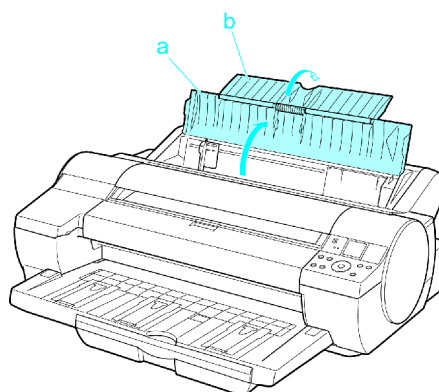
1. If you send a print job specifying a paper other than **POP Board** from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen. Press the **Load/Eject** button.



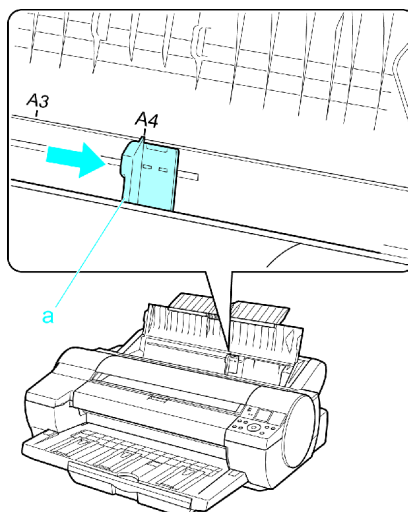
Note

- If you will load paper before sending a print job, press the **Load/Eject** button. After a menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen, press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button. Next, a menu for selection of the paper size is shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the size of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

2. Open the Paper Tray Cover (a), and then open the Tray Extension (b).



- 3.** Slide the Width Guide (a) to align it with the mark for the size of paper you will load.

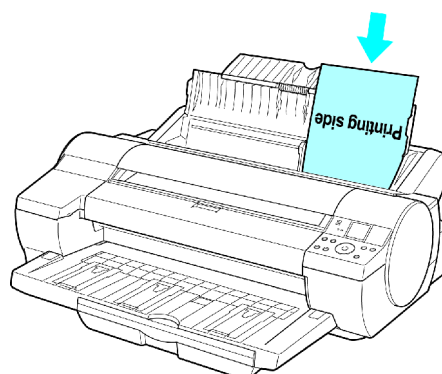


- 4.** Load the paper in the Tray with the printing side face-up.
Insert the paper until its edge touches the far end of the tray lightly.



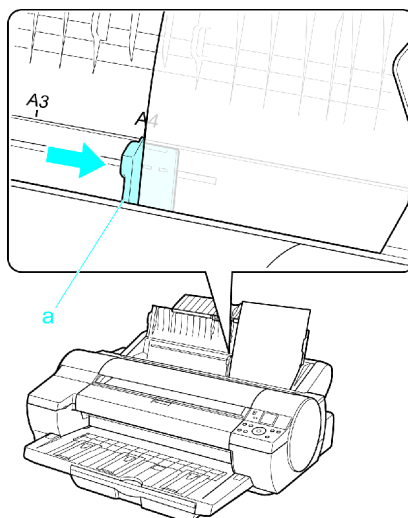
Caution

- If you load A2 or larger in the printer, the paper goes down on the back of the printer under its own weight. Therefore, place your hands on the paper till the paper is fed.



5. Move the Width Guide (a) to match the size of paper loaded.

Set the Width Guide against the edge of the paper to prevent the paper from becoming crooked or wrinkled.

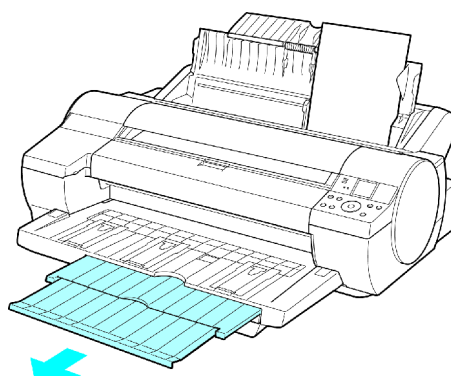


6. Press the **OK** button to start feeding the paper.

After the paper is advanced, the printer goes online.

If you sent a print job from the computer before loading the paper, printing starts automatically.

7. Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



Note

- When printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot, always make sure the Vertical Paper Guides are stored out of the way. If the Vertical Paper Guides are up and a printed document is left in the Output Tray, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.693)

Loading heavyweight paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot



Important

- Before loading heavyweight paper, change the media type setting to **POP Board**. When **POP Board** is selected as the type of paper, Front Paper Feed Slot is automatically selected.



Note

- You can load only one sheet of paper at a time.
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- If the paper is warped, straighten it before loading it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- After loading the paper, you cannot move it laterally to reposition it. Be sure to load the paper straight.

1. If you send a print job specifying **POP Board** from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen. Press the **Load/Eject** button.



Note

- If you will load heavyweight paper before sending a print job, press the **Load/Eject** button. After a menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen, press **▲** or **▼** to select **POP Board**, and then press the **OK** button. Next, a menu for selection of the paper size is shown on the Display Screen. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the size of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the type of paper loaded, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

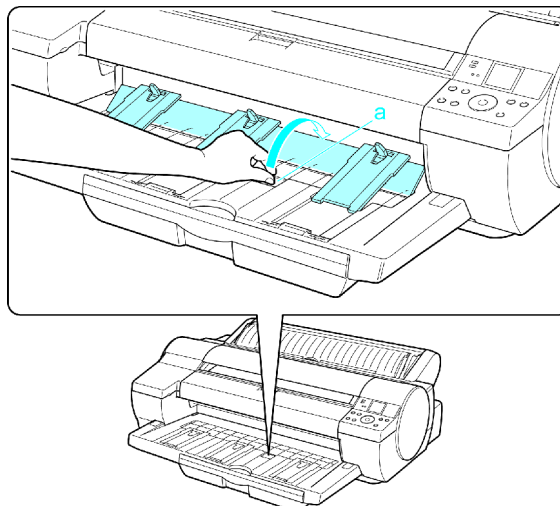
2. After **Leave 70cm/28" space behind printer and press OK.** is displayed, check the space behind the printer and press the **OK** button.



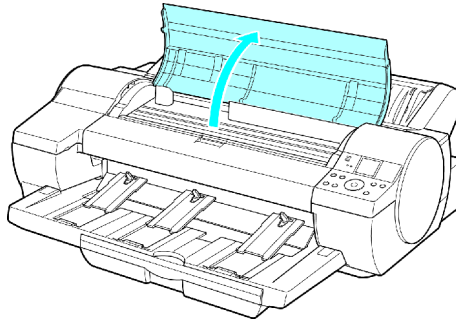
Note

- Sufficient space behind the printer is required when loading paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot. For details on the space required for installation, see "Specifications". (→P.74)

3. Push the knob (a) of the Vertical Paper Guides back to lift the Vertical Paper Guides.



4. After **Open Upper Cover** is displayed, open the Top Cover.

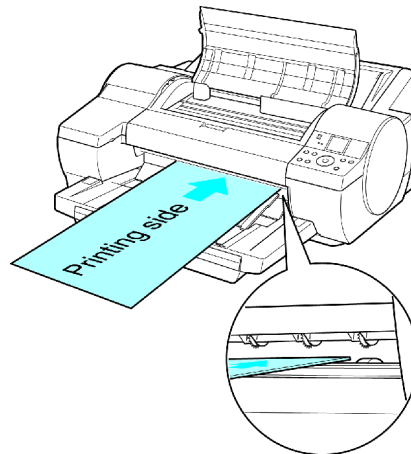
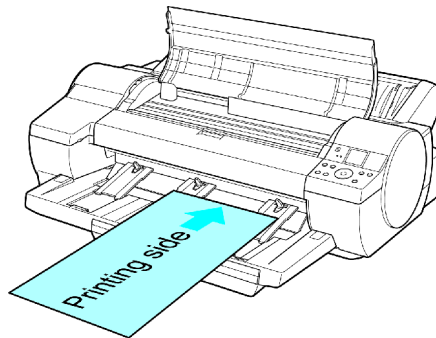


5. Load a sheet printing-side up on the Vertical Paper Guides. Keeping the sheet against the Front Paper Feed Slot, insert it straight into the Vertical Paper Guides.

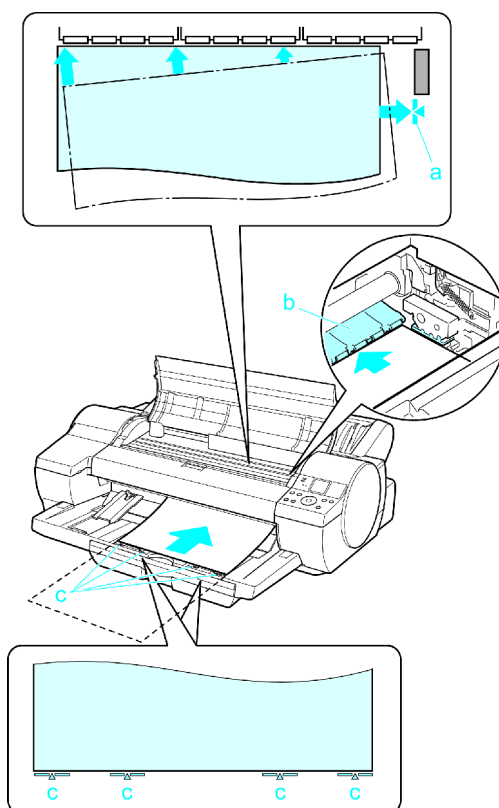


Caution

- When loading paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot, insert it straight into the slot. If you do not, the printing surface may be damaged.

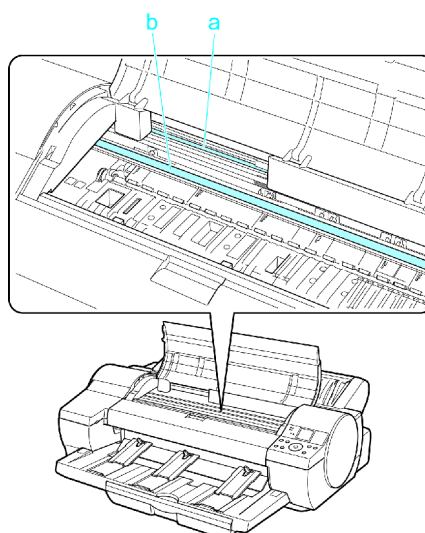


- 6.** As you look in the Top Cover, align the right edge of the paper with the left edge of the Paper Alignment Line (a) on the Platen. Insert the leading edge of the paper between the Platen and Paper Retainer (b), keeping it parallel to the Paper Retainer (b), and align the paper with the Paper Alignment Line (c) of the Output Tray.

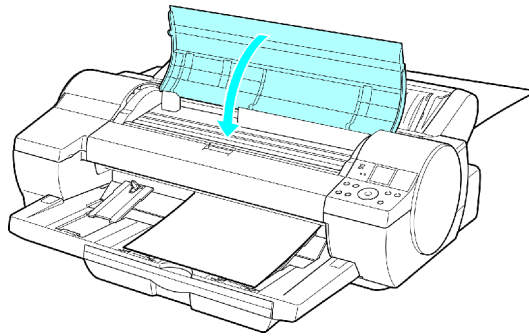


Important

- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



7. After **Close top cover.** is displayed, close the Top Cover and press the **OK** button.

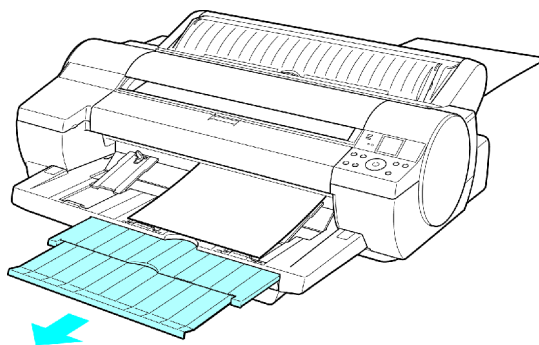


The paper is held between the Platen and Back Cover as it is fed.

After the paper is advanced and the printer goes online, printing starts automatically.

If no print job has been received from the computer beforehand, the printer enters Standby mode.

8. Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



9. After printing, the printer will temporarily stop advancing the paper while the trailing edge is still in the rollers to prevent the sheet from dropping. Press the **Load/Eject** button to release the sheet. After pulling it straight out, press the **OK** button. (→P.196)

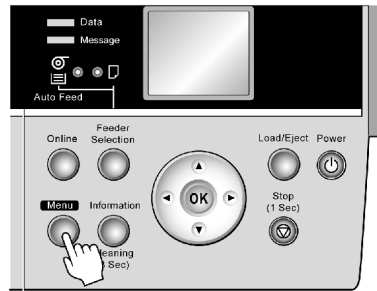


Note

- Remove the printed document on the Output Tray after printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot. If you print while a document is still there, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.693)

■ Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



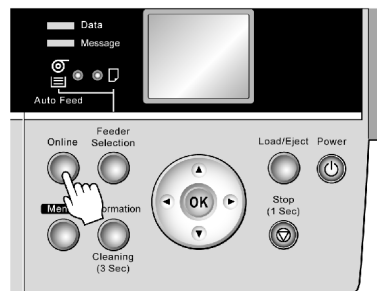
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press ►.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cas Paper Type**, and then press ►.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
By factory default, **Plain Paper** is selected.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



■ Selecting the Paper Type (Tray)

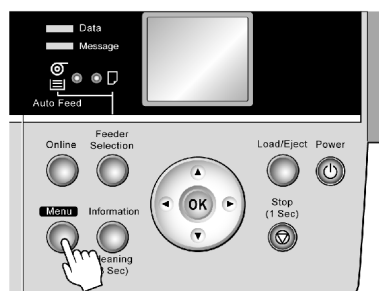
When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.



Note

- After you press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp, press the **Load/Eject** button to display a screen for selection of the paper type. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button to display a screen for selection of the paper size. (→P.194)
- If you have sent the print job from a computer beforehand, the screen for paper type and size selection is not displayed. Printing will start after the paper is advanced.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Media Menu**, and then press the **►** button.

3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Manual PaperType**, and then press the **►** button.

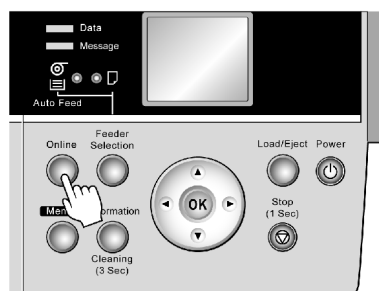
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

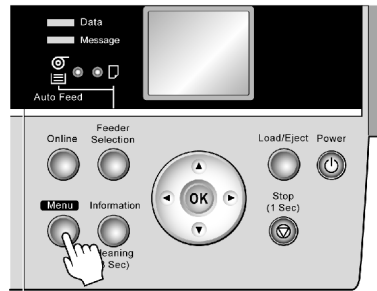
- Select **POP Board** when loading heavyweight paper.
- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112) Plain Paper is selected by factory default.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



■ Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press ►.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cas Paper Size**, and then press ►.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button.



Important

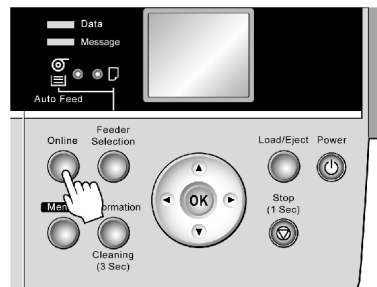
- When printing originals centered on the paper, specify the correct size of the paper actually loaded in the printer menu and printer driver.
If the size setting does not match the size of paper actually loaded, the original will not be printed correctly in the center.



Note

- For details on paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.117)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



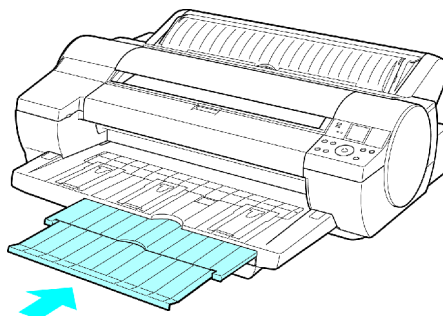
Removing Paper from the Cassette



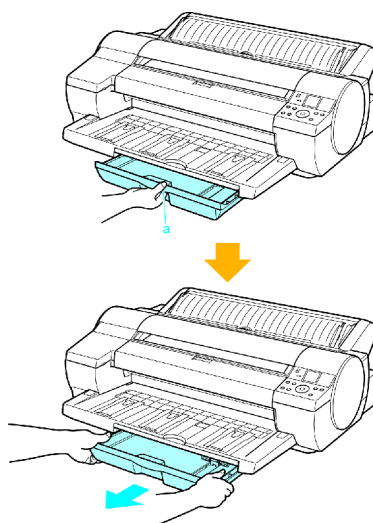
Caution

- When printing from the Cassette, do not remove the Cassette. This also may cause paper jams.
- When printing from the Cassette, do not remove the Back Cover. This also may cause paper jams.

1. Push in the Output Tray Extension.



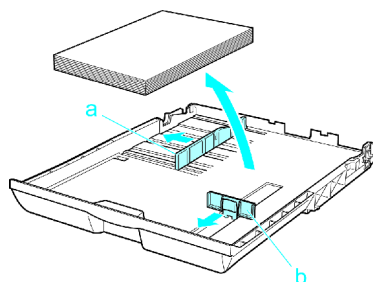
2. Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.



Caution

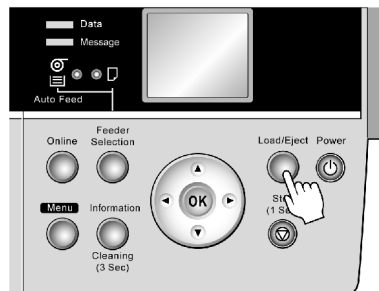
- When removing the Cassette, do not drag it on the table. This may damage the table.

3. Squeeze the Guide Lever of the paper Width Guide (a) and slide it to the left. Similarly, squeeze the Guide Lever of the paper Length Guide (b) and slide it toward you. You can now remove the paper.



■ ■ ■ Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot

Press the **Load/Eject** button to eject the sheet.



Note

- Paper cannot be ejected by using the **Load/Eject** button when print jobs are in progress or during the ink drying period. Before ejecting paper, press the **Stop** button to cancel printing, print job processing, or ink drying.

The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette

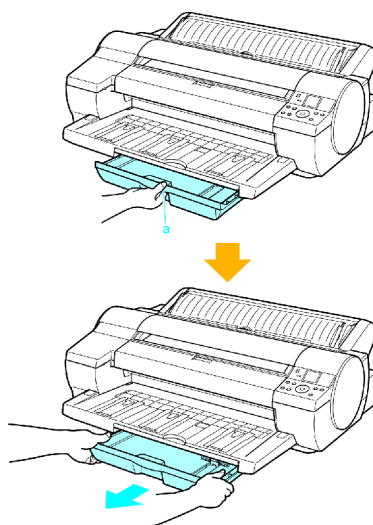
If paper from the Cassette becomes jammed, the following messages are shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. How to clear the paper jam varies depending on the message.

- **Cannot detect paper** (→P.177)
- **Paper jam.** (→P.179)

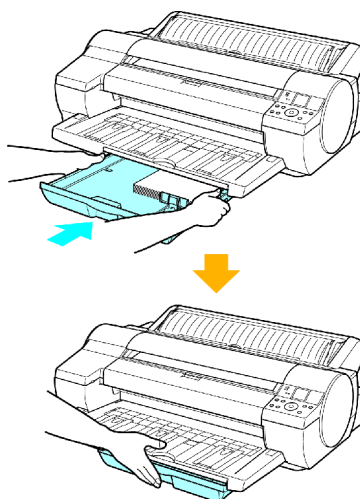
If Cannot detect paper is displayed

If paper is jammed in the paper feed slot of the cassette

1. Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.

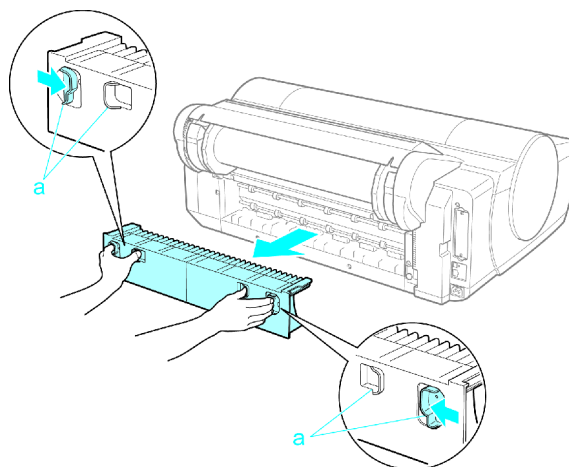


2. Clear any jammed paper from the paper feed slot of the Cassette.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
3. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, insert it firmly into the printer.



If paper is jammed in the back of the printer

1. While squeezing the two levers (a) at two positions on the Back Cover, remove the Back Cover from the printer.



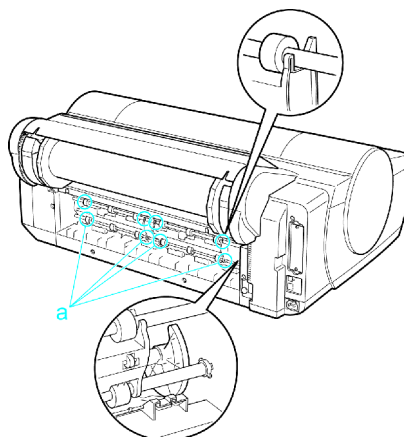
2. Remove the jammed paper from the back.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

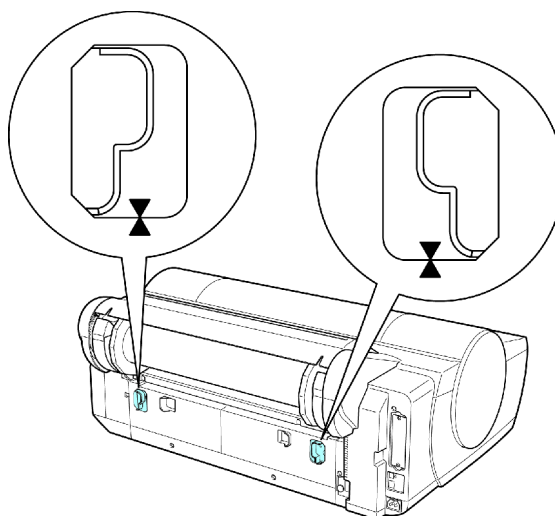


Caution

- Do not touch the areas in the printer indicated by (a). If the grease that coats these parts is accidentally wiped away, it may cause feeding problems.

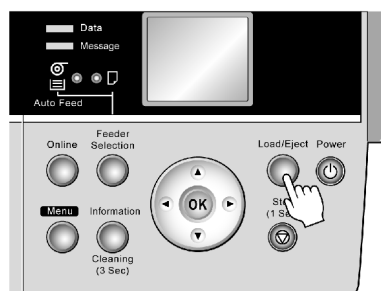


3. After attaching the Back Cover, push the lower part of the levers at two positions so that the levers are aligned with the marks on the Back Cover.



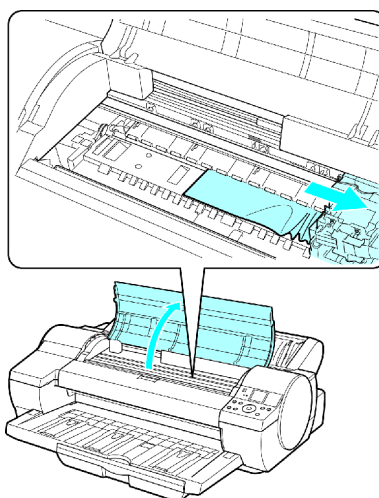
If Paper jam. is displayed

1. Press **Load/Eject**.

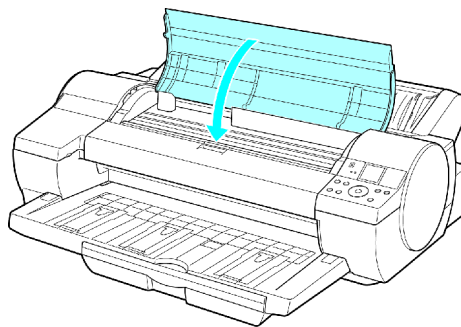


2. Remove the jammed paper.
 - If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.

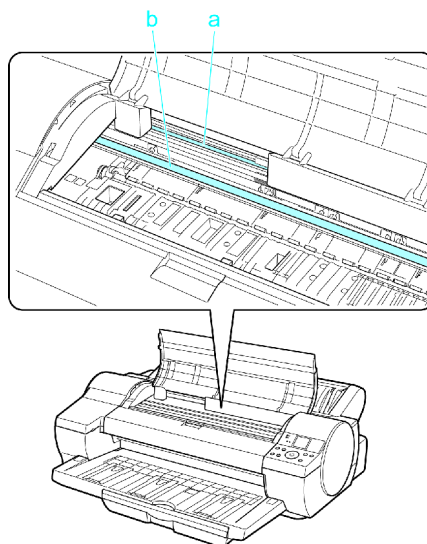


2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
3. Close the Top Cover.

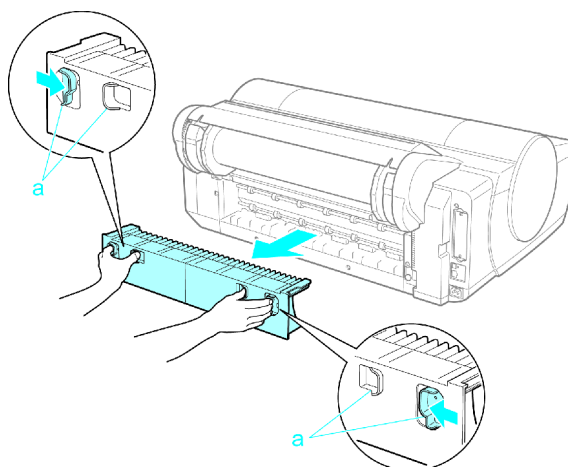


Important

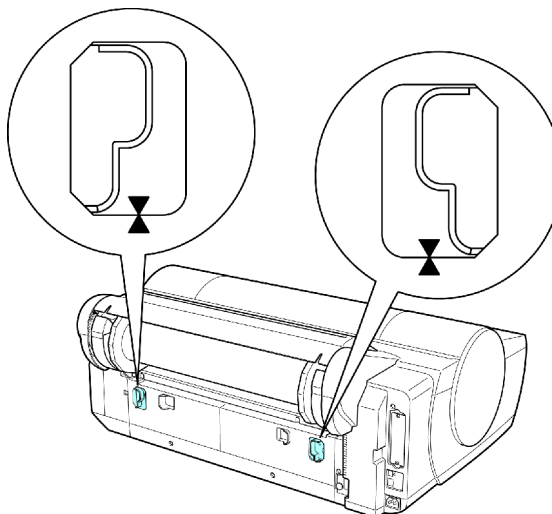
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



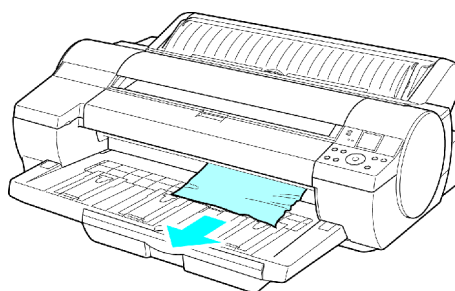
- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer
 1. While squeezing the two levers (a) at two positions on the Back Cover, remove the cover from the printer.



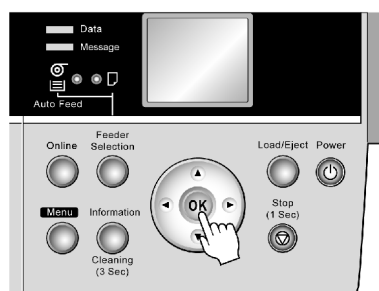
2. Remove the jammed paper from the back.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
3. After attaching the Back Cover, push the lower part of the levers at two positions so that the levers are aligned with the marks on the Back Cover.



- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray.
 1. Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



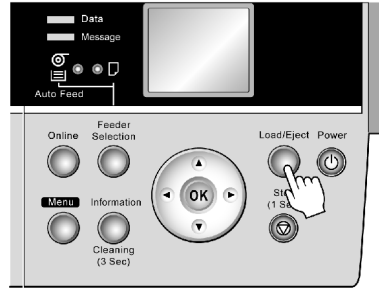
3. Press OK.



Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray

If a sheet loaded manually becomes jammed, **Paper jam.** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

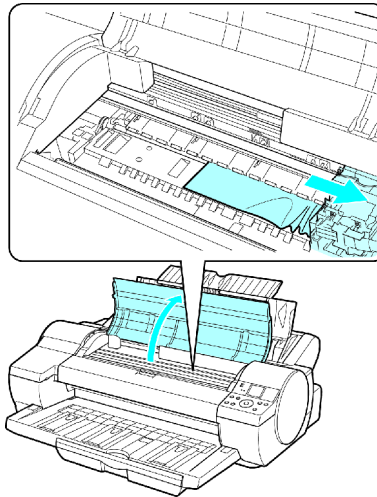
1. Press Load/Eject.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

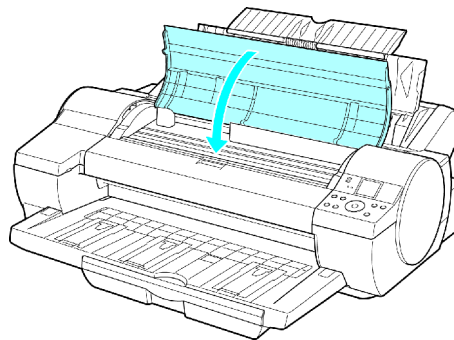
1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side manually.



2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.

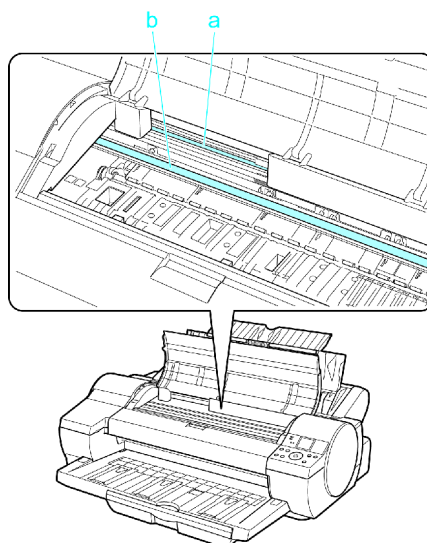
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.



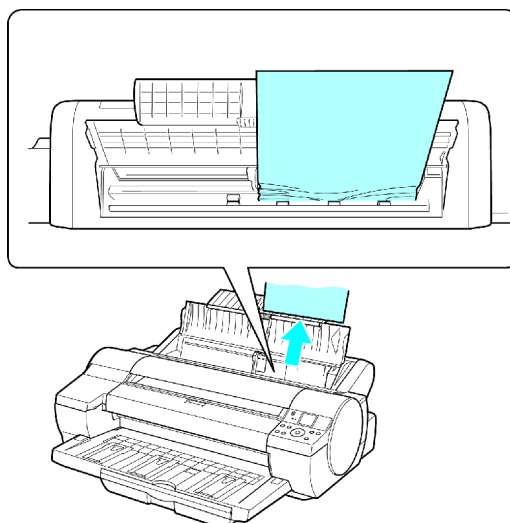
**Important**

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



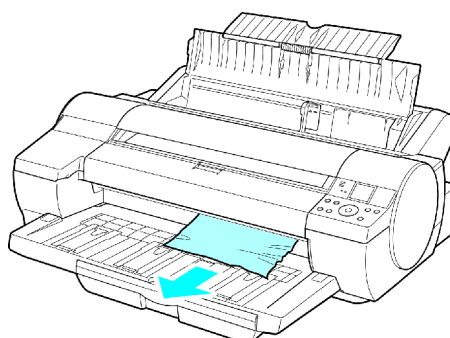
- If paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot of the Top Paper Feed Slot
Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.184), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.

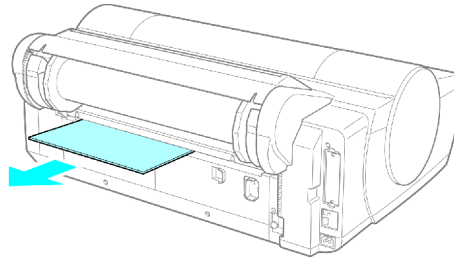


- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray
Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.

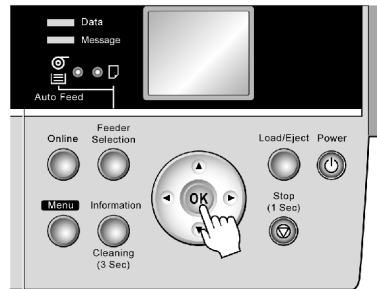
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer
Remove the jammed paper from the back.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

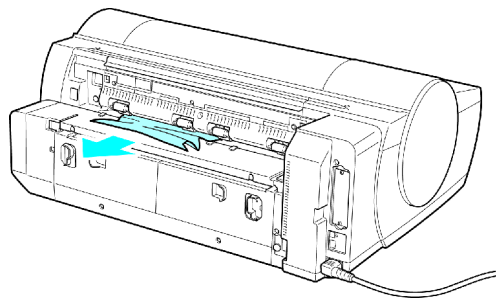


3. Press OK button.



If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

1. Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer.
(→P.153)
2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

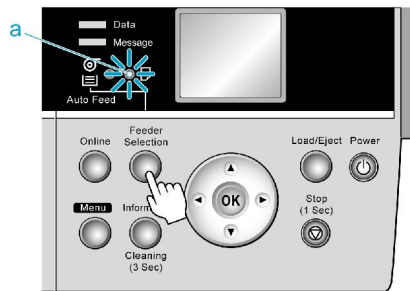
3. Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer again.
(→P.154)

Handling sheets for paper feed slots

■ Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source

You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. The Auto Feed lamp is lit when feeding paper automatically, and the Paper Tray lamp is lit when feeding paper manually.

When loading paper in the tray, you must specify manual feed. Press **Feeder Selection** to light up the Paper Tray lamp (a).



Caution

- Paper jams may occur if you load paper other than the paper specified in the paper settings for the media source. If you insert the edge of a roll in the Paper Feed Slot after you have selected sheets as the type of paper in the media source on the Control Panel and specified the type and size of paper, the printer will prepare to print on the roll. If you print under these conditions, an error will occur when the roll is ejected. (→P.708)



Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
 - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.696)
 - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
Wait until printing is finished before selecting the paper source.
 - If a printer menu operation is in progress
Wait until the operation has finished before selecting the paper source.

After the Paper Tray lamp is lit, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen.

And then specify the paper type. (→P.173)

Loading Sheets Manually

When using the tray, load the paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot. (→P.186) However, if you have specified **POP Board**, insert the sheet in the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.189)

Loading paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot



Note

- You can load only one sheet in the Top Paper Feed Slot. Do not load more than one sheet at a time. This may cause paper jams.
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- Before feeding paper or printing, make sure the sheet is flat against the Paper Tray Cover. The sheet may jam if it curls before feeding or printing and the trailing edge drops toward the front.
- If a roll is loaded, rewind the roll before this procedure. (→P.152)

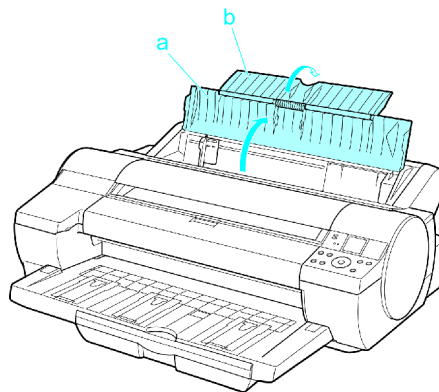
1. If you send a print job specifying a paper other than **POP Board** from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen. Press the **Load/Eject** button.



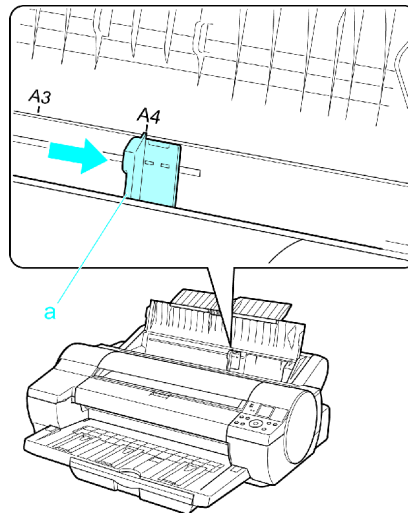
Note

- If you will load paper before sending a print job, press the **Load/Eject** button. After a menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen, press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button. Next, a menu for selection of the paper size is shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the size of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

2. Open the Paper Tray Cover (a), and then open the Tray Extension (b).



- 3.** Slide the Width Guide (a) to align it with the mark for the size of paper you will load.

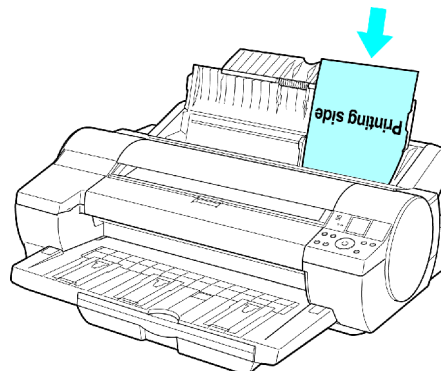


- 4.** Load the paper in the Tray with the printing side face-up.
Insert the paper until its edge touches the far end of the tray lightly.



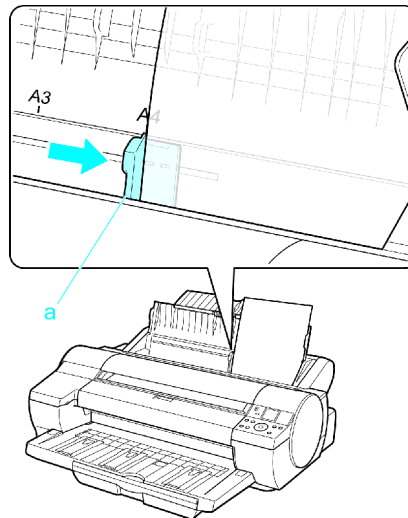
Caution

- If you load A2 or larger in the printer, the paper goes down on the back of the printer under its own weight. Therefore, place your hands on the paper till the paper is fed.



5. Move the Width Guide (a) to match the size of paper loaded.

Set the Width Guide against the edge of the paper to prevent the paper from becoming crooked or wrinkled.

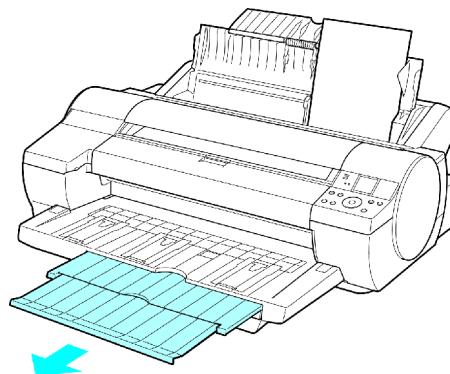


6. Press the **OK** button to start feeding the paper.

After the paper is advanced, the printer goes online.

If you sent a print job from the computer before loading the paper, printing starts automatically.

7. Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



Note

- When printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot, always make sure the Vertical Paper Guides are stored out of the way. If the Vertical Paper Guides are up and a printed document is left in the Output Tray, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.693)

Loading heavyweight paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot



Important

- Before loading heavyweight paper, change the media type setting to **POP Board**. When **POP Board** is selected as the type of paper, Front Paper Feed Slot is automatically selected.



Note

- You can load only one sheet of paper at a time.
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- If the paper is warped, straighten it before loading it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- After loading the paper, you cannot move it laterally to reposition it. Be sure to load the paper straight.

1. If you send a print job specifying **POP Board** from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen. Press the **Load/Eject** button.



Note

- If you will load heavyweight paper before sending a print job, press the **Load/Eject** button. After a menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen, press **▲** or **▼** to select **POP Board**, and then press the **OK** button. Next, a menu for selection of the paper size is shown on the Display Screen. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the size of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the type of paper loaded, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

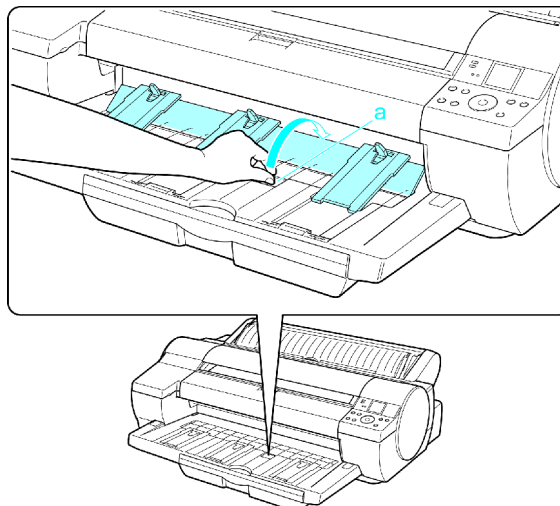
2. After **Leave 70cm/28" space behind printer and press OK.** is displayed, check the space behind the printer and press the **OK** button.



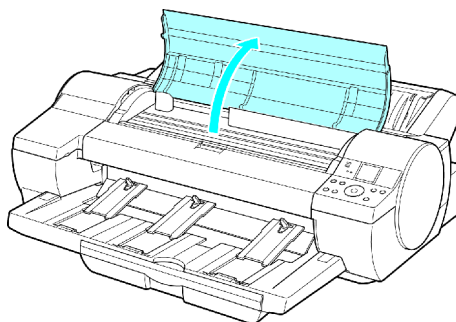
Note

- Sufficient space behind the printer is required when loading paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot. For details on the space required for installation, see "Specifications". (→P.74)

3. Push the knob (a) of the Vertical Paper Guides back to lift the Vertical Paper Guides.



- 4.** After **Open Upper Cover** is displayed, open the Top Cover.

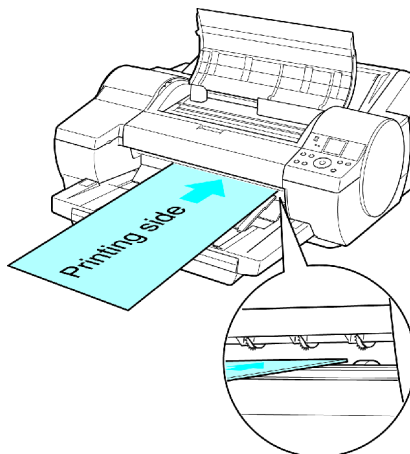
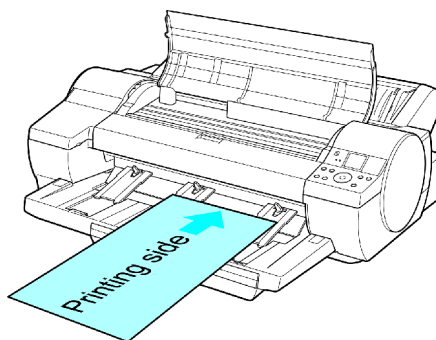


- 5.** Load a sheet printing-side up on the Vertical Paper Guides. Keeping the sheet against the Front Paper Feed Slot, insert it straight into the Vertical Paper Guides.

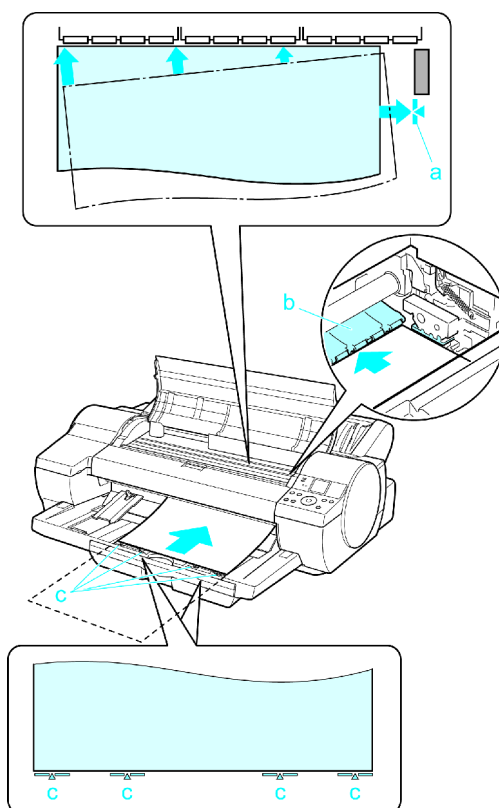


Caution

- When loading paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot, insert it straight into the slot. If you do not, the printing surface may be damaged.

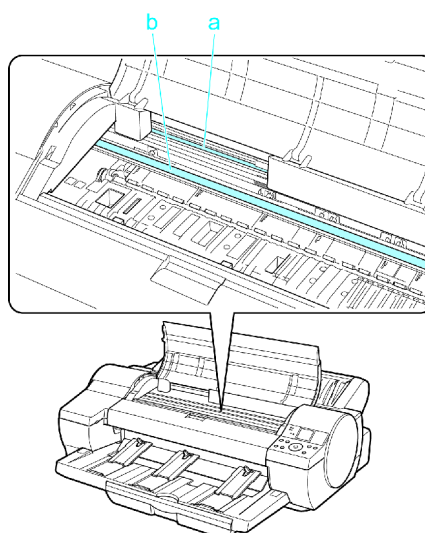


- 6.** As you look in the Top Cover, align the right edge of the paper with the left edge of the Paper Alignment Line (a) on the Platen. Insert the leading edge of the paper between the Platen and Paper Retainer (b), keeping it parallel to the Paper Retainer (b), and align the paper with the Paper Alignment Line (c) of the Output Tray.

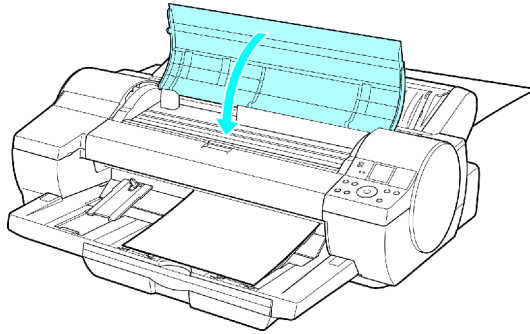


Important

- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



7. After **Close top cover.** is displayed, close the Top Cover and press the **OK** button.

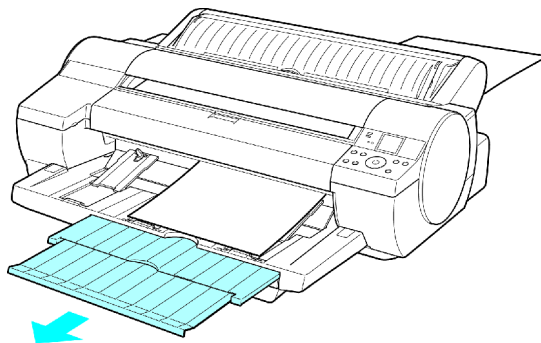


The paper is held between the Platen and Back Cover as it is fed.

After the paper is advanced and the printer goes online, printing starts automatically.

If no print job has been received from the computer beforehand, the printer enters Standby mode.

8. Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



9. After printing, the printer will temporarily stop advancing the paper while the trailing edge is still in the rollers to prevent the sheet from dropping. Press the **Load/Eject** button to release the sheet. After pulling it straight out, press the **OK** button. (→P.196)



Note

- Remove the printed document on the Output Tray after printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot. If you print while a document is still there, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.693)

■ Selecting the Paper Type (Tray)

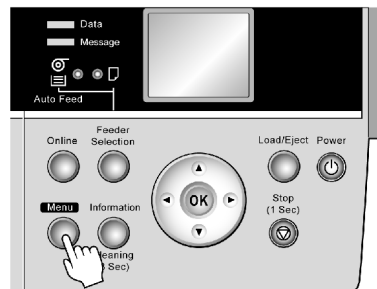
When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.



Note

- After you press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp, press the **Load/Eject** button to display a screen for selection of the paper type. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button to display a screen for selection of the paper size. (→P.194)
- If you have sent the print job from a computer beforehand, the screen for paper type and size selection is not displayed. Printing will start after the paper is advanced.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Media Menu**, and then press the **►** button.

3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Manual PaperType**, and then press the **►** button.

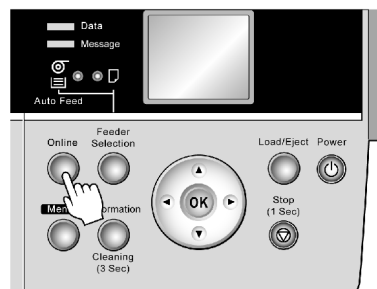
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- Select **POP Board** when loading heavyweight paper.
- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112) Plain Paper is selected by factory default.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



■ Selecting the Paper Size (Tray)

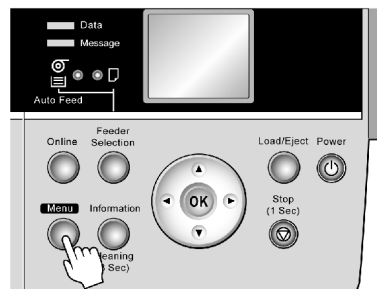
To change the paper size after paper has been advanced, select the paper size as follows.



Note

- After you press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp, press the **Load/Eject** button to display a screen for selection of the paper type automatically. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button to display a screen for selection of the paper size. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button. The printer is now ready to advance the paper.
- If you have sent the print job from a computer beforehand, the screen for paper type and size selection is not displayed. Printing will start after the paper is advanced.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Media Menu**, and then press the **►** button.

3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Manual PaperSize**, and then press the **►** button.

4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the size of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.



Important

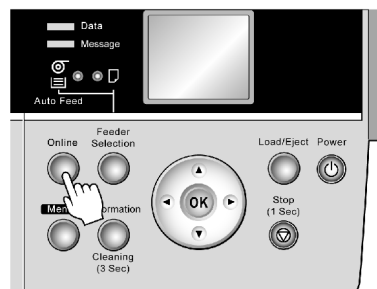
- When printing originals centered on the paper, specify the correct size of the paper actually loaded in the printer menu and printer driver.
If the size setting does not match the size of paper actually loaded, the original will not be printed correctly in the center.



Note

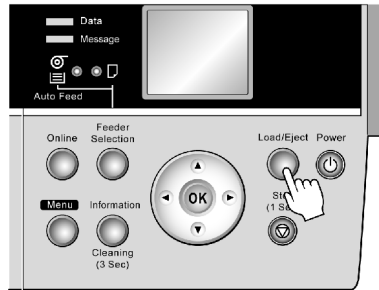
- For details on paper sizes, see "Paper Sizes". (→P.117)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



■ ■ ■ Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot

Press the **Load/Eject** button to eject the sheet.



Note

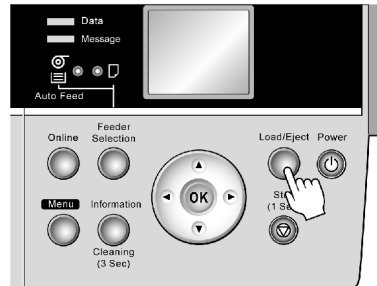
- Paper cannot be ejected by using the **Load/Eject** button when print jobs are in progress or during the ink drying period. Before ejecting paper, press the **Stop** button to cancel printing, print job processing, or ink drying.

The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

■ Removing Heavyweight Paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot

If you are printing heavyweight paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot, the printer will stop advancing the paper while the trailing edge is still in the rollers to prevent the sheet from dropping. In this case, remove the paper as follows.

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.



Note

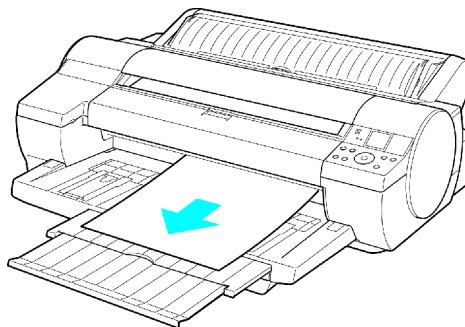
- If you load paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot but press the **Load/Eject** button without printing, the printer will eject the paper and stop advancing it momentarily while the trailing edge is still in the rollers to prevent the sheet from dropping. Press the **Load/Eject** button again when you are ready to remove the paper.

2. Pull the sheet straight forward to remove it.

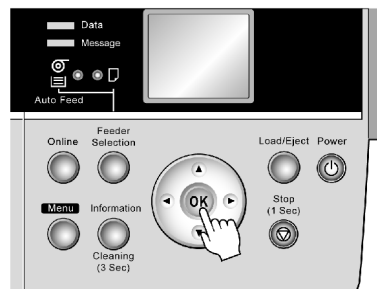


Caution

- If you do not remove **POP Board** by pulling it straight forward, the printed surface may become scratched.



3. Press the **OK** button.



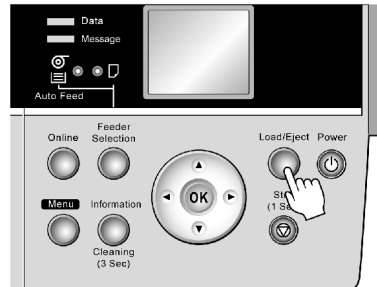
Caution

- Always remove the sheet before pressing the **OK** button. If you do not remove the sheet before step 3, the sheet may go back inside the printer, leaving roller marks across the trailing edge of the sheet.

Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray

If a sheet loaded manually becomes jammed, **Paper jam.** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

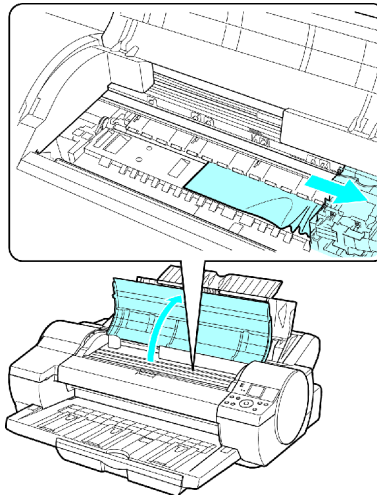
1. Press Load/Eject.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

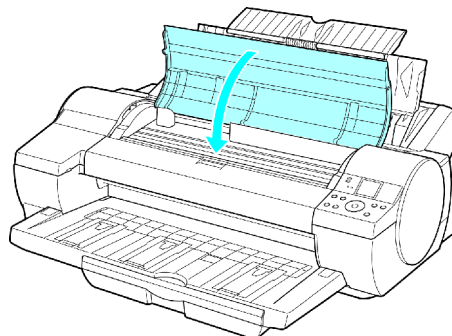
1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side manually.



2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

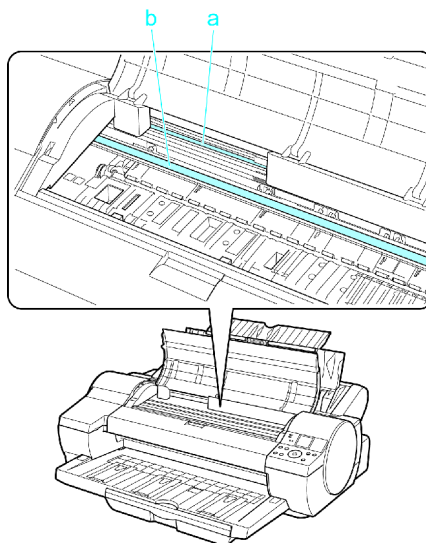
3. Close the Top Cover.



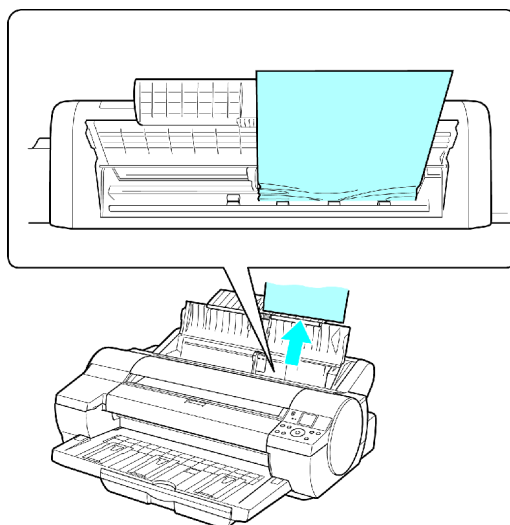


Important

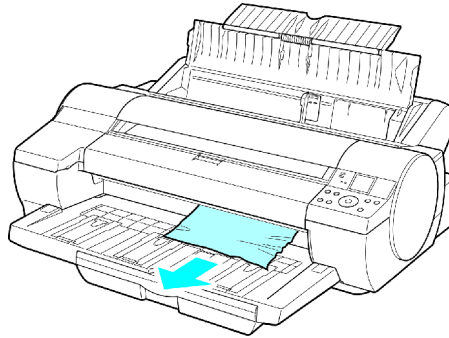
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



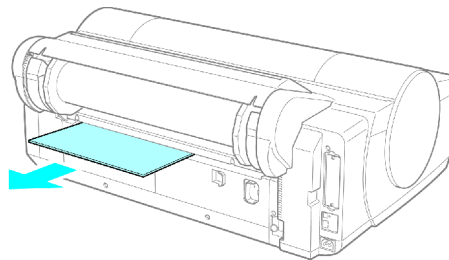
- If paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot of the Top Paper Feed Slot
Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.199), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.



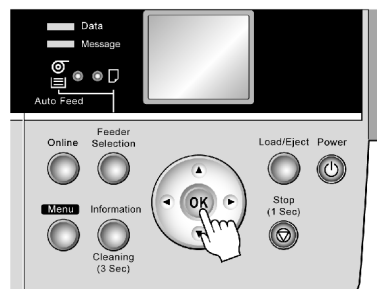
- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray
Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer
Remove the jammed paper from the back.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

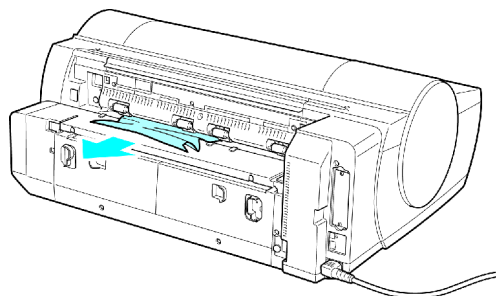


3. Press OK button.



If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

1. Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer.
(→P.153)
2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

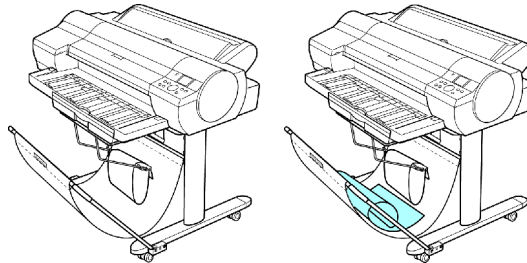
3. Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer again.
(→P.154)

Output Stacker

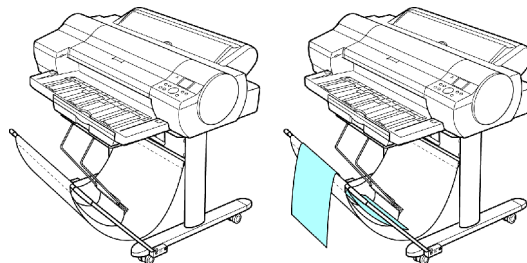
Using the Output Stacker

The Output Stacker can be used in two positions, as shown.

Regular position

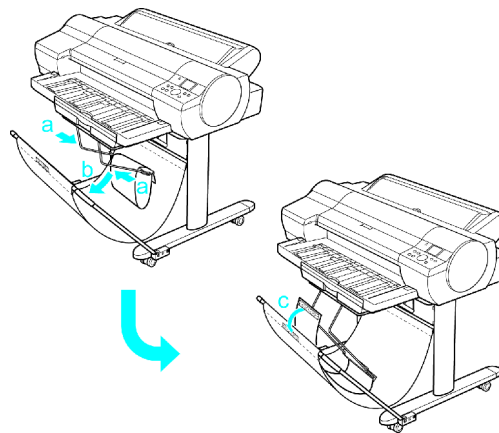


Extended position



Use the Output Stacker in the normal position.

For some types of media, you can use the stacker in the extended position. Squeeze the wires of Basket Wire #2 (a) and pull them toward the front (b). Fasten the Velcro Tape of the Basket Band in the middle of Basket Rod #2 (c) to put the stacker in the extended position. This position enables printed documents to be removed more easily.



For information on the position for easy removal, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)



Important

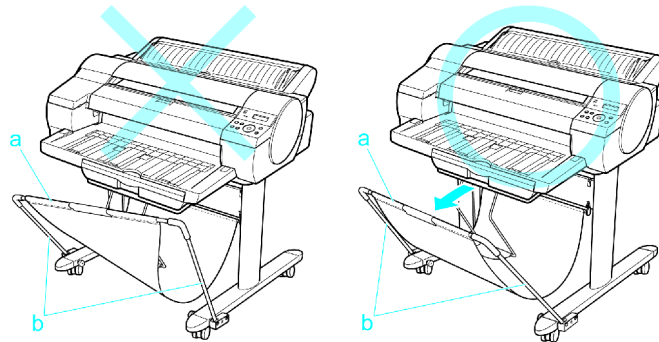
- The Output Stacker can hold one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.

Output Stacker Precautions

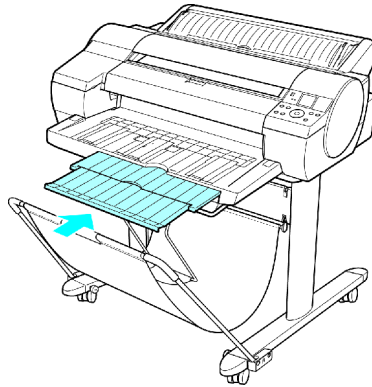
When you print on rolls, you can use the Output Stacker to hold ejected printouts.

When you use the Output Stacker, push down Basket Rod #1 (b) fully toward the front, keeping it even on the left and right so that Basket Rod #2 (a) is not slanted.

The Output Stacker can accommodate one sheet. Remove each sheet before printing if you are printing a series of documents.



When using the output stacker, push in the output tray extension. Printed documents are not stored in the output stacker.



Enhanced Printing Options

Print quality and color settings

■ ■ ■ Choosing a Paper for Printing

Choosing the right paper for your particular printing application will give you the best printing results.

Media type

The printer and printer driver offer print settings optimized for various paper characteristics.



Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
- An error message is displayed on the printer Control Panel if the paper type as specified in the printer driver does not match the type specified on the printer. Although you can print under these conditions, the printing results may not be suitable.

If the paper type is not listed for selection

If the type of paper loaded is not listed among the options for selection, try printing on Special 1, Special 2, and so on. Note that higher numbers in this setting enable more vivid colors but may also cause colors to run together.

For instructions on specifying the paper type before printing, refer to the following topics.

- Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.130)
- Selecting the Paper Type (Tray) (→P.173)
- Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette) (→P.172)

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing

You can specify detailed print settings as desired for the quality level, colors, and other criteria.

Advanced Settings

For printing results that appear just as expected for your original, you can specify which graphic elements and colors to prioritize for printing.



Note

- **Easy Settings** are also available, providing convenient presets. To use the presets, simply choose the printing application.

For details on **Easy Settings**, refer to the following topics.

- Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.209)
- Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS 9) (→P.207)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.212)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS 9) (→P.211)
- Printing Office Documents (→P.213)

Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Print Priority (*1)	Description
Image	A setting for posters or other documents made up mainly of photos or images, or for emphasizing photos or images in printed documents.
Line Drawing/Text	Choose this setting for CAD drawings made up mainly of intricate lines, or wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text. Suitable for emphasizing detailed text in printed documents. However, the quality may not be sufficient when printing photos or images that require a lot of color coverage. In this case, choose “Image” instead.
Office Document	Choose this setting for better legibility of documents combining text and graphics, such as documents and presentation material created with typical office applications.

*1: Options suitable for the selected paper type are listed under Print Priority.

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.

The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.	Image
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in “Standard” or “Draft” modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.	Image Line Drawing/Text
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in “Highest” or “High” mode.	Image Line Drawing/Text Office Document
Draft	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.	Image Line Drawing/Text

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Print Quality.

Color Settings

Setting Item	Options	Description
Color Mode (*1)	Color Monochrome Color (CAD) Color (CAD) Light Monochrome (BK ink) Monochrome Bitmap	Choose whether to print in color or monochrome. (→P.214)
Color Adjustment (Images)	Cyan Magenta Yellow Brightness Contrast Saturation Gray Tone Adjustment	You can adjust the levels of cyan, magenta, and yellow as well as the brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray tone separately for images, graphics, and text documents. If you choose Monochrome or Monochrome (BK ink) in Color Mode only Brightness and Contrast can be adjusted.
Color Adjustment (Graphics)		
Color Adjustment (Text)		
Color-Matching Modes	Driver Matching Mode ICC Matching Mode Off	Choose the color-matching mode. Other color-matching modes may be provided by the computer operating system, such as ICM and ColorSync.
Color-Matching Method (*2)	Auto Perceptual Saturation Colorimetric other	Choose the color-matching method. The available options vary depending on your selection in "Color-Matching Mode."

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Color Mode.

*2: The order of options displayed varies depending on the operating system.

Enhancing Printing Quality

Setting Item	Description
Unidirectional Printing	Choosing unidirectional printing can improve printing results if lines are printed crooked or images are uneven. However, it takes more time than regular printing.
Thicken Fine Lines (*1)	Choose this option to make fine lines clearer in CAD drawings or similar documents.
Sharpen Text (*1)	Choose this option to print intricate text more distinctly.
Reduce Print Unevenness (*2)	Choose this option to counteract uneven printing.

*1: Displayed in Windows and Mac OS 9.

*2: Displayed in Mac OS 9 and Mac OS X.



Note

- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in **Print Quality**, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.
- For instructions on specifying the print quality and color settings before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
 - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) (→P.219)
 - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) (→P.221)
 - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9) (→P.224)

Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS 9)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the print target.







Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Highest Quality	Setting optimized for printing at the highest level of quality.
	Photo (from digital camera)	Setting optimized for printing photographic images from digital cameras.
	Poster (Graphic Image)	Settings optimized for printing posters mainly composed of photos.
	POP Ad	Setting optimized for printing vivid, eye-catching store posters combining images and text.
	Scanned Image	Setting optimized for printing scanned images with accurate color reproduction to match the original images.
	Draft	Setting optimized for high-speed draft printing.



Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.



Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)
- For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
 - Printing Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.264)
 - Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.269)

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the print target.







Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Highest Quality	Setting optimized for printing at the highest level of quality.
	Photo (Standard)	Setting optimized for printing photographic images from digital cameras.
	Poster (Photos)	Settings optimized for printing posters mainly composed of photos.
	Poster (Text, Illustrations)	Setting optimized for printing vivid, eye-catching store posters combining images and text.
	Scanned Image	Setting optimized for printing scanned images with accurate color reproduction to match the original images.
	Draft	Setting optimized for high-speed draft printing.



Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.



Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)
- For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
 - Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.209)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS 9)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.



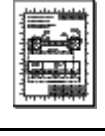



Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	CAD (Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (Fast)	Settings optimized for fast printing of CAD drawings.
	CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) (Windows) CAD (B/W Line Drawing) (Mac OS 9)	Settings optimized to print black lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (High Accuracy)	Settings optimized for attractive printing of highly precise documents such as CAD drawings with smooth lines and small text.
	Poster (Notice Announcement)	Settings optimized for printing announcements such as wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text.
	3D/GIS Map	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.



Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.252)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.256)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.



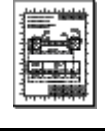



Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	CAD (Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (Fast)	Settings optimized for fast printing of CAD drawings.
	CAD (B/W Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print black lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (High Accuracy)	Settings optimized for attractive printing of highly precise documents such as CAD drawings with smooth lines and small text.
	Poster (Notice Announcement)	Settings optimized for printing announcements such as wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text.
	3D CAD, GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.



Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.212)

Printing Office Documents

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

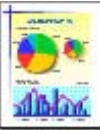
Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for office documents

	Print Target	Description
	Office Document	Settings optimized for clear printing of office documents such as handouts.



Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)

For instructions on printing office documents, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Office Documents (Windows) (→P.258)
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) (→P.260)
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9) (→P.262)

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver

Color settings specified in the application for your documents are essentially given priority over other settings for each print job, but further color adjustment is possible in the printer driver.

Color Mode

Choose how the printer driver processes color, as desired.

The available options vary depending on the color mode.

Color Mode	Description	Color Adjustment
Color	Print in color.	You can adjust the color balance and color-matching method.
Monochrome	Print in grayscale.	You can adjust the color balance.
Color (CAD)	A color mode optimized for line drawings (2D-CAD). Lines in red, yellow, and other colors are printed especially clearly.	You can adjust the color balance.
Color (CAD) Light	Another color mode optimized for line drawings (2D-CAD). Black lines are printed especially clearly when ink of many colors is used, as for colored backgrounds.	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome (BK ink)	A color mode for printing line drawings. Only Black ink is used.	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome Bitmap	Print in a color mode for CAD, using Color Ink, with all non-white portions printed in black.	No color adjustment is supported.

Color Adjustment

You can adjust colors separately for images, graphics, and text documents.

Adjustment Item	Description
Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
Magenta	
Yellow	
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
Gray Tone Adjustment	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

Matching

You can choose the color-matching mode and method.

By adjusting the color-matching mode and method, you can make printed colors match the colors of on-screen images more closely.

Matching Mode	Description	Notes
Driver Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on the original color profile of the printer driver.	This is the default color-matching method. Normally, use Driver Matching Mode .
ICC Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on ICC color profiles (an international standard) using the printer driver.	You can select the printer profile in the Printer Profile Settings list.
Driver ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. The printer driver adjusts the colors.	Available when using Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista.
Host ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. Windows adjusts the colors.	
ColorSync	Color adjustment based on the standard Mac OS ColorSync function. Mac OS adjusts the colors.	Available when using the Mac OS.
Off (No correction)	No color-matching.	Choose this option for color-matching by the software application or with your own color profile, when you want to disable color-matching by the printer driver.

Matching Method	Description	Notes
Auto	Color-matching optimized for images, graphics, or text.	The available options and their display order varies depending on your selection in Color-Matching Mode, as well as the operating system.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for photos. Print images with smooth gradations and colors closer to those as displayed on the screen.	
Colorimetric	Color-matching with adjustment to remove color from white area. Colors in data are reproduced accurately.	
Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)	Color-matching without white adjustment to reflect the profile of original data. Colors in data are reproduced accurately. Without white adjustment, colors are added to white area.	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for graphics. This option emphasizes color saturation.	



Note

- Be sure to calibrate your monitor colors correctly if you adjust the colors for printing. If monitor colors are not calibrated correctly, you may not obtain the desired printing results. For instructions on monitor calibration, refer to the documentation for your monitor and operating system.

For instructions on color adjustment, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.227)
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.230)
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.233)

■ ■ ■ Printing in Monochrome

Printing Photos in Monochrome

The following settings are available for monochrome printing.

Main	Advanced Settings	Color Mode	Monochrome	
				<p>Deactivates color printing so that images are printed in monochrome, with continuous-tone color data printed using gray midtones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Even more detailed adjustment is possible on the Color Adjustment sheet. • Because color ink is used to produce gray continuous-tone images, the gray may appear to have a tinge of color. <p>Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) (→P.244)</p> <p>Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) (→P.246)</p> <p>Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9) (→P.249)</p>

Printing Line Drawings in Monochrome

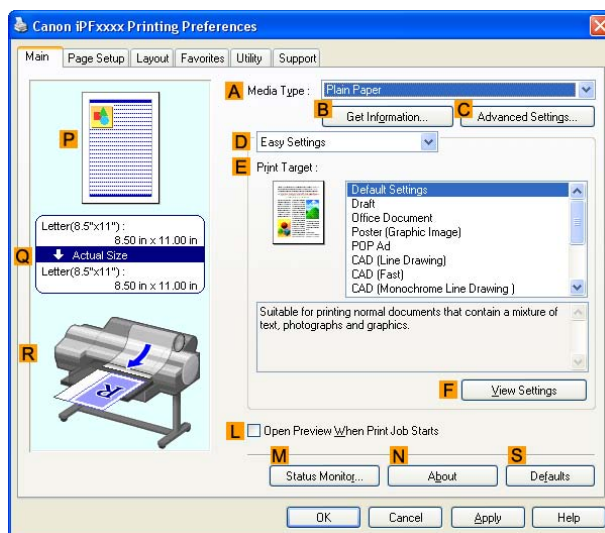
The following settings are available for monochrome printing of line drawings.

Main	Easy Settings	Print Target	CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)	<p>Settings optimized for monochrome printing of line drawings, such as CAD drawings. When you select Easy Settings > Print Target > CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing), color is printed as shades of gray using black ink, for monochrome printing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This mode may not be available for all types of paper. • Trace amounts of color ink are also used, to enhance the paper adhesion of black ink. <p>Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.252) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.254) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.256)</p>
	Advanced Settings	Color Mode	Monochrome (BK ink)	<p>Monochrome printing, using black ink. Color is printed in grayscale. Use this mode when printing CAD drawings or similar line drawings in monochrome.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This mode may not be available for all types of paper. • Trace amounts of color ink are also used, to enhance the paper adhesion of black ink. <p>Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Windows) (→P.236) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS X) (→P.238) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS 9) (→P.241)</p>
			Monochrome Bitmap	<p>All colors except white are printed in black. Colors are shown not in grayscale but solid black. Use this mode to print documents with fine color lines that might be difficult to distinguish unless printed in black, or to print sharp black lines when making copies of diazo prints.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This mode may not be available for all types of paper. • Trace amounts of color ink are also used, to enhance the paper adhesion of black ink.

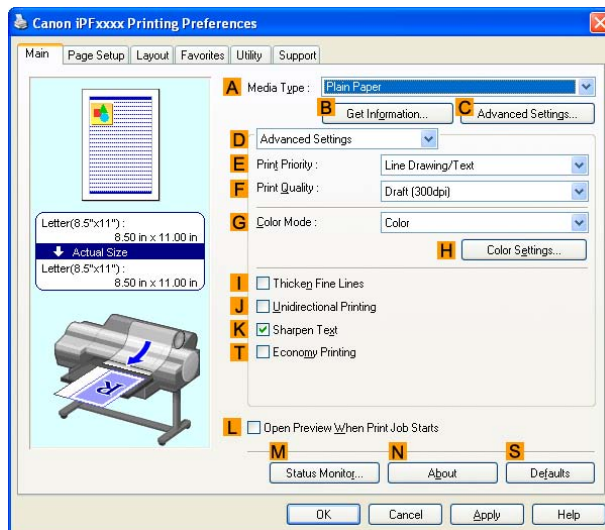
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Line Drawing/Text** in the **E Print Priority** list.
7. Click **High (1200dpi)** in the **F Print Quality** list.



Note

- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

8. Click **Color (CAD)** in the **G Color Mode** list.

9. To adjust the color, click **H Color Settings**.

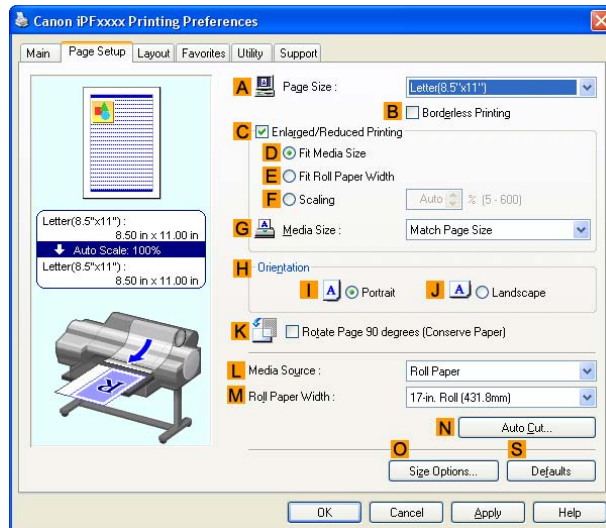


Note

- For instructions on adjusting color, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

10. Select the **K Sharpen Text** check box.

11. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



12. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Media Source**, and so on.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



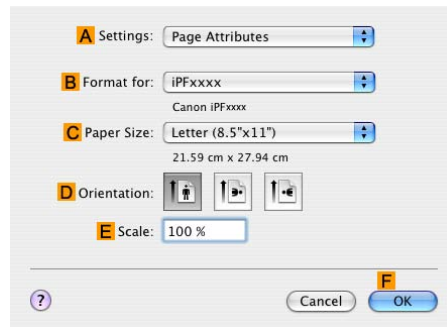
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

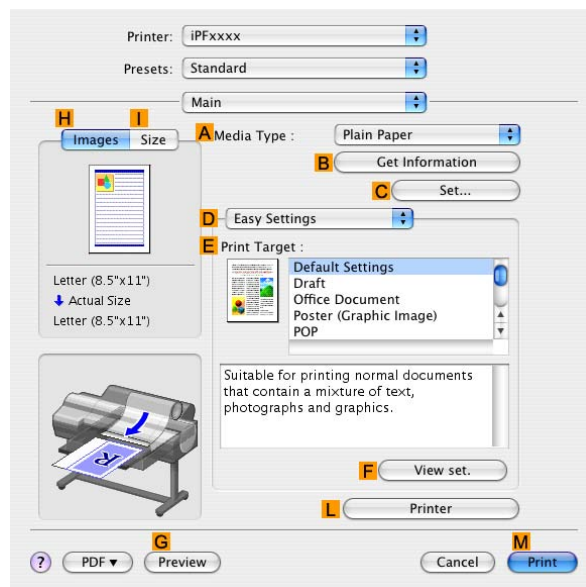
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

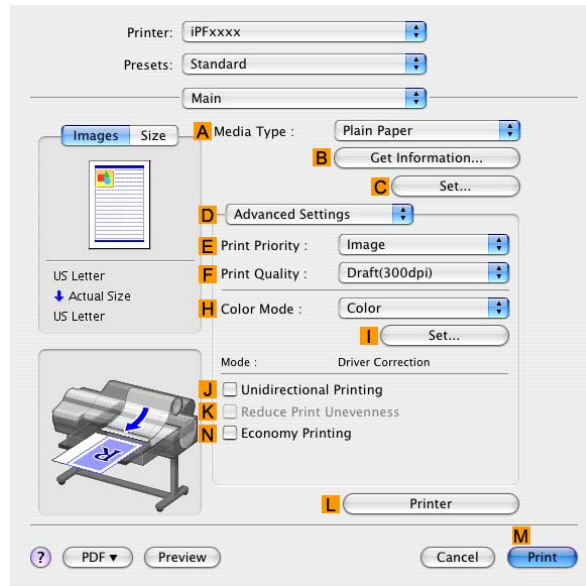


2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Line Drawing** in the **E Print Priority** list.

10. Click **High(1200dpi)** in the **F Print Quality** list.



Note

- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

11. Click **Color (CAD)** in the **H Color Mode** list.

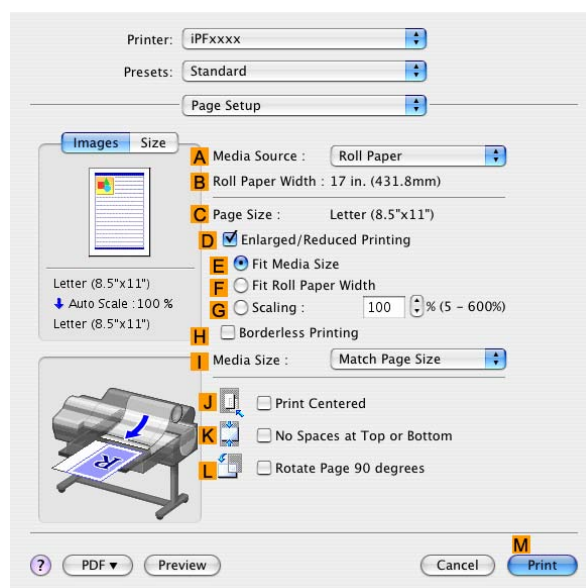
12. To adjust the color, click **I Set**.



Note

- For instructions on adjusting color, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of **A Media Source** and **C Page Size**.
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



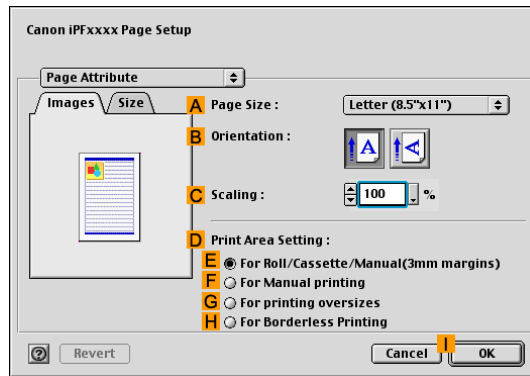
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

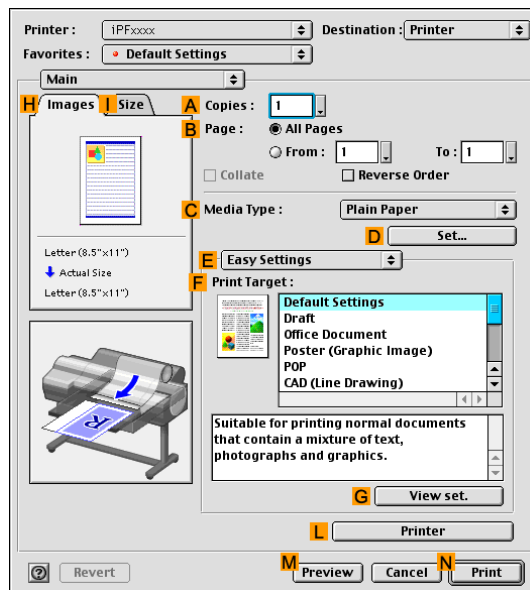
☐ Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

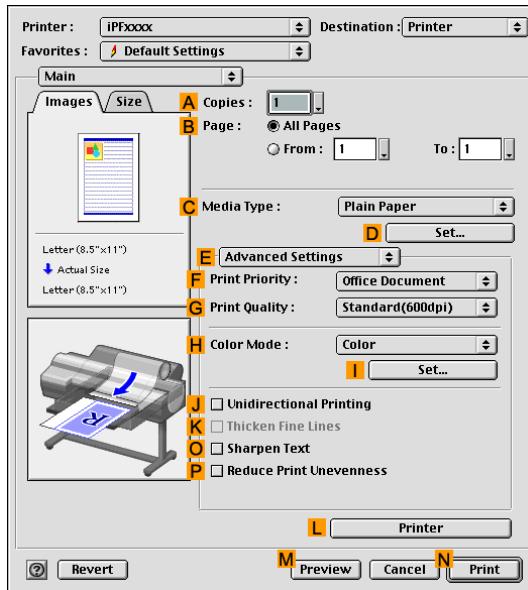


3. Choose the original size in the **A Page Size** list.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **E Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Line Drawing** in the **F Print Priority** list.

10. Click **High(1200dpi)** in the **G Print Quality** list.



Note

- Options displayed in the **G Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

11. Click **Color (CAD)** in the **H Color Mode** list.

12. To adjust the color, click **I Set**.

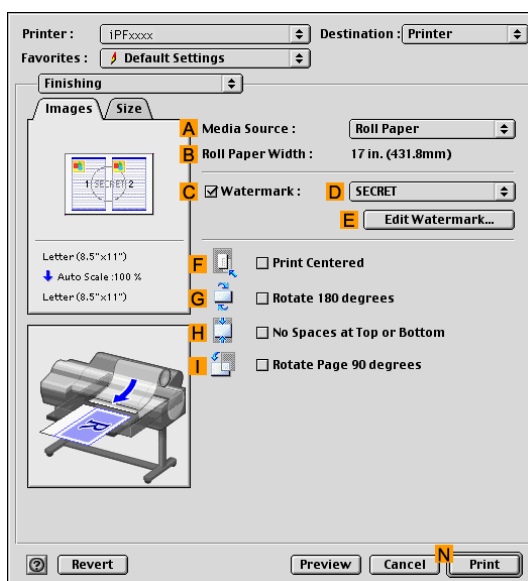


Note

- For instructions on adjusting color, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

13. Select the **O Sharpen Text** check box.

14. Access the **Finishing** pane.



- 15.** Confirm the selection in **A Media Source**.
- 16.** Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



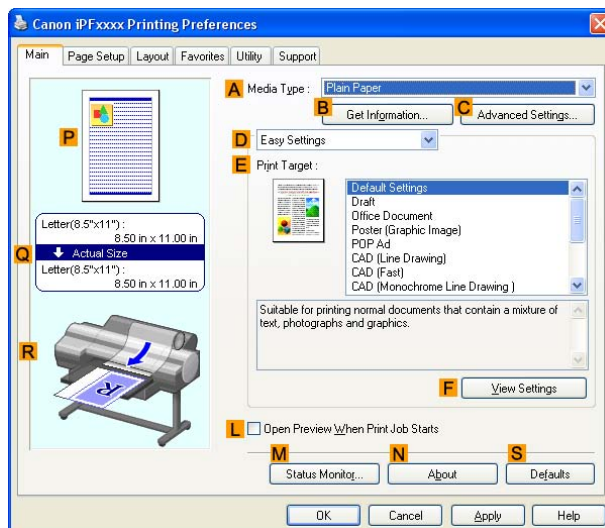
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

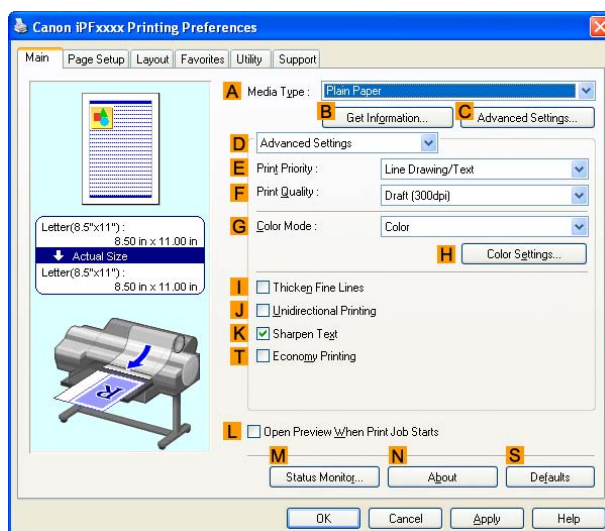
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

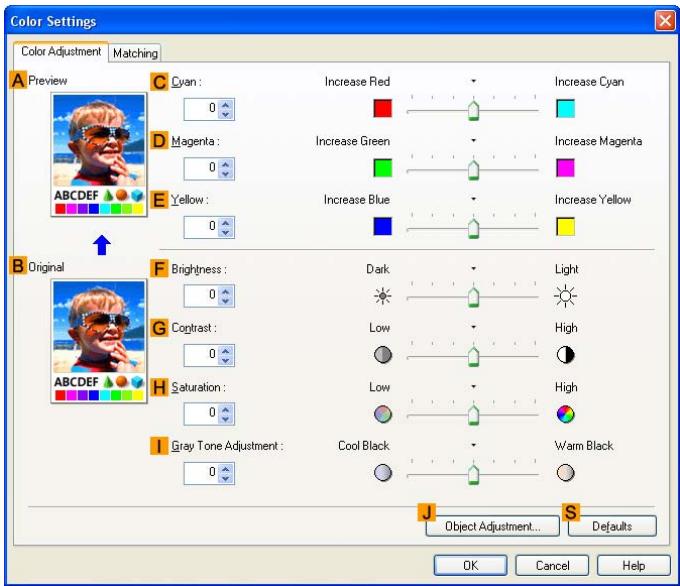


4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Color** in the **G Color Mode** list.

7. Click **H Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

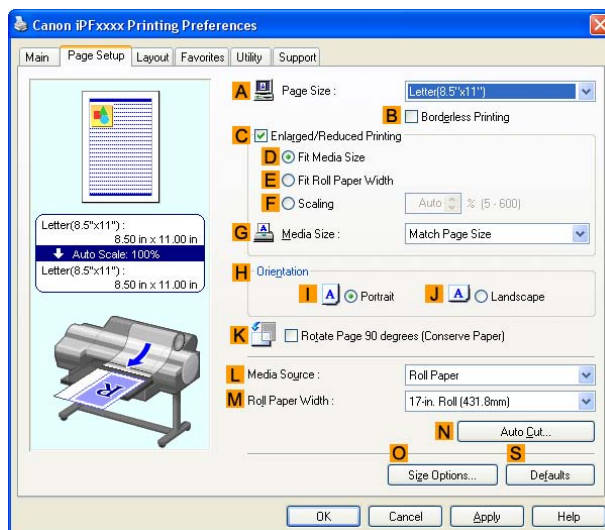


8. On the **Color Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
C Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
H Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
I Gray Tone Adjustment	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Media Source**, and so on.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



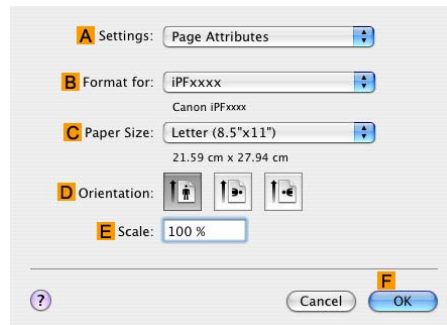
Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

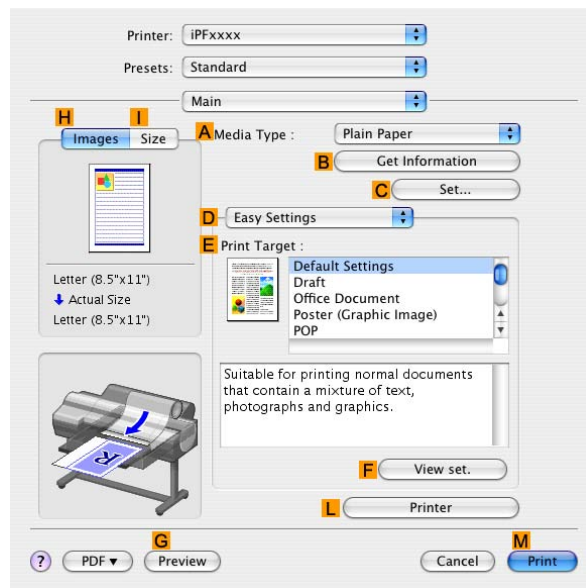
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

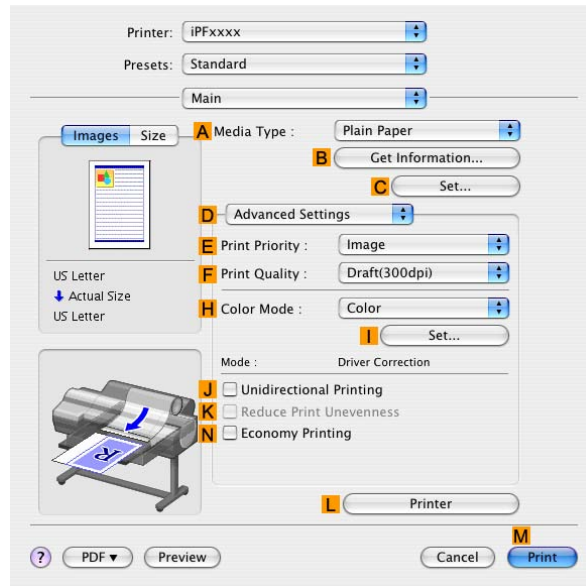


2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



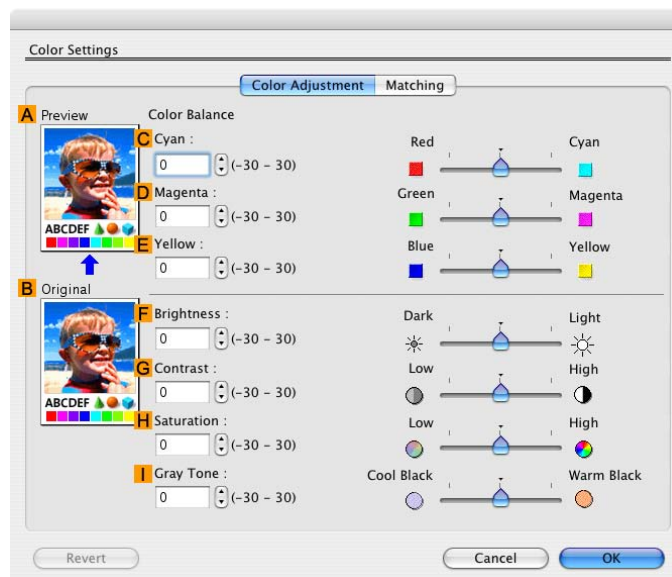
7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Color** in the **H Color Mode** list.

10. Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

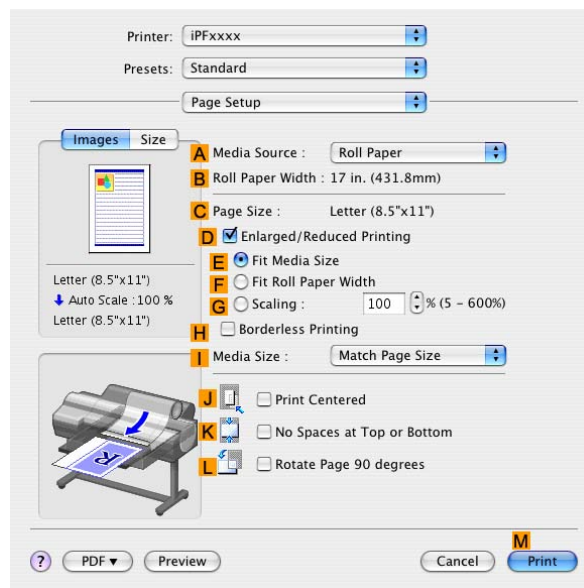


11. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
C Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
H Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
I Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of **A Media Source** and **C Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



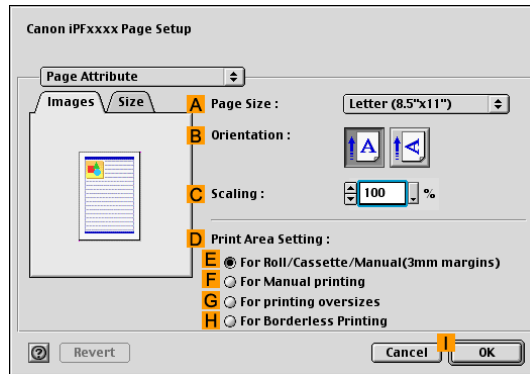
Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

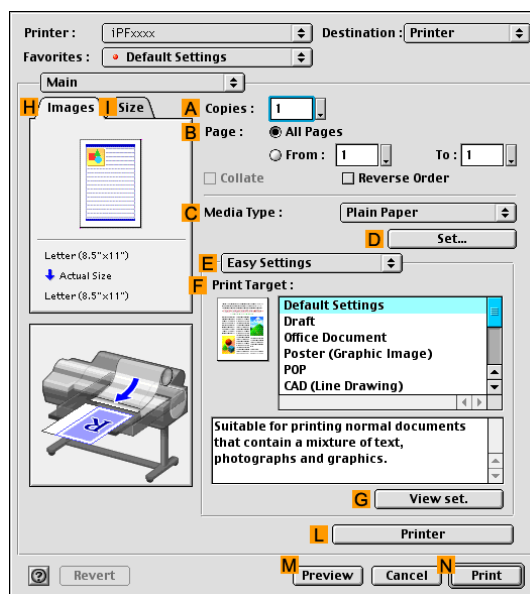
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

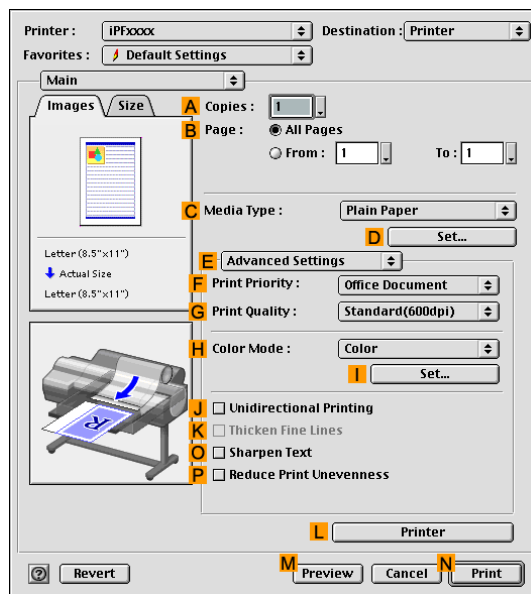


3. Choose the original size in the **A Page Size** list.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



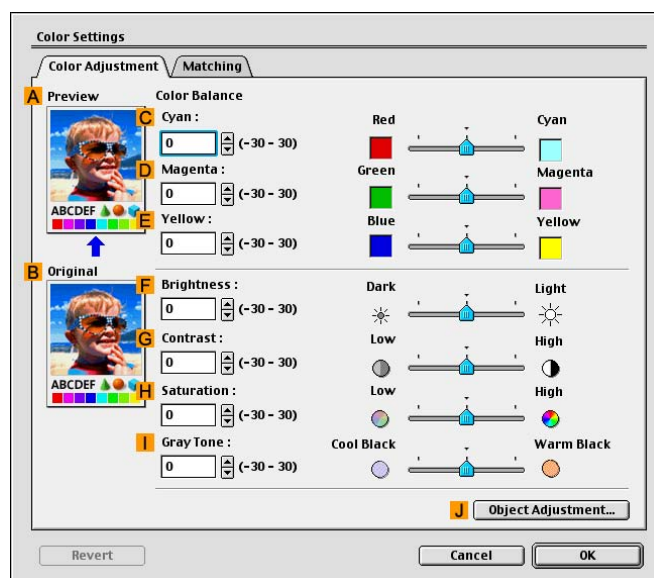
7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **E** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Color** in the **H** **Color Mode** list.

10. Click **I** **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

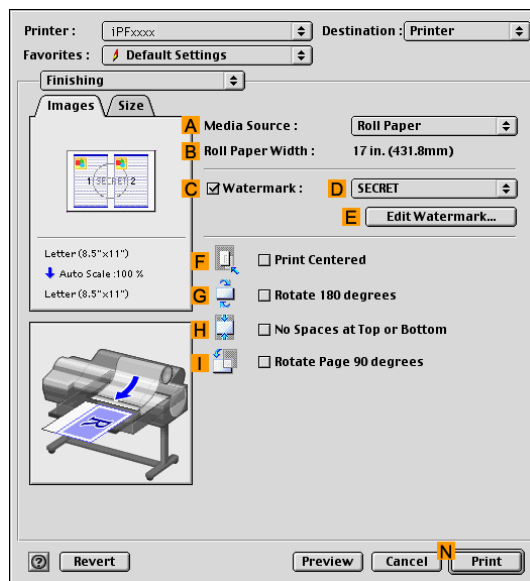


11. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
C Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
H Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
I Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Finishing** pane.



14. Confirm the selection in **A Media Source**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



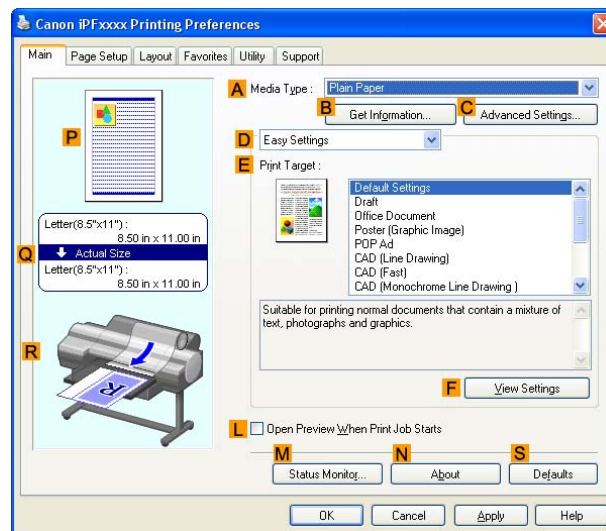
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

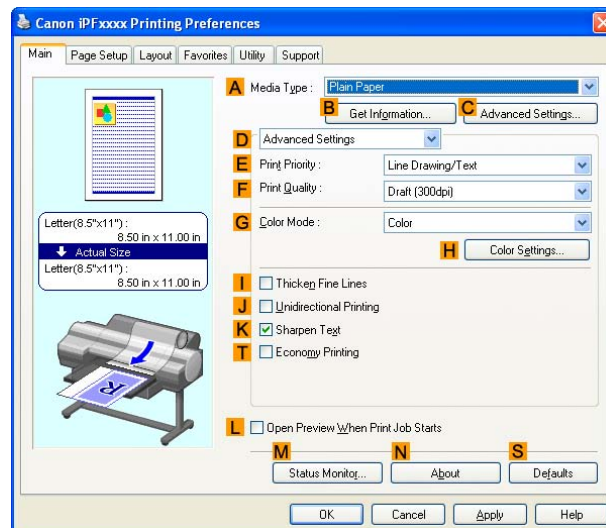
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



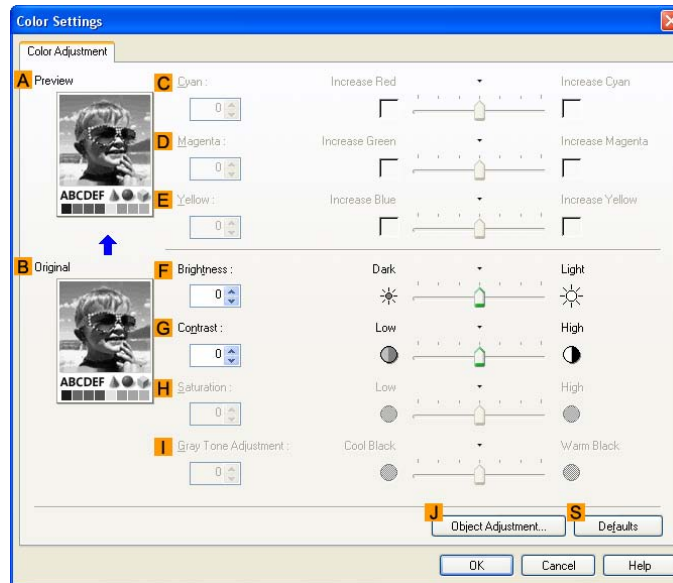
6. Click **Monochrome** in the **G Color Mode** list.



Note

- **Monochrome (BK ink)** may not be available for all types of paper.

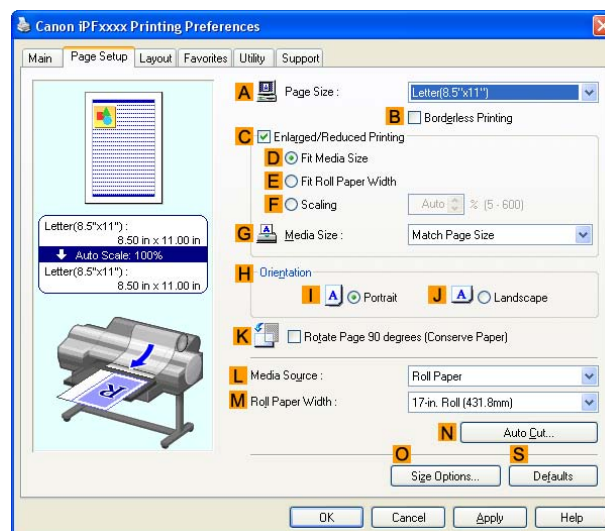
7. Click **H Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



8. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings on the **Color Settings** sheet pane.

9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Media Source**, and so on.

12. Confirm the print settings and start printing.



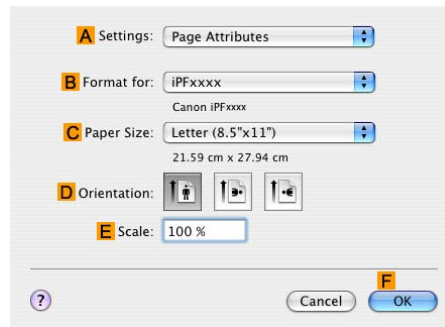
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

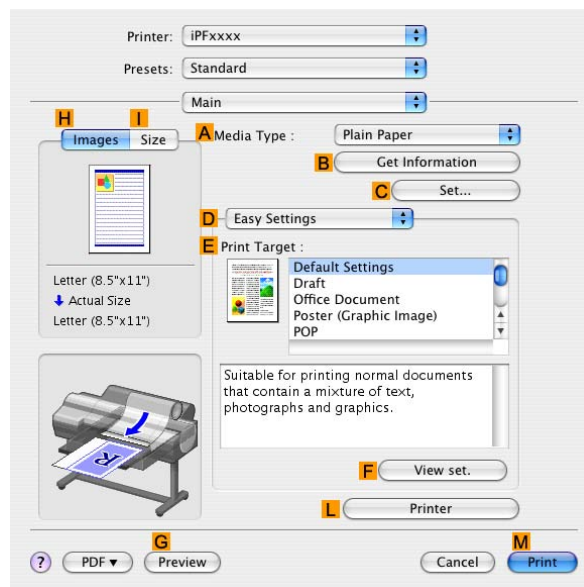
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

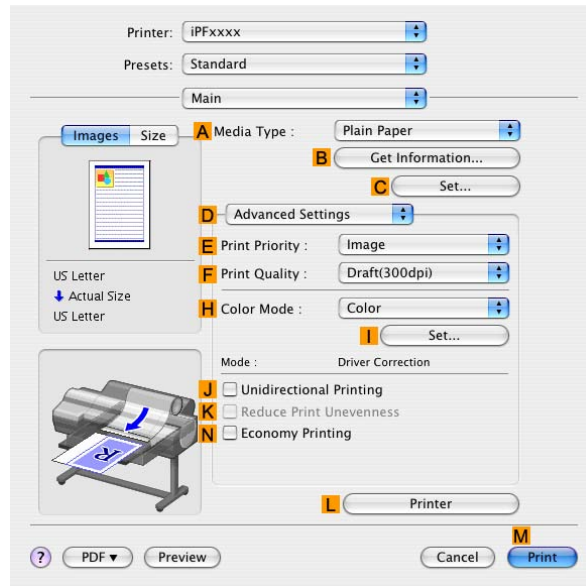


2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



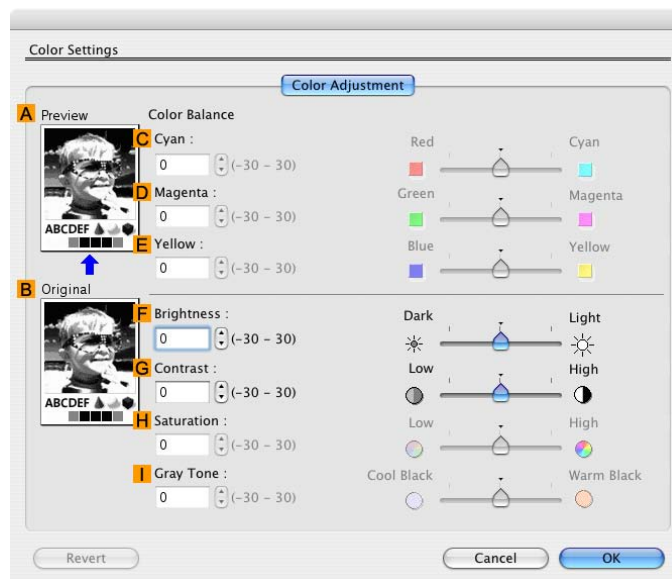
9. Click **Monochrome** in the **H Color Mode** list.



Note

- **Monochrome (BK ink)** may not be available for all types of paper.

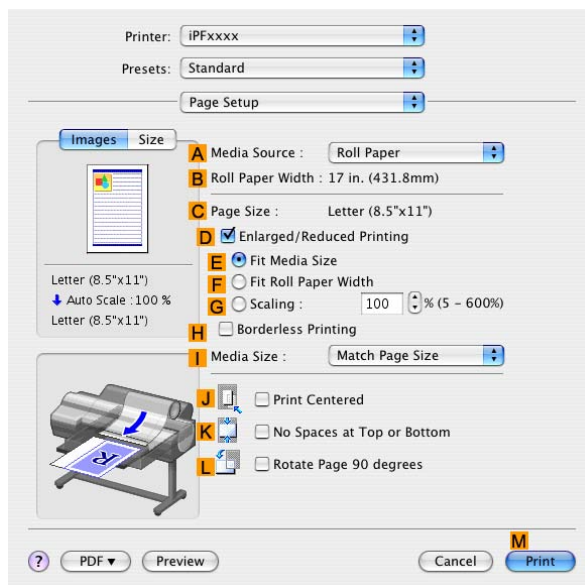
10. Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



11. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings on the **Color Settings** pane.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of **A Media Source** and **C Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



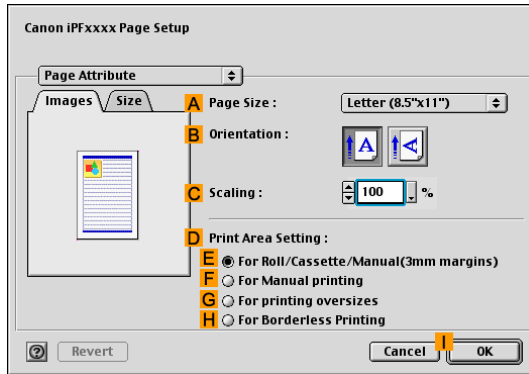
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

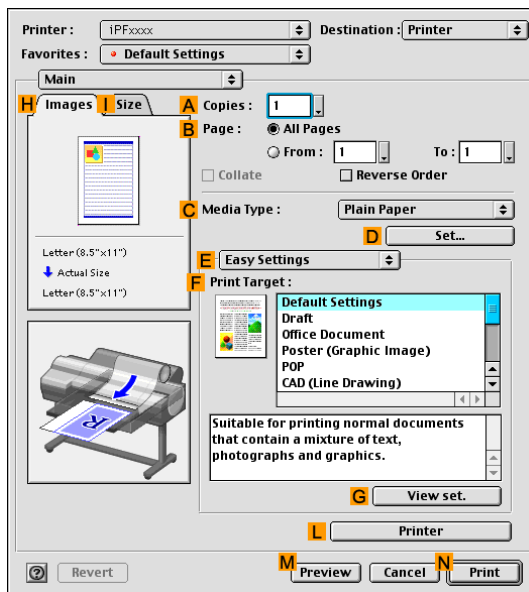
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

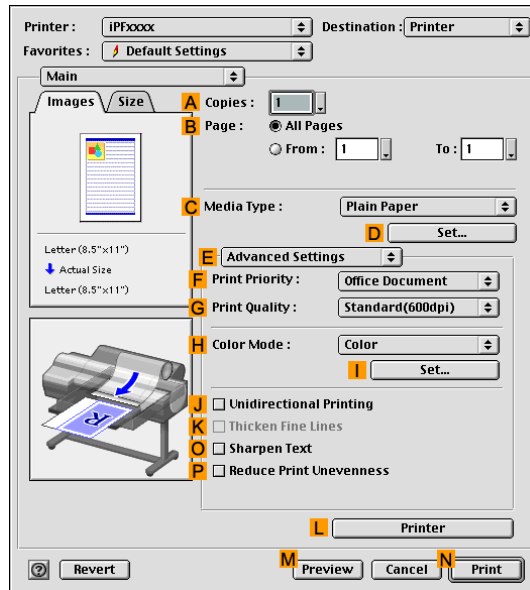


3. Choose the original size in the **A Page Size** list.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **E Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



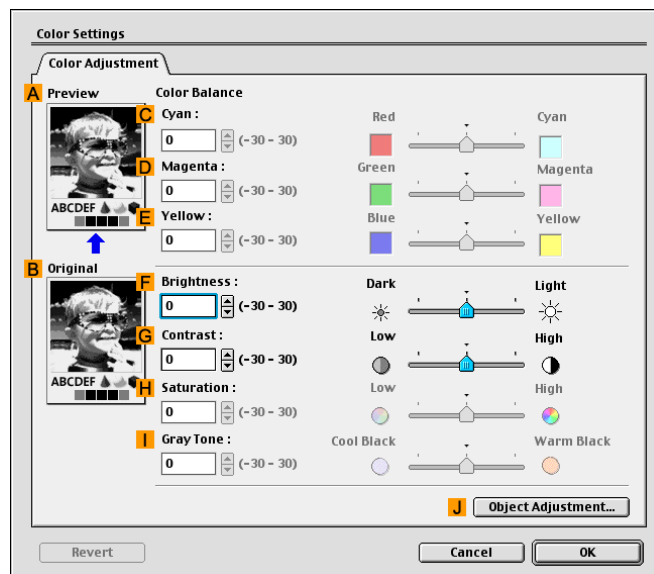
9. Click **Monochrome** in the **H Color Mode** list.



Note

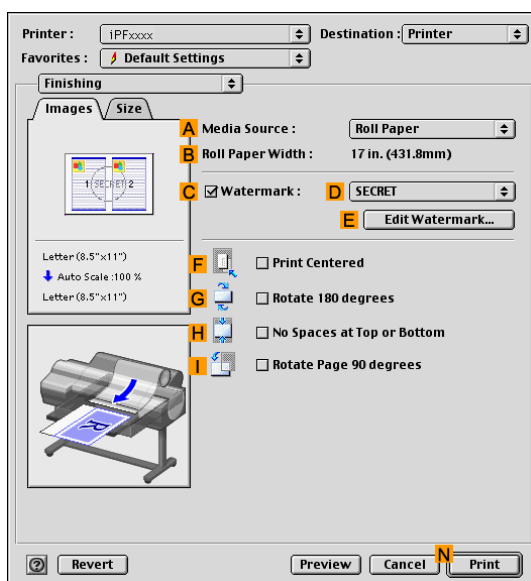
- **Monochrome (BK ink)** may not be available for all types of paper.

10. Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



11. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings on the **Color Settings** pane.

12. Access the **Finishing** pane.



13. Confirm the selection in **A Media Source**.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



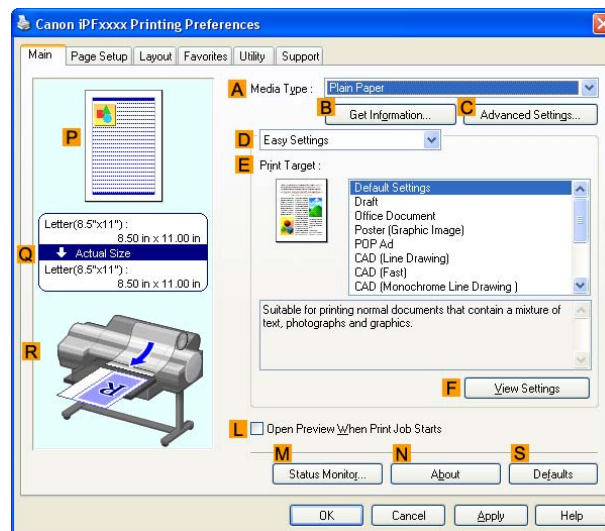
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

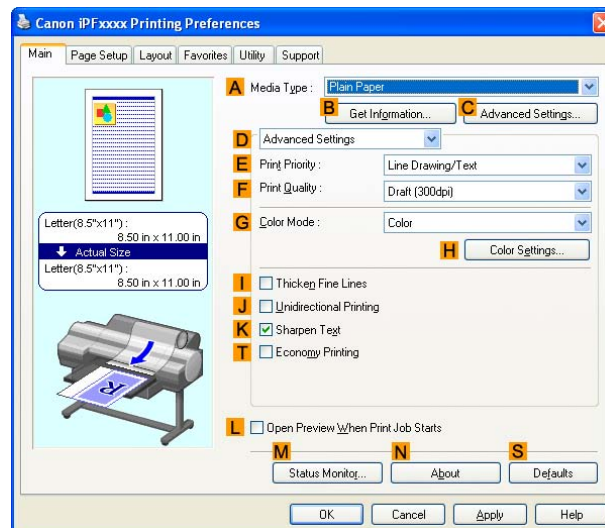
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

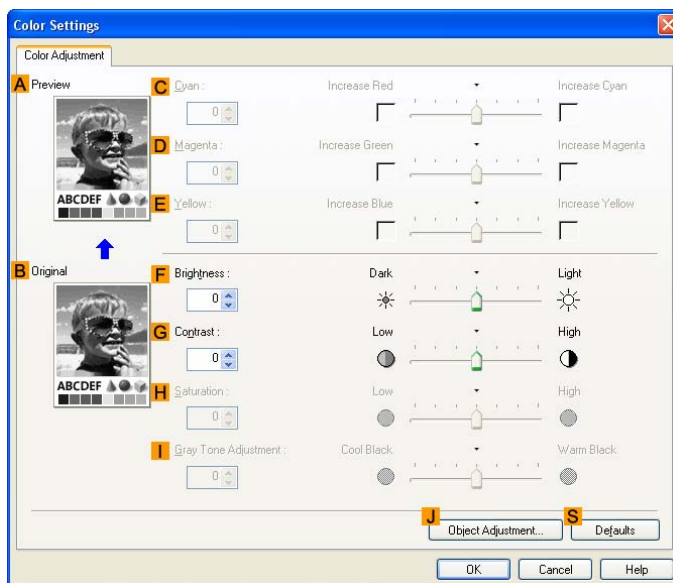


4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

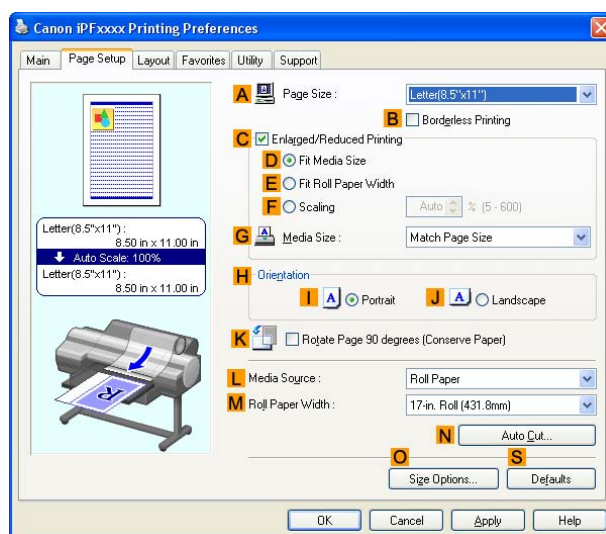


6. Click **Monochrome** in the **G Color Mode** list.

7. Click **H Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



8. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings for monochrome printing on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.
9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Media Source**, and so on.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



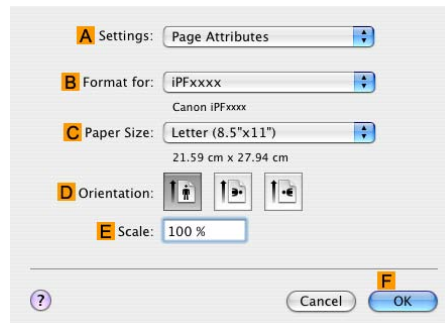
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

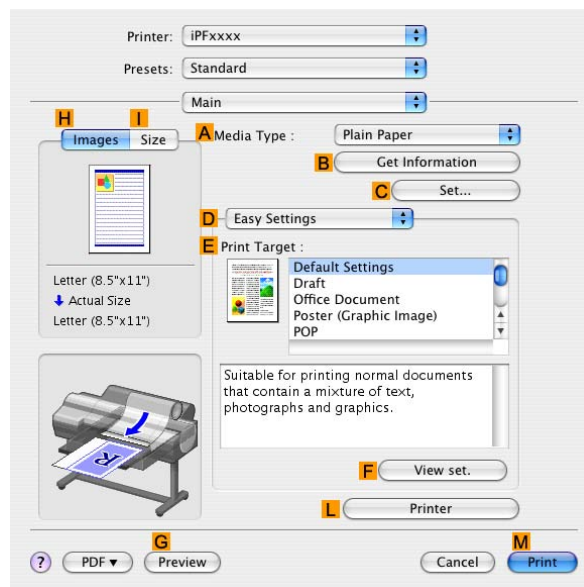
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

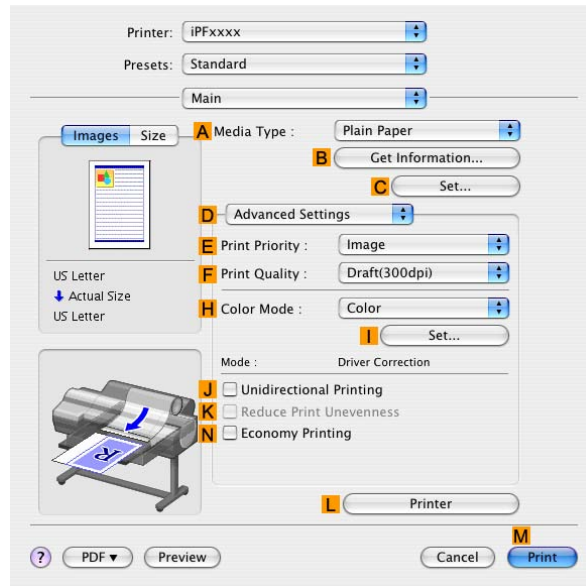


2. Select the print target in the **B Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



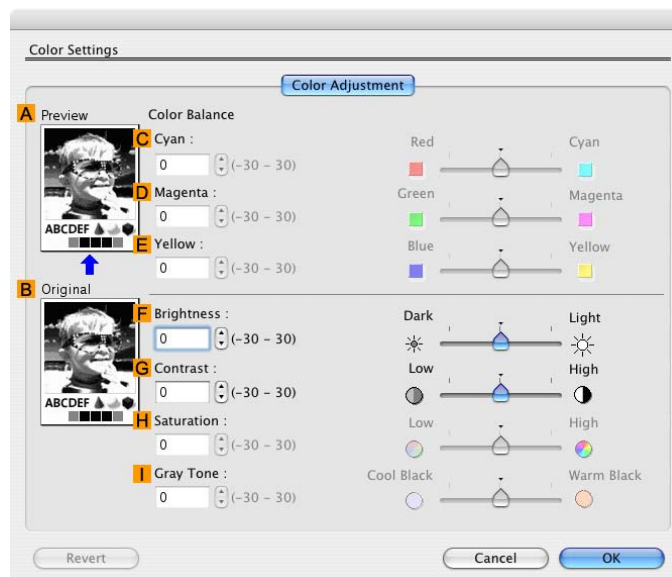
7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Monochrome** in the **H Color Mode** list.

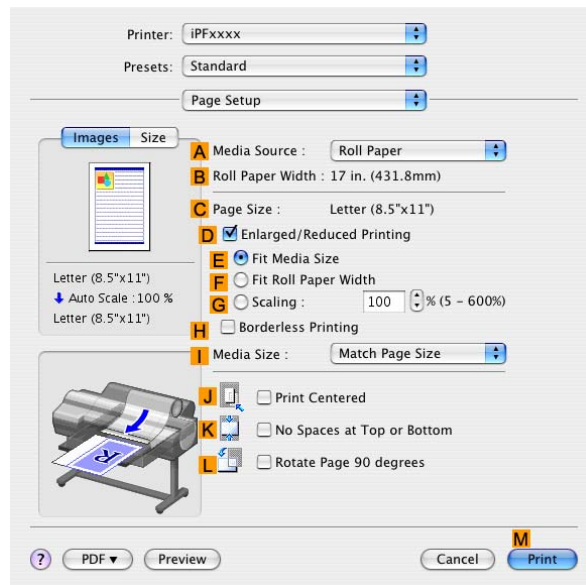
10. Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



11. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings on the **Color Settings** pane.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of **A Media Source** and **C Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



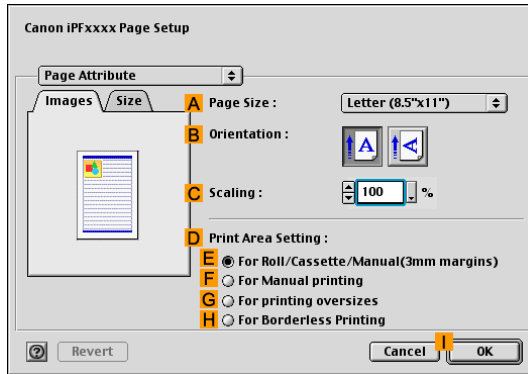
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

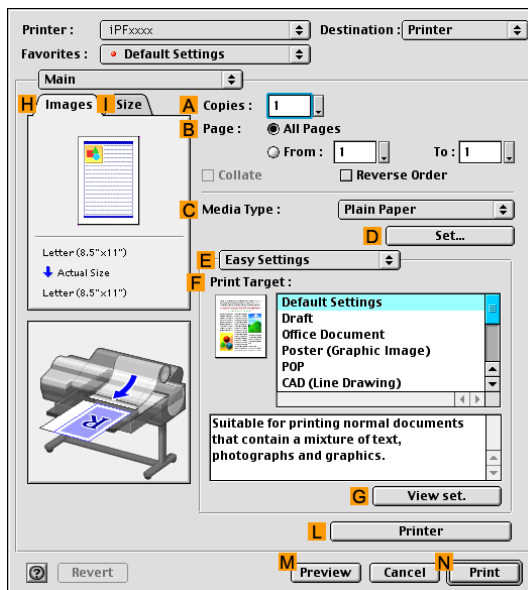
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

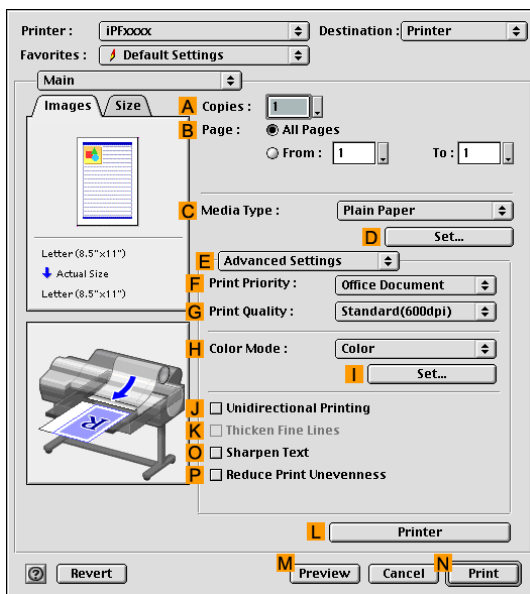


3. Choose the original size in the **A Page Size** list.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



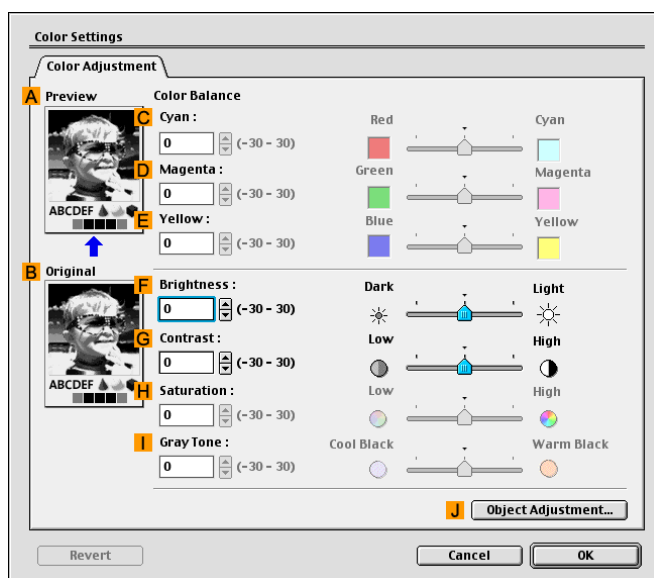
7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **E Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



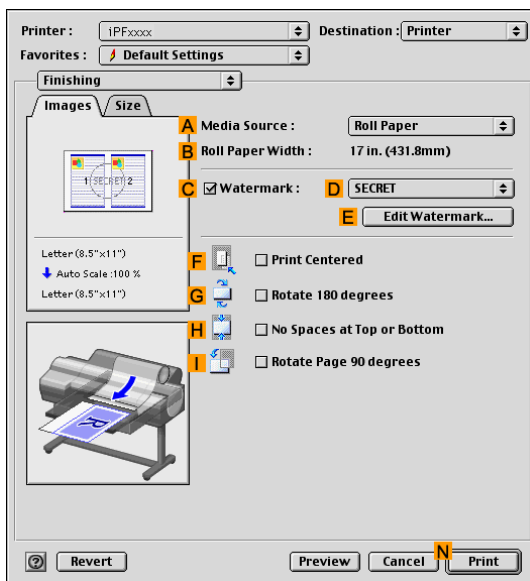
9. Click **Monochrome** in the **H Color Mode** list.

10. Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



11. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings on the **Color Settings** pane.

12. Access the **Finishing** pane.



13. Confirm the selection in **A Media Source**.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

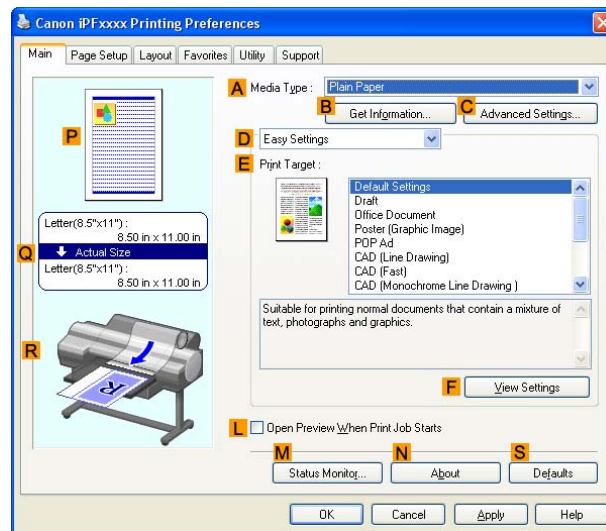
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



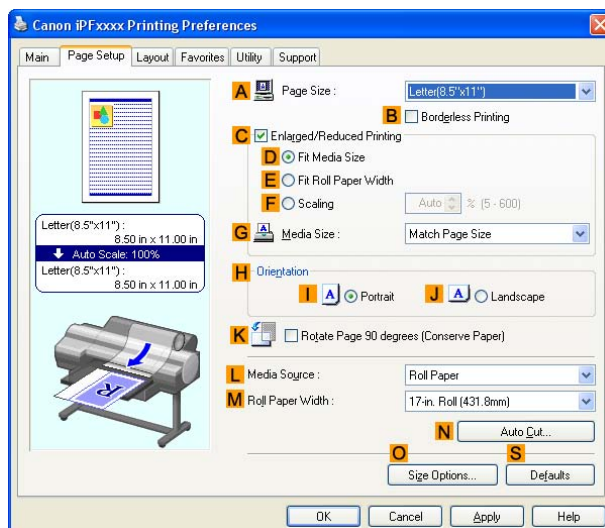
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

8. Click **Cassette** in the **L Media Source** list.

9. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows)". (→P.466)

10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

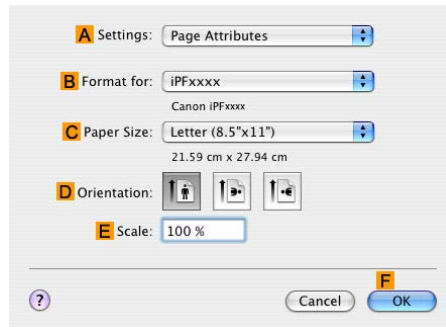
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



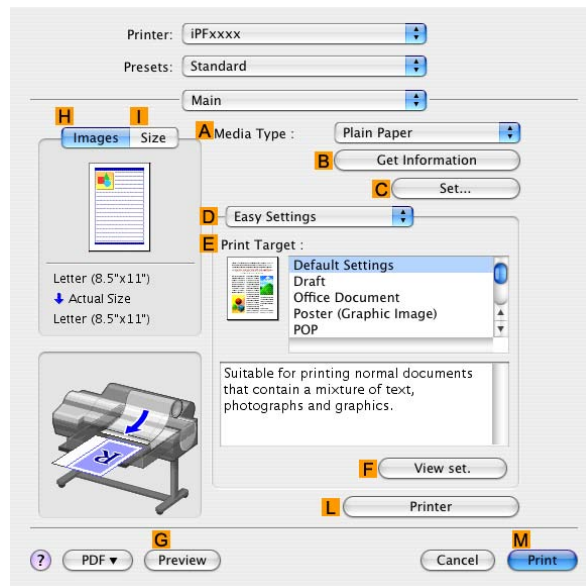
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Plain Paper**.

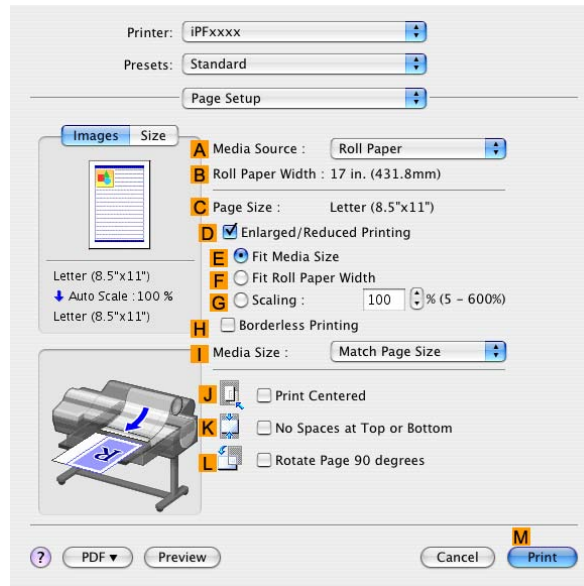
8. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

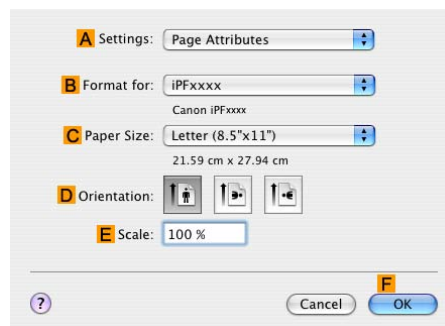
- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View set..**

9. Access the **Page Setup pane.**



10. Click **Cassette in the **A Media Source** list.**

11. Make sure **C Page Size on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A3**.**



12. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.512)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print to start printing.**



Note

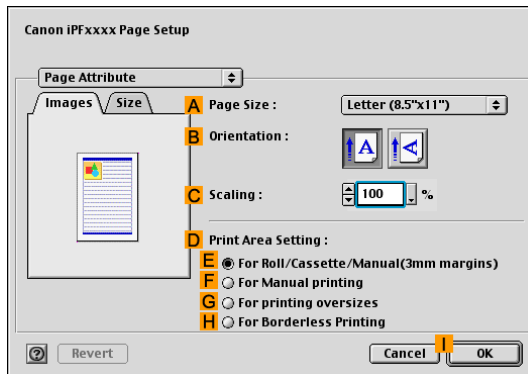
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)

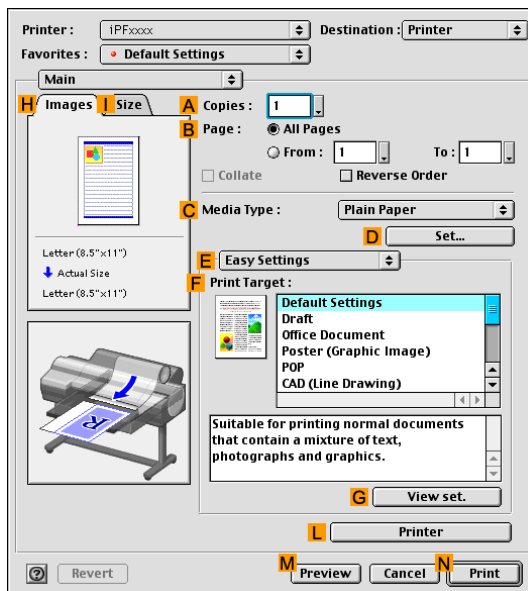
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page Size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



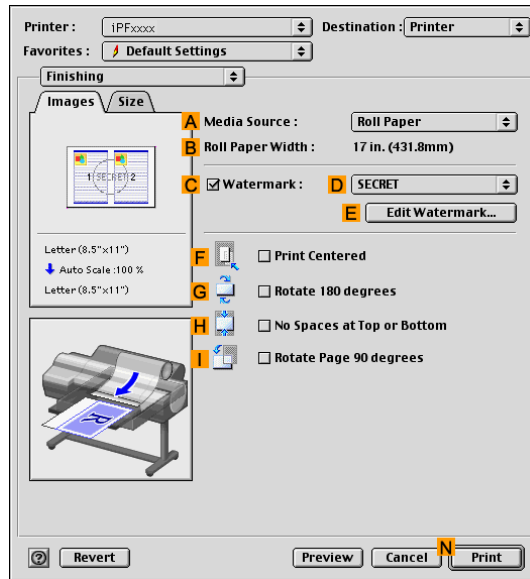
7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that **E Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **F Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **F Print Target** list by clicking **G View set**.

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.534)

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

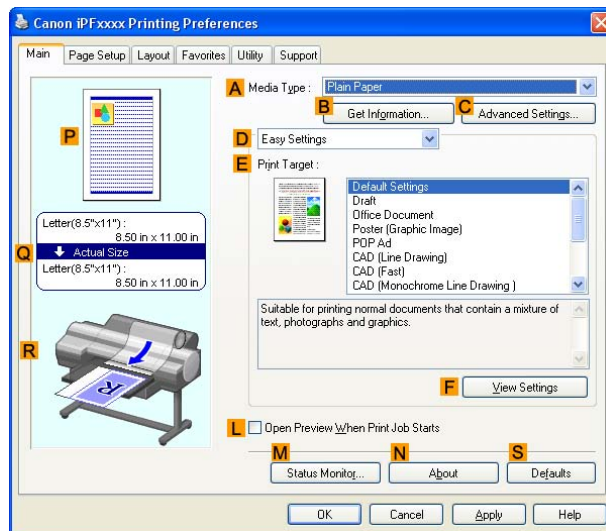
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Printing Office Documents (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing software or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



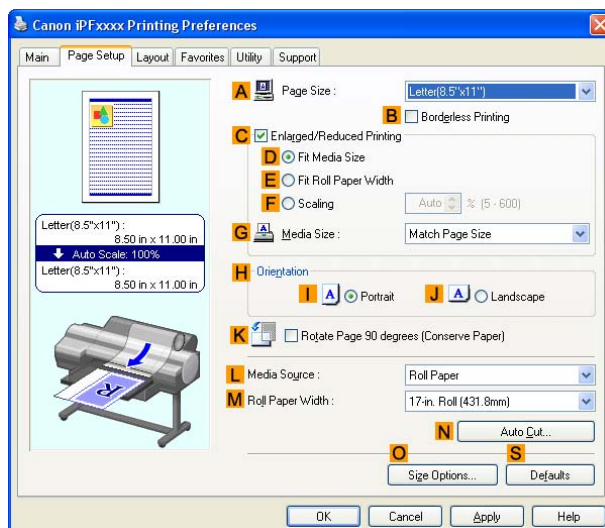
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

8. Click **Cassette** in the **L Media Source** list.

9. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows)". (→P.466)

10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.



Note

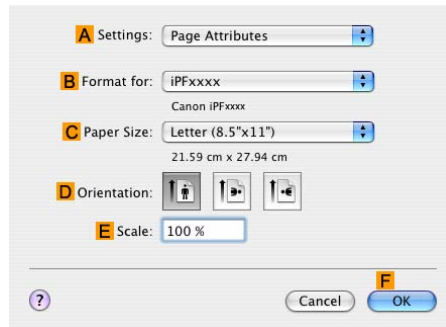
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



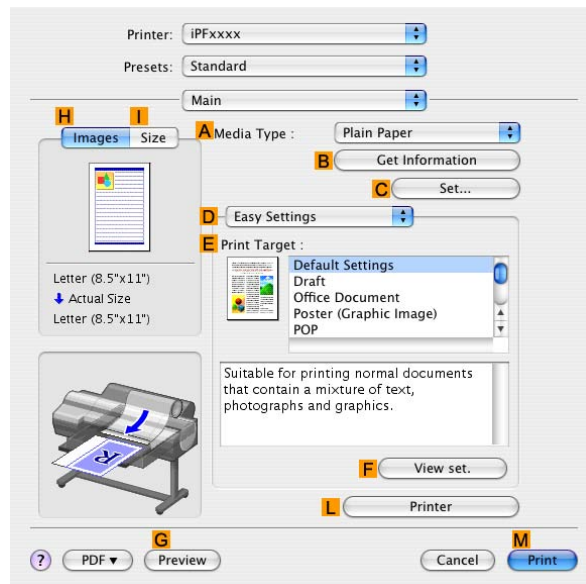
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Plain Paper**.

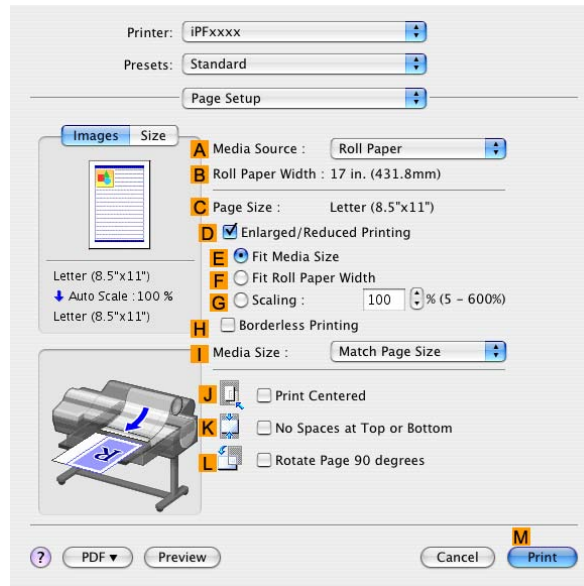
8. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

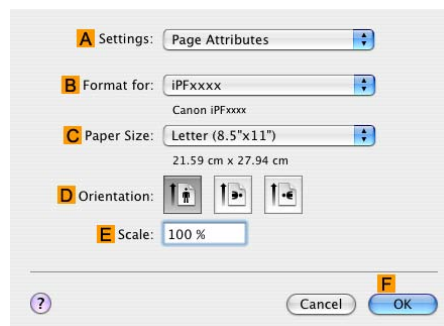
- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View set**.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.512)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.



Note

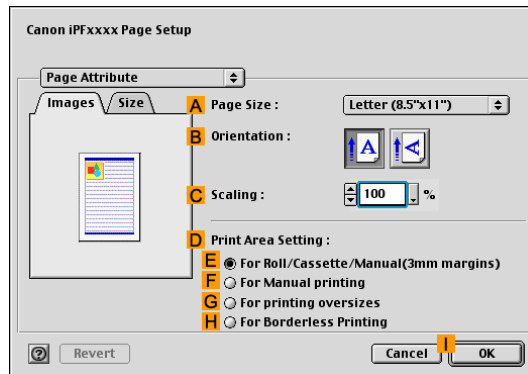
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9)

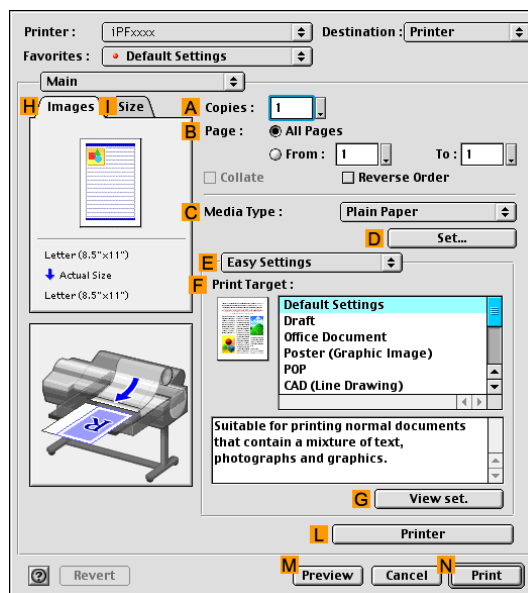
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



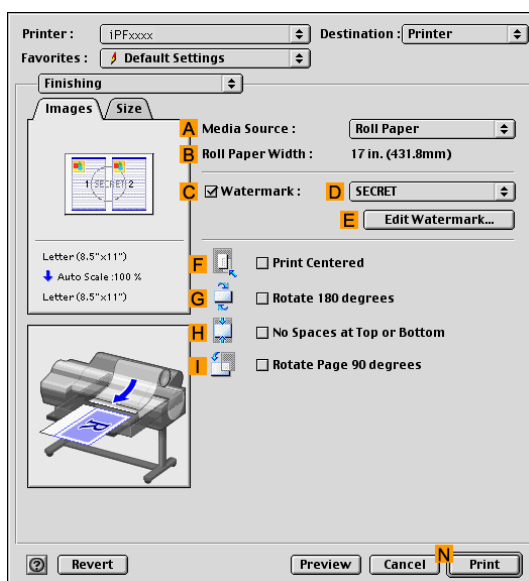
7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that **E Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **F Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **F Print Target** list by clicking **G View set**.

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.534)

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

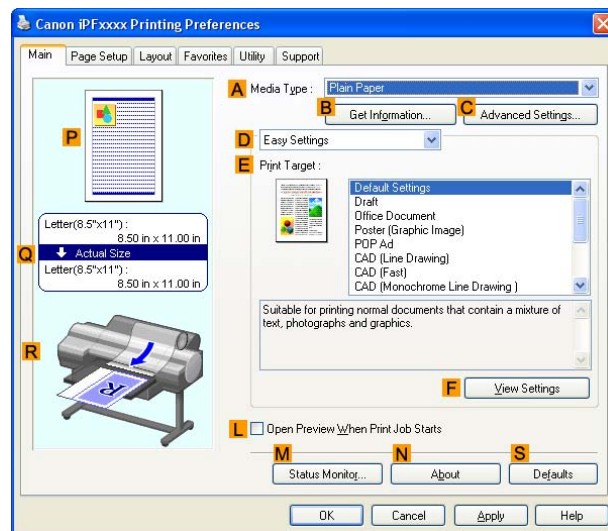
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

■ Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

In the **A Media Type**, choose the type of paper used for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.



Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

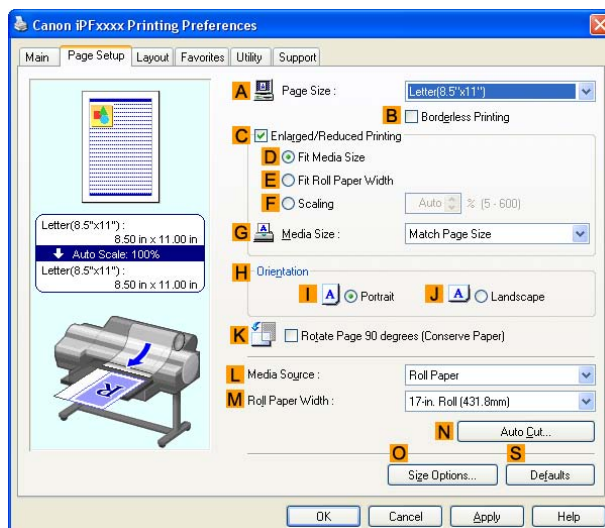
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (from digital camera)** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows)". (→P.466)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

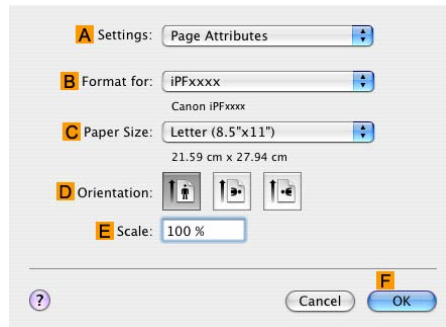
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page Size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper Type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper Width: 10 inches (254 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



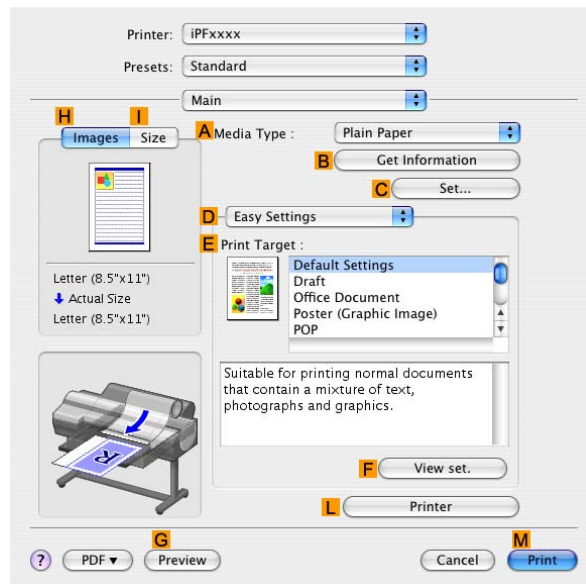
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.



Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

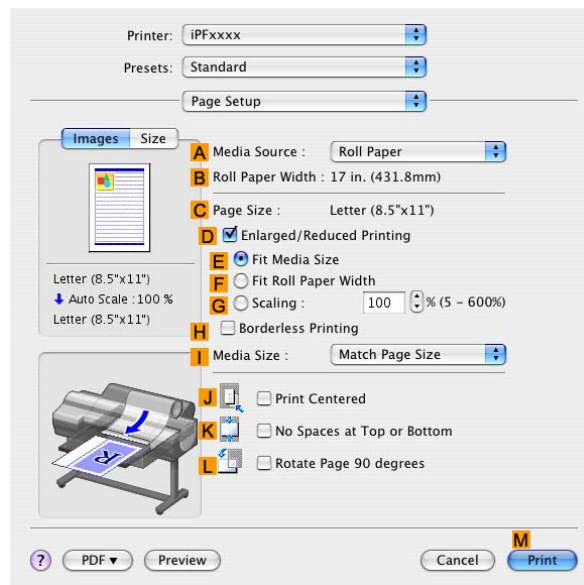
8. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Standard)** or **Photo (Photo Studio)** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see “Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)”. (→P.209)
- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View set**.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



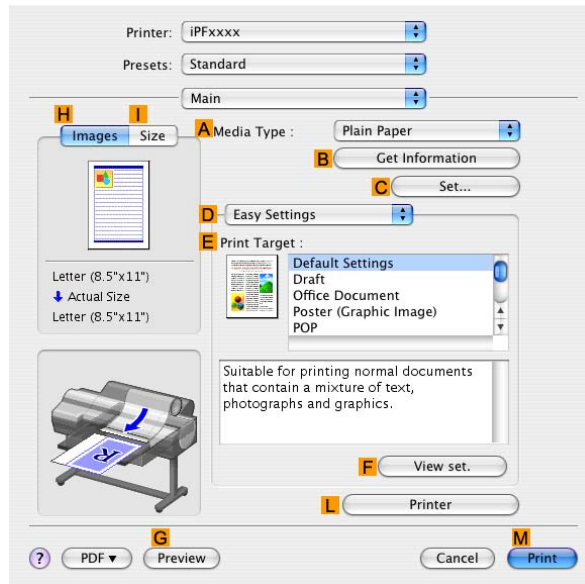
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

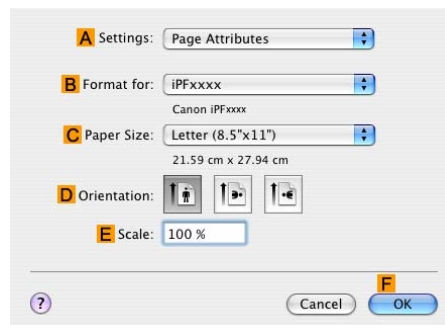


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.512)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

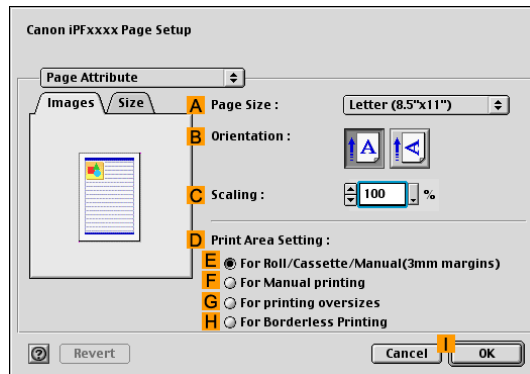
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)

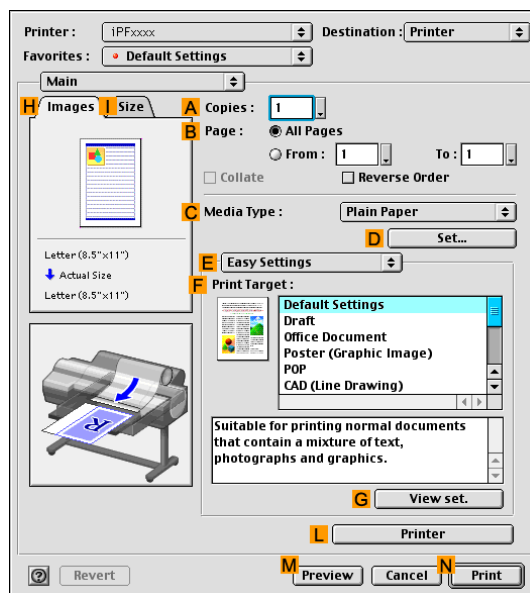
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

In the **C Media Type** setting, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.



Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

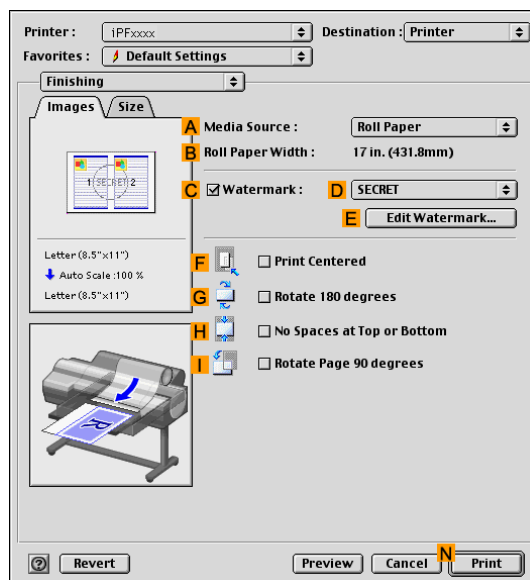
8. After confirming that **E Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (from digital camera)** in the **F Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **F Print Target** list by clicking **G View set**.

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



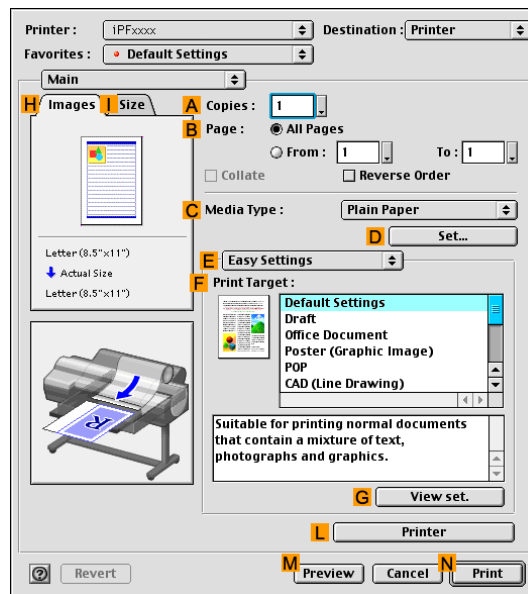
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

- 11.** Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.



Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



- 12.** Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.534)

- 13.** Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Printing enlargements or reductions

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size

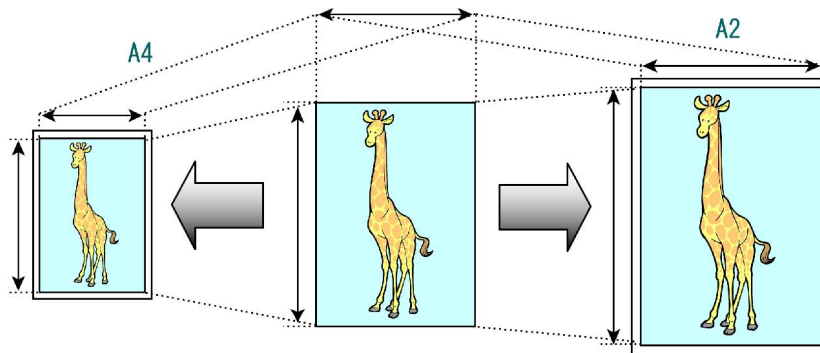
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Media Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.300)
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.302)
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.304)



Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

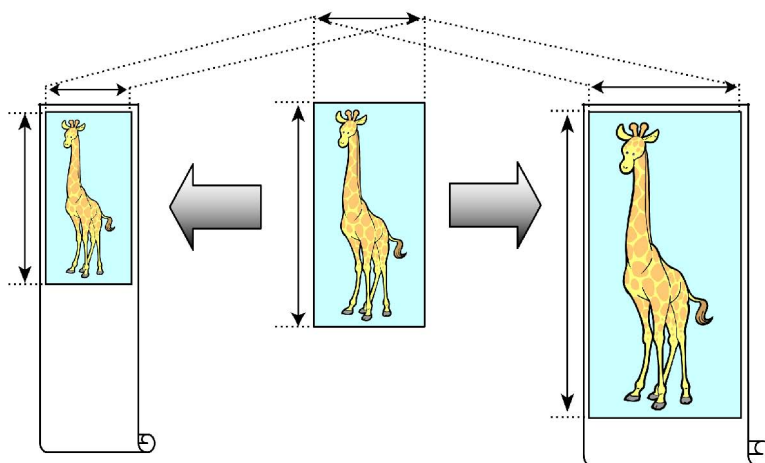
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width, as desired.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.292)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.294)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9) (→P.297)



Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value

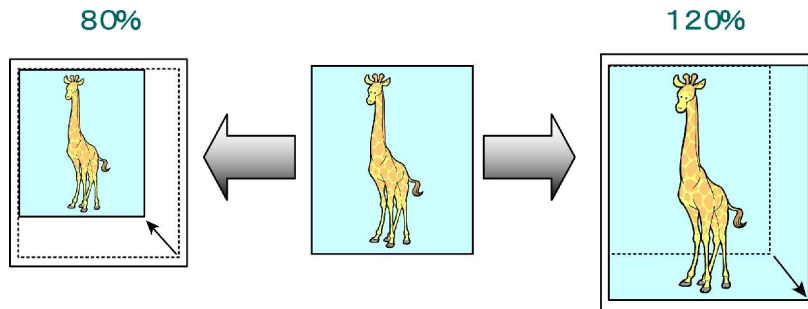
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Scaling

Enlarge or reduce originals by a particular amount, as desired.



For instructions on entering a scaling value to resize originals, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) (→P.283)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) (→P.285)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9) (→P.288)



Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.

For instructions on printing enlargements of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER, refer to the following topic.

- [Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER \(Windows\) \(→P.277\)](#)
- [Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER \(Mac OS X\) \(→P.279\)](#)

Reducing Originals that Exceed the Maximum Supported Size for the Cassette

When **Cassette** is selected as the media source, originals that were created at a size larger than the maximum supported paper size for the cassette can be reduced before printing.

Page Size

Choose the size of the original for printing.

If you select a size in **Page Size** that exceeds the maximum supported size for the cassette, the actual media size is automatically chosen, based on the selected original size.

The actual media size is as follows.

Page Size	Media Size	Actual Media Size
ISO A1	Auto	ISO A2
JIS B2	Auto	JIS B3
22"x34"(ANSI D)	Auto	17"x22"(ANSI C)
24"x36" (ARCH D)	Auto	12"x18" (ARCH B)
18"x24" (ARCH C)	Auto	12"x18" (ARCH B)

For instructions on reducing originals that exceed the maximum supported size for the cassette before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Reducing Originals that Exceed the Maximum Supported Size for the Cassette (Windows) (→P.281)

■ Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.

Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.

This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.

To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.

2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

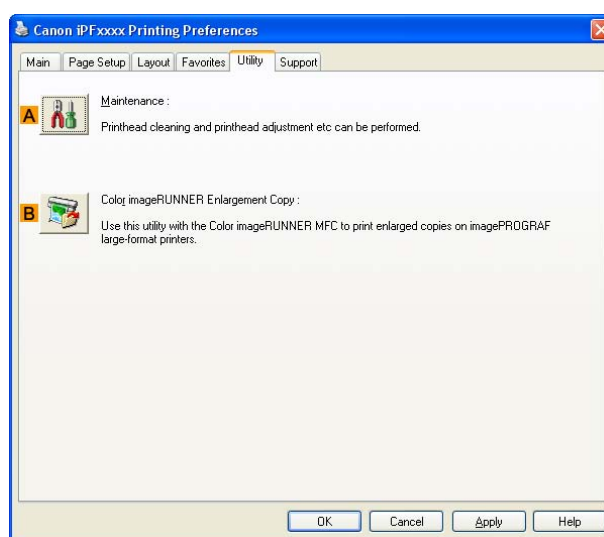
After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.496)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click **B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders. For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.

For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.

Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.



Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.

Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically enlarged according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.

This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.

To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.

2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

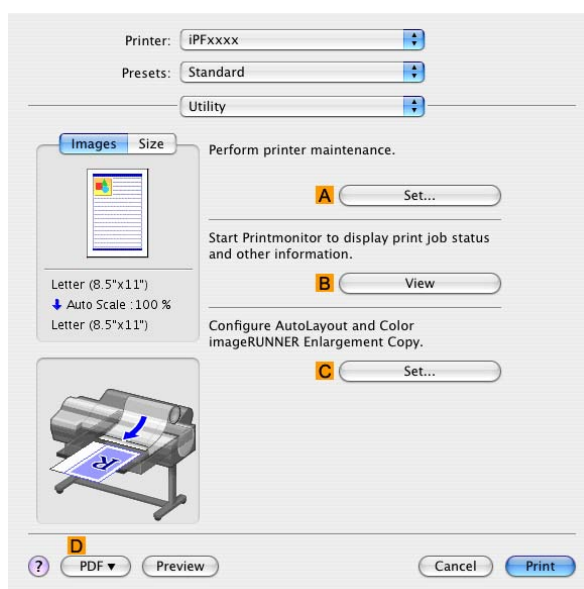
After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. To display the **GARO ExtraKit** dialog box, either double-click the **GARO ExtraKit** icon after navigating to **Applications - Canon Utilities - imagePROGRAF**, or click **C Set** on the **Utility** pane.



2. In **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Add** or **Edit** and either create or modify the hot folder. For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the **GARO ExtraKit** utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.

For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.

Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.



Note

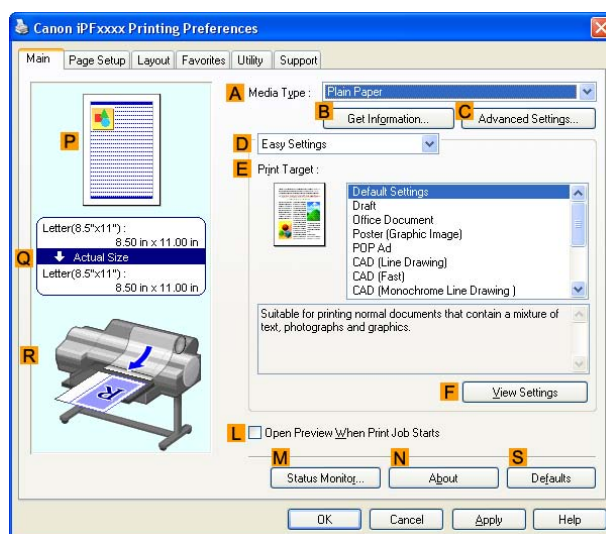
- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Reducing Originals that Exceed the Maximum Supported Size for the Cassette (Windows)

This topic describes how to reduce originals that exceed the maximum supported size for the cassette before printing, based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A1 (594.0 × 8410.0 mm [23.4 × 33.1 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



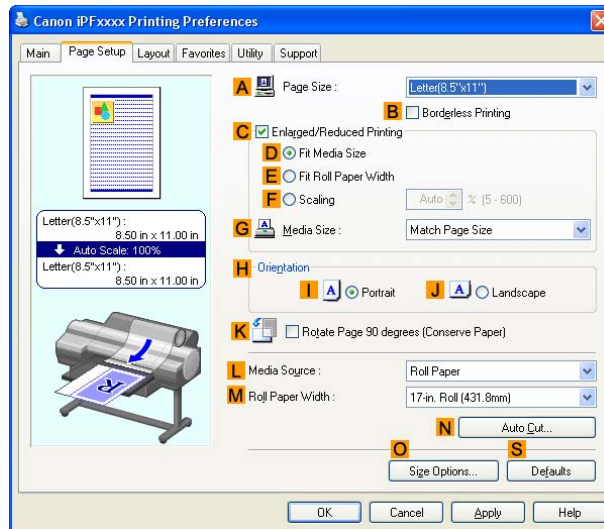
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **ISO A1**.

8. Click **Cassette** in the **L Media Source** list.



Note

- **Auto** is displayed as the media size. The original is reduced to **ISO A2** size before printing. For information about available **Page Size** settings that exceed the maximum supported paper size for the cassette and the corresponding print sizes, see "Reducing Originals that Exceed the Maximum Supported Size for the Cassette". (→P.276)

9. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows)". (→P.466)

10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

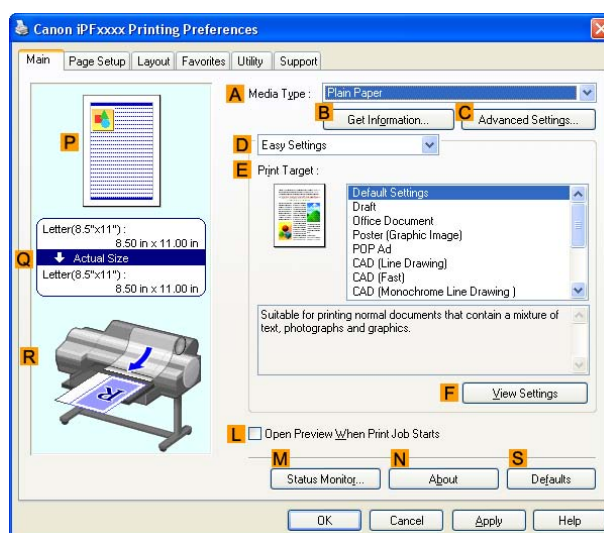
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])



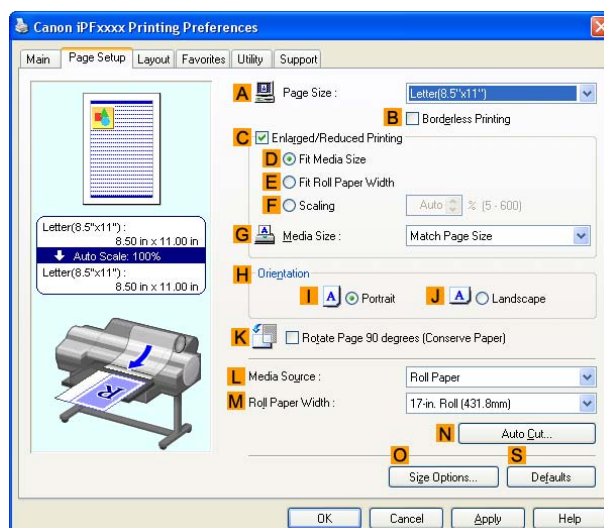
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

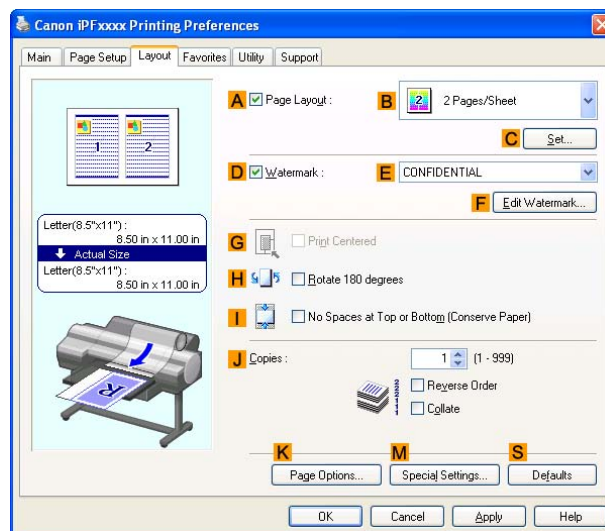


7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
10. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click **ISO A4** in the **G Media Size** list.
12. Click **F Scaling** and enter "120."



Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting **G Print Centered** on the **Layout** sheet.



13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

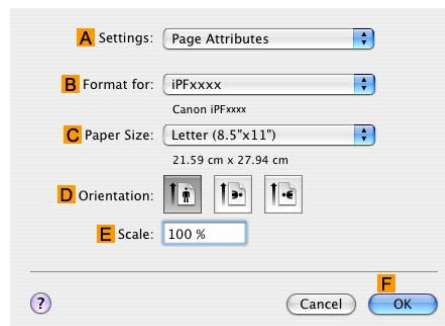
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])



Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



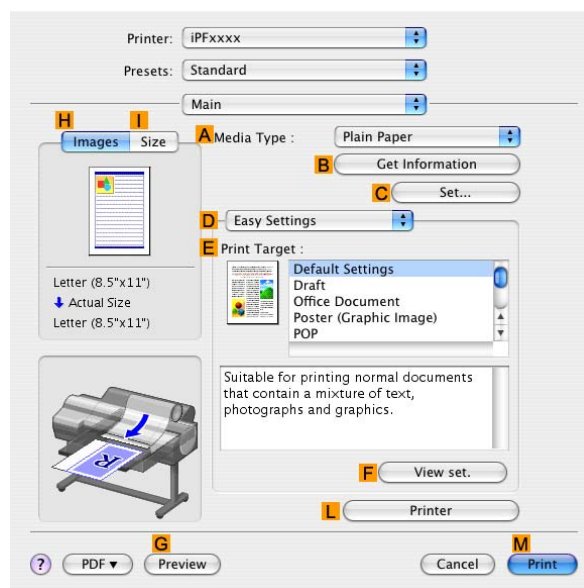
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

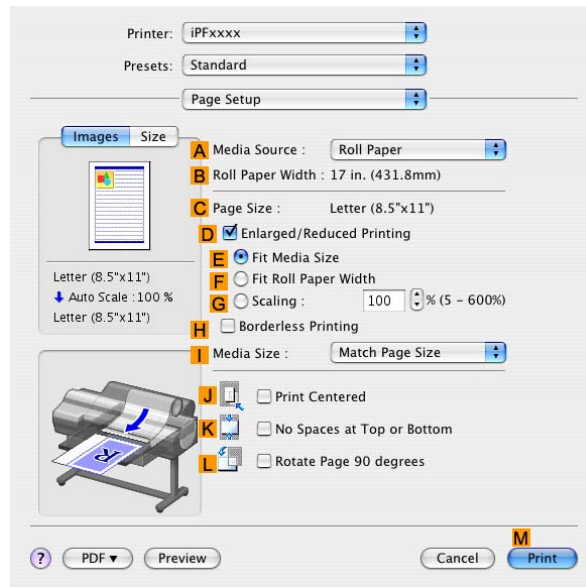
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

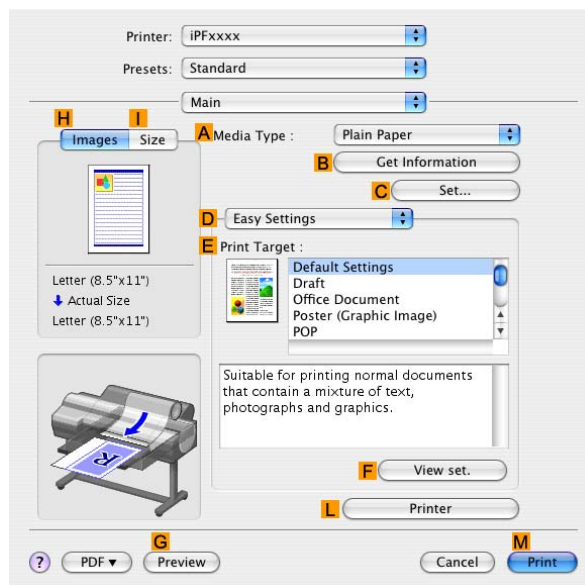


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

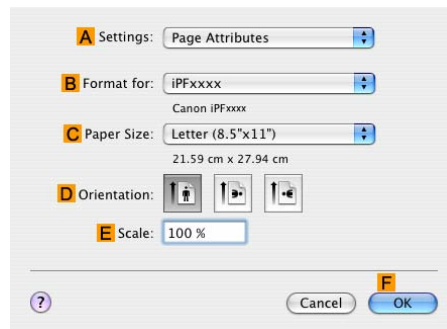


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Click **G Scaling** and enter “120.”



Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting the **J Print Centered** check box.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

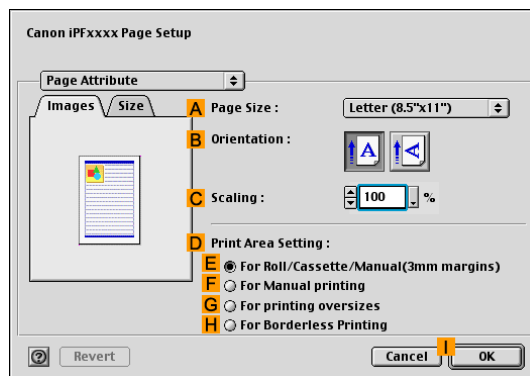
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])



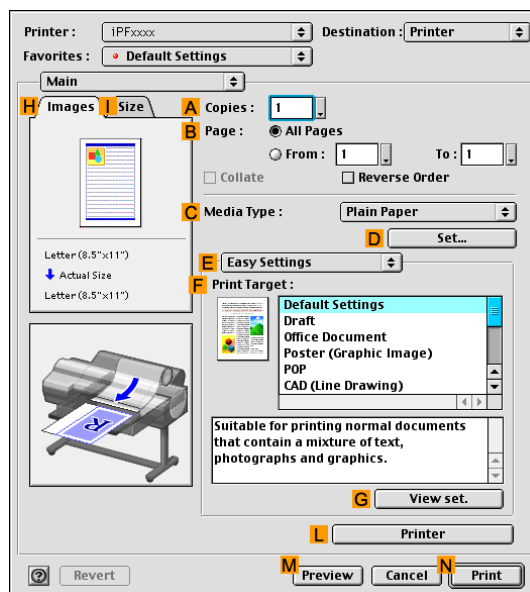
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

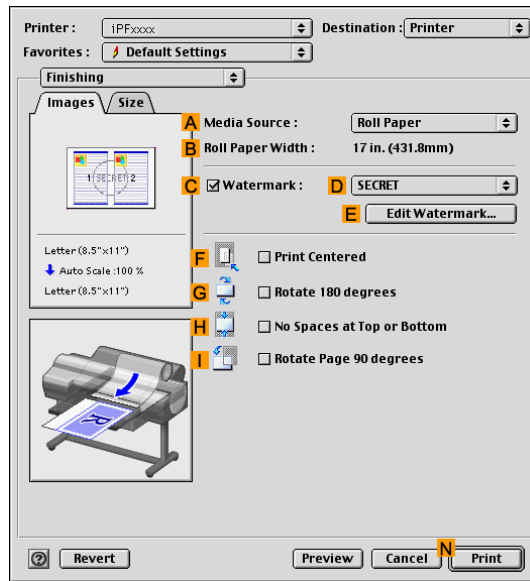
1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the **F Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Finishing** pane.

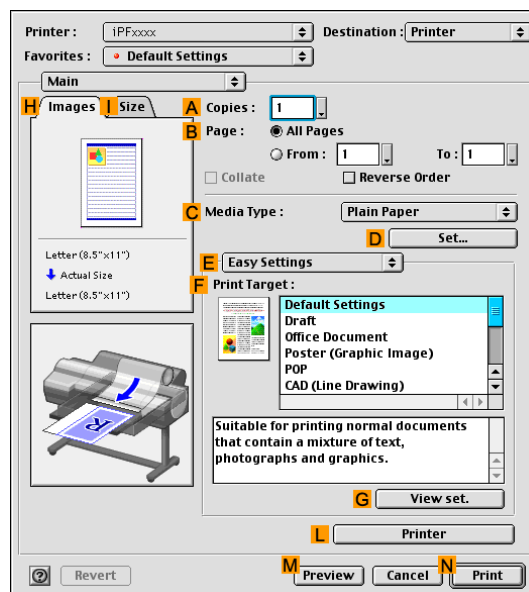


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list—here, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

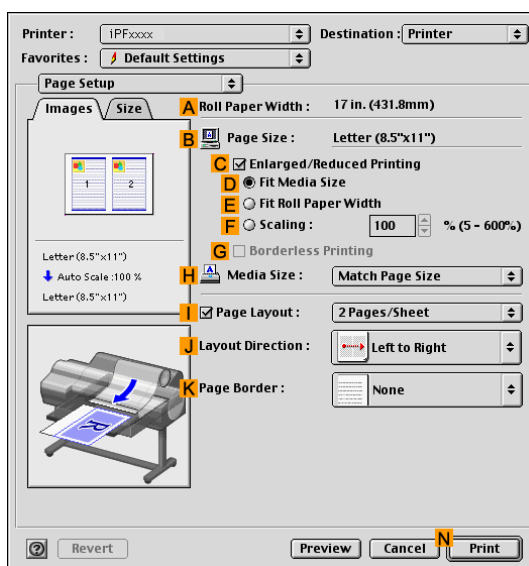


Note

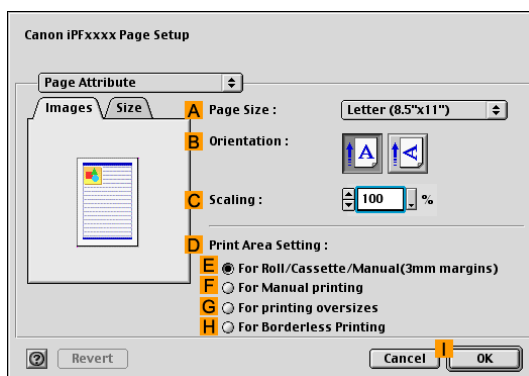
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13. Make sure the **B Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



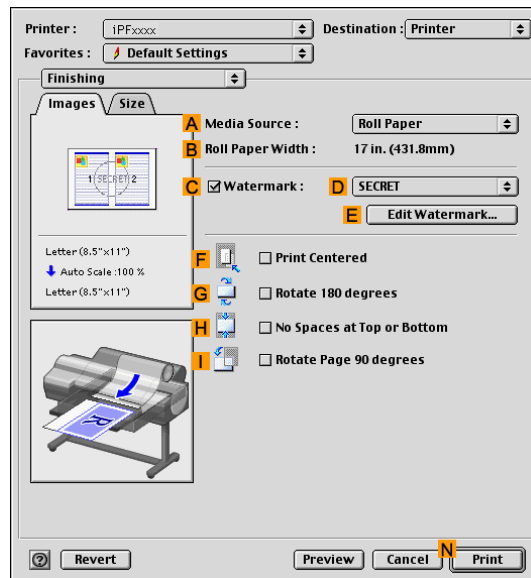
14. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

15. Click **F Scaling** and enter “120.”



Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting **F Print Centered** on the **Finishing** pane.



16. Confirm the print settings, and click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

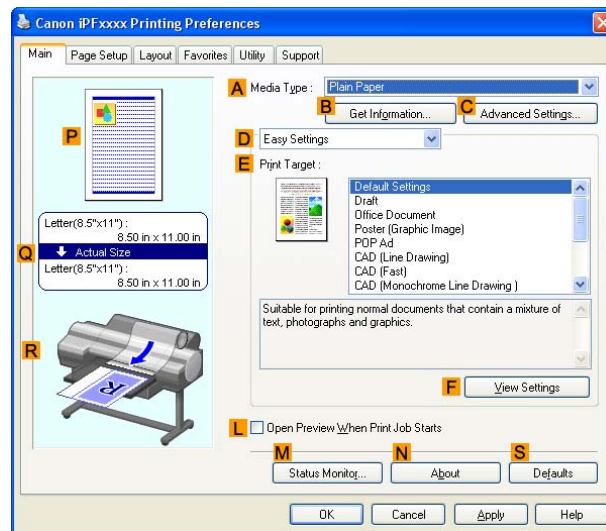
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

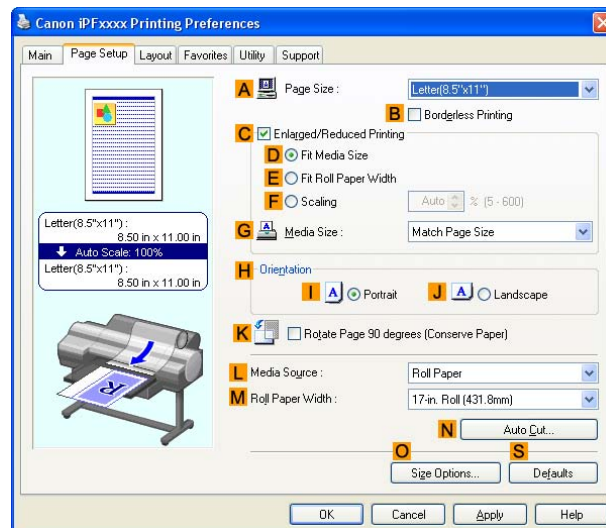
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

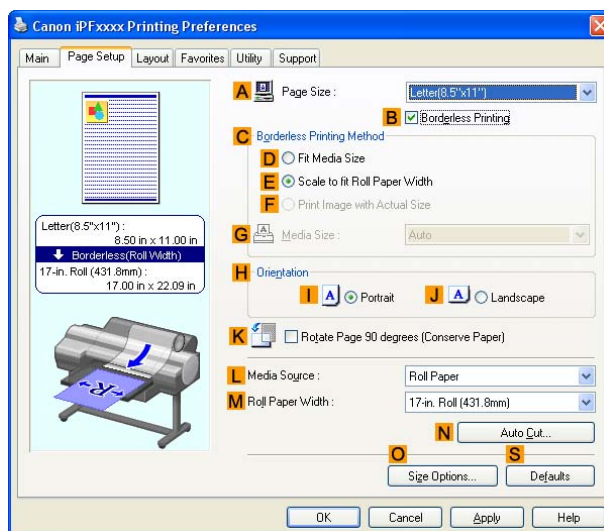


7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
9. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.



Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B Borderless Printing** check box.



10. Click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**.



Note

- After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list and click **OK**.
- Make sure the roll paper width you specify matches the width of the loaded roll.

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

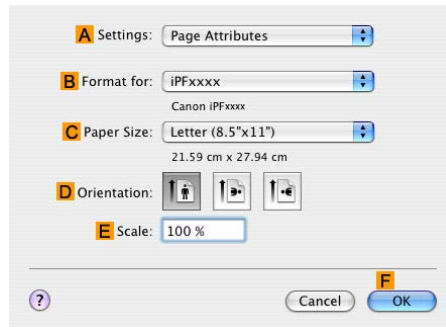
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



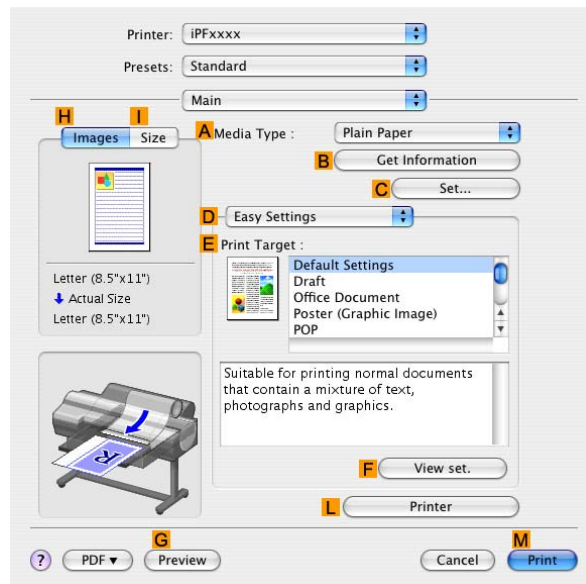
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

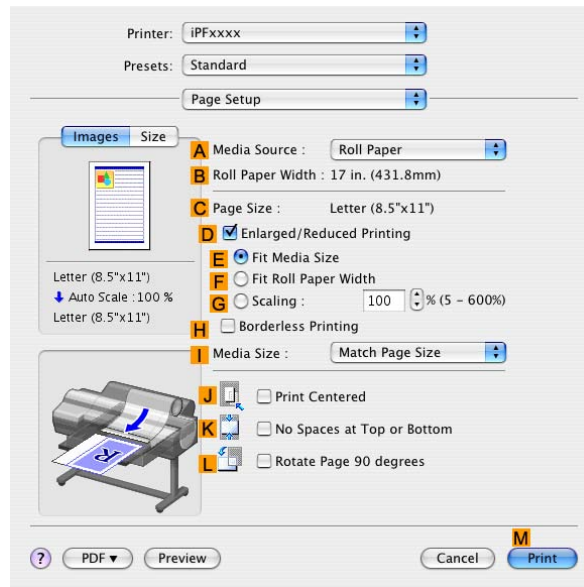
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

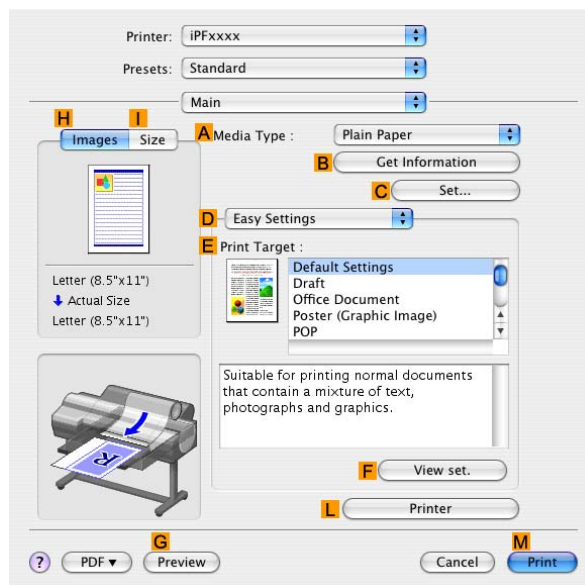


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

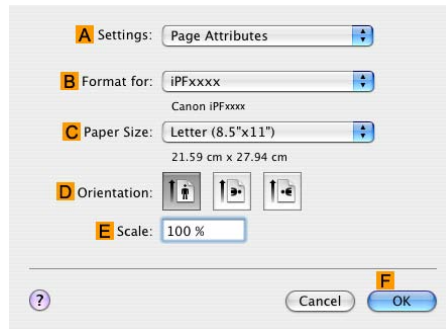


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Click **F Fit Roll Paper Width**.
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

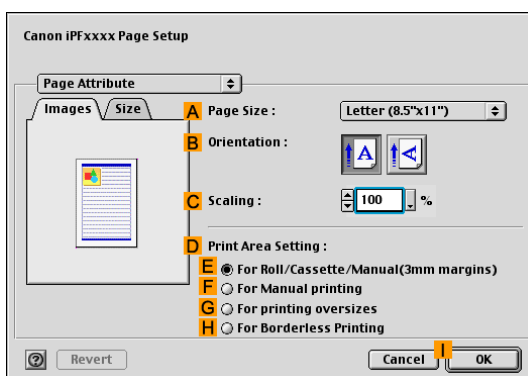
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)

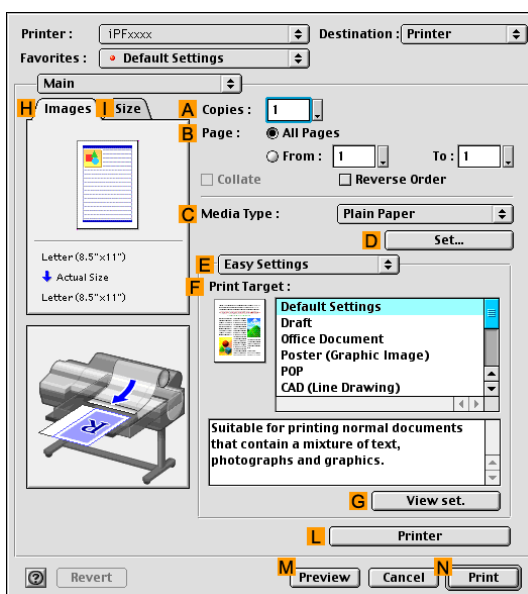
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll paper width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

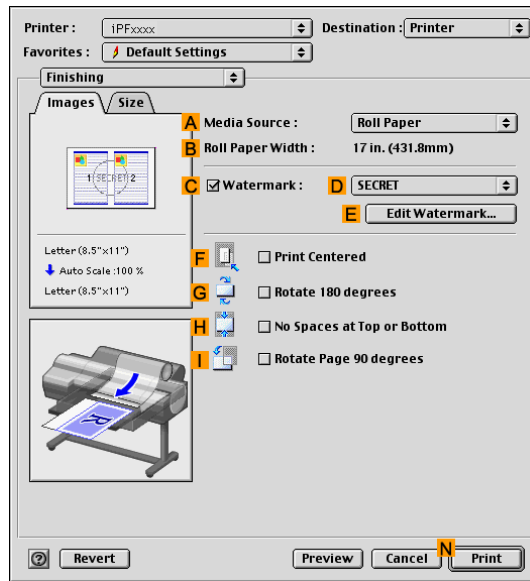
1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the **F Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Finishing** pane.

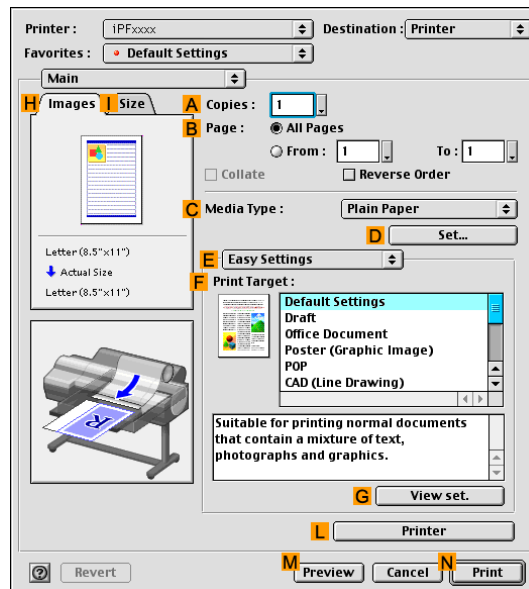


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

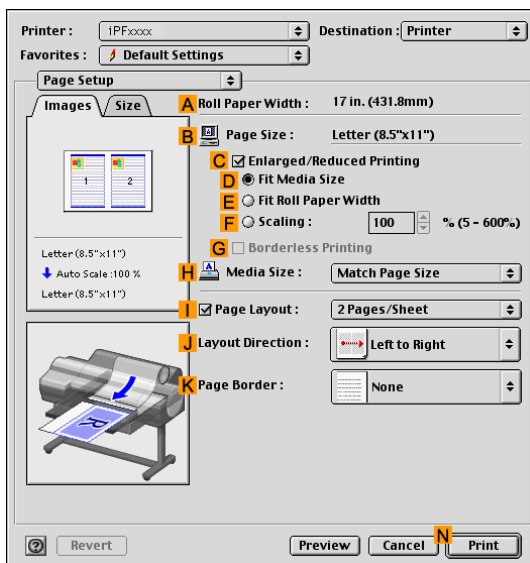


Note

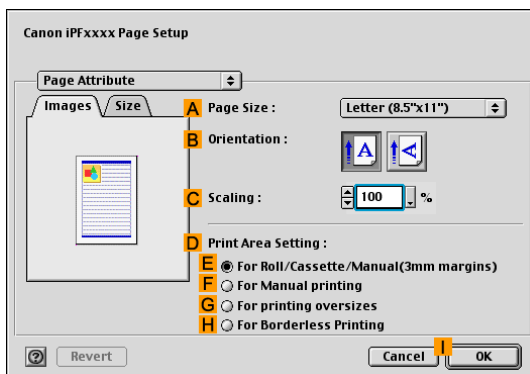
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13. Make sure the **B Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

15. Click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**.

16. Confirm the print settings, and click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

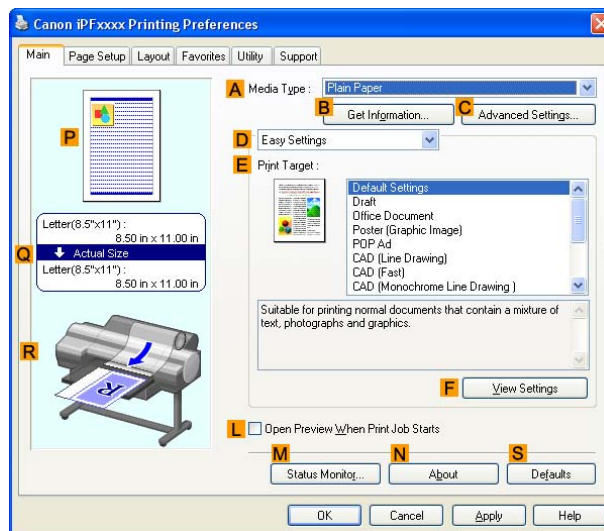
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

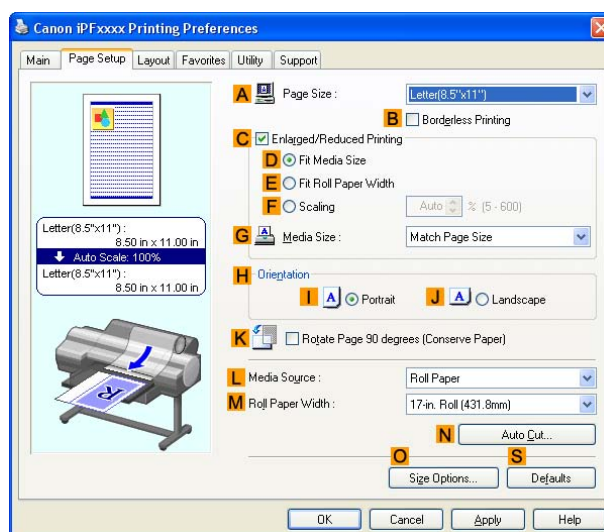
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: B4 (257.0×364.0 mm [10.1 × 14.3 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. Click **Cassette** in the **L Media Source** list.
8. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **JIS B4**.
9. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
10. Click **D Fit Media Size**.
11. Click **ISO A3** in the **G Media Size** list.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

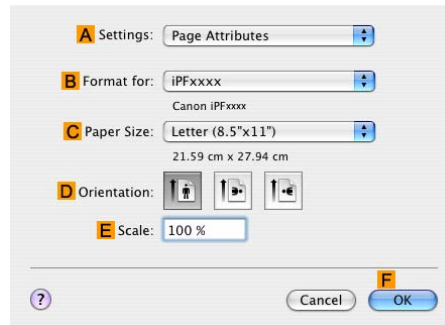
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: B4 (257.0×364.0 mm) [10.1 × 14.3 in]
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper Type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm) [11.7 × 16.5 in]

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



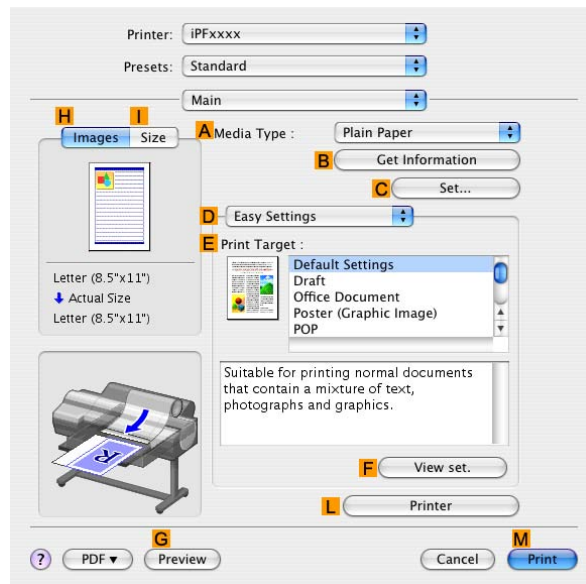
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **JIS B4**.

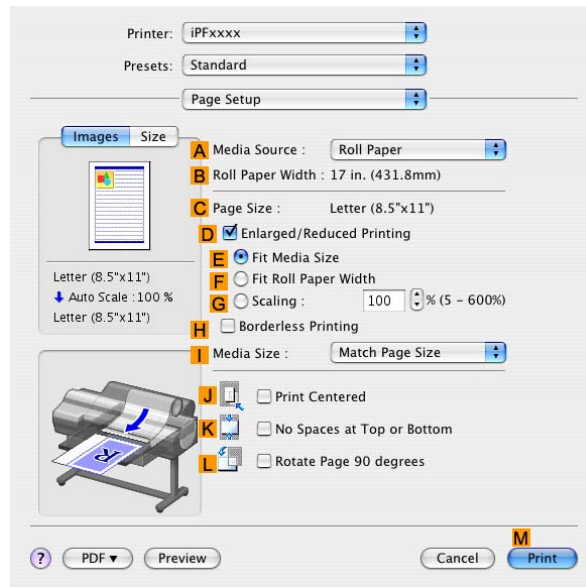
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

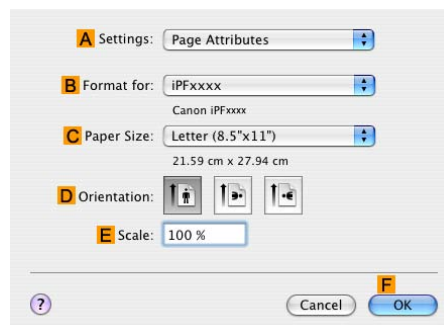
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the **A Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **JIS B4**.



12. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
13. Make sure **E Fit Media Size** is selected.
14. Click **ISO A3** in the **I Media Size** list.
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

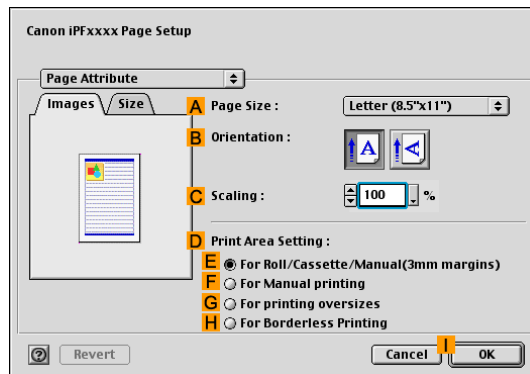
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)

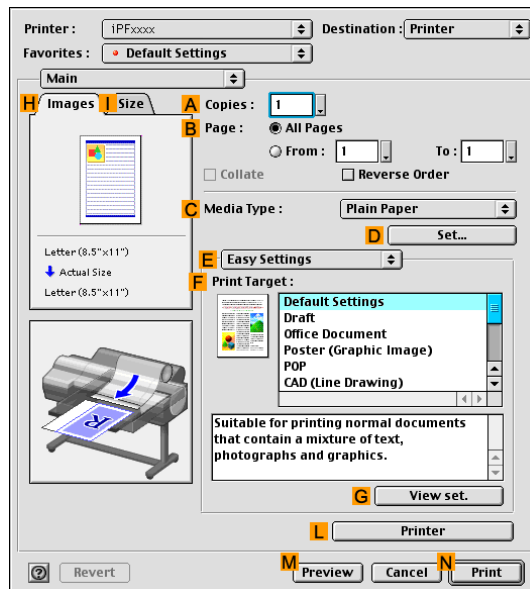
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: B4 (257.0×364.0 mm [10.1×14.3 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])

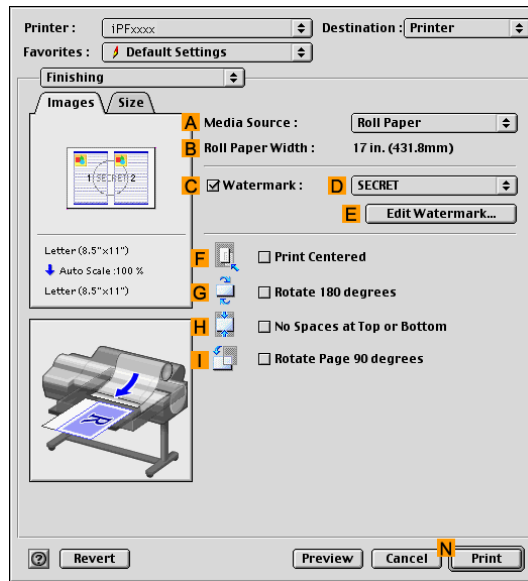
1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



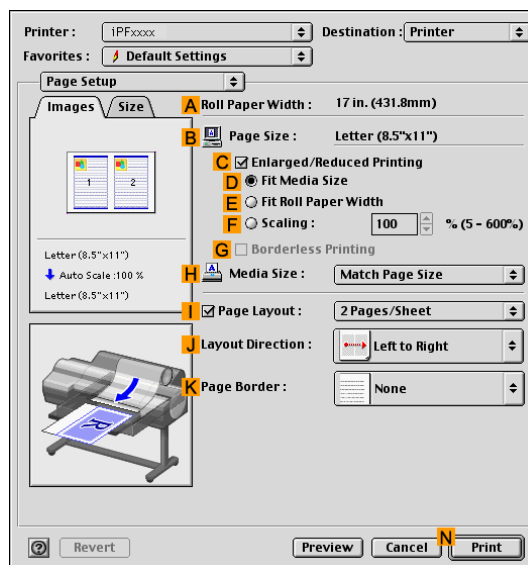
3. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **JIS B4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



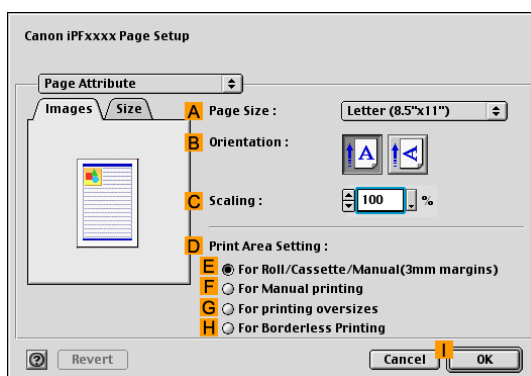
7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the **F Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the **A Media Source** list.
11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



12. Make sure the **B Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **JIS B4**.



13. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Make sure **D Fit Media Size** is selected.
15. Click **ISO A4** in the **H Media Size** list.
16. Confirm the print settings, and click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Printing at full size

Printing on Oversized Paper

Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to your selected paper size minus the space for a margin. (→P.80) To print documents or images you prepare without a margin at actual size, use an oversized paper size.

For example, to print a A4-sized original without a margin at A4 size, print it on paper larger than A4 size and cut away the excess margin.

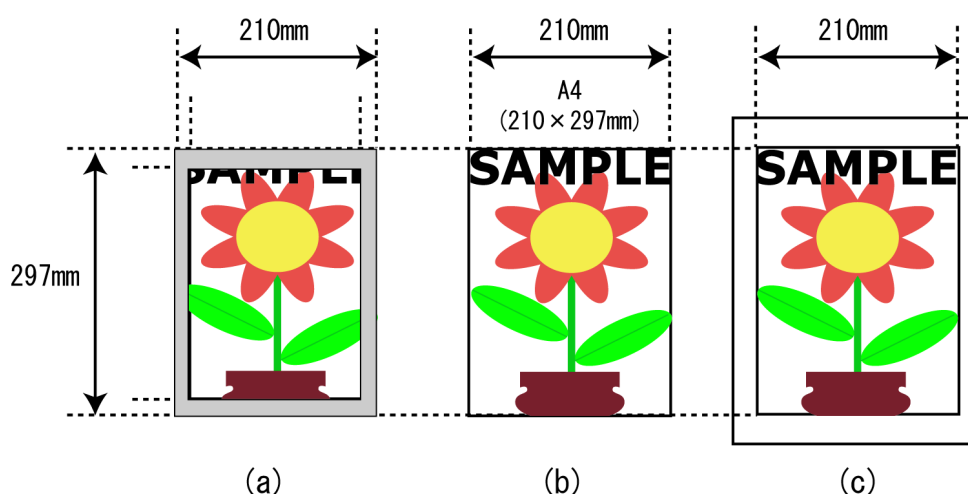


Note

- If you prepare an original for printing without a margin and print it on paper of regular size, the image near the edge will not be printed.

Oversize

The margin required by the printer is added around the “outside” of a regular paper size. For example, when printing a A4-sized original (210×297 mm), you have the following options.



- Regular paper size: Gray area not printed
- Page Size
- Oversized paper size: Print area matches the page size (b)



Important

- When printing on oversize paper, load paper larger than the page size—a size that includes the margin required by the printer.
 - Sheets: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 26 mm (1 in) higher than the page size
 - Rolls: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 6 mm (0.24 in) higher than the page size
- Paper larger than the maximum size supported by the printer cannot be used as paper for oversized printing. (→P.117)



Note

- Oversized printing (selecting **Oversize** in **Page Size**) is only available in Windows. For oversized printing on sheets, choose **Manual** as the media source.
- To perform oversized printing on a Macintosh computer, you must specify a non-standard page size and print on it.
- To specify a non-standard paper size in oversized printing, register the paper size as a **Custom Media Size**. Oversized printing is not available with “Custom Size.” (→P.361)

For instructions on oversized printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing at Full Size (Windows) (→P.320)
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) (→P.322)
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.325)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.



Important

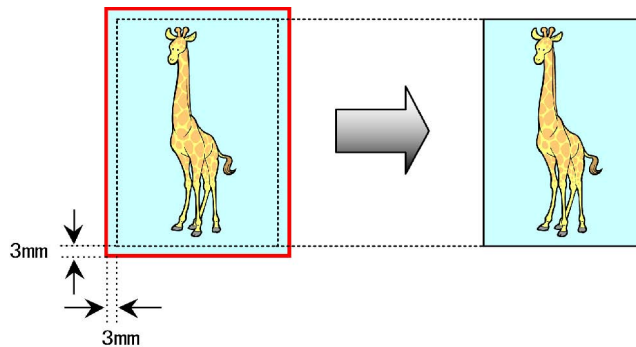
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
- If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
 1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
 2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.311)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.313)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.316)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

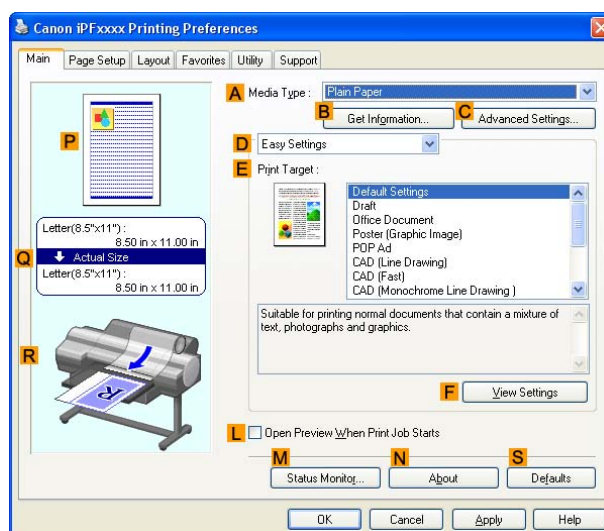
1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)



Note

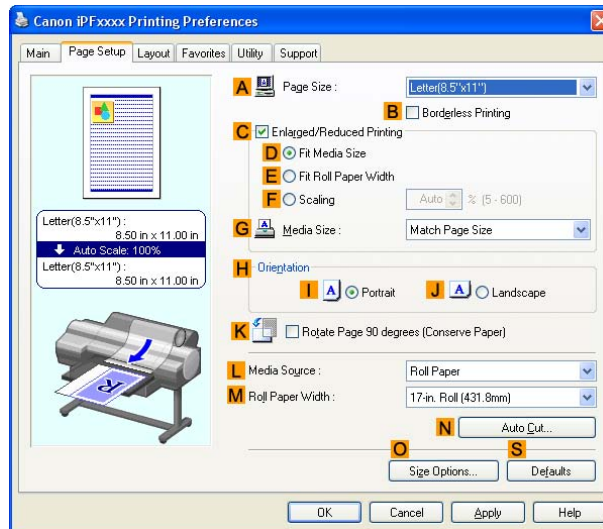
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
- The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

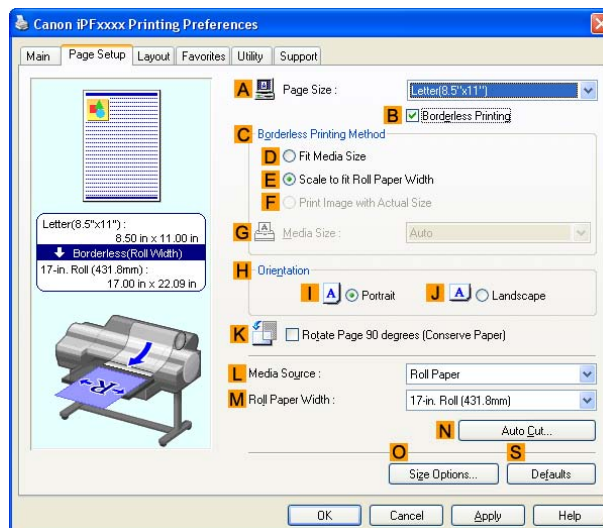


5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

- Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



- In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
- Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
- Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



- Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
- Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
- In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **F Print Image with Actual Size**.
- Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

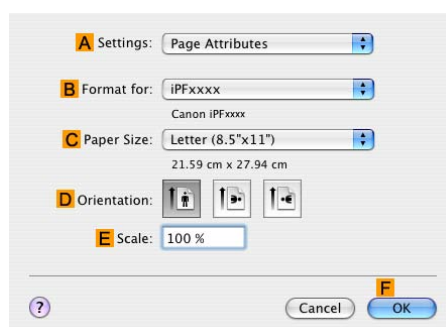
This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

The platen may be soiled from borderless printing if you do not attach it.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In the **C Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.



Note

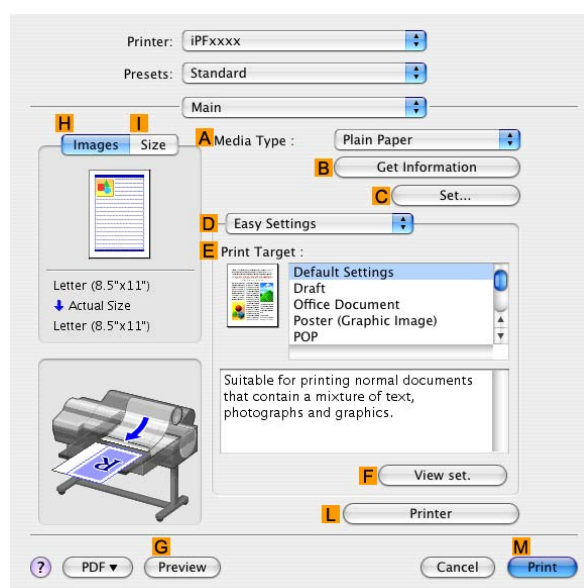
- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

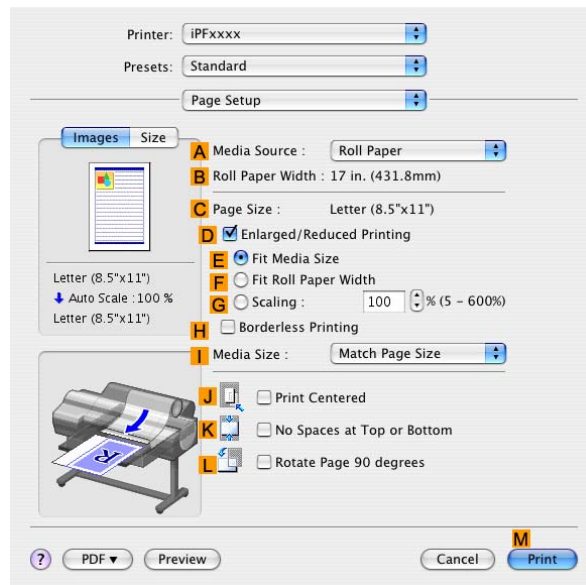
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

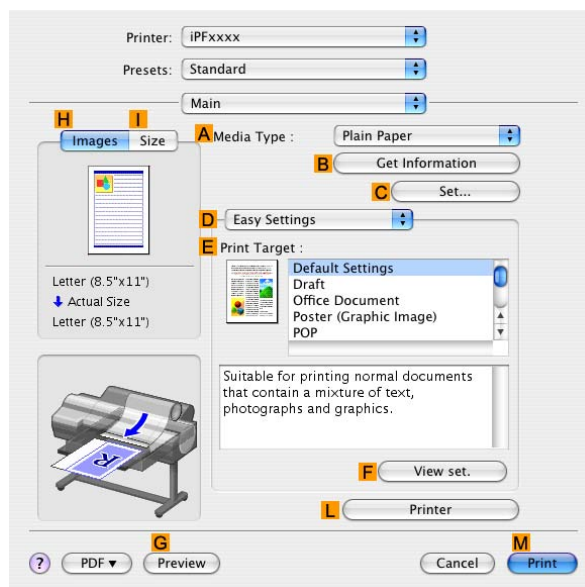


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

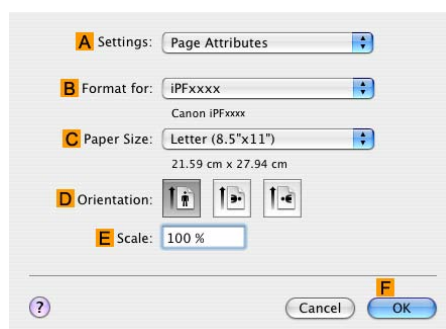


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



- 13.** Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



- 14.** Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)

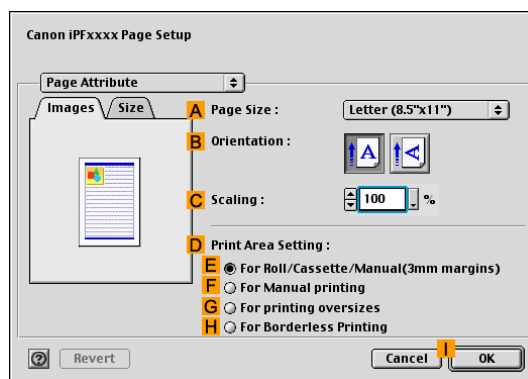
This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In **D Print Area Setting**, click **H For Broderless Printing**.
4. In the **A Page Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

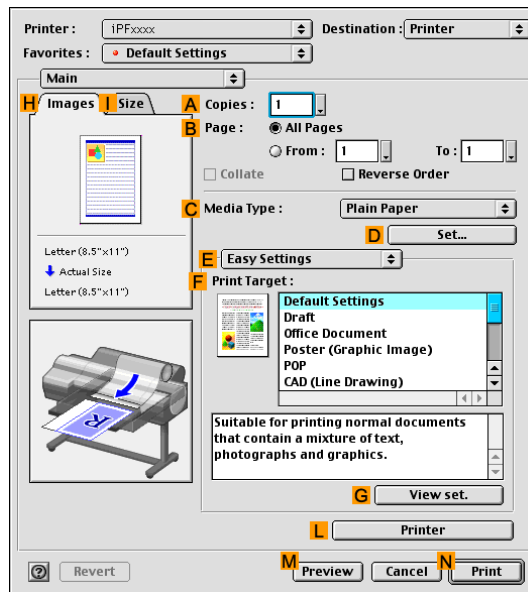


Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

5. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
6. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
7. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

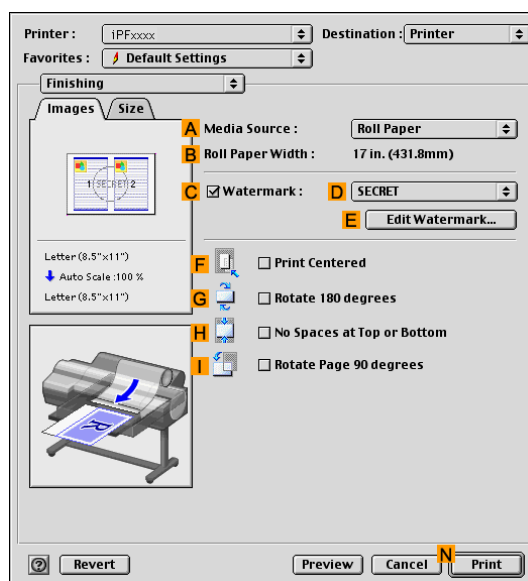
8. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



9. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

10. Select the print target in the **F Print Target** list.

11. Access the **Finishing** pane.



12. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

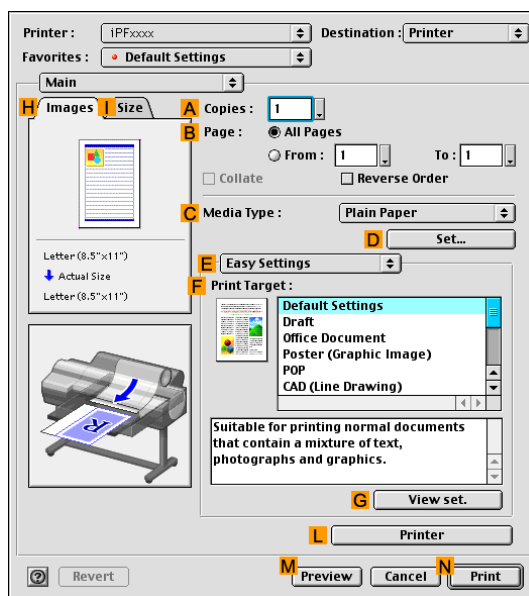
13. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.

Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

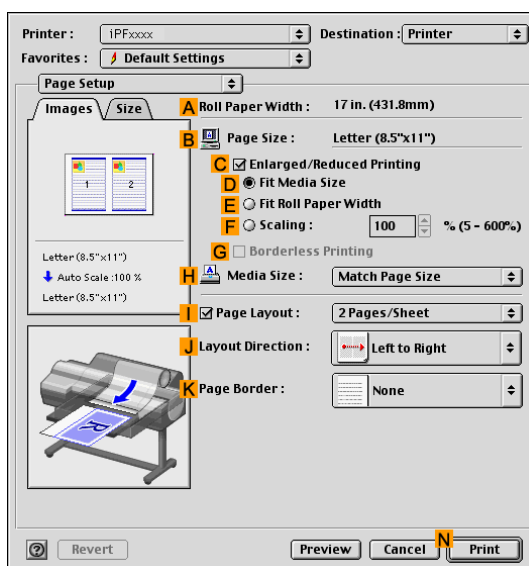


Note

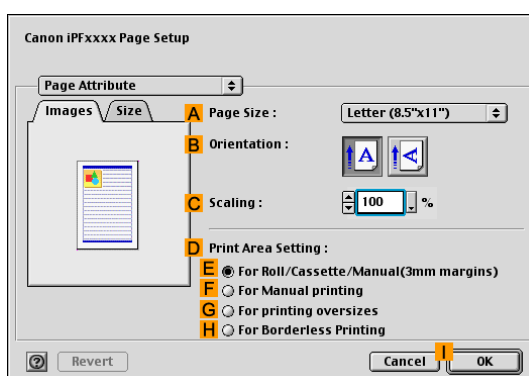
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



14. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



15. Make sure the **B Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



16. Confirm the print settings, and click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

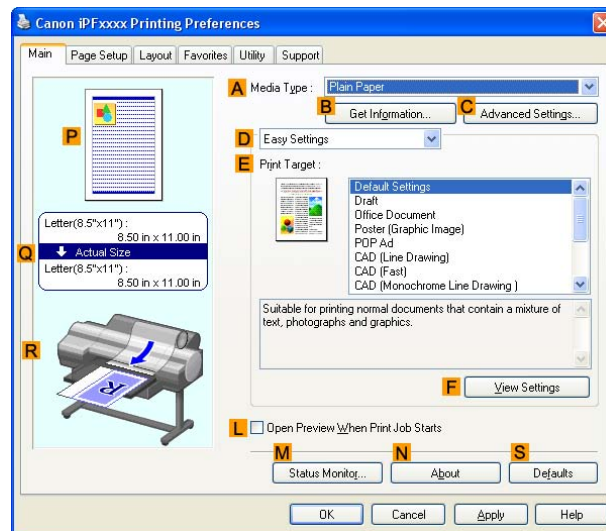
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)". (→P.535)

Printing at Full Size (Windows)

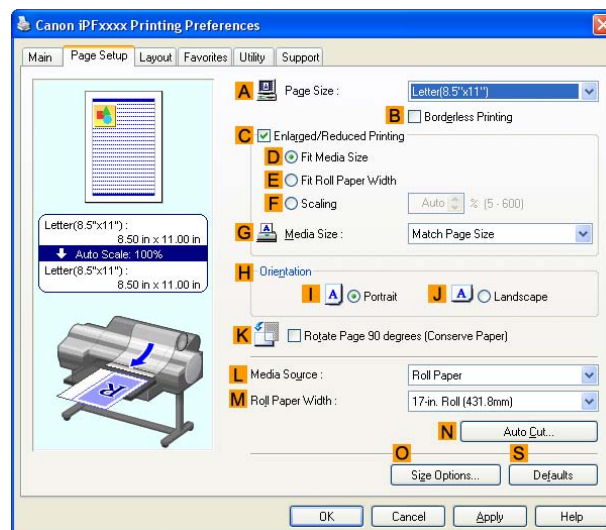
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click **Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
7. In the **Media Size Options** dialog box, select the **Oversize** check box in **Display Series**.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

9. Click **Oversize - ISO A4** in the **A Page Size** list.
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

**Note**

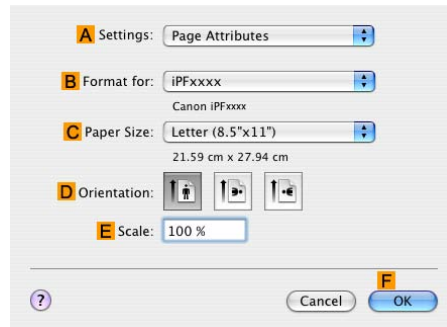
- You can select **Oversize** in **Display Series** to make all oversized versions of paper in the selected **Display Series** available for printing. These sizes are displayed in the **Page Size** list in the format **Oversize - xxxxxx**.

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Oversize**.



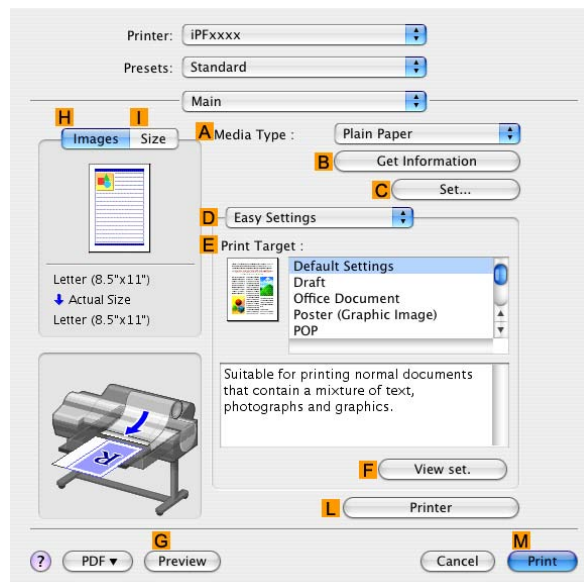
Note

- For oversized printing, choose paper identified by the regular paper name followed by “- Oversize.”

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

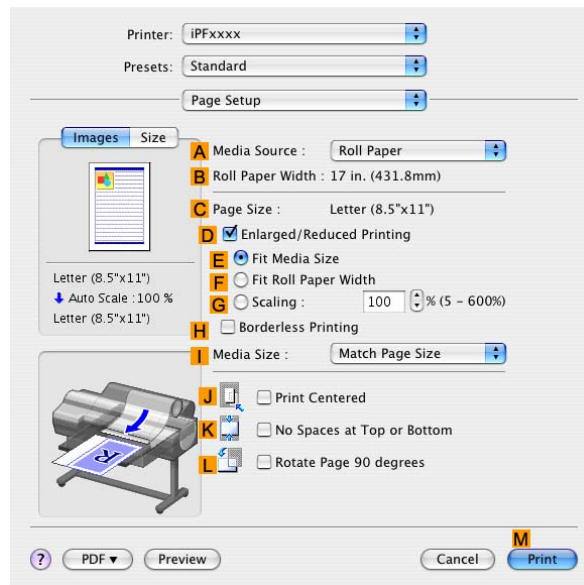
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



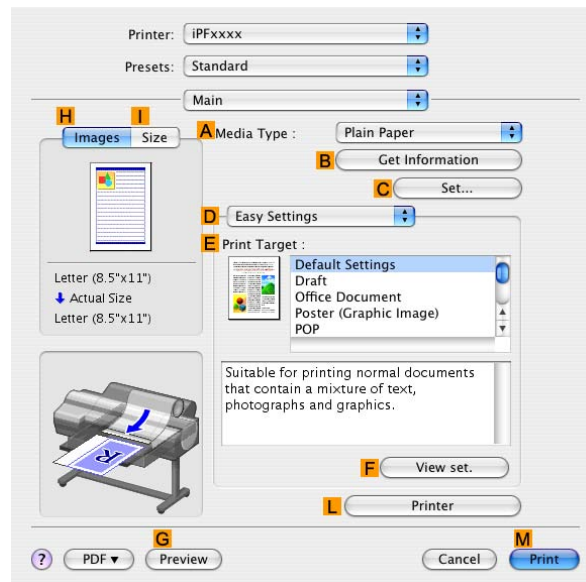
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

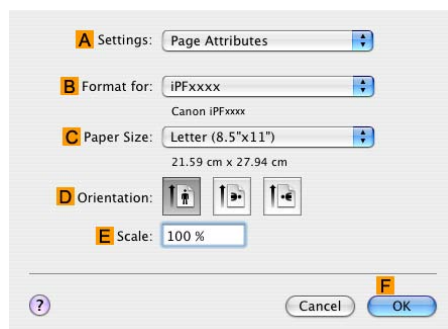


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



- 12.** Make sure **C Paper Size** shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4 - Oversize**.



- 13.** Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

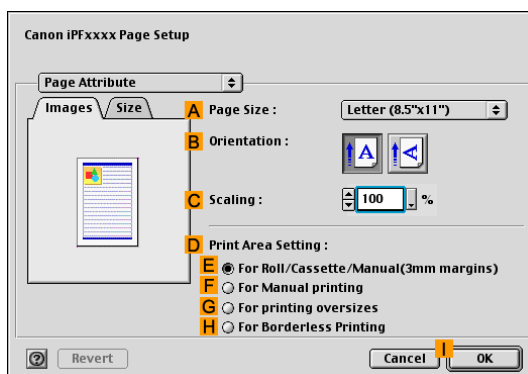
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9)

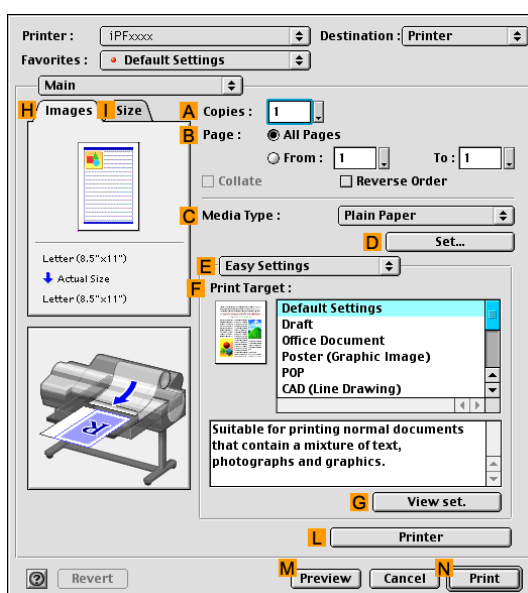
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

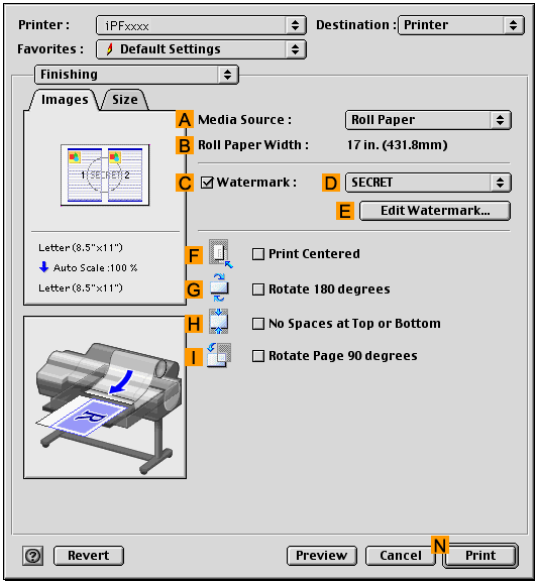


3. In **D Print Area Setting**, click **G For printing oversizes**.
4. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
5. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Plain Paper**.
9. Select the printing application in the **F Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Finishing** pane.

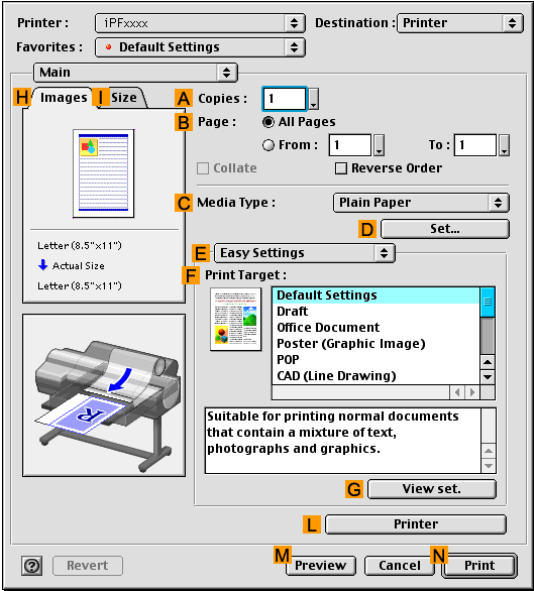


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.



Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.



Important

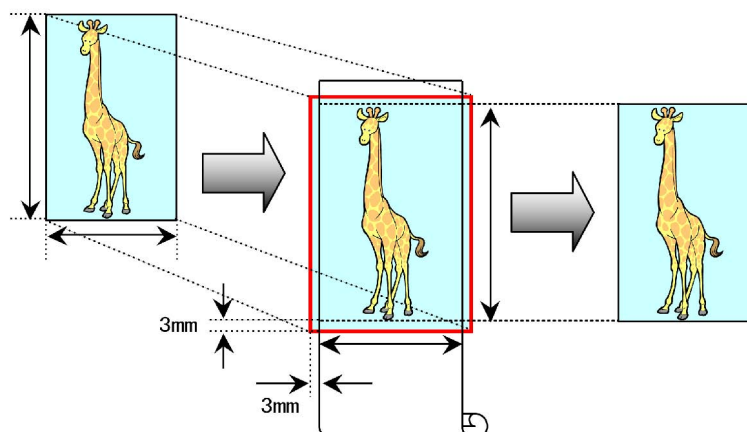
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
- If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
 1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
 2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Fit Media Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



Note

- The printer driver automatically enlarges originals 3 mm (0.12 in) past the dimensions of the paper on each side. The 3 mm portion beyond the edge on each side is not printed.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.351)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.353)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.356)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.



Important

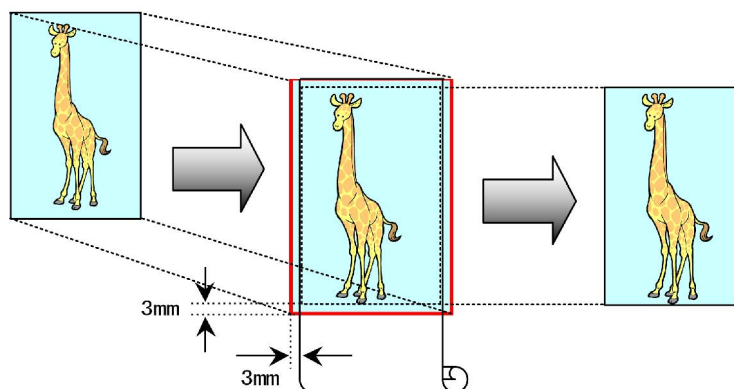
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
- If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
 1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
 2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width.



Note

- You can combine this function with rotating pages 90 degrees before printing so that the original width (relative to portrait orientation) matches the roll paper width in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.342)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.344)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9) (→P.347)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.



Important

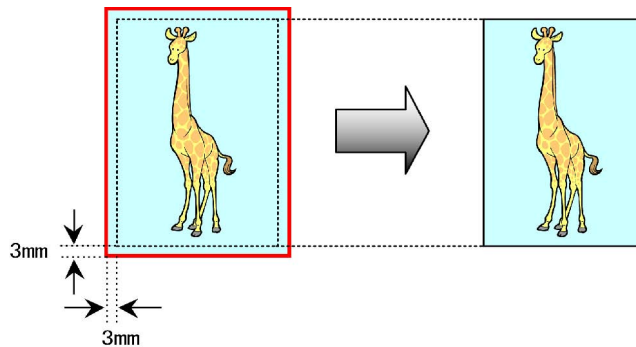
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
- If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
 1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
 2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.311)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.313)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.316)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

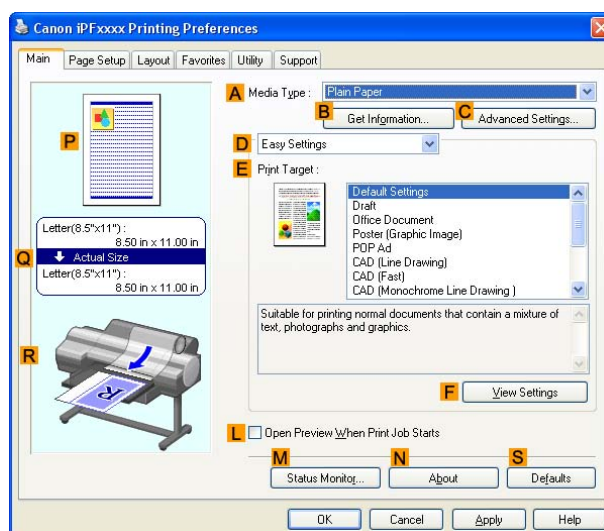
1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)



Note

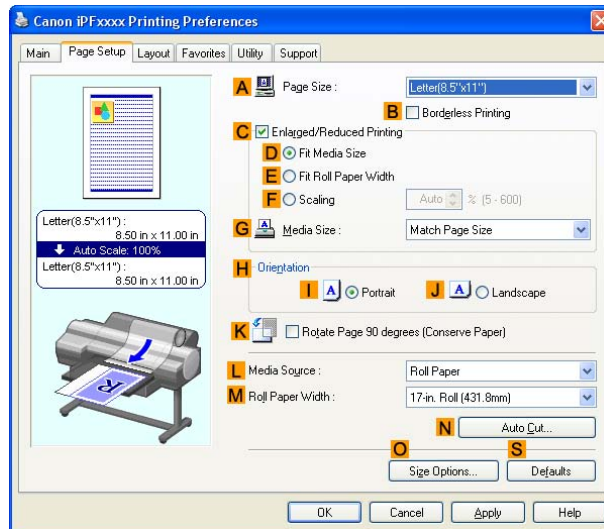
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
- The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

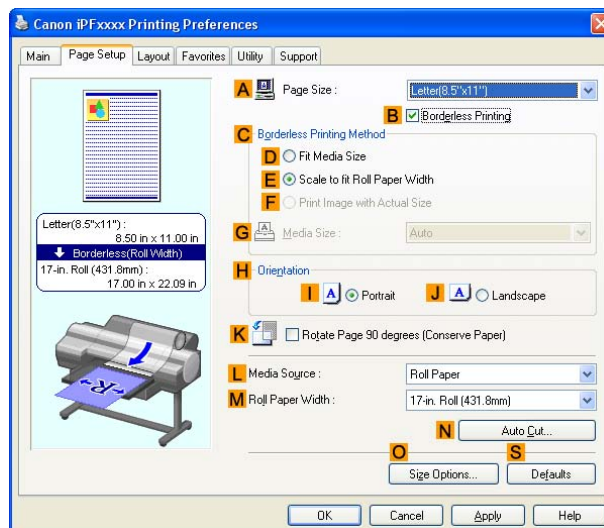


5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
10. Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **F Print Image with Actual Size**.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

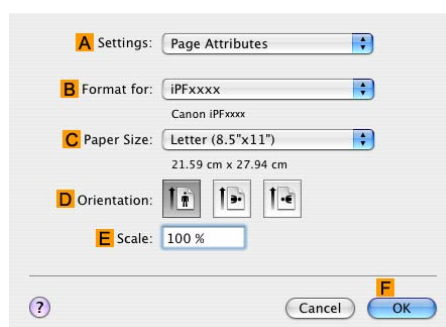
This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

The platen may be soiled from borderless printing if you do not attach it.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In the **C Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.



Note

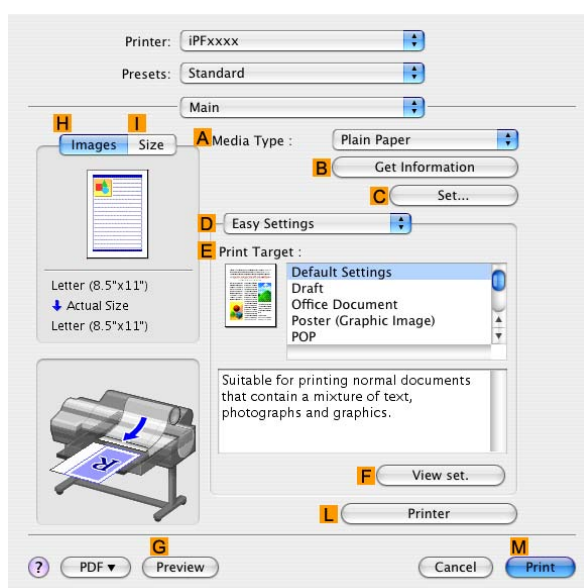
- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

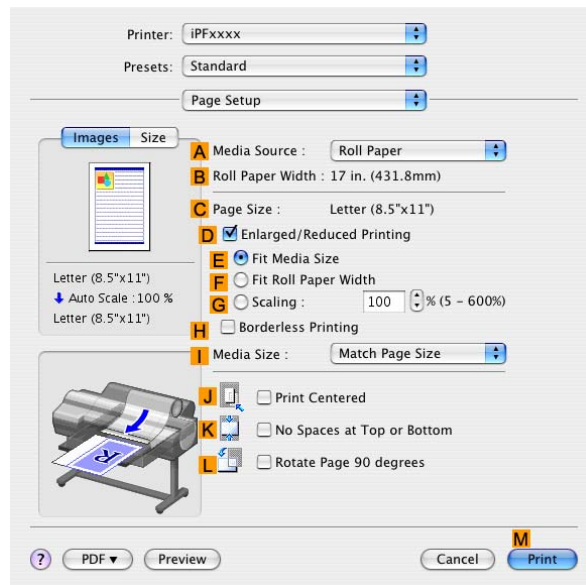
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

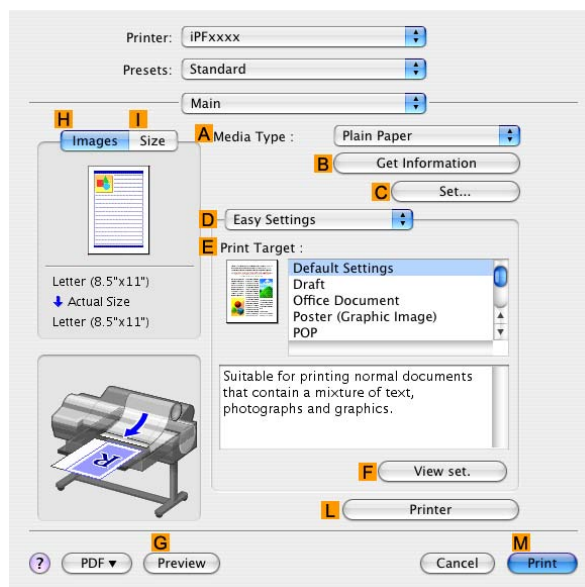


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

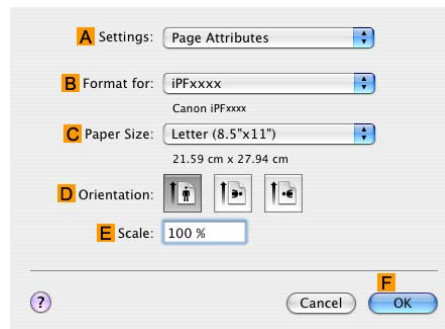


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Make sure the **C Paper Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

■ Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)

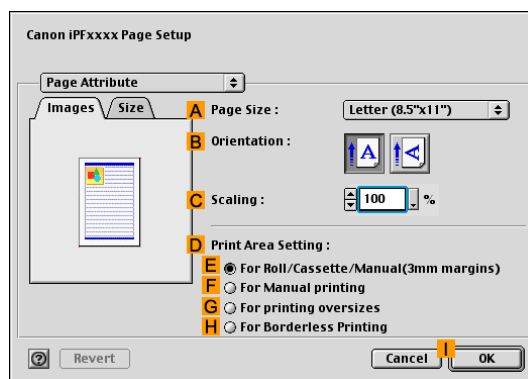
This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In **D Print Area Setting**, click **H For Broderless Printing**.
4. In the **A Page Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

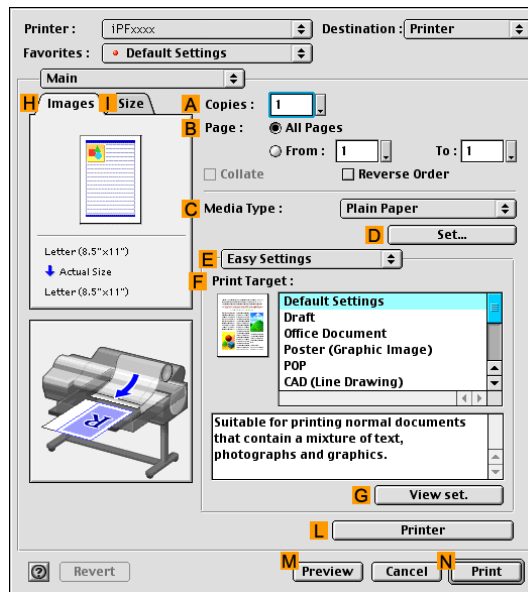


Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

5. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
6. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
7. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

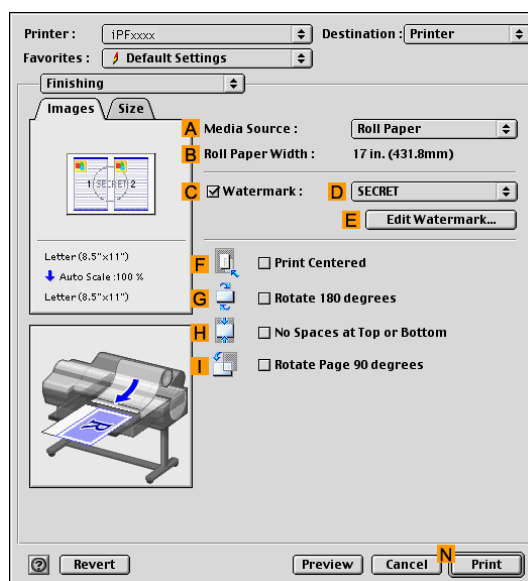
8. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



9. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

10. Select the print target in the **F Print Target** list.

11. Access the **Finishing** pane.



12. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

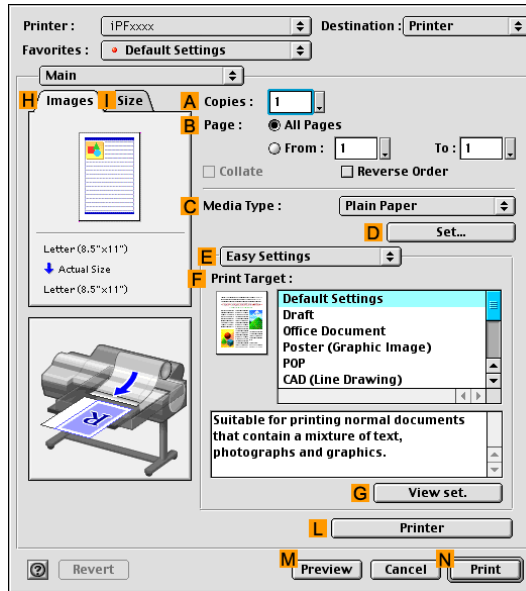
13. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.

Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

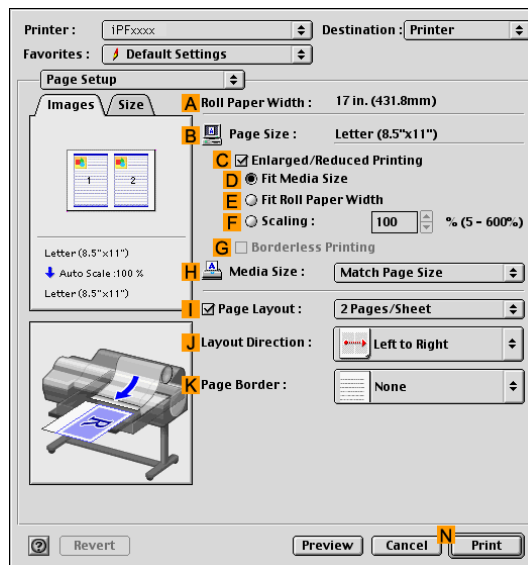


Note

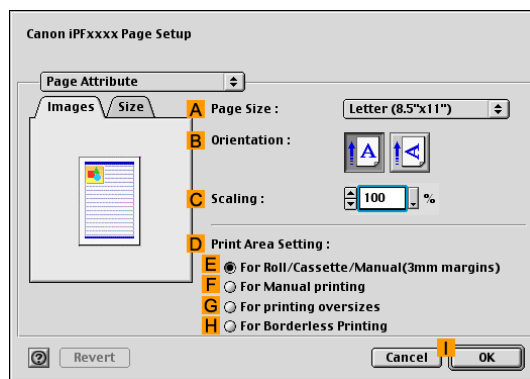
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



14. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



15. Make sure the **B Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



16. Confirm the print settings, and click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

If you use n A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

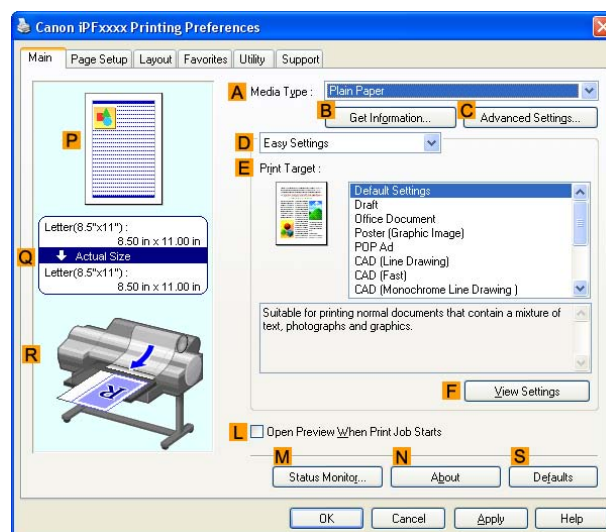
1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.



Note

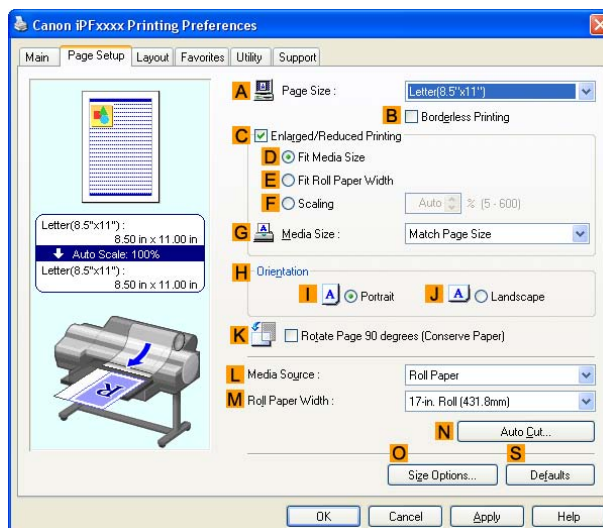
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

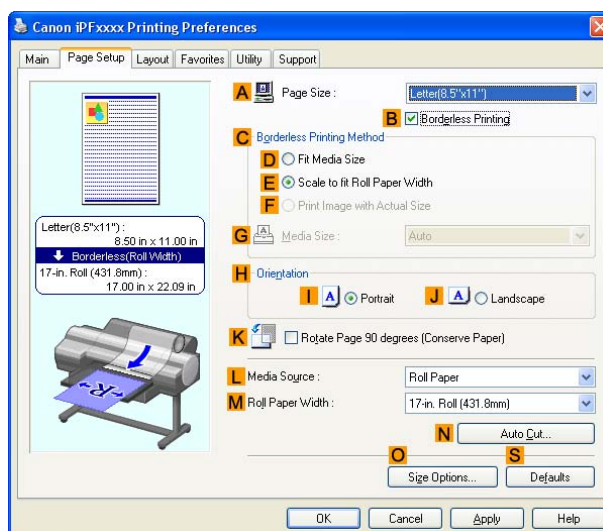
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.

10. Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13. In **C Borderless Printing Method**, make sure **E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** is selected.

14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

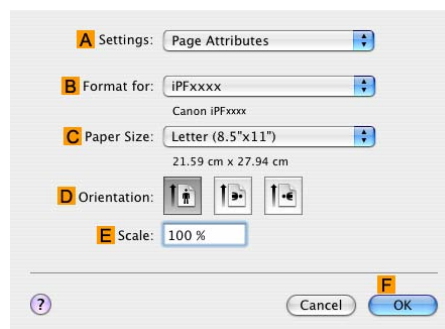
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example. If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.



Note

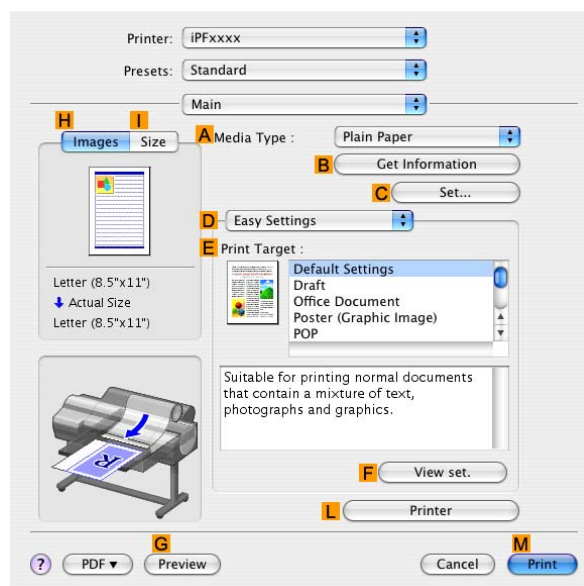
- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

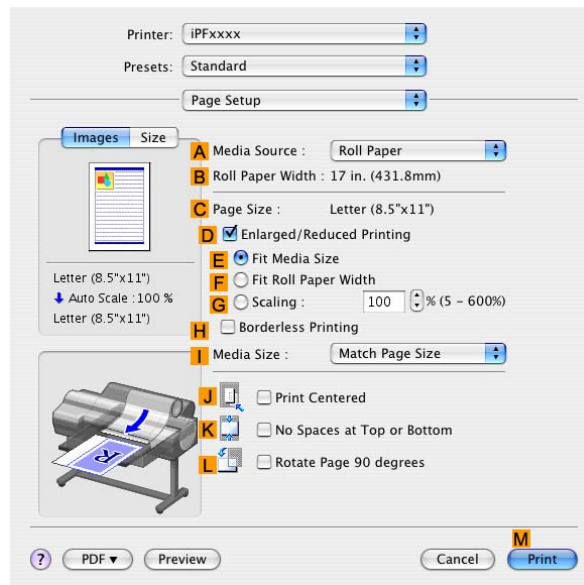
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

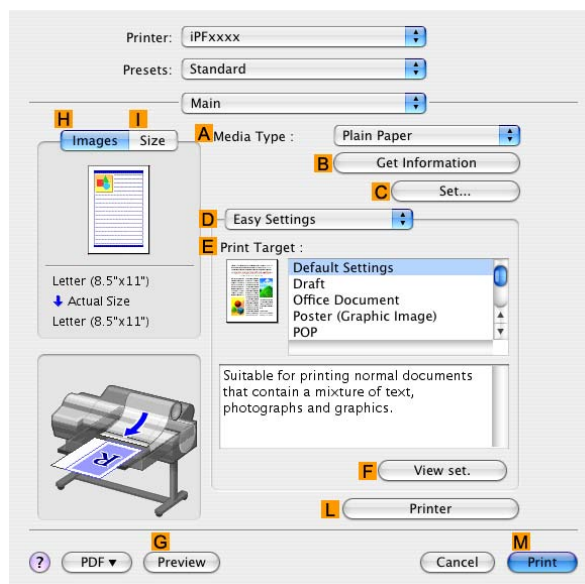


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list—here, 10 in. (254.0mm).

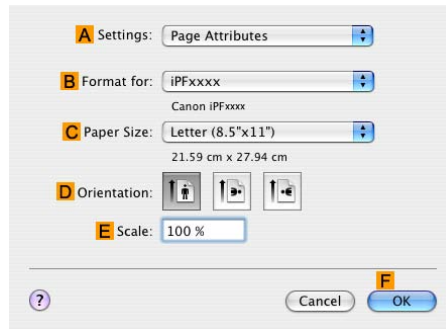


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



- 13.** Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



- 14.** Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
- 15.** Select the **H Borderless Printing** check box.
This ensures that **F Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
- 16.** Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

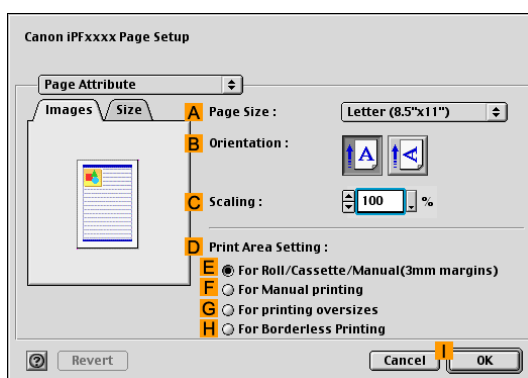
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example. If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

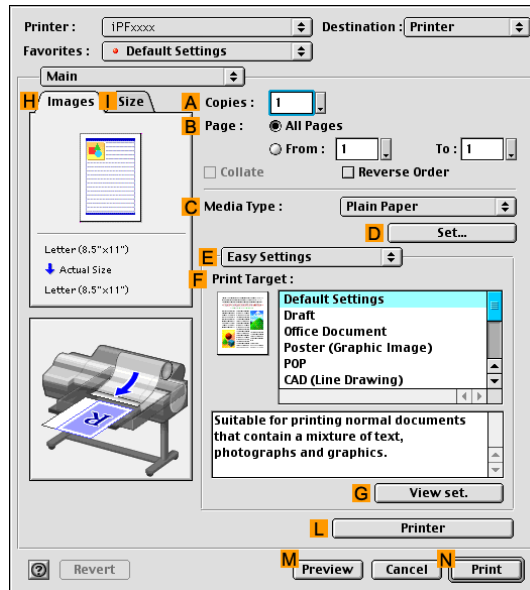


Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

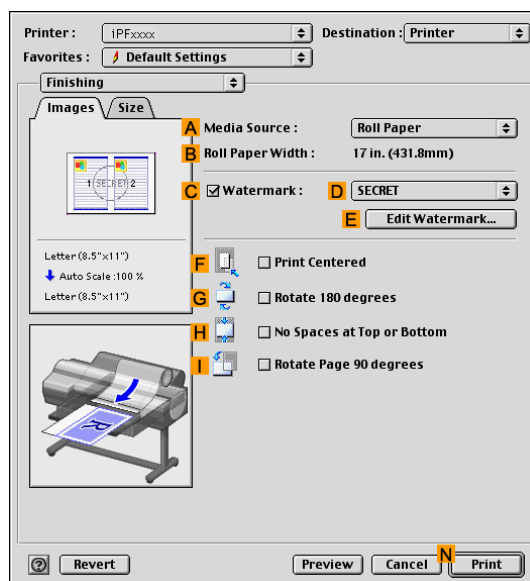
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

9. Select the print target in the **F Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Finishing** pane.



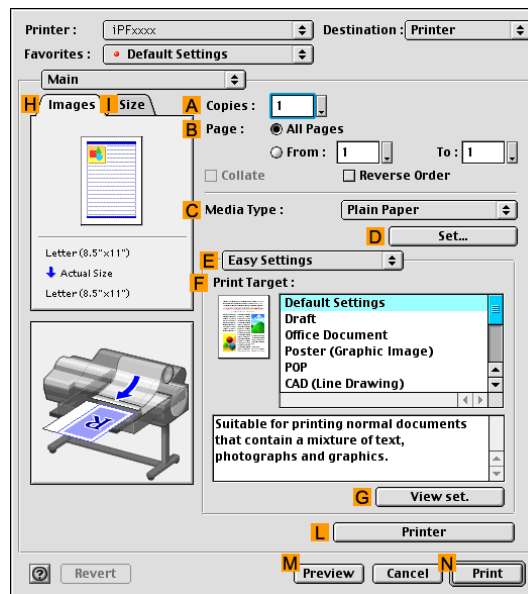
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

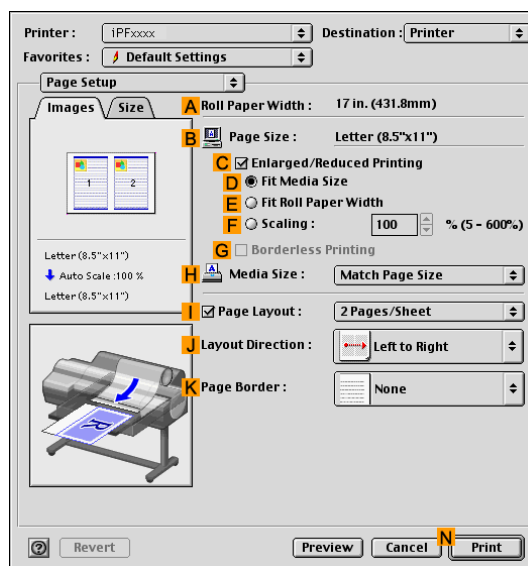


Note

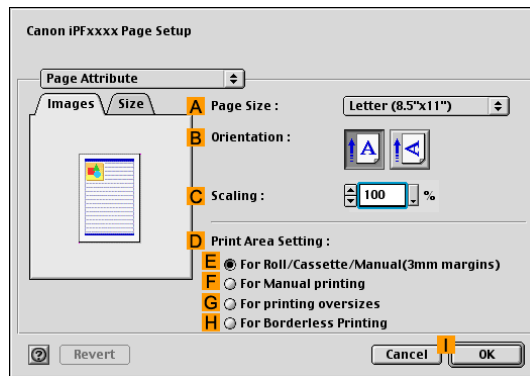
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Make sure the **B Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



15. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
16. Select the **G Borderless Printing** check box.
This ensures that **E Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
17. Confirm the print settings, and click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

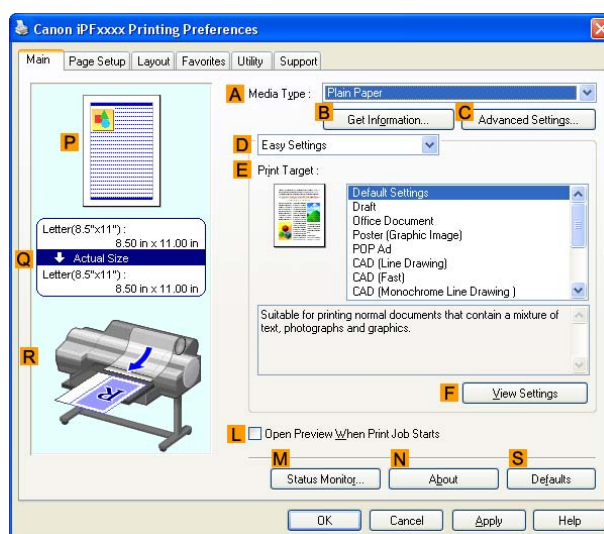
1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.



Note

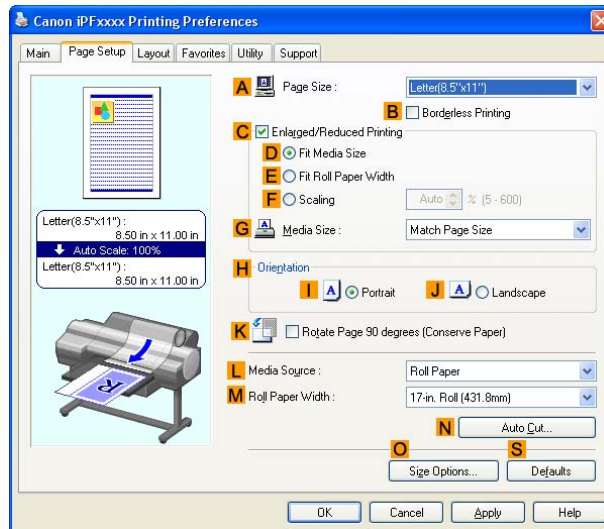
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

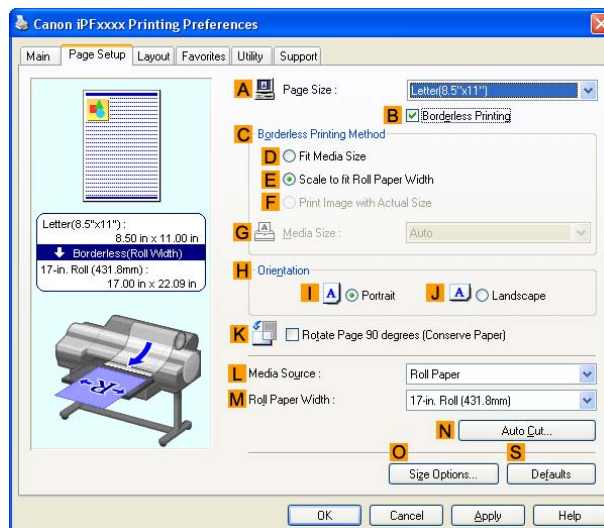


5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
10. Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **D Fit Media Size**.
14. Click **Match Page Size** in the **G Media Size** list.
15. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

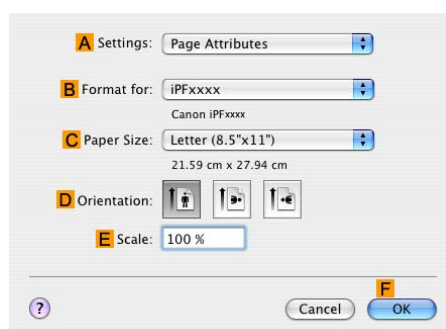
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.



Note

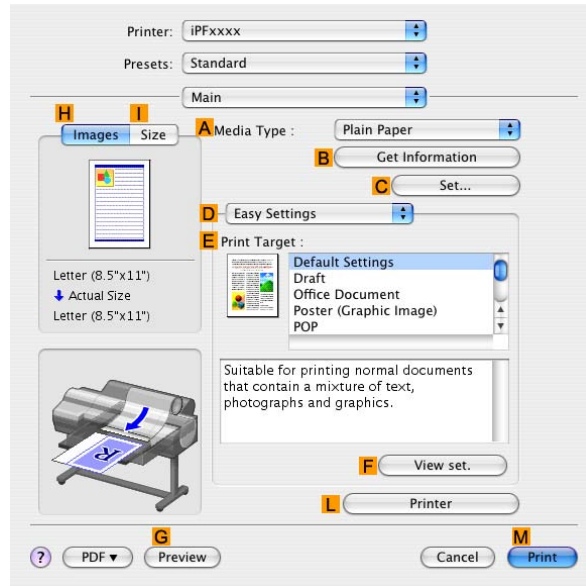
- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

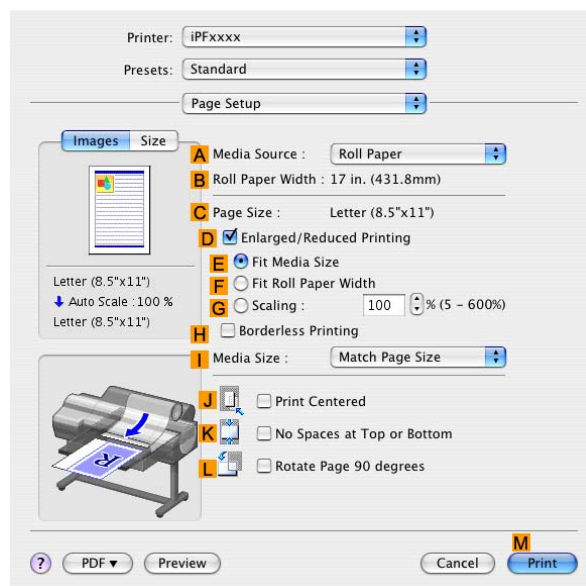
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

9. Select the print target in the **Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



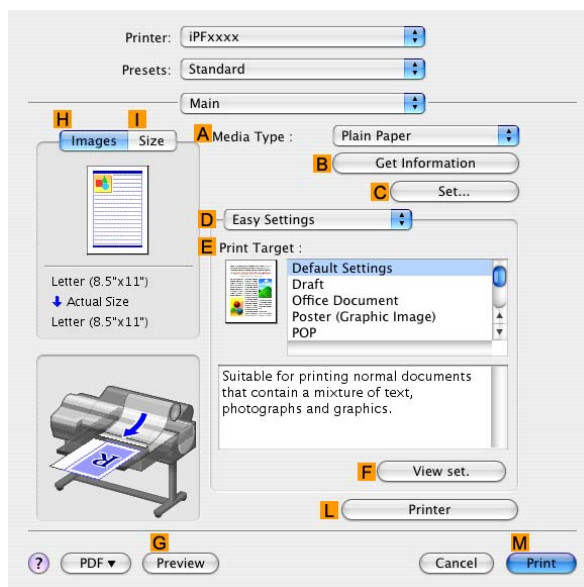
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Media Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

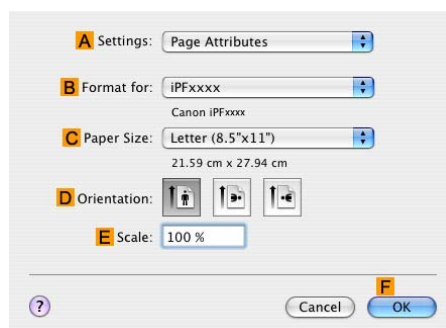


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



14. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
15. Select the **H Borderless Printing** check box.
16. Click **E Fit Media Size** under **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
17. In **I Media Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.
18. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)". (→P.513)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)

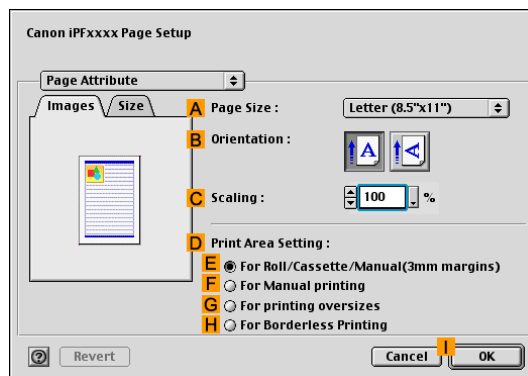
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.150)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"×12"**.

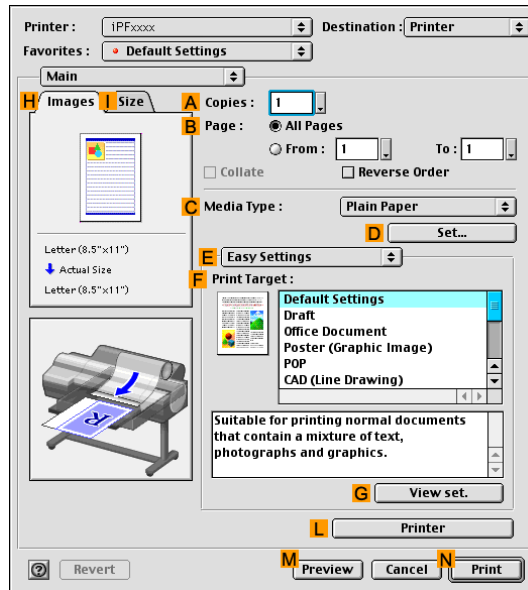


Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

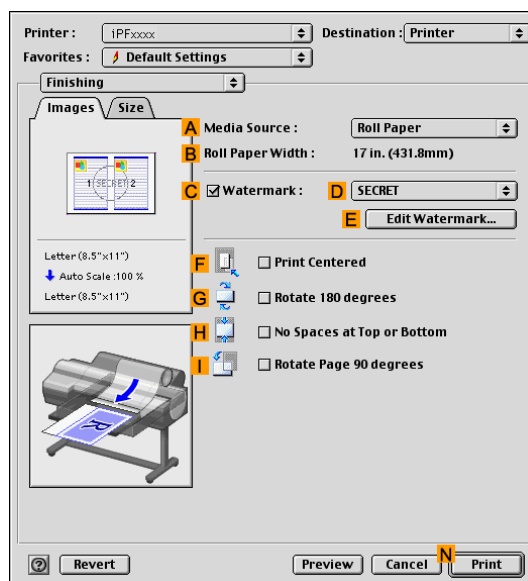
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

9. Select the print target in the **F Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Finishing** pane.



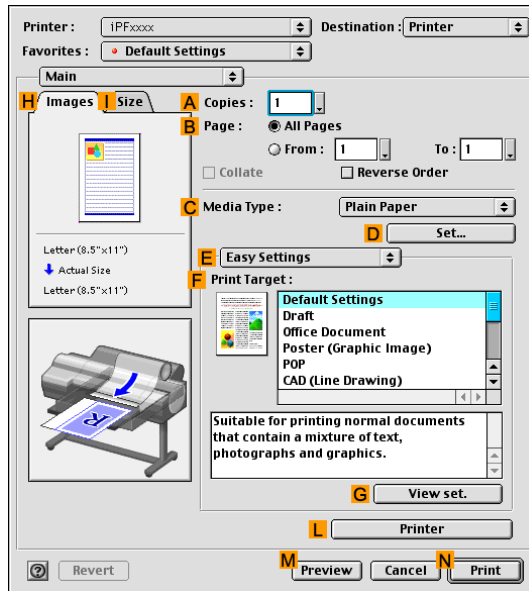
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

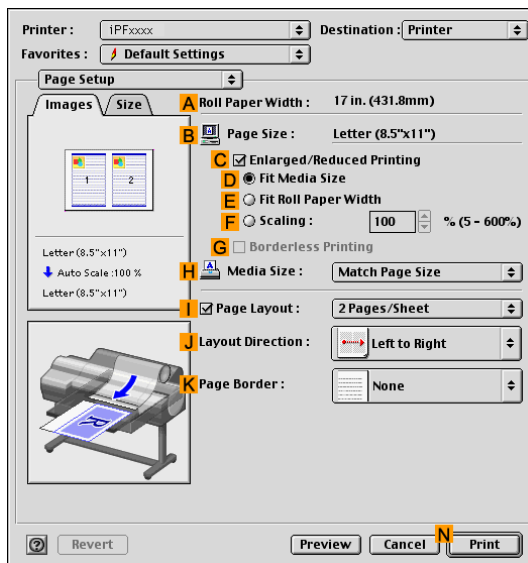


Note

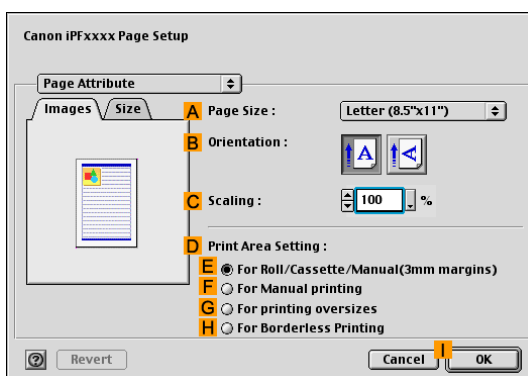
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Make sure the **B Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



15. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
16. Select the **G Borderless Printing** check box.
17. Click **D Fit Media Size** under **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
18. In **H Media Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.
19. Confirm the print settings, and click **N Print** to start printing.



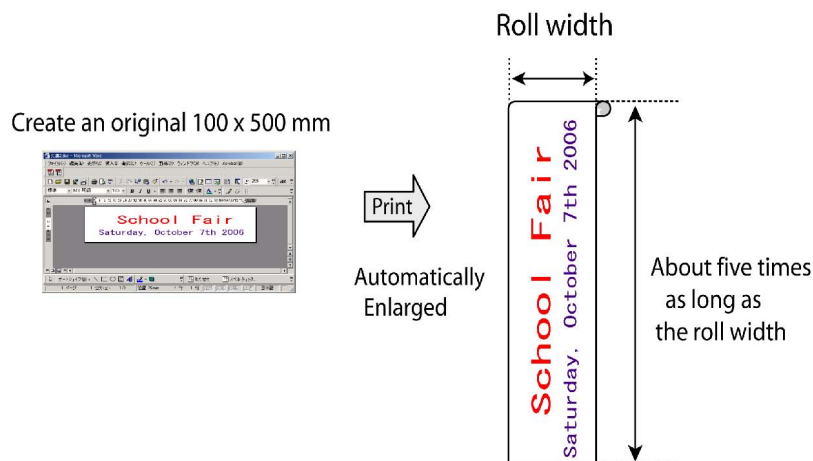
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)". (→P.535)

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)

You can create vertical or horizontal banners by printing originals that are in banner format on rolls. Originals created in Microsoft Word or other applications in your preferred size can be enlarged to fill the width of roll paper by completing simple printer driver settings.



Fit Roll Paper Width

You can easily create vertical or horizontal banners by automatically enlarging or reducing originals to fit the full width of rolls.



Note

- The maximum supported roll length is 18.0 m or 19.7 yd (when printing in Mac OS X).

For instructions on printing vertical or horizontal banners, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) (→P.371)
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) (→P.375)
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9) (→P.378)



Important

- Before printing, check how much of the roll paper is left. If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, a warning message is displayed when there is not enough roll paper left.
- If not much ink is left, prepare replacement ink tanks.
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in Print Quality, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

■ ■ ■ Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes

By specifying the paper size, you can print on non-standard sizes of paper.
There are two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes, as follows.

Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver

After you register non-standard paper sizes, they are listed with standard sizes so that you can choose them anytime as needed.



Note

- These non-standard paper sizes you register on the printer are called **Custom Media Size** in Windows and Mac OS 9. In Mac OS X, paper sizes you register in the printer driver are called “Custom Sizes.”
- Non-standard sizes cannot be registered on the printer when the media source is set to Cassette.

Specifying custom media sizes for temporary use

Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application. If you want to set up a non-standard paper size so that it will always be available, we recommend registering the paper size in the printer driver.



Note

- These temporary paper sizes you register on the printer are called “Custom Sizes” in Windows.
- Non-standard sizes cannot be registered on the printer when the media source is set to Cassette.

For instructions on specifying non-standard paper sizes for printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) (→P.362)
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) (→P.366)
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9) (→P.368)

■ Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)

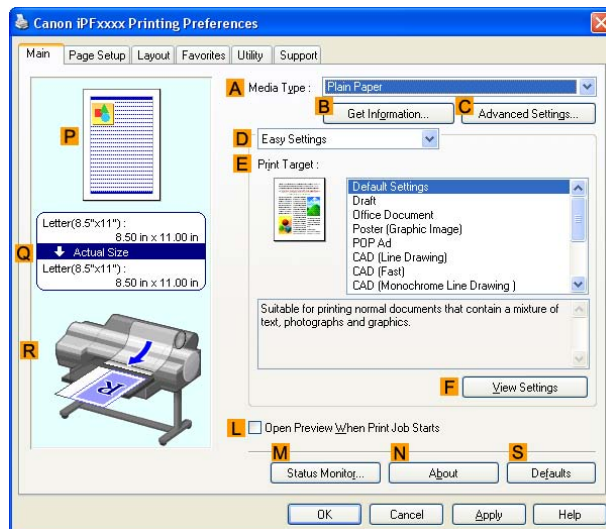
This topic describes two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes.

- Printing by using **Custom Size** (→P.362)
- Printing by using **Custom Media Size** (→P.363)

Printing by using Custom Size

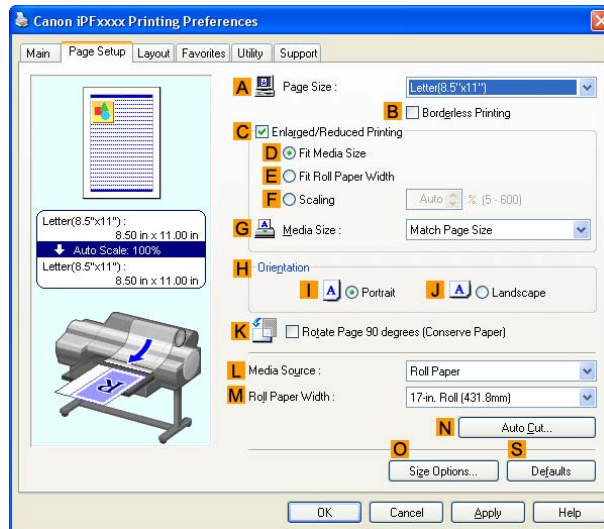
This section describes how to print using **Custom Size** based on the following example.

- Document: Scanned image
 - Page size: Square of non-standard dimensions (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
 - Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
 - Paper type: Plain Paper
 - Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
1. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
 2. Choose **Print** in the source application menu.
 3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
 4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
6. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the **E Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click **Manual** in the **L Media Source** list.
9. Click **Custom Size** in the **A Page Size** list to display the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
10. Complete the following settings in the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
 1. Select **mm** or **inch** in **Units**.
 2. Enter "430" [16.9 in] in both **Width** and **Height**.
11. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

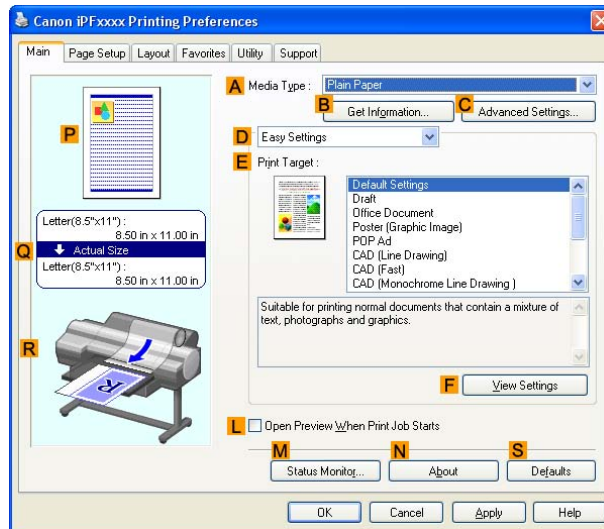
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Printing by using Custom Media Size

This section describes how to print using **Custom Media Size** based on the following example. First, register a non-standard paper size called "430 mm Square" as a **Custom Media Size**.

- Document: Scanned image
 - Page size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
 - Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
 - Paper type: Plain Paper
 - Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
1. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
 2. Choose **Print** in the source application menu.
 3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)

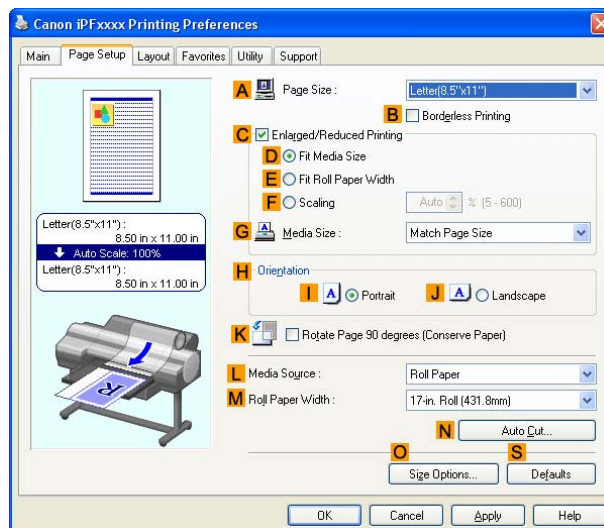
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

6. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the **E Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click **O Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

9. Complete the following settings in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

1. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Media Size Name**. "430 mm Square" is used in this example.
2. Select **mm** or **inch** in **Units**.
3. Enter "430" [16.9 in] in both **Width** and **Height**.



Note

- If you select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** check box, after you enter a value in either **Width** or **Height**, the other value will be automatically applied based on the original aspect ratio.

10. Click **Add** to register "430 mm Square."
11. Click **OK** to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
12. Click **Manual** in the **L Media Source** list.
13. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size you added, "430 mm Square."
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print after registering “Custom Media Size” based on the following example. Here, you will register a non-standard paper size named “430*430” in “Custom Media Size”.

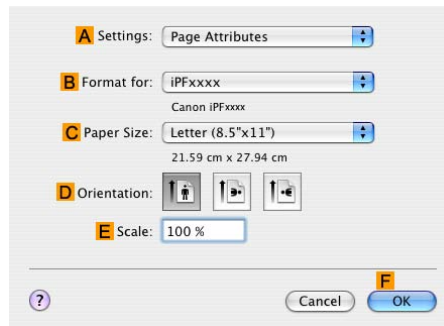
- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])



Note

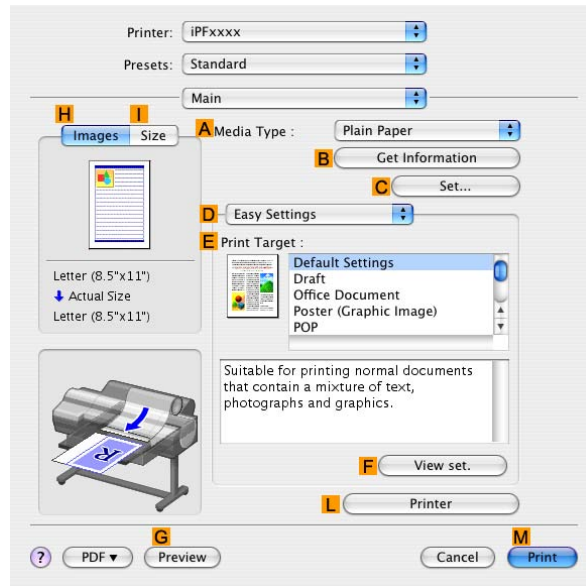
- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
3. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



4. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
5. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the **C Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
6. In **Page Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter “43.00 cm” in **Height** and **Width**.
7. In **Printer Margins**, enter “0.3” for the top and side margins and “2.3” for the bottom margin. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left in the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box and enter the paper name-in this case, “430*430”.
9. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
10. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click “430*430”, the size you registered.
11. Click **OK** to close the dialog box.
12. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

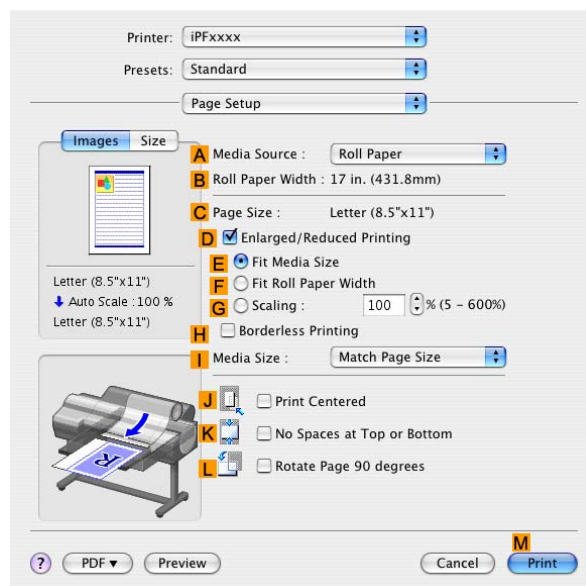
13. Access the **Main** pane.



14. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

15. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the **E Print Target** list.

16. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



17. Click **Manual** in the **A Media Source** list.

18. In **D Easy Settings**, make sure "430*430" is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.

19. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

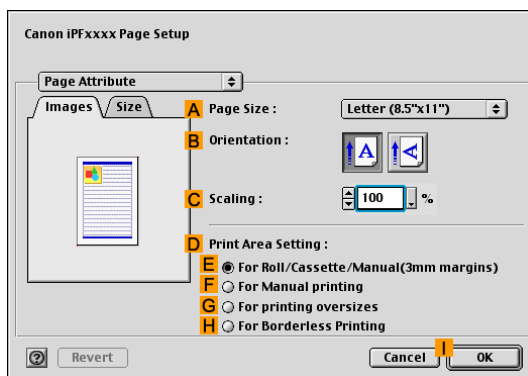
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)". (→P.513)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9)

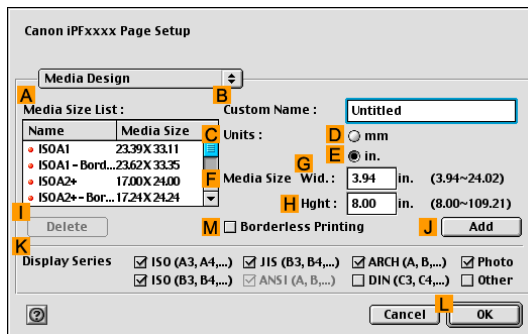
This topic describes how to print using **Custom Media Size** based on the following example. Here, you will register a non-standard paper size named “430*430” in **Custom Media Size**.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
3. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
4. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

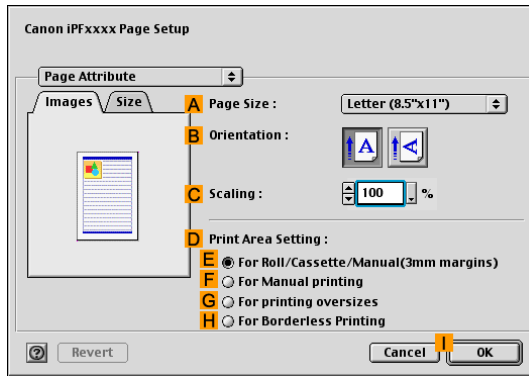


5. Click **Media Design** in the **Page Attribute** list to display the **Media Design** pane.



6. Enter a paper name of your choice in **B Custom Name**. “430*430” is used in this example.
7. In **F Media Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter “430” in **H Hght** and **G Wid.**
8. Click **J Add** to add the paper size named “430*430”.

9. Access the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



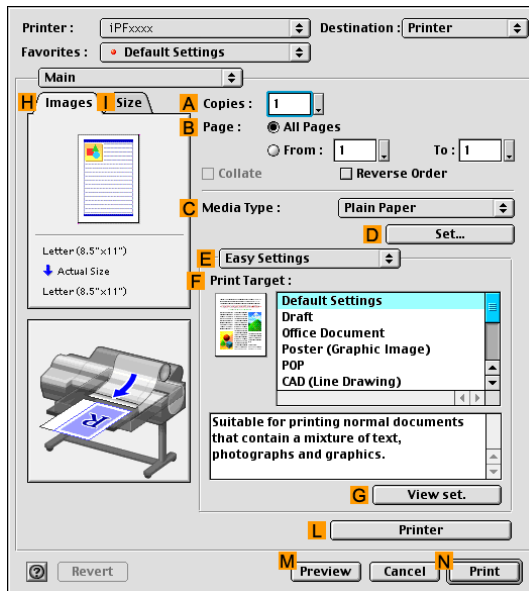
10. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click “430*430”, the size you registered.

11. In **D Print Area Setting**, click **F For Manual printing**.

12. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.

13. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

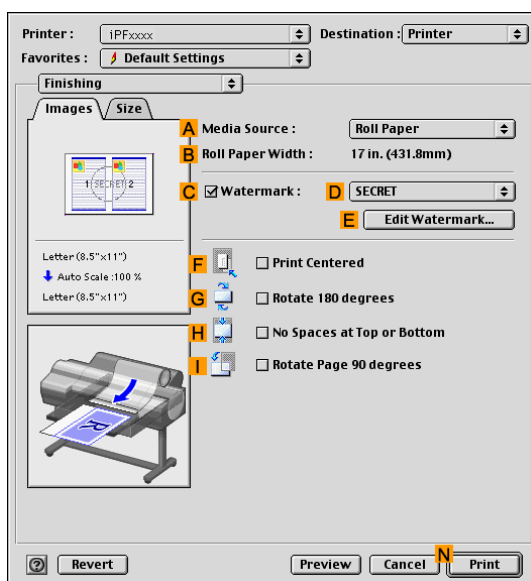
14. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



15. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

16. After confirming that **E Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the **F Print Target** list.

17. Access the **Finishing** pane.



18. Click **Manual** in the **A Media Source** list.

19. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: A horizontal banner created in Microsoft Word
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 in (406.4 mm)

Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Register a **Custom Media Size**.

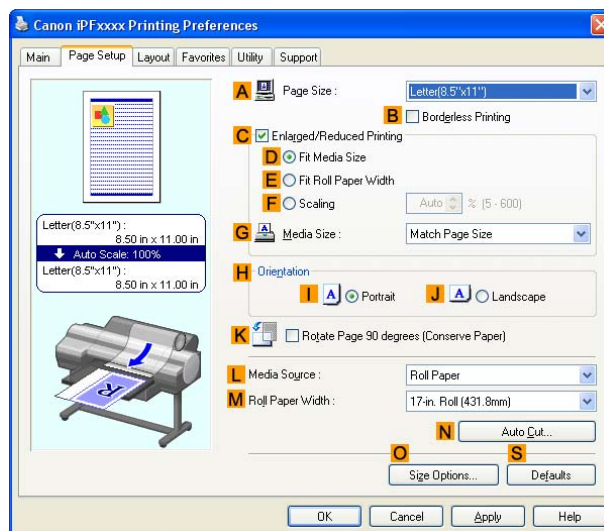
Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Media Size**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.

2. In the application, create an original in the size you registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

Registering a Custom Media Size

This example describes how to register a paper size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.496)
2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



3. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
4. Click **O Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
5. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Media Size Name**. “My Horizontal Banner” is used in this example.
6. In **Units**, click **mm**.
7. Under **Media Size**, enter “100” in **Width** and “500” in **Height**.
8. Click **Add** to add the paper size of “My Horizontal Banner.”
9. Click **OK** to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

10. Close the printer driver dialog box.



Note

- You can also specify a **Custom Size** as the paper size. Note that **Custom Size** settings are not available after you exit the application.
For more information, see "Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)". (→P.362)

Creating the banner in the application

Follow the steps below to create the banner in Microsoft Word using the **Custom Media Size** you registered.

1. Start Microsoft Word.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Page Setup** dialog box.
3. Under **Paper Size**, click the **Custom Media Size** you registered-"My Horizontal Banner" in this example.



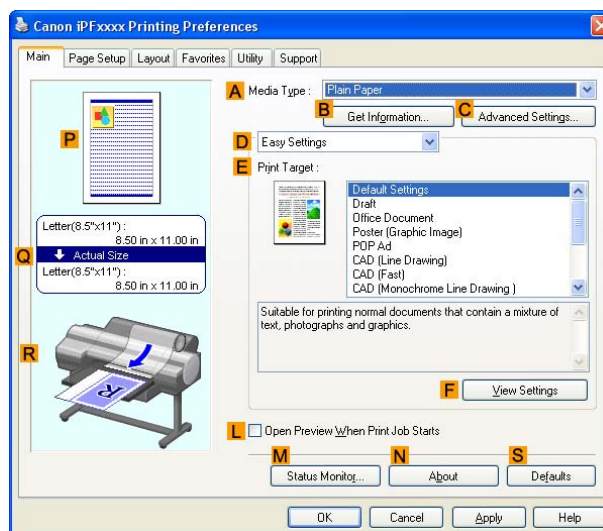
Important

- If "My Horizontal Banner" is not listed, make sure this printer is selected as the printer to use.
 - In applications such as Microsoft PowerPoint that do not enable you to choose registered paper sizes, use the custom paper size setting in "Custom" and specify 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in)
4. Set the printing orientation to horizontal.
 5. Create the banner.

Printing the banner

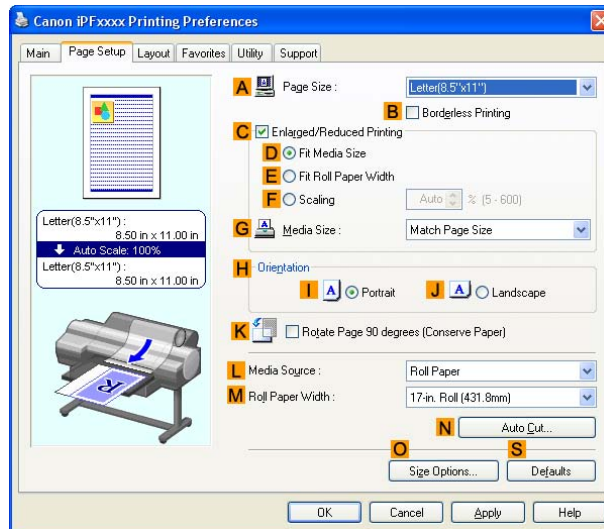
Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the Microsoft Word menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **POP Ad** in the **E Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



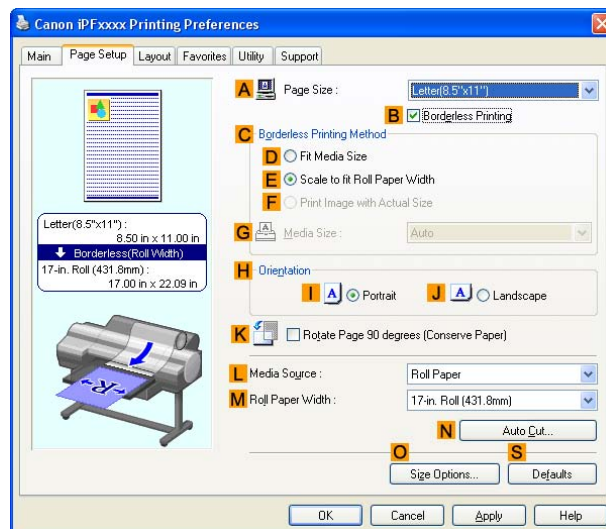
7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size you registered, "My Horizontal Banner."

8. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.



Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B Borderless Printing** check box.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.

10. After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed.

11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, and then click **OK**.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



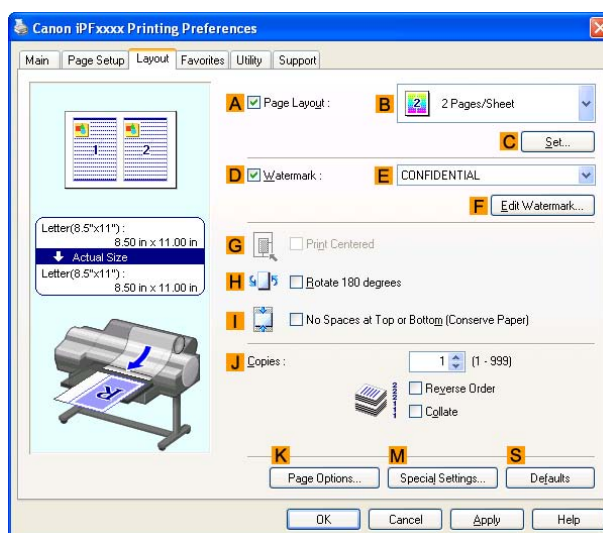
Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)



Note

- If printing is unsuccessful, you may be able to print after completing the following setting.
 - 1.** On the **Layout** sheet, click **M Special Settings** to display the **Special Settings** dialog box.



- 2.** In the **FineZoom Settings** list, click **Yes**.

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page Size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. Register a “Custom Page Size.”
Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a “Custom Page Size” in **Page Setup**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.



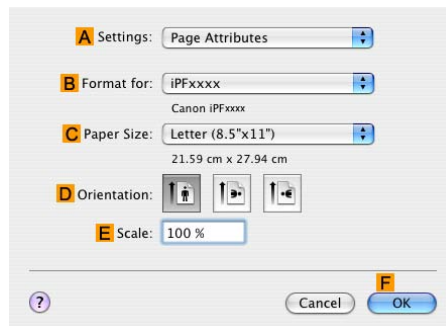
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

Register a Custom Page Size

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



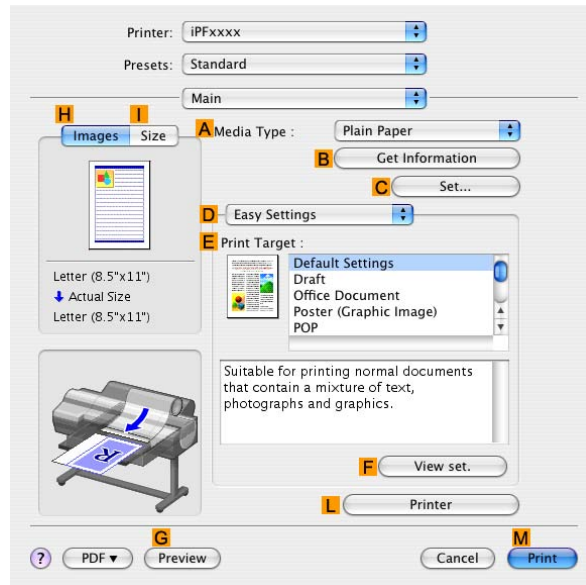
3. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
4. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the **C Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
5. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left, and then enter a name for the page size you want to register. Here, enter “100*500.”
If the **Untitled** size is not listed at left, click **+** below the list.
6. Under **Page Size**, enter “10” in **Width** and “50” in **Height**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
7. Specify the margins by entering “0.3” in **Printer Margins**. Here, too, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.

9. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click "100*500", the size you registered.
10. In **D Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
11. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

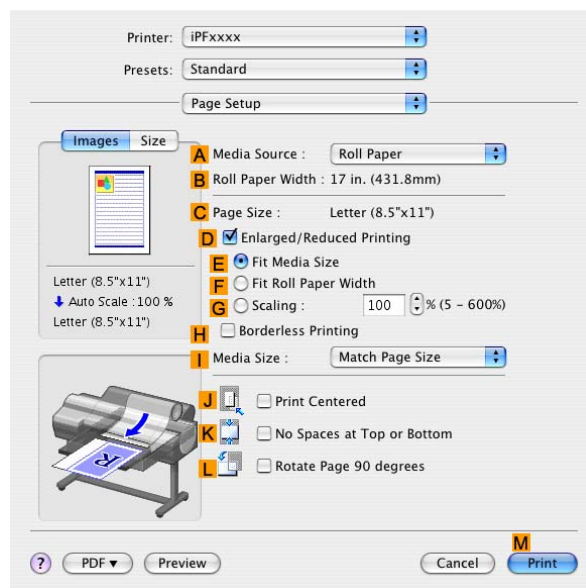
Print the banner

Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Main** pane.



3. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
4. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **POP** in the **E Print Target** list.
5. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



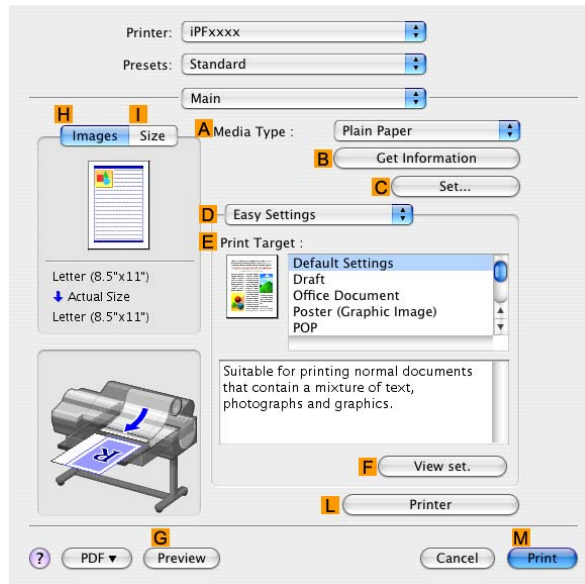
6. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

7. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.



Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



8. In **C Page Size**, make sure "100*500" is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.
9. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
10. Click **F Fit Roll Paper Width**.
11. Confirm the print settings, and click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)". (→P.513)

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm, [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

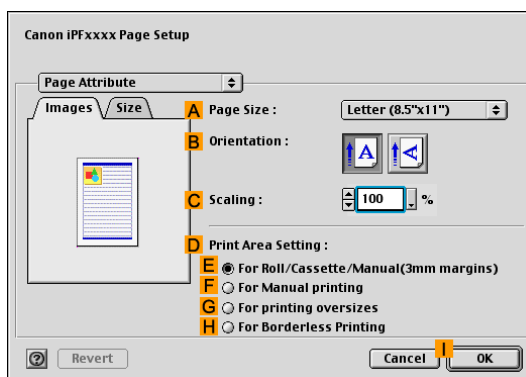
The steps to print a vertical or horizontal banner are as follows.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. Register a **Custom Media Size** in **Media Design**.
Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Media Size**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

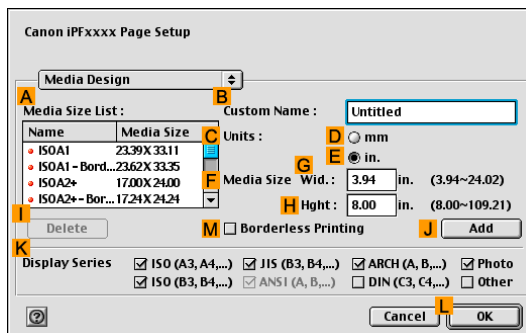
Register a Custom Media Size

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
3. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

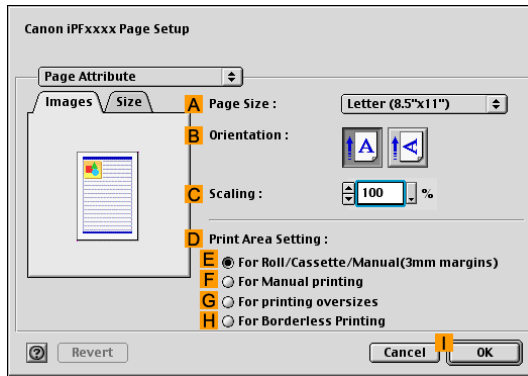


4. Click **Media Design** in the **Page Attribute** list to display the **Media Design** pane.



5. Enter a desired paper name in **B Custom Name**. "My Horizontal Banner" is used in this example.
6. In **C Units**, click **D mm**.
7. Under **F Media Size**, enter "100" in **G Wid.** and "500" in **H Hght**.
8. Click **J Add** to add the paper size of "My Horizontal Banner."

9. Access the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



10. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size you added, "My Horizontal Banner."

11. In **B Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.

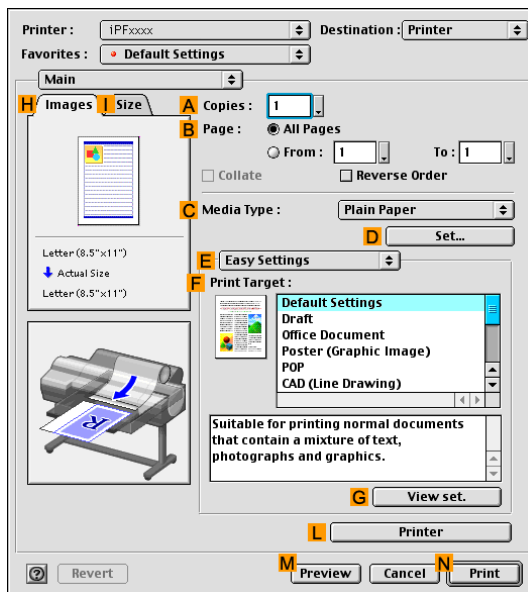
12. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.

Print the banner

Follow these steps to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

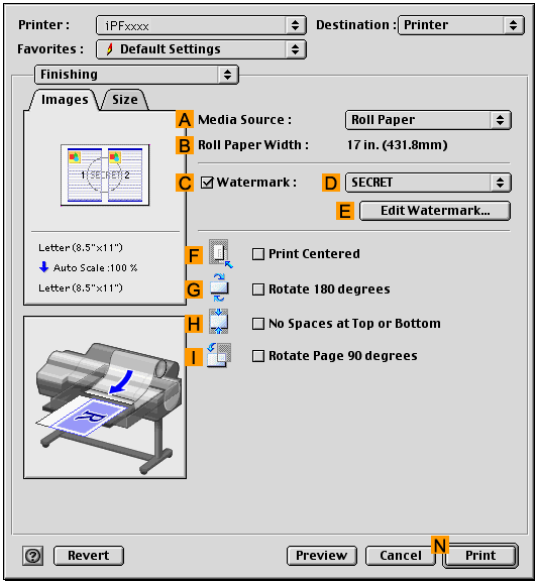
2. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



3. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

4. After confirming that **E Easy Settings** is selected, click **POP** in the **F Print Target** list.

5. Access the **Finishing** pane.

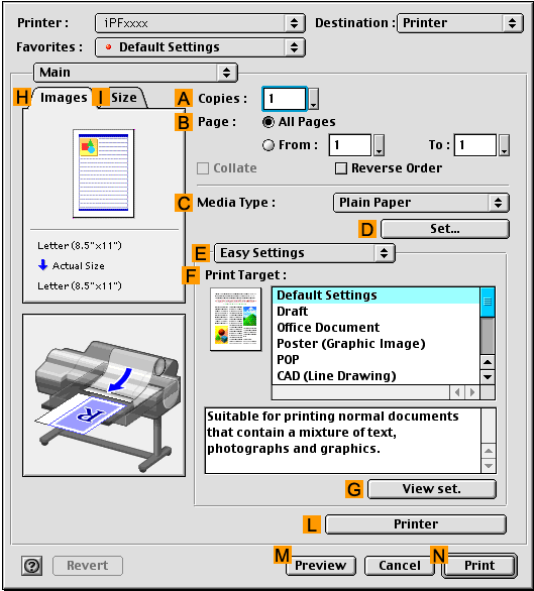


6. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
7. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

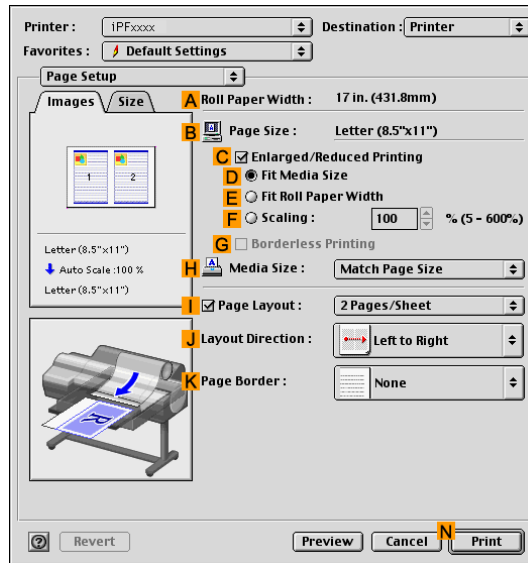


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. In **B Page Size**, make sure “My Horizontal Banner” is displayed, as registered in **Media Design**.
10. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

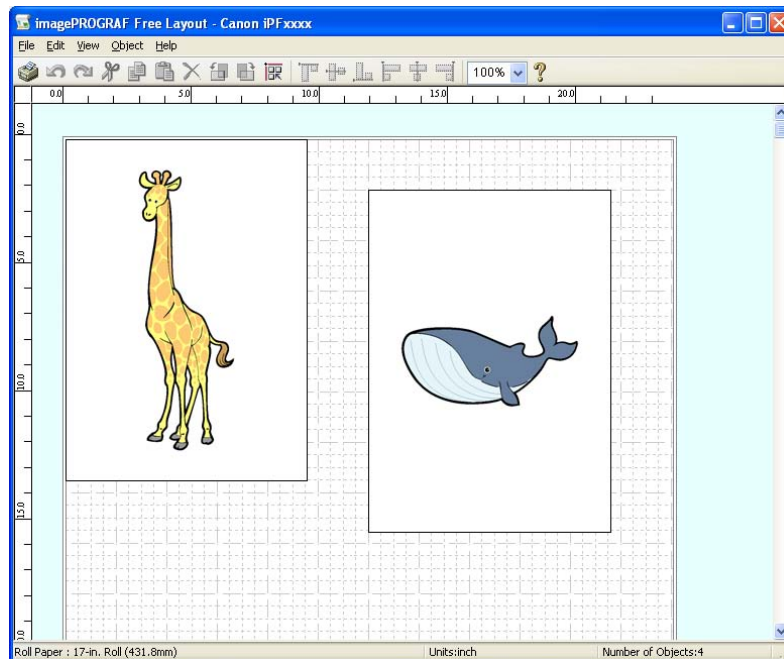
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other

By arranging originals from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or web browser screen shots next to each other on single sheets, you can create highly expressive presentation materials, easy-to-understand meeting materials, and a variety of other printed documents.

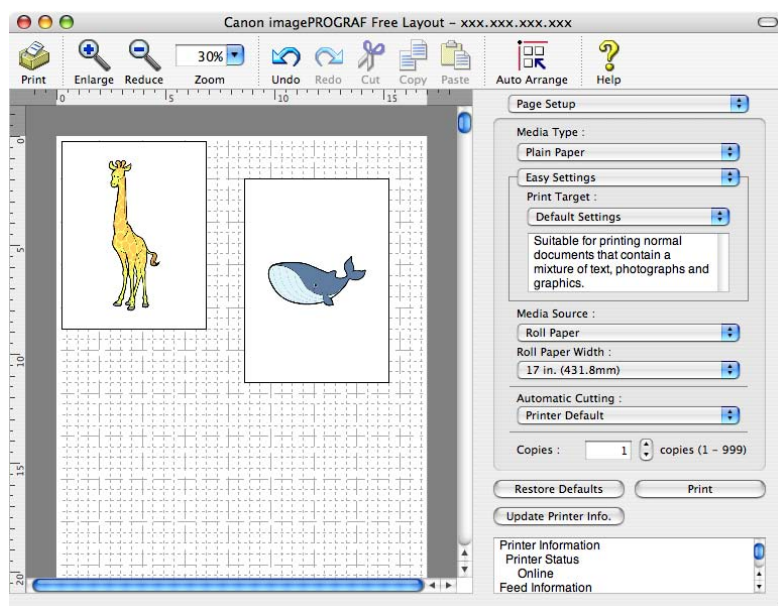
Free Layout (Windows)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files-even multiple source applications-in a single-page layout.



imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files—even multiple source applications—in a single-page layout.



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

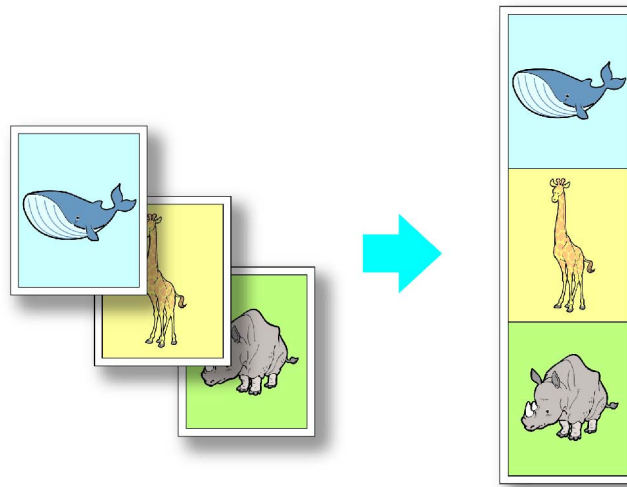
For instructions on arranging originals from multiple applications, refer to the following topics.

- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) (→P.391)
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) (→P.393)

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously

You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

Roll paper (banner)



Important

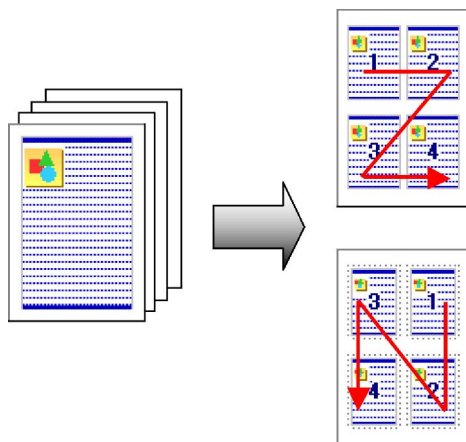
- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) (→P.395)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) (→P.396)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9) (→P.398)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet

To conserve paper, you can print several pages of the original on a single sheet by reducing the original and dividing the sheet into areas for each page.



Page Layout

Specify a number of pages of the original to print on a single sheet, in a layout of multiple pages per sheet.



Note

- You can print up to 16 pages of the original on a single sheet.
- You can also change the page layout order and print page boundary lines, as desired.



Important

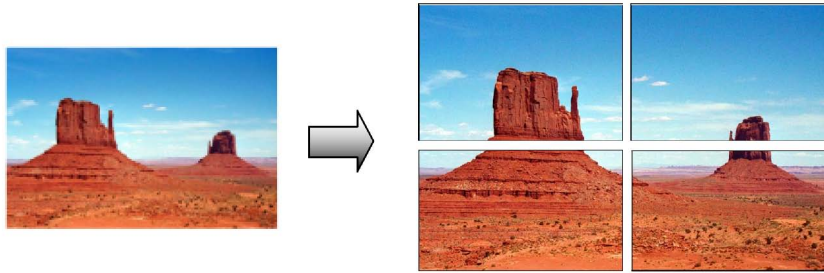
- This function cannot be combined with the following options.
 - Borderless Printing
 - Resizing to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)
 - Scaling Originals (Windows)
 - Banner Printing (Windows)

For instructions on printing multiple pages per sheet, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) (→P.400)
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) (→P.402)
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9) (→P.405)

Printing Posters in Sections

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer.



Page Layout

Choose poster printing.

For instructions on printing large posters, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Large Posters (Windows) (→P.387)
- Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9) (→P.389)



Note

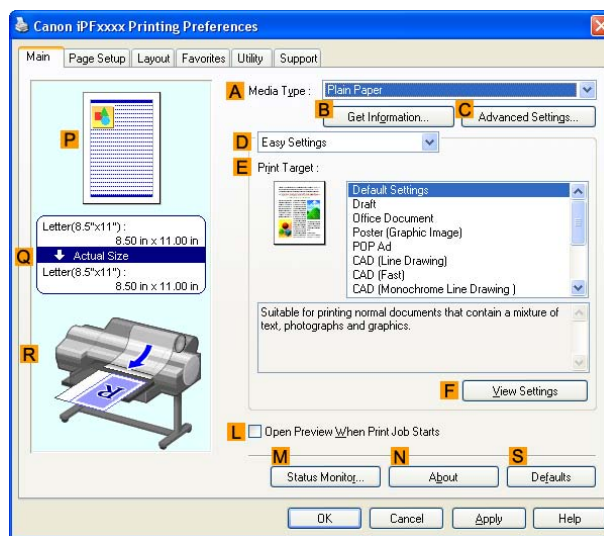
- This method of poster printing is supported in Windows and Mac OS 9.

Printing Large Posters (Windows)

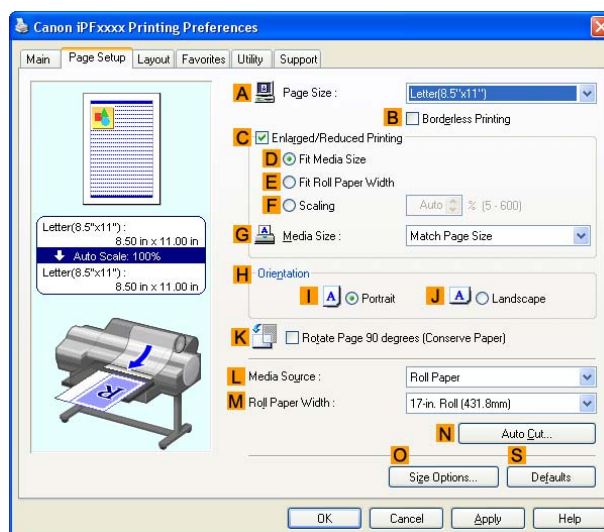
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper Type: Glossy Paper
- Paper size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

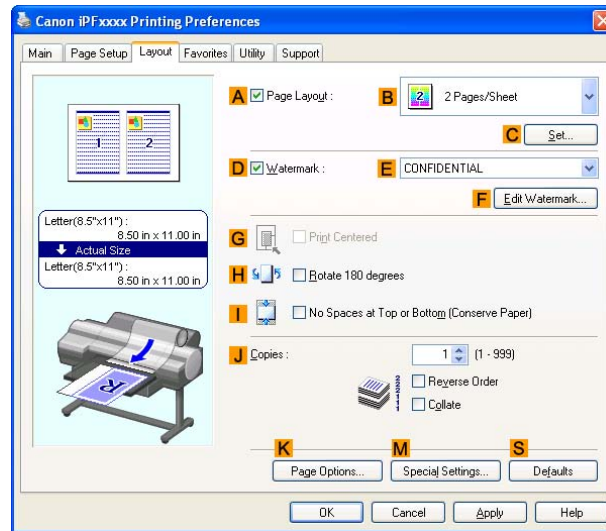
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Paper.
5. Click **Poster (Graphic Image)** in the **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
8. Click **Manual** in the **L Media Source** list.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the **A Page Layout** check box.
11. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the **B Page Layout** list.



Note

- Follow the steps below to print only a portion of the poster as divided for printing.
 1. Click **C Set** under **B Page Layout** to display the **Pages to Print** dialog box.
 2. On the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of the portion you do not want to print.
 3. Click **OK** to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

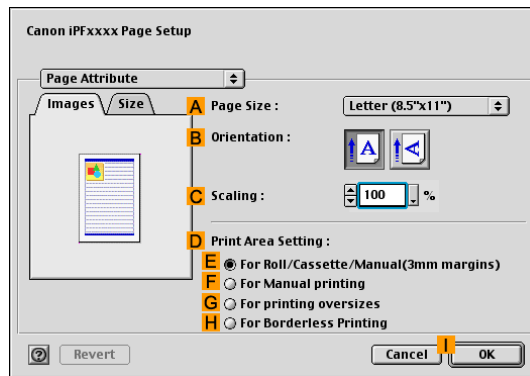
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9)

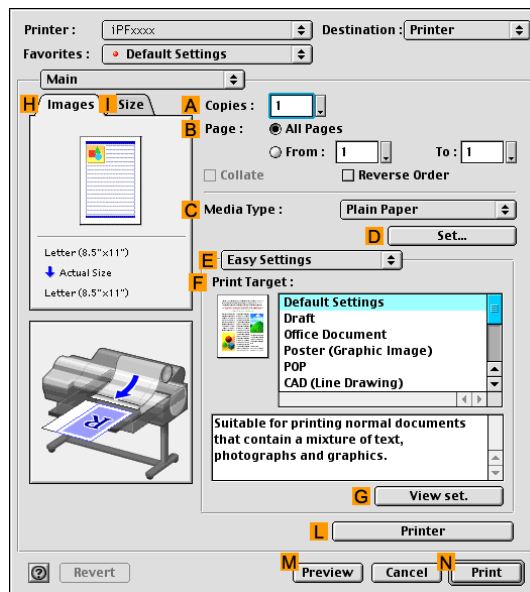
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing on four sheets of paper based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Glossy Paper
- Paper size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

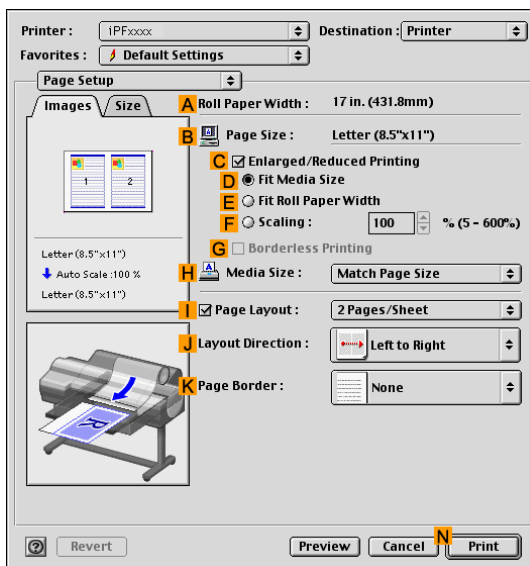


3. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
4. In **D** **Print Area Setting**, click **F** **For Manual printing**.
5. Click **I** **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.

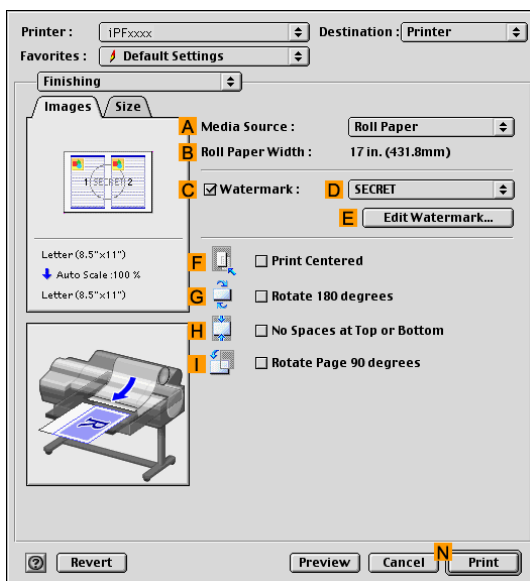


8. In the **C** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Glossy Paper**.

9. After confirming that **E Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster (Graphic Image)** in the **F Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11. Select the **I Page Layout** check box.
12. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the **I Page Layout** list.
13. In the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of any portion you do not want to print.
14. Access the **Finishing** pane.



15. Click **Paper Tray Feed** in the **A Media Source** list.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



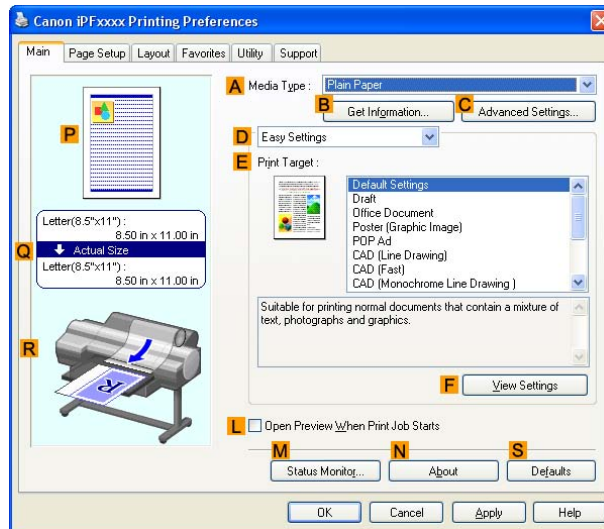
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

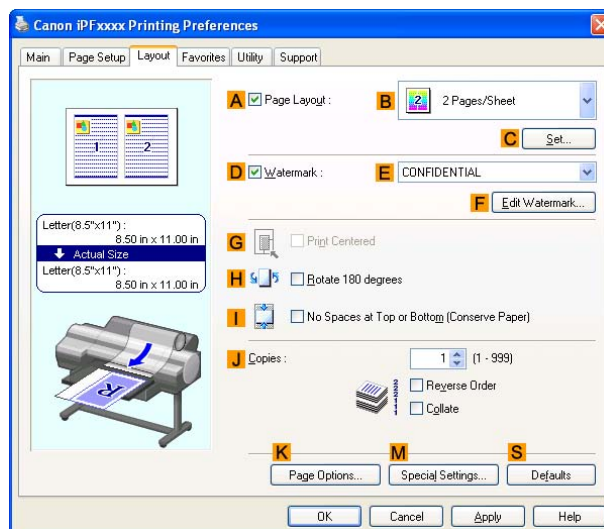
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)

This topic describes how to arrange multiple originals using the Free Layout function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

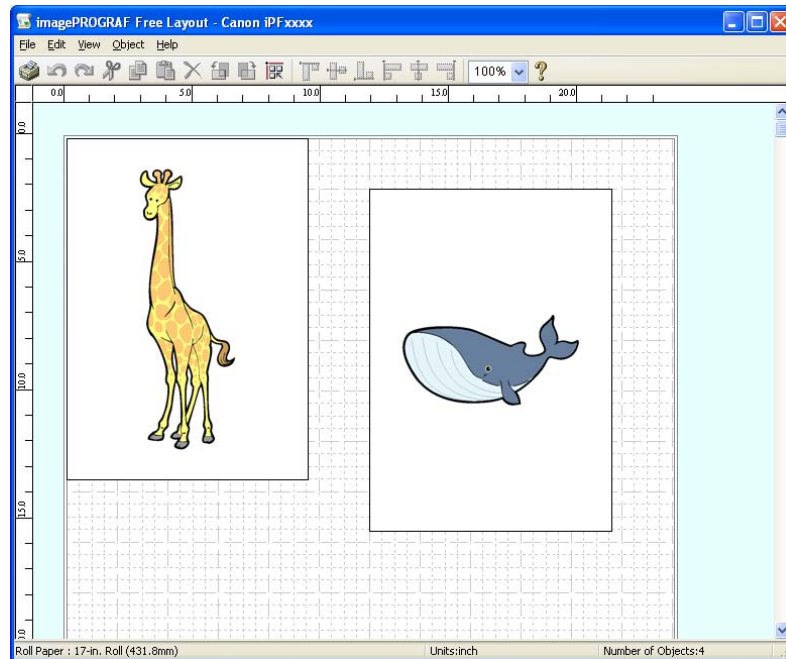


4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click **Free Layout** in the **Page Layout** list.

7. When you attempt to print, the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8. Edit and rearrange the image in the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window as desired.



Important

- Without closing the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.



Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the imagePROGRAF Free Layout help topic.

9. Print from the imagePROGRAF Free Layout menu.



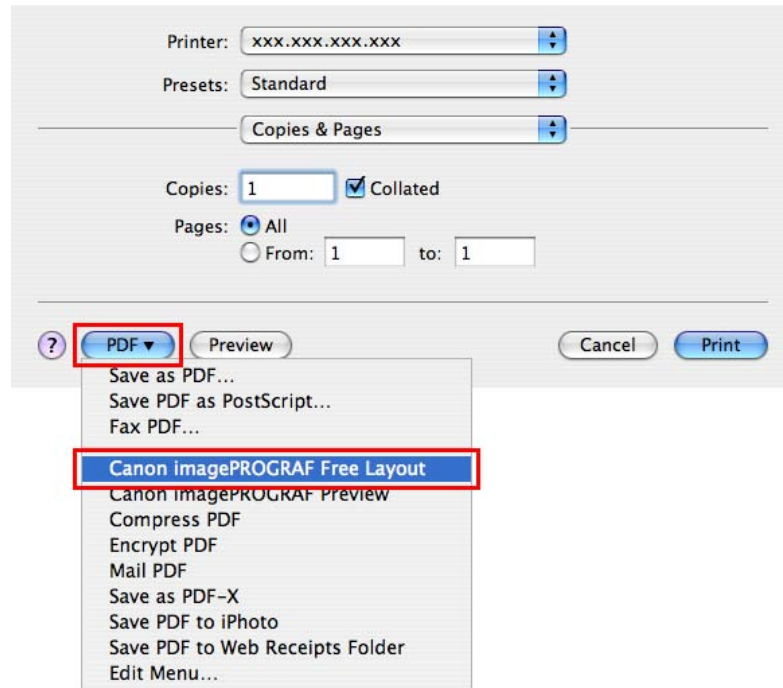
Note

- For details on imagePROGRAF Free Layout functions, refer to Free Layout Guide .

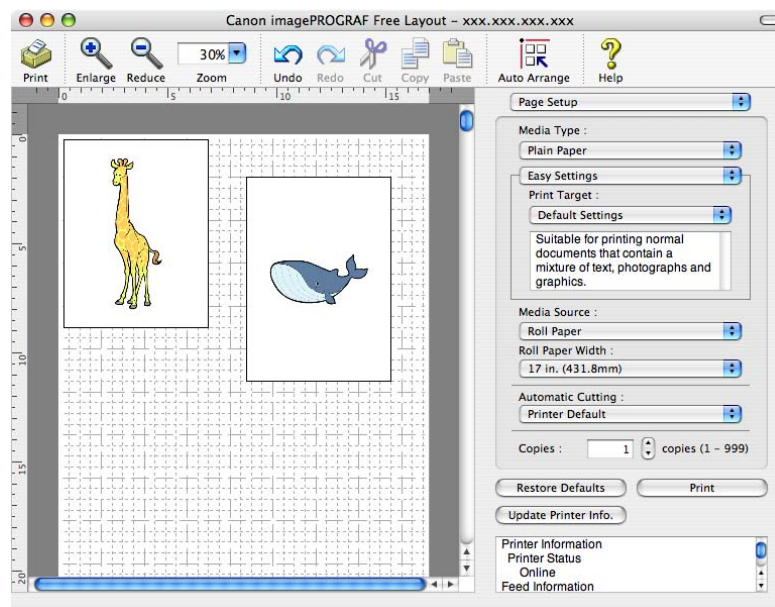
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to use the **Free Layout** function to arrange multiple originals next to each other before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window is displayed.



4. Edit and rearrange the image in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.



Important

- Without closing the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.



Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** help topic.

5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** menu.



Note

- For details on **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** functions, refer to Free Layout Guide .

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)

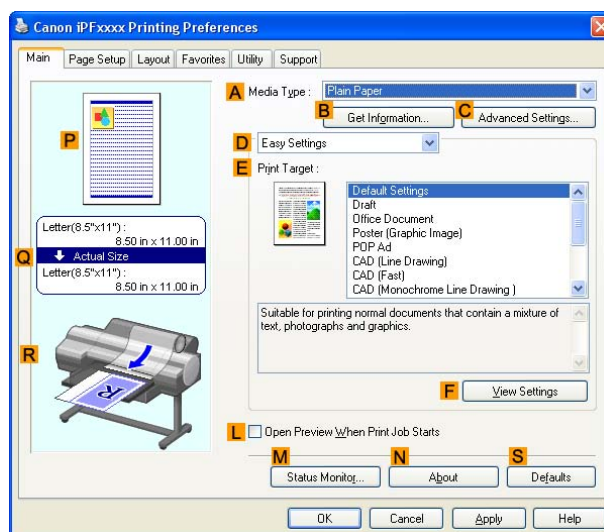
This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.



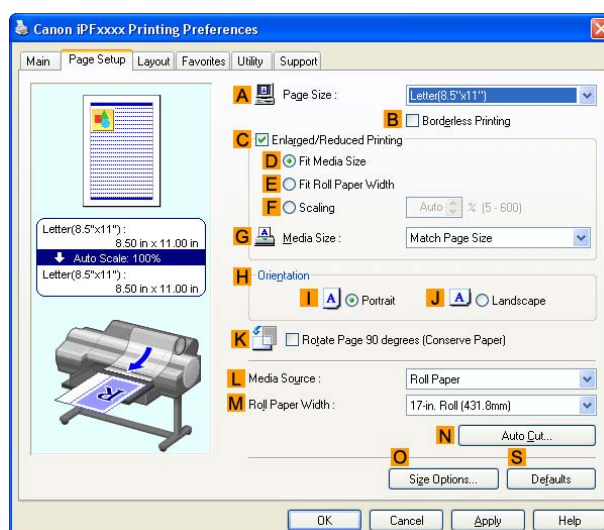
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the **L Media Source** list.
7. Confirm the print settings and start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X)

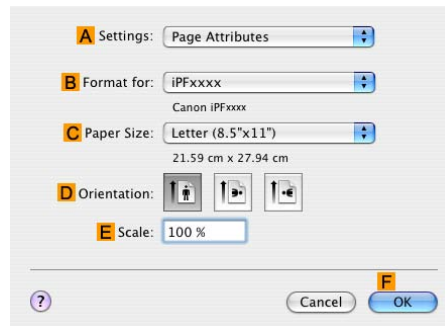
This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.



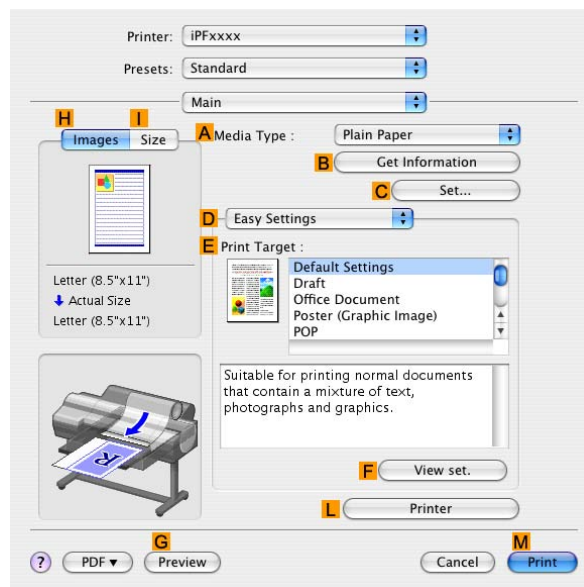
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

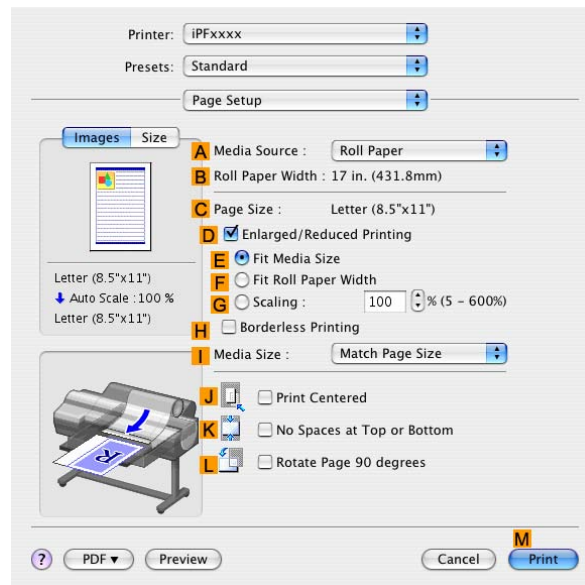


2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Click the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup pane.**



10. Click **Roll Paper (Banner) in the **A Media Source** list.**

11. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print to start printing.**



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9)

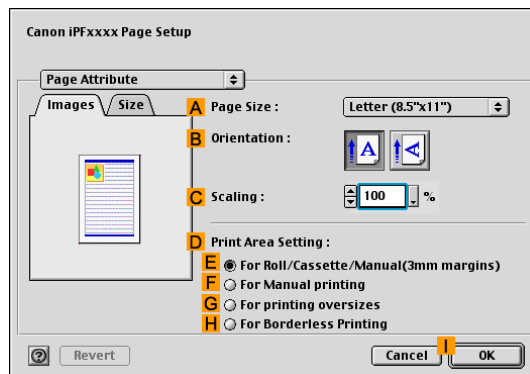
This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.



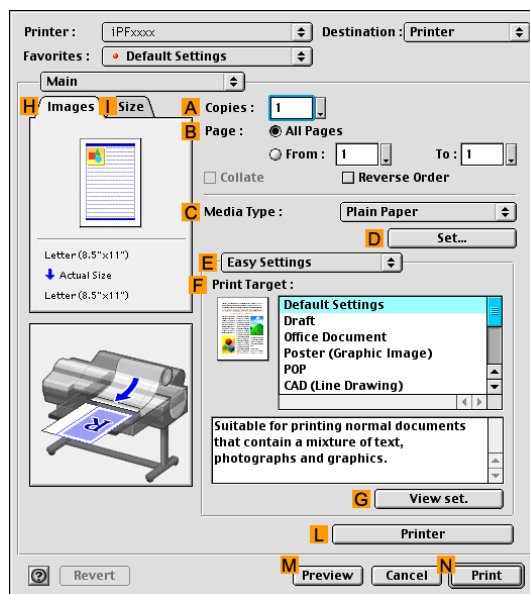
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

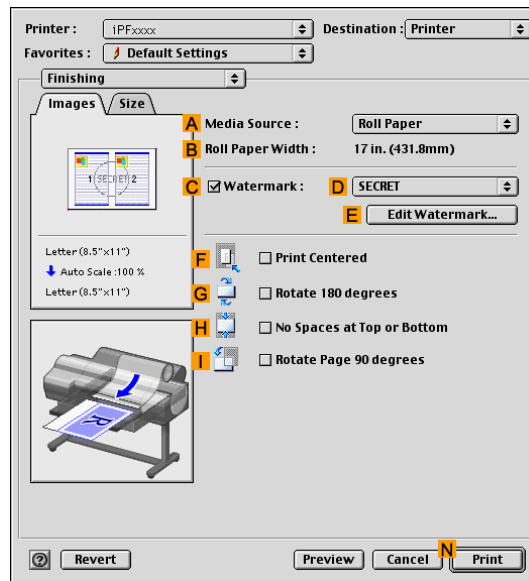


3. Click the original size in the **A Page Size** list.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Make your selection in the **F Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

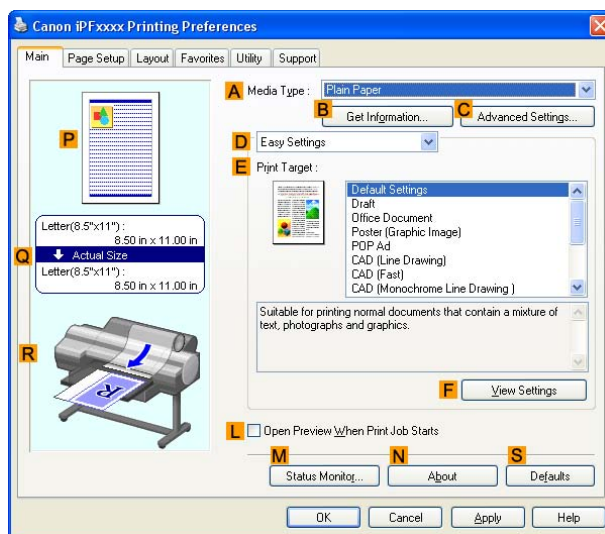
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)

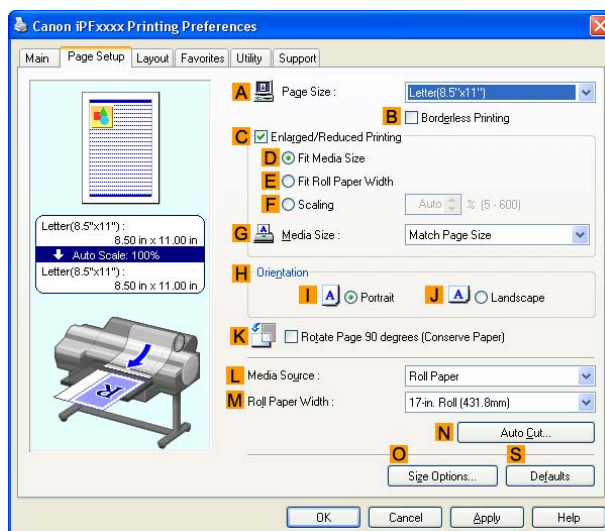
This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper Type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

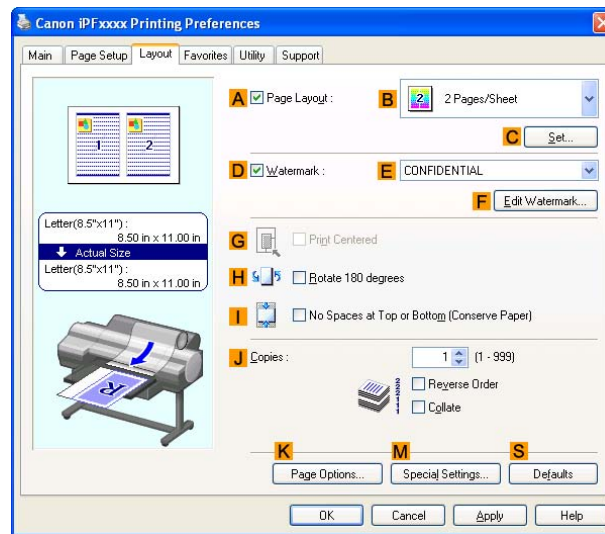


4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the type of document in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

8. Click **Cassette** in the **L Media Source** list.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the **A Page Layout** check box.
11. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the **B Page Layout** list.



Note

- You can select the layout order for placing four pages on a sheet and a frame border in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box by clicking **C Set**.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

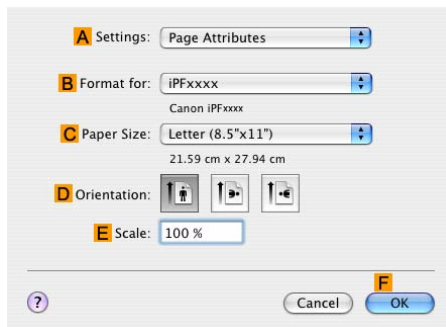
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print four pages of an original on a single sheet, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



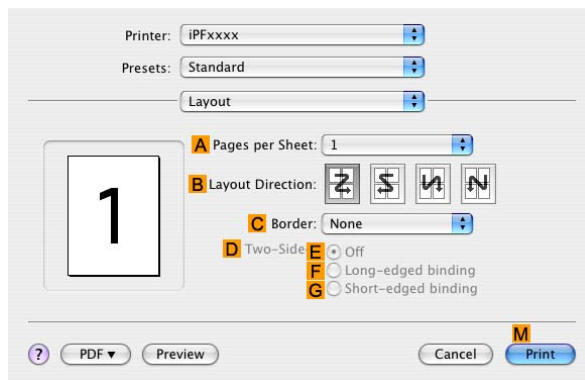
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6. Access the **Layout** pane.



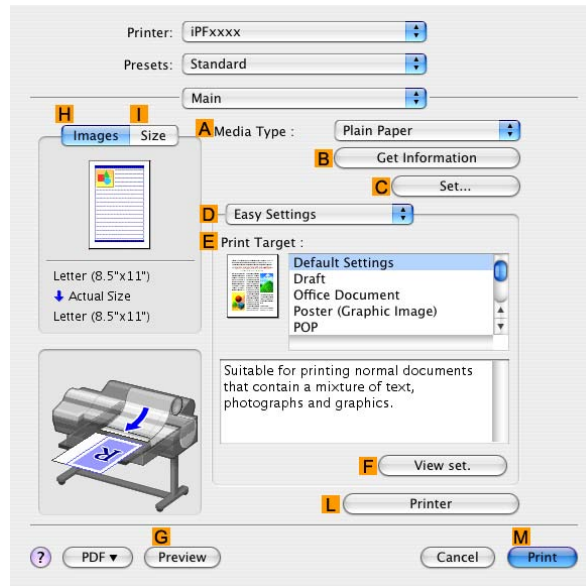
7. Click **4** in the **A Pages per Sheet** list.



Note

- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in **B Layout Direction** and **C Border** (or **Border**).

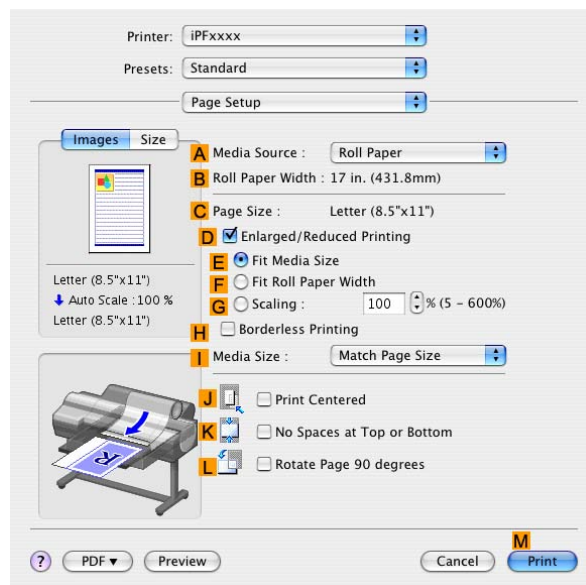
8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

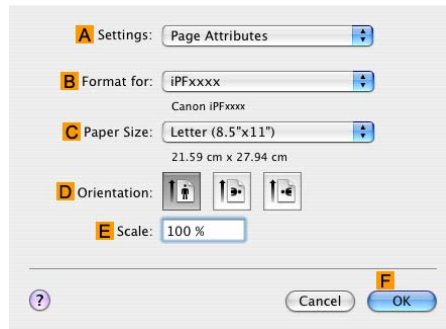
10. Select the printing application in the **Print Target** list.

11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



12. Click **Cassette** in the **Media Source** list.

- 13.** Make sure **C Paper Size** shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



- 14.** Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

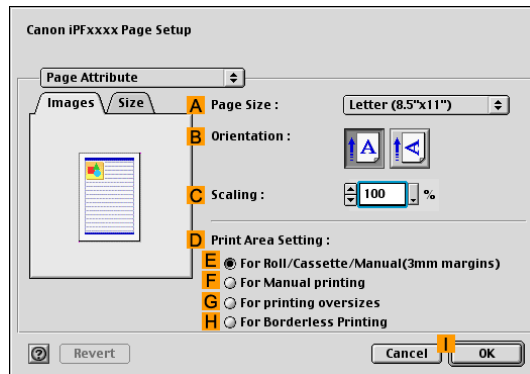
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9)

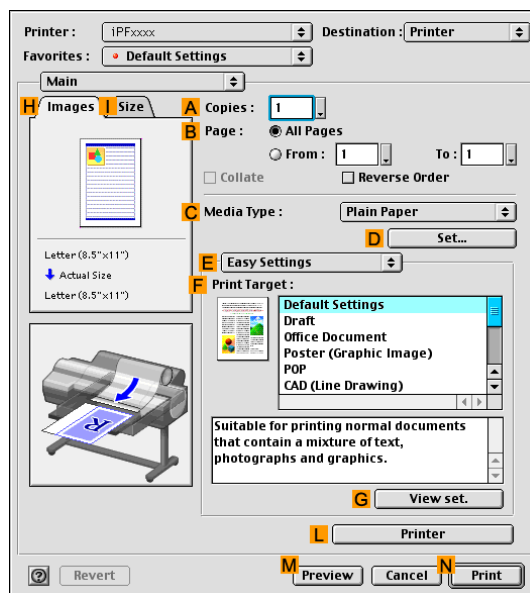
This topic describes how to print four pages of an original on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

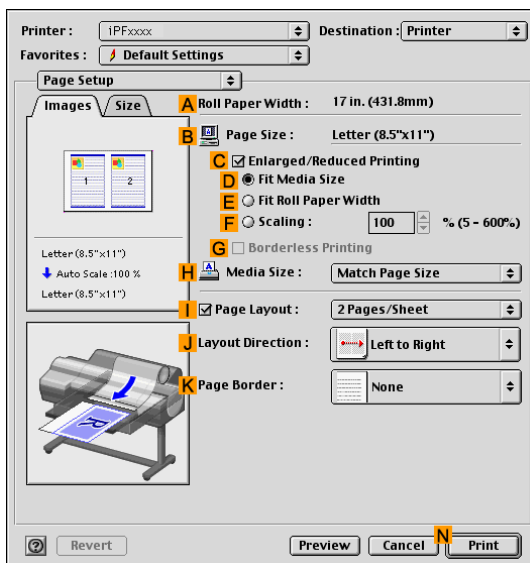


3. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the **F Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Select the **I Page Layout** check box.

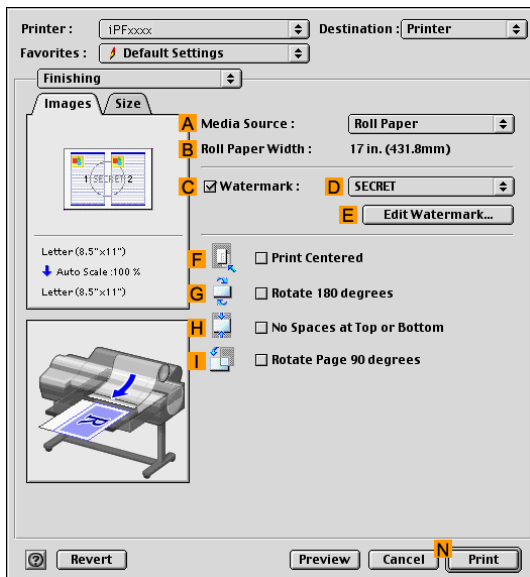
11. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the **I Page Layout** list.



Note

- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in **J Layout Direction** and **K Page Border**.

12. Access the **Finishing** pane.



13. Click **Cassette** in the **A Media Source** list.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Centering originals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls

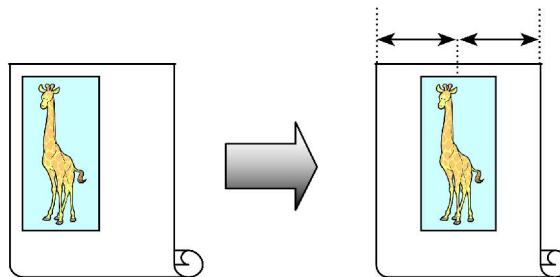
You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Centering originals relative to roll paper width

If you use originals smaller than the roll paper width, you can center them relative to the width when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the roll, relative to the width.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on rolls, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) (→P.409)
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) (→P.411)
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9) (→P.414)

■ ■ ■ Printing Originals Centered on Sheets

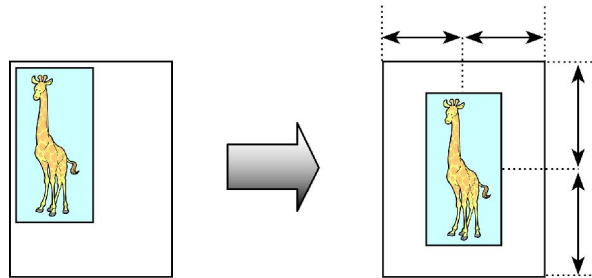
You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Centering originals on sheets

If you use paper larger than the original size or print originals after reduction, the printed images may be aligned in the upper-left corner of the paper. In this case, you can center originals on sheets when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the sheet.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on sheets, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

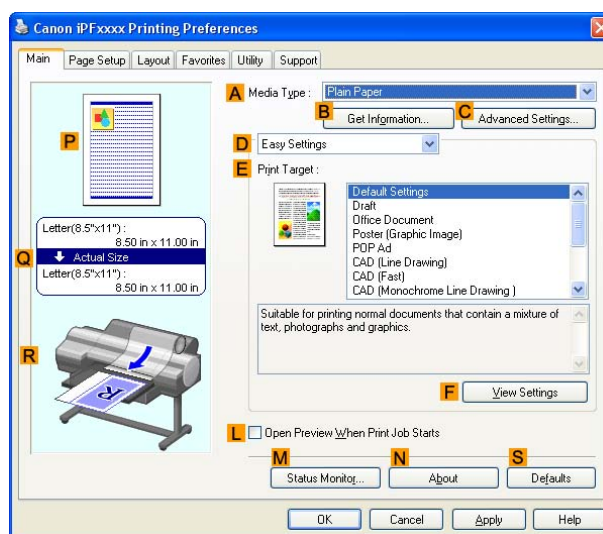
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) (→P.417)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) (→P.419)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9) (→P.421)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)

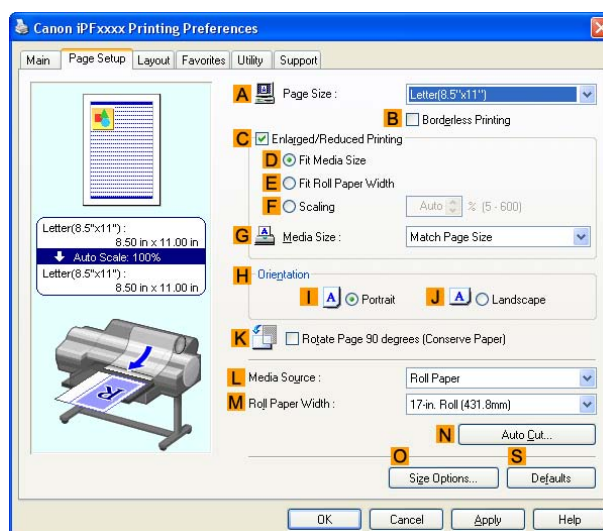
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

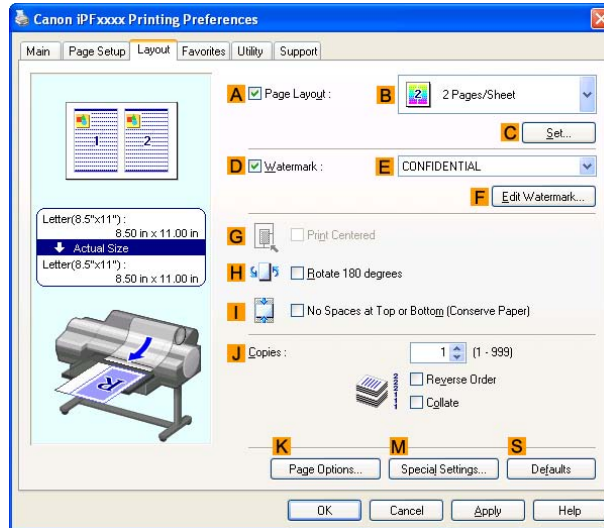
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the **G Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

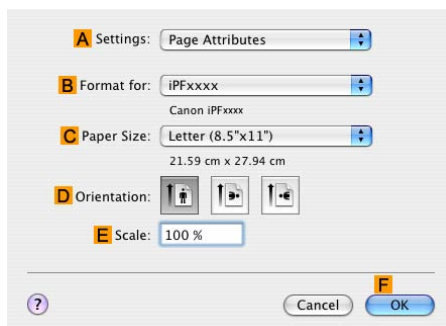
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.00 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



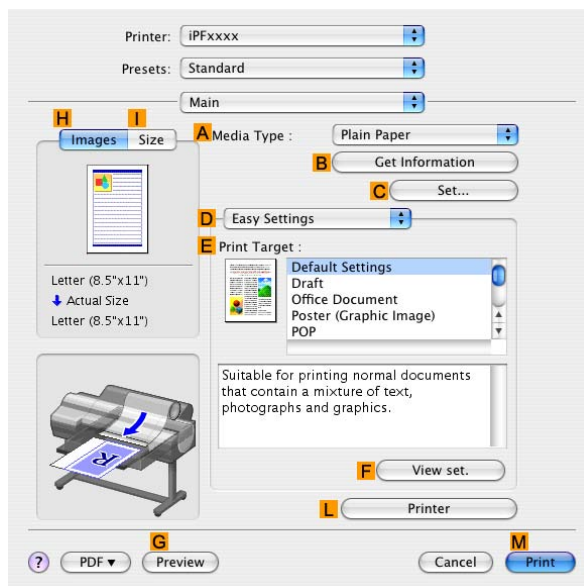
2. Select the print target in the **B Format for** list.

3. In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

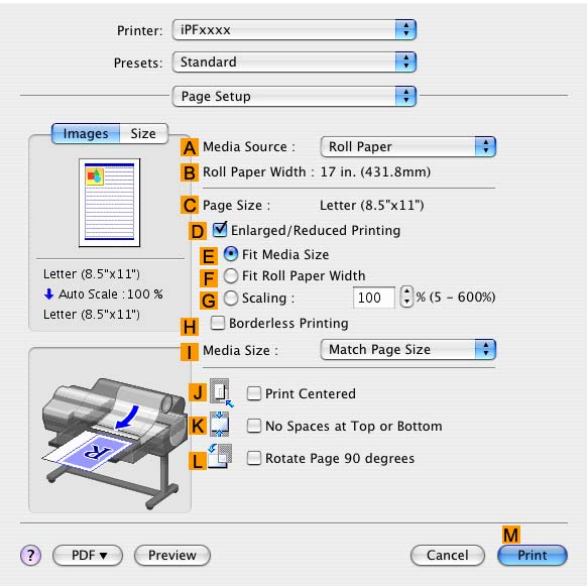
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

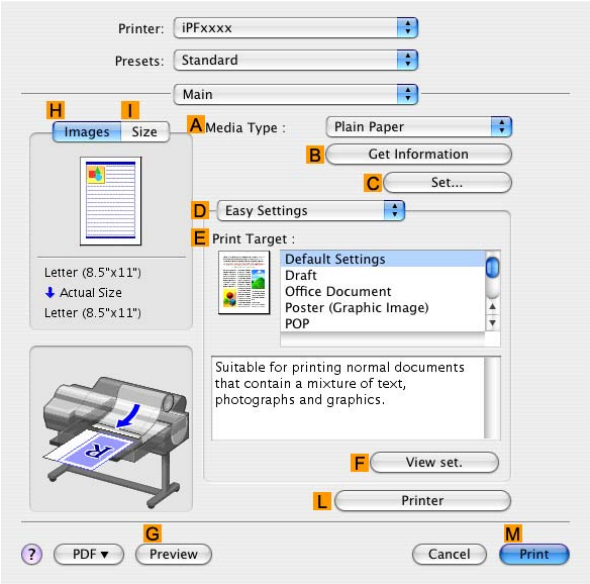


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10-in. Roll**.

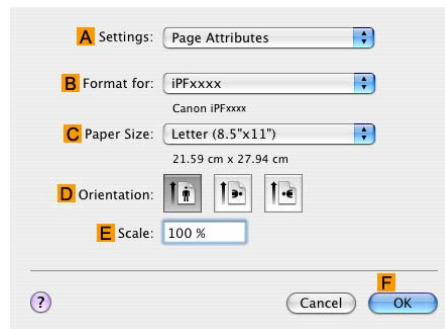


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **Roll Paper Width**, click **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the **J Print Centered** check box.
14. Confirm the print settings, and click **M Print** to start printing.

**Note**

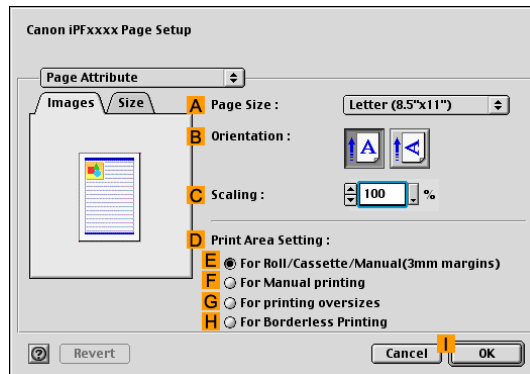
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9)

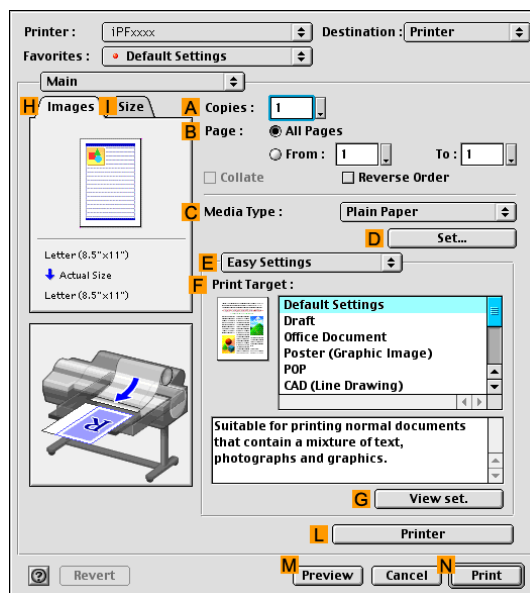
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

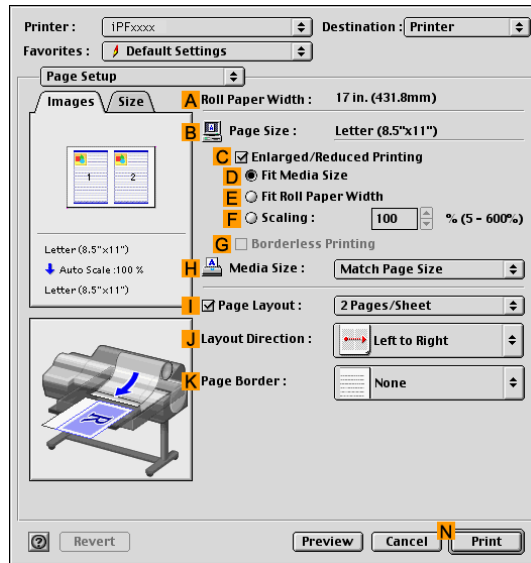


3. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.

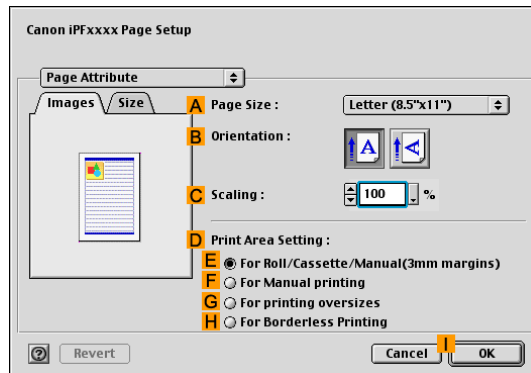


7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the **F Print Target** list.

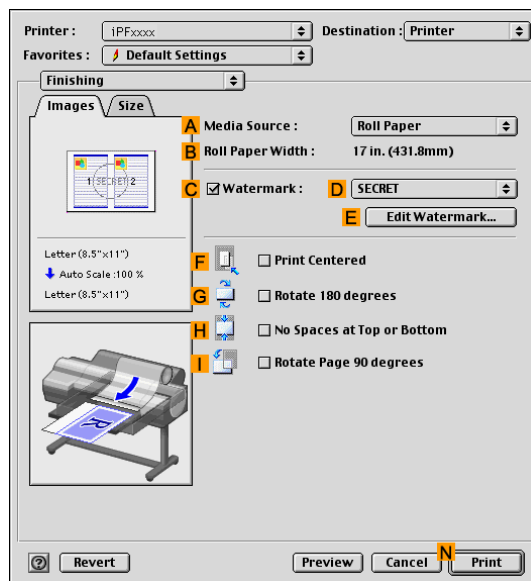
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Make sure the **B Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



11. Access the **Finishing** pane.

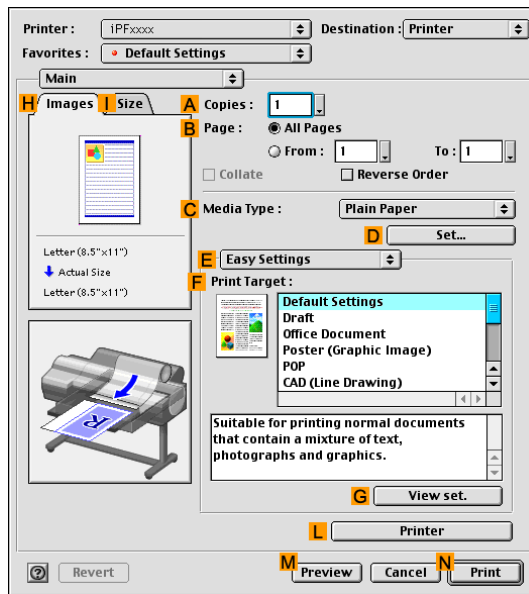


12. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.
13. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.



Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



14. Select the **F Print Centered** check box.
15. Confirm the print settings, and click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

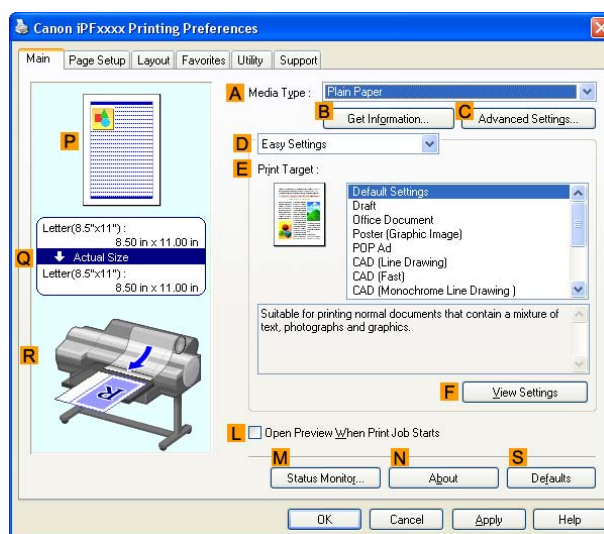
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)

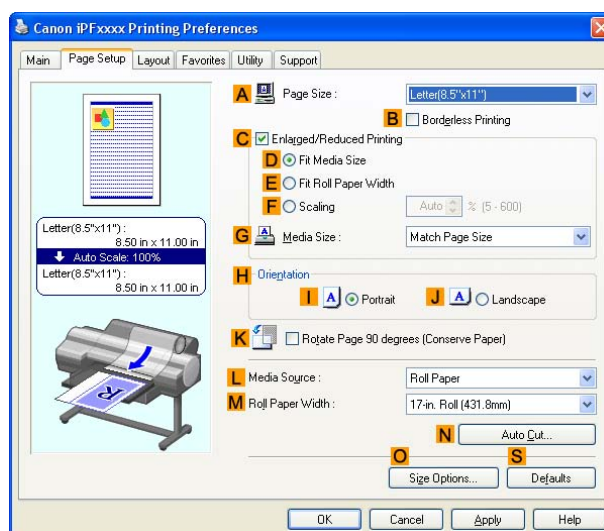
This topic describes how to reduce an original 50% for printing centered on a sheet.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper Type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

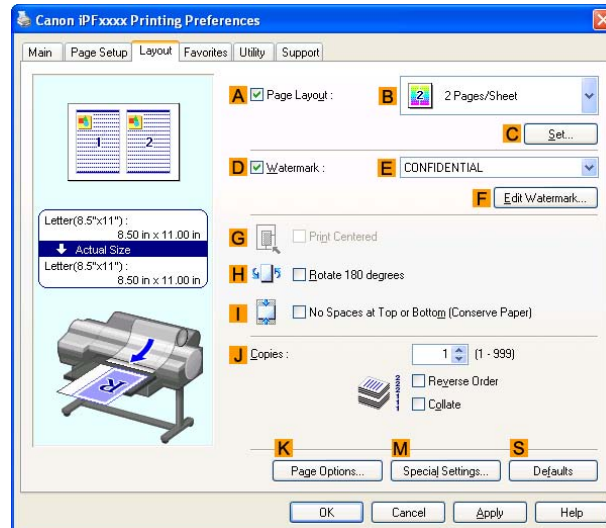


4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the type of document in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

8. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
9. Click **Match Page Size** in the **G Media Size** list.
10. Click **F Scaling** and enter "50."
11. Click **Manual** in the **L Media Source** list.
12. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



13. Select the **G Print Centered** check box.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)



Important

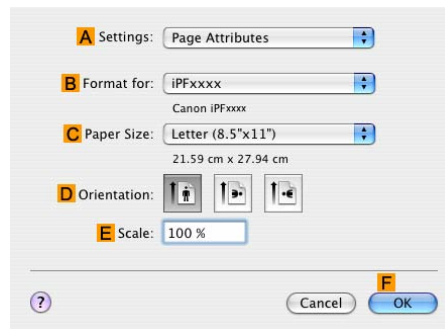
- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the media source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.
- If you have selected **Manual** as the media source but have not loaded the paper yet, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to complete the size setting before loading the paper.

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4/Letter
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

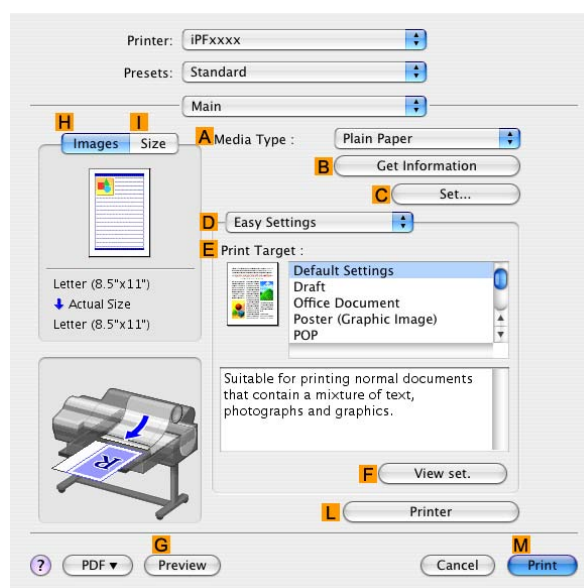


2. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

3. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

4. In the application software menu, choose **Print**.

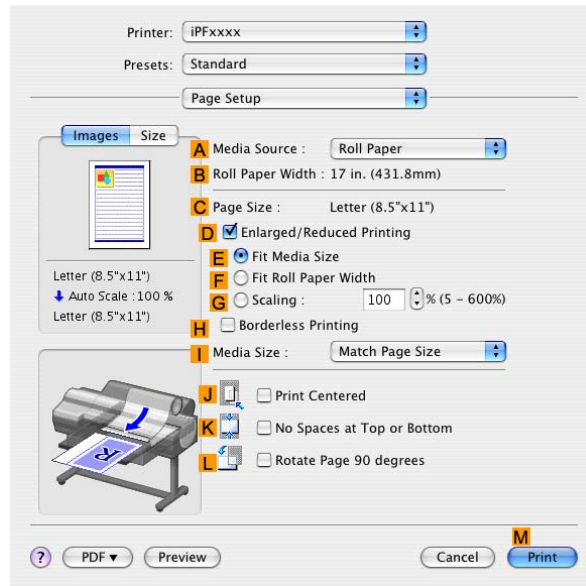
5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Plain Paper**.

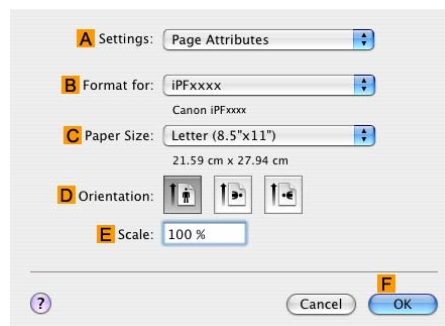
7. Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Click **Manual** in the **Media Source** list.

10. Make sure **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



11. Select the **Print Centered** check box.

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)



Important

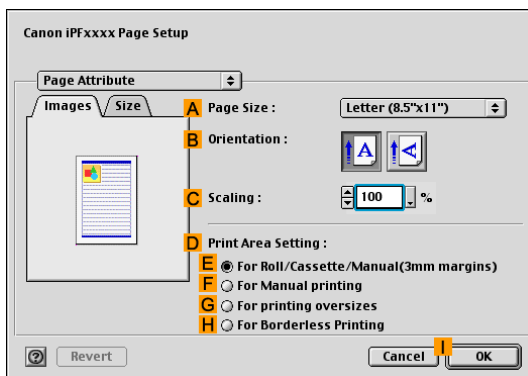
- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the media source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.
- If you have selected **Manual** as the media source but have not loaded the paper yet, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to complete the size setting before loading the paper.

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4/Letter
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the source application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

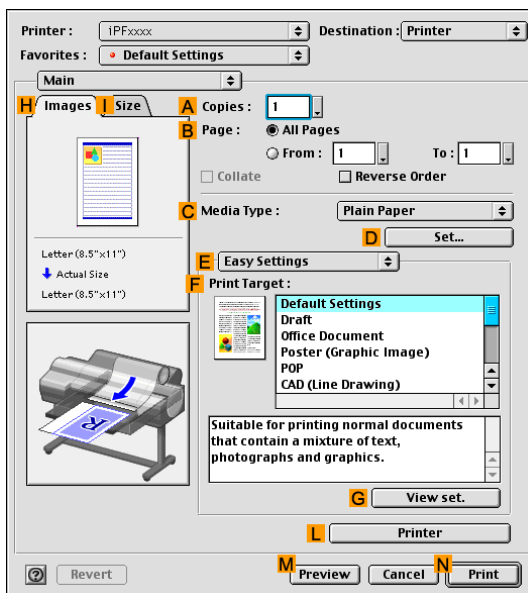


2. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

3. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.

4. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.

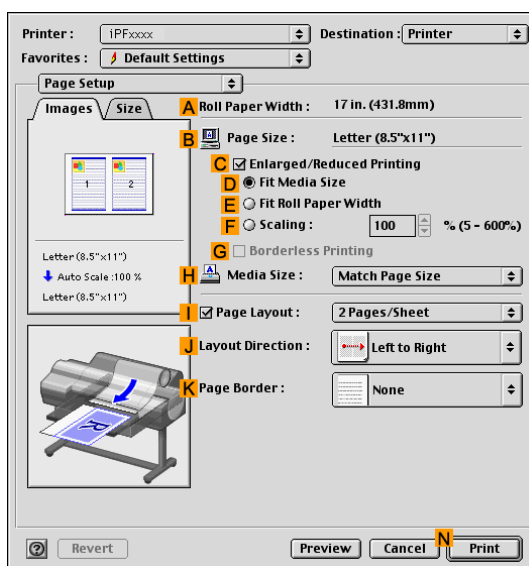
5. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



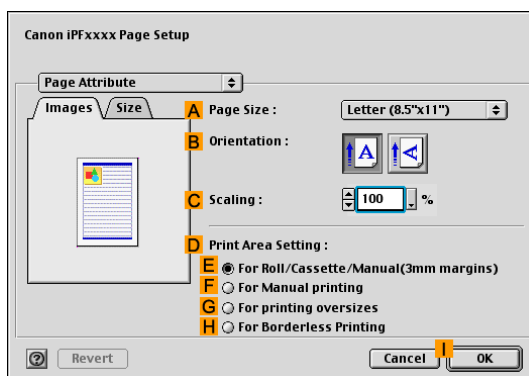
6. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Select the printing application in the **F Print Target** list.

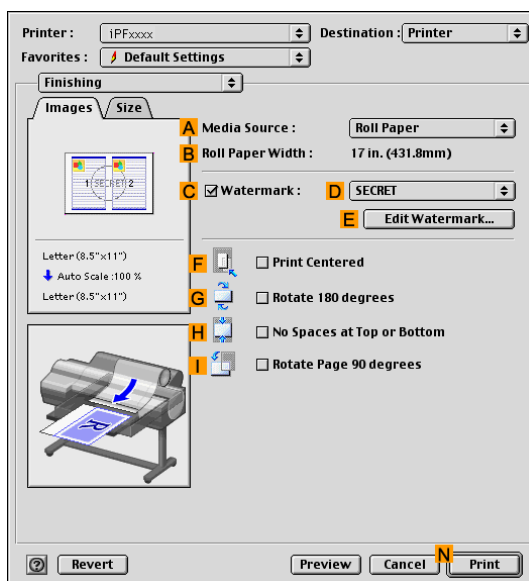
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Make sure **B Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **Page Setup** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



10. Access the **Finishing** pane.



11. Click **Manual** in the **A Media Source** list.
12. Select the **F Print Centered** check box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

**Important**

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the media source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.
- If you have selected **Manual** as the media source but have not loaded the paper yet, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to complete the size setting before loading the paper.

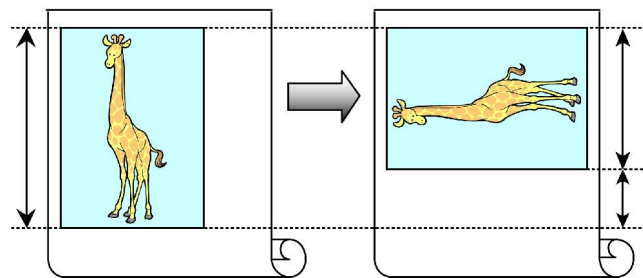
Conserving roll paper

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

When originals are printed in portrait orientation, the original is rotated 90 degrees before printing if it fits within the roll width. This enables you to conserve paper.



Important

- If the page would exceed the roll paper width after rotation, use this function with Scale to fit Roll Paper Width to print rotated pages.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

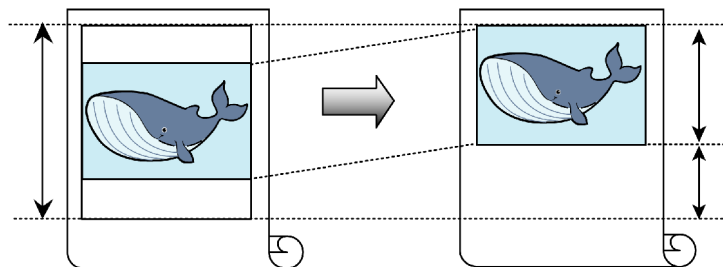
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) (→P.433)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) (→P.435)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9) (→P.438)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

You can print without feeding the paper for blank portions of originals if there are top and bottom margins in originals. This enables you to conserve as much paper as the size of the margins.



Important

- Printing without the top and bottom margins is not supported in the following cases.
 - Banner printing
 - If you have chosen poster as the type of page layout



Note

- Even during borderless printing, you can print without the top and bottom margins.
- Printing without the top and bottom margins may cause inconsistency in the size of printed documents, depending on the layout of images or text in your originals.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

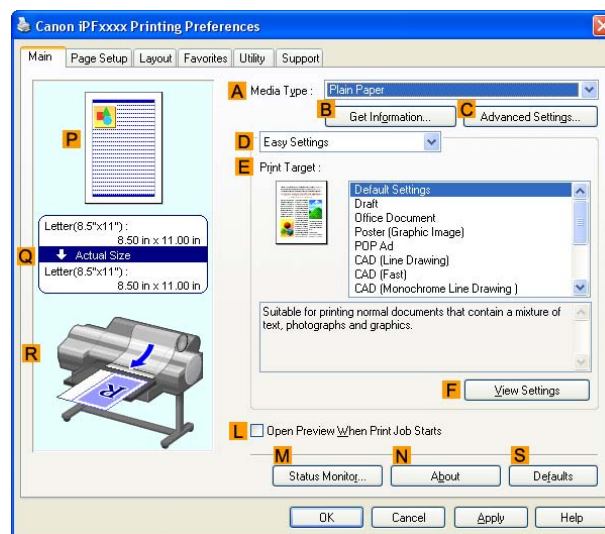
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) (→P.426)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) (→P.428)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9) (→P.431)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)

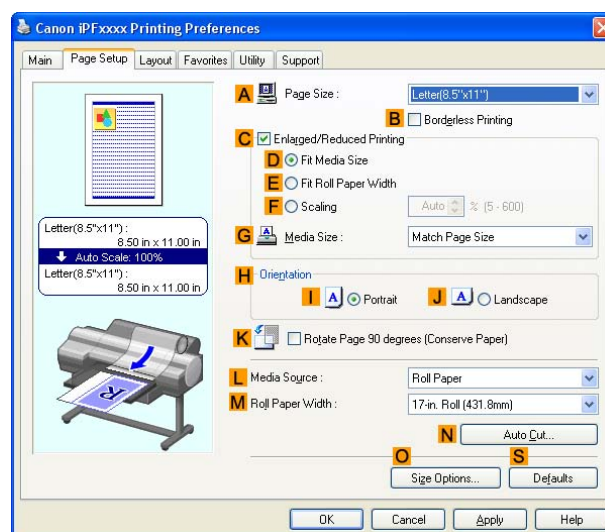
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

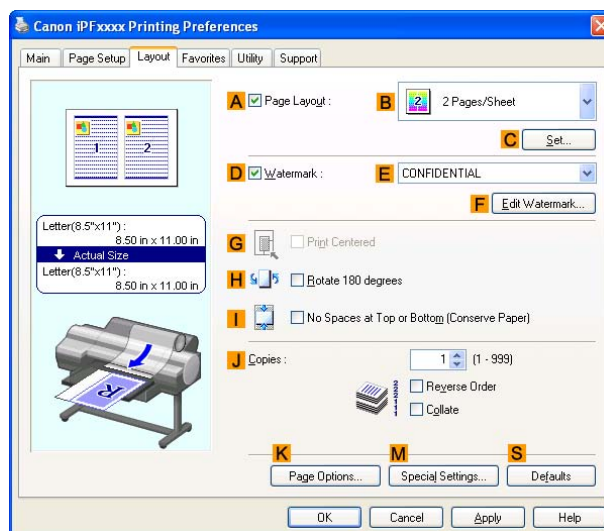
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the **I No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)** check box.
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

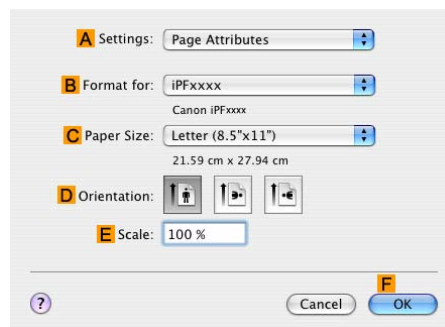
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



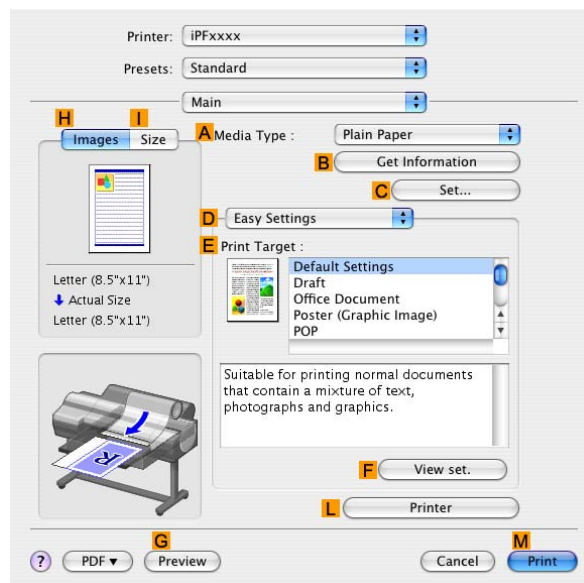
2. Select the print target in the **B Format for** list.

3. In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

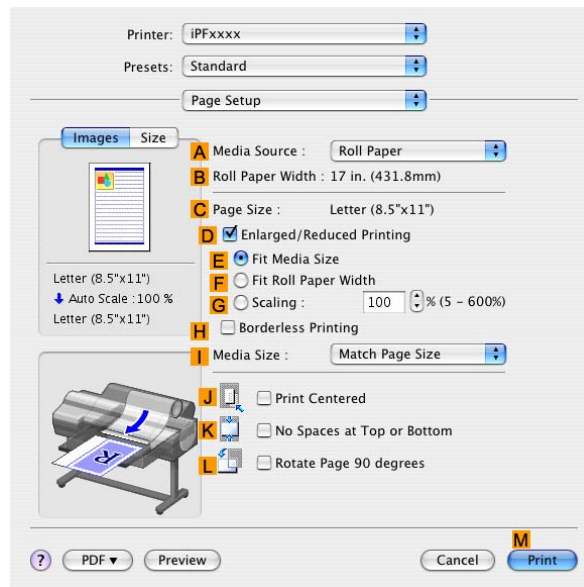
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

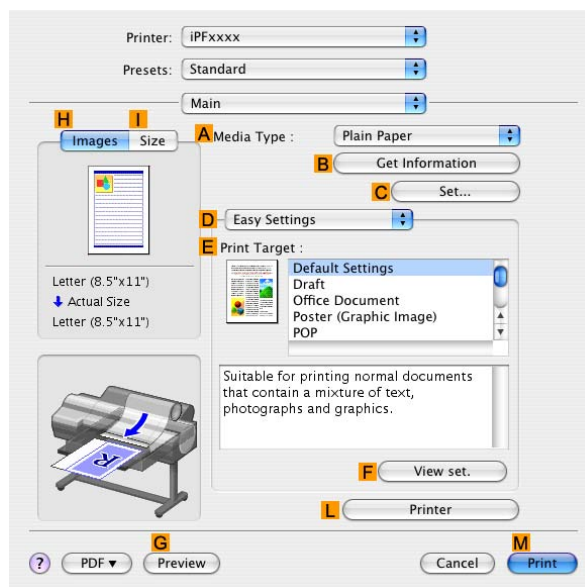


9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

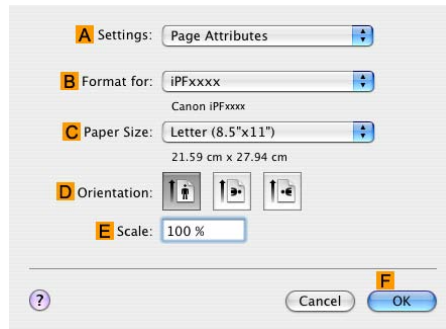


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **Roll Paper Width**, click **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the **K No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

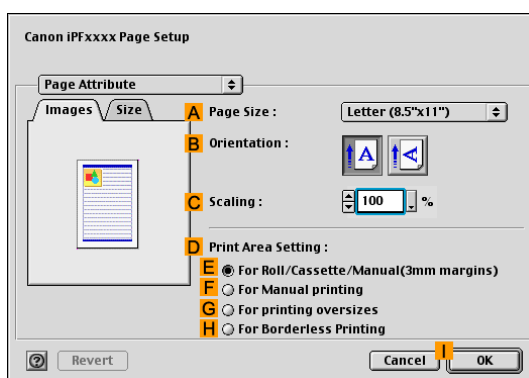
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9)

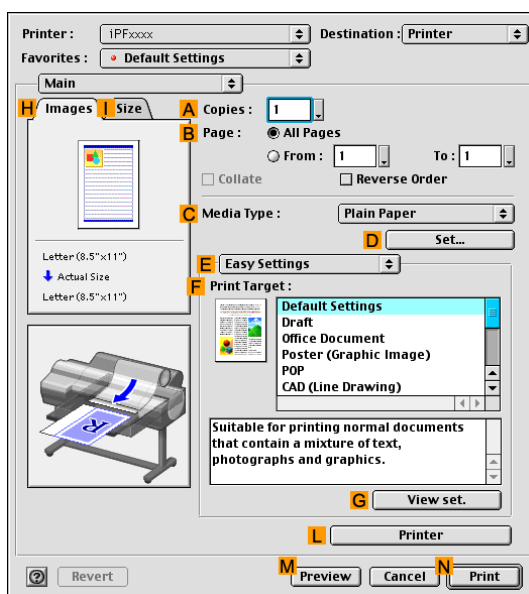
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

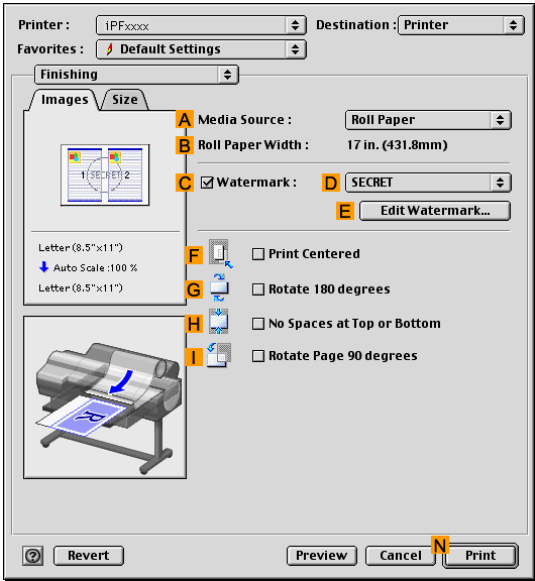


3. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. Access the **Finishing** pane.



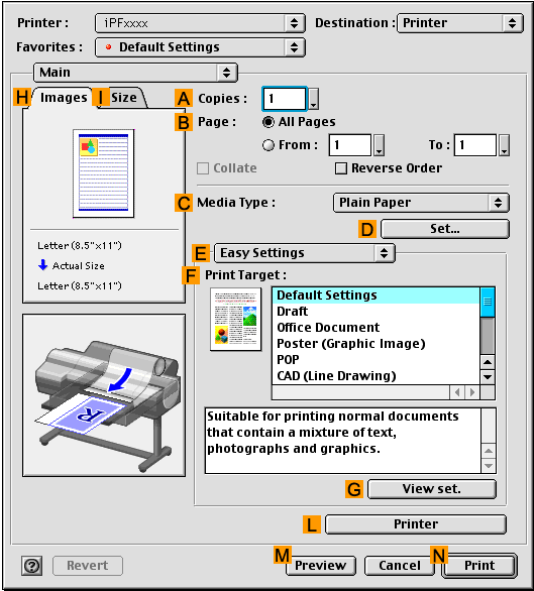
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Media Source** list.

10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.



Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **Roll Paper Width**, click **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Select the **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.

12. Confirm the print settings, and click **Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

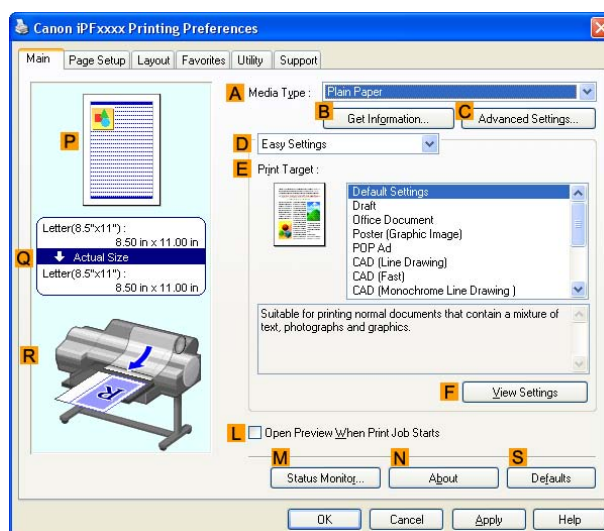
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

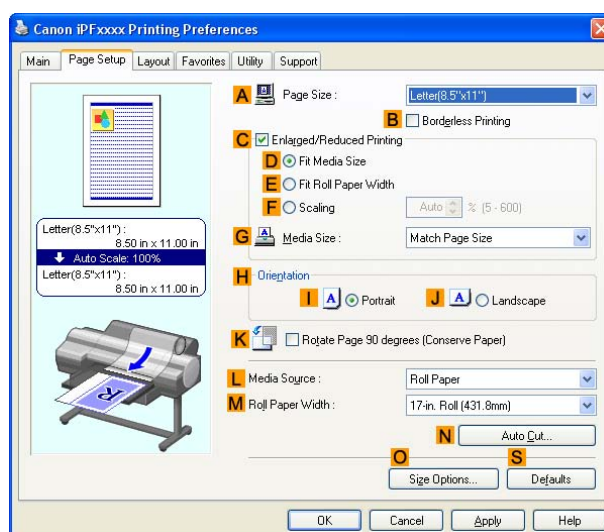
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll paper (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Select the **K Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** check box.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

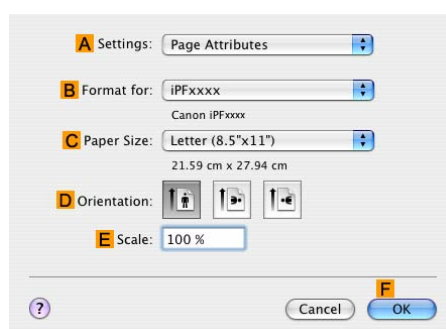
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

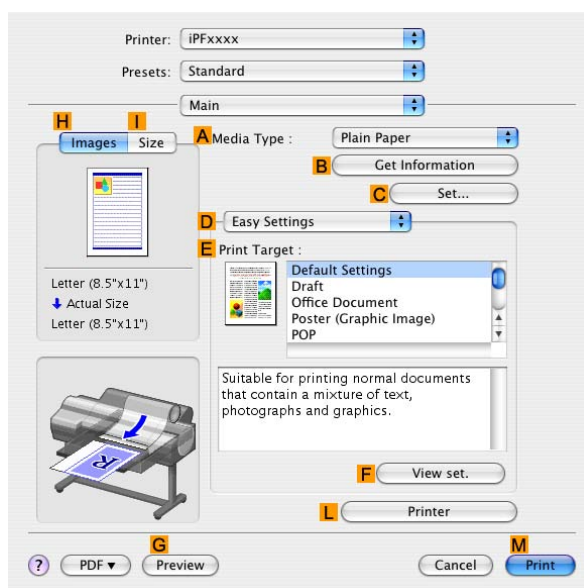
- Document: Any type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

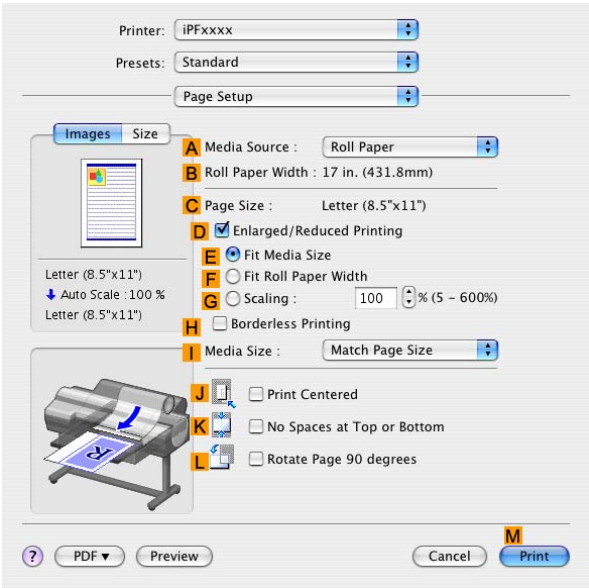
1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



- 7. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

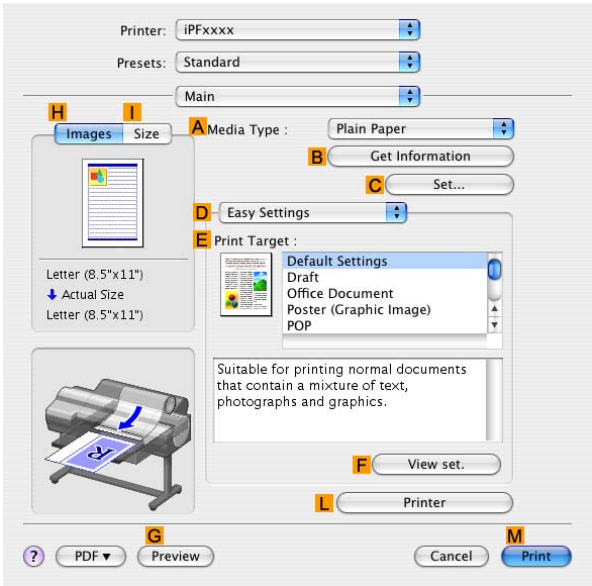


- 9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Media Source** list.
- 10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

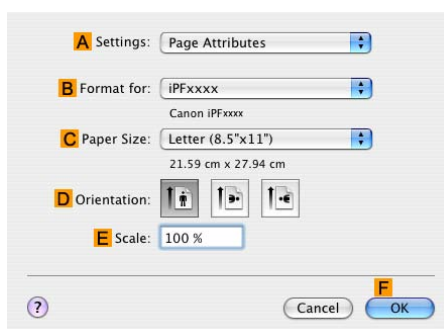


Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **Roll Paper Width**, click **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the **L Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

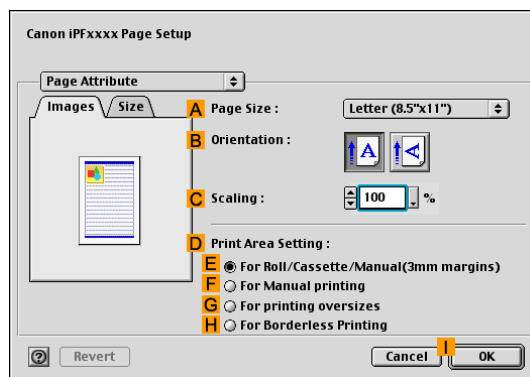
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

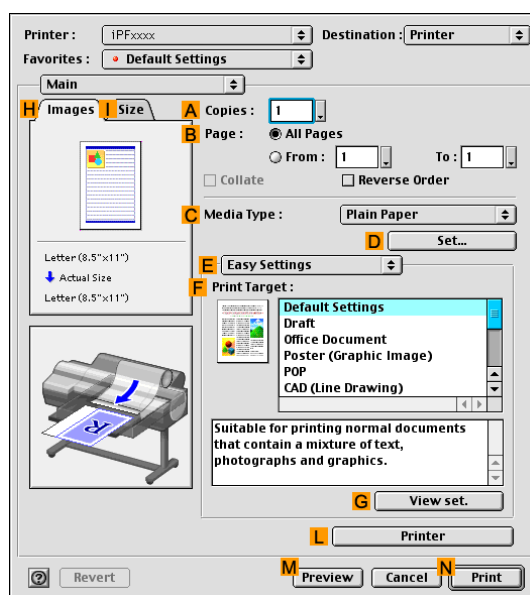
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

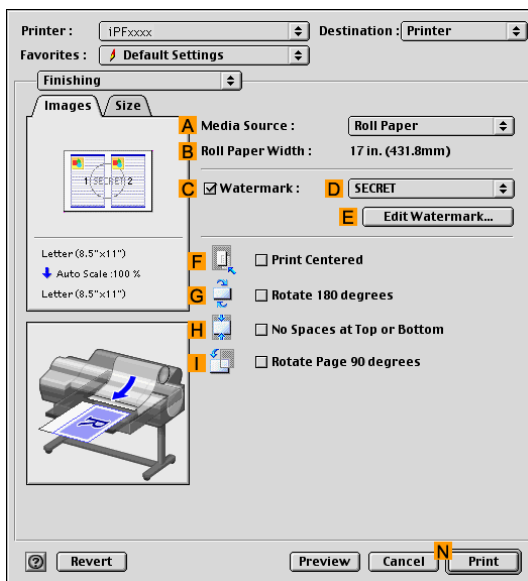


3. In the **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. Access the **Finishing** pane.



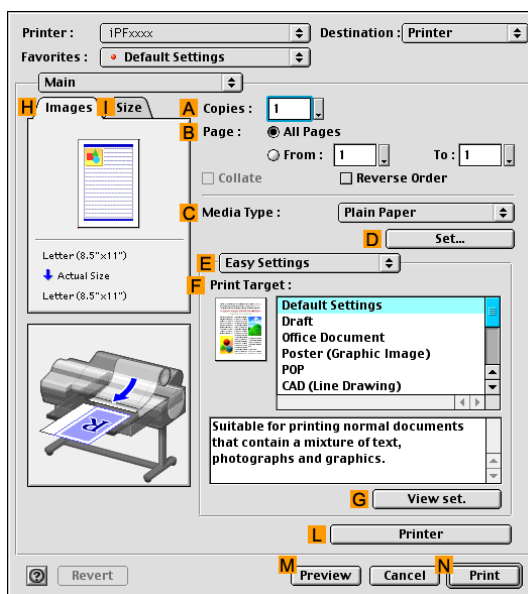
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.



Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Select the **I Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Printing CAD Drawings

Printing CAD Drawings

Using this printer, you can print fine lines and text clearly and sharply. It's easy to produce highly precise drawings from CAD applications.



Note

- In Windows, you can print highly precise drawings using the provided imagePROGRAF HDI Driver for AutoCAD/AutoCAD LT.
For details on the HDI driver, see the HDI Driver Guide .

For instructions on CAD printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.252)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.254)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.256)

HP-GL/2 Printing

This printer supports the GARO language as well as HP-GL/2 and HP RTL (*1) emulation. (*2) When printing from applications that support HP-GL/2 output, specify HP-GL/2 in the application's plotter output settings.



Note

- For instructions on configuring these settings, refer to the software documentation.

The printer automatically switches to the corresponding processing when GARO, HP-GL/2, or HP RTL jobs are received. Configure the settings especially for HP-GL/2 emulation on the printer control panel. (→P.50)

This printer can emulate the following printers.

Emulated Printers	
Canon	W3000 and W3050 (*3)
Hewlett-Packard	Designjet 450c, Designjet 750c Plus, and Designjet 750c

*1: HP-GL/2:Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language 2; HP RTL:Hewlett-Packard Raster Transfer Language

*2: It may not be possible to print jobs with excessively large amounts of data correctly.

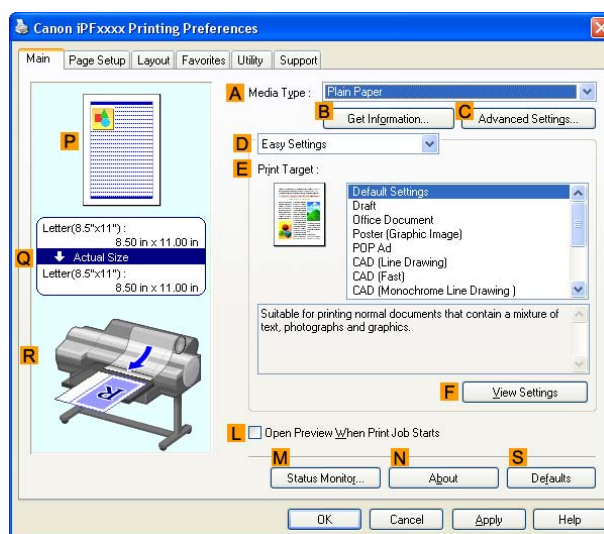
*3: Nesting and layout templates are not supported.

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



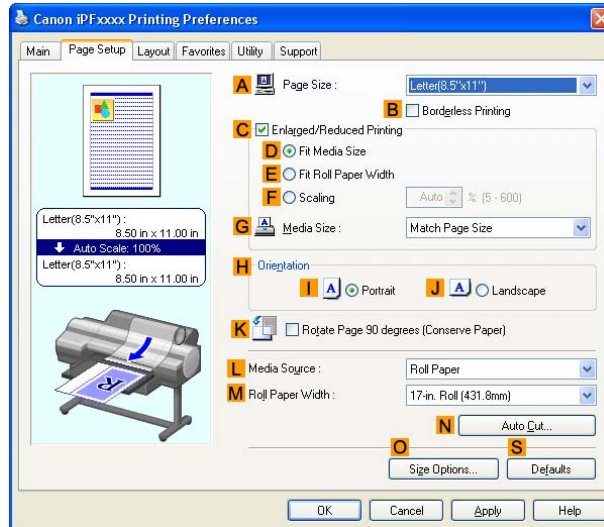
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

8. Click **Cassette** in the **L Media Source** list.

9. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows)". (→P.466)

10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

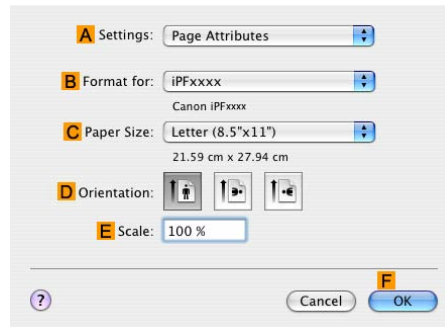
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



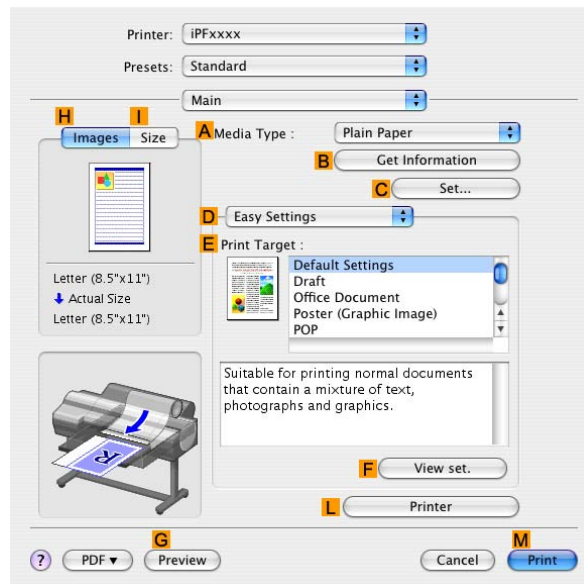
2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

3. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Plain Paper**.

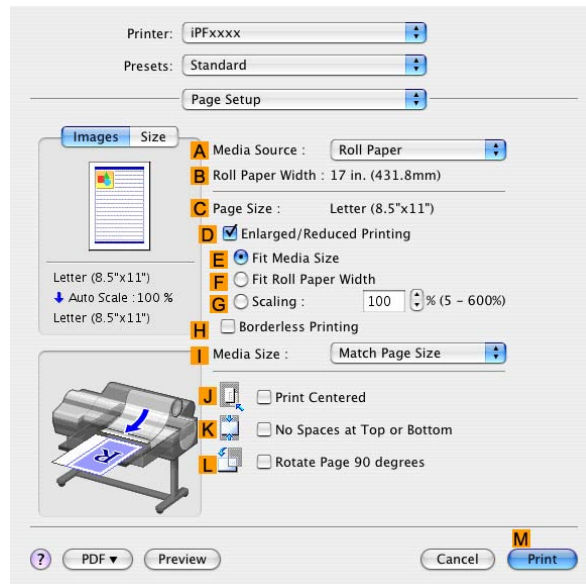
8. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **E Print Target** list.



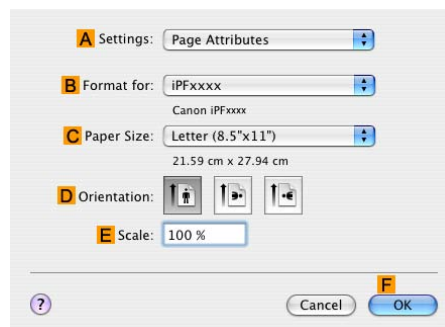
Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View set..**

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the **A Media Source** list.
11. Make sure **C Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.512)
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

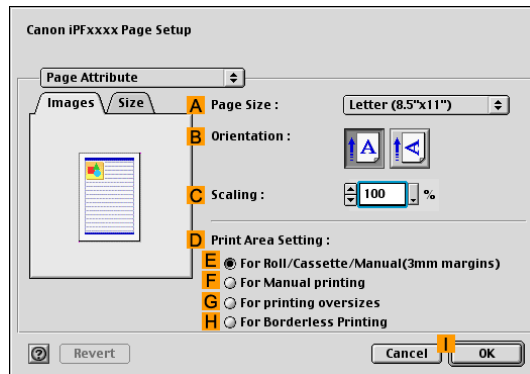
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)

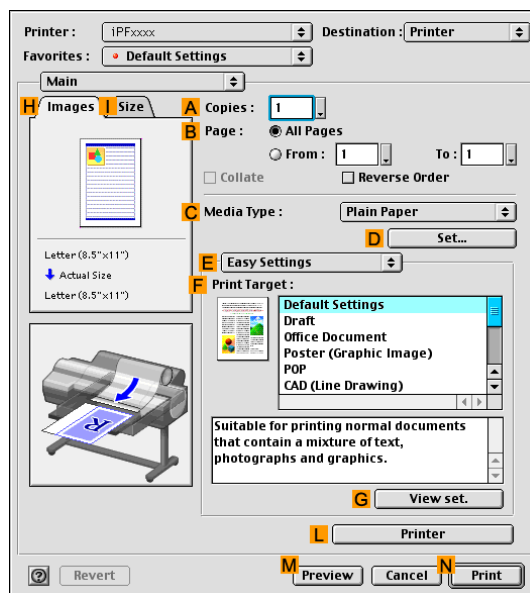
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page Size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

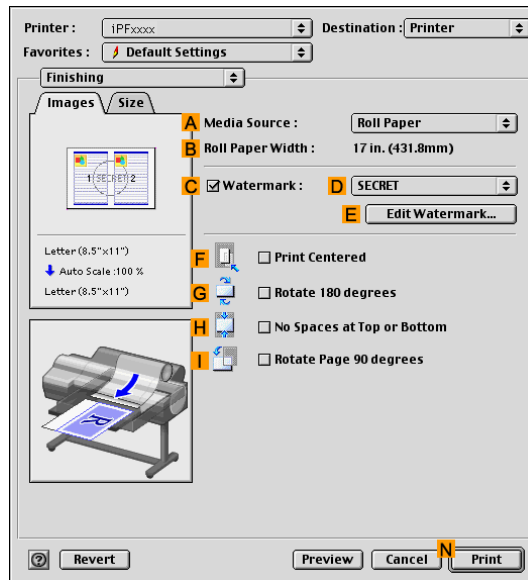
8. After confirming that **E Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **F Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **F Print Target** list by clicking **G View set**.

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

11. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.534)

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



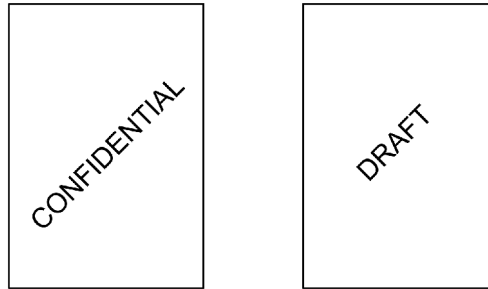
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Other useful settings

Printing With Watermarks

You can add watermarks (background images) to documents that require special handling.



Watermark

Watermarks are applied to all pages of your document.



Important

- Watermarks are not printed if you select poster as the type of page layout.

The following watermarks are provided:

- CONFIDENTIAL (Windows)
- COPY (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- DRAFT (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- FILE COPY (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- FINAL (Windows)
- PRELIMINARY (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- PROOF (Windows)
- TOP SECRET (Windows and Mac OS 9)

You can also create your own watermarks. Specify the following options to customize your watermark.

- Watermark string: Specify the font, size, color, and so on. Surround the watermark with a frame, if desired.
- Watermark position: Specify the position on the page, the angle, and so on.
- Watermark printing method: Specify whether to print the watermark superimposed or under the document image. You can also print the watermark only on the first page, if desired.



Note

- Watermarks are supported in Windows and Mac OS 9.
- In addition to the provided watermarks, you can create up to 50 original watermarks in Windows. In Mac OS 9, you can use up to 50 original watermarks including the watermarks provided.

For detailed instructions on printing with watermarks, refer to the following topics:

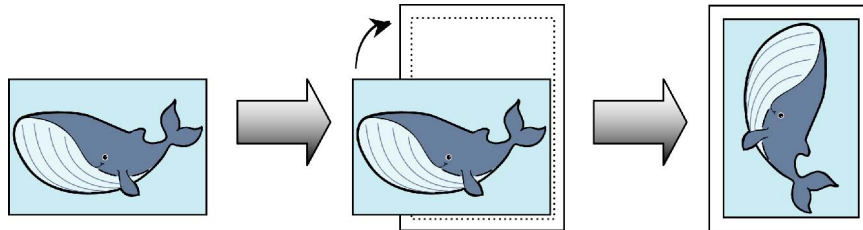
- Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) (→P.462)
- Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9) (→P.464)

☐ Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation

You can specify the original orientation to match the orientation of the paper for printing.

Orientation

Paper is usually loaded in the printer in portrait orientation. When you have an original in landscape orientation, you can specify the printing orientation so that the original is printed in landscape orientation.



Rotate 180 degrees

The original is rotated 180 degrees to print it upside down.

Mirror

A mirror image of the original is printed.

For instructions on specifying the original orientation before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) (→P.456)
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) (→P.458)
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9) (→P.460)

Using Favorites

You can register print settings as “favorites” to reuse settings from a particular job that met your expectations, or settings for a particular page size that you will use repeatedly.

Favorites

Registering a favorite for later use. You can choose the settings you have registered from a list before printing, and you can check the settings details.



Note

- You can also save the favorite settings as files. Using these files is a convenient way to print under the same conditions on another computer. (In Windows and Mac OS 9.)

For instructions on using favorites to print, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Using Favorites (Windows) (→P.473)
- Using Favorites (Mac OS X) (→P.525)
- Using Favorites (Mac OS 9) (→P.546)

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing

Roll paper can be automatically cut after printing.



Note

- It may not be possible to cut certain types of paper, such as adhesive paper. For details on types of paper that cannot be used with the auto cut feature, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)

Automatic Cutting

Roll paper is cut automatically after printing. If you prefer, you can print continuously without cutting the roll, or you can print a cut line.

For instructions on cutting roll paper after printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) (→P.451)
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.452)
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9) (→P.454)

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

You can print a variety of source documents from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or screen shots from web browsers after composing an original with them using PosterArtist.

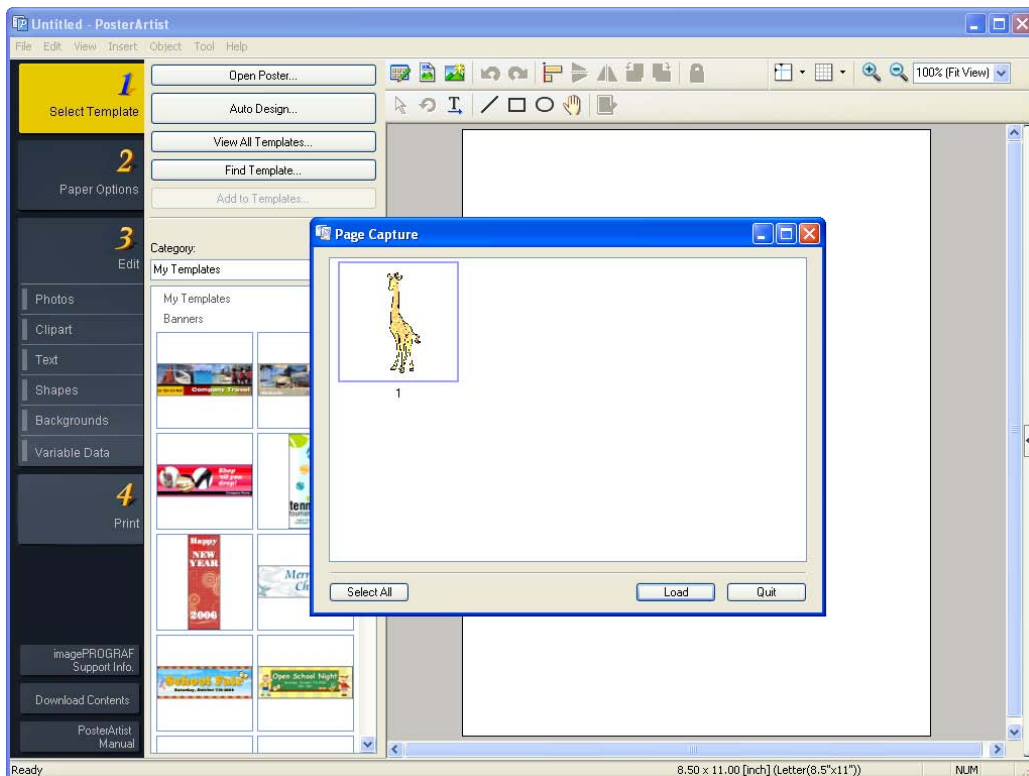


Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

Edit Using PosterArtist

PosterArtist offers a wide range of features, including features to insert source documents in posters and compose an original with them.



Important

- This function is only supported in Windows.

For detailed instructions on editing with PosterArtist, refer to the following topic:

- Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) (→P.487)

■ Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)

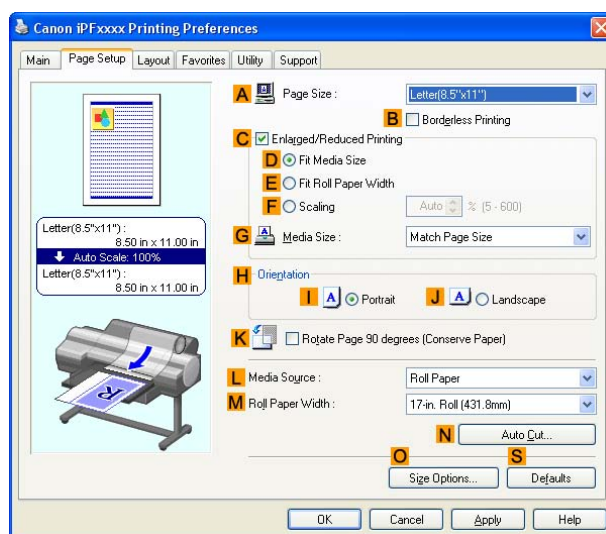
This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.



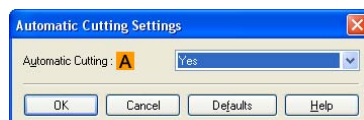
Note

- Auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function after it is disabled, or to change the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



4. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
5. Click **N Auto Cut** to display the **Automatic Cutting Settings** dialog box.



6. To enable automatic cutting, click **Yes** in the **A Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Automatic Cutting Settings** dialog box.
8. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Roll paper will be automatically cut after printing.

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)

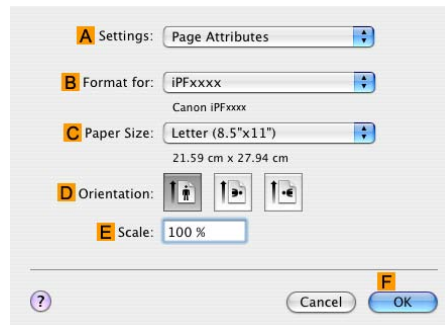
This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.



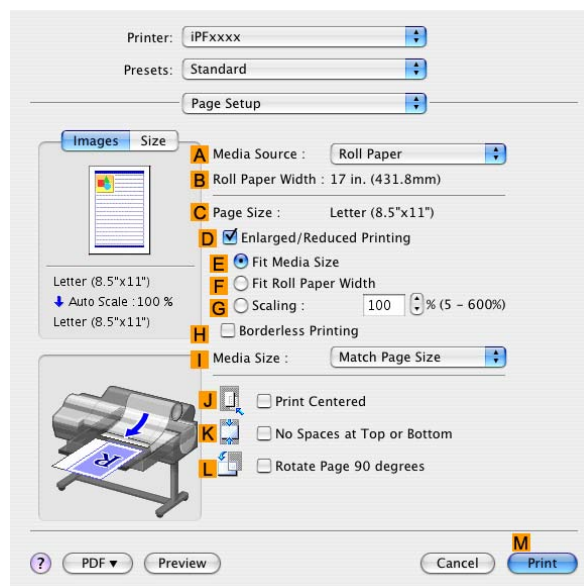
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function once disabled, or select the setting for printing a cut guideline instead.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

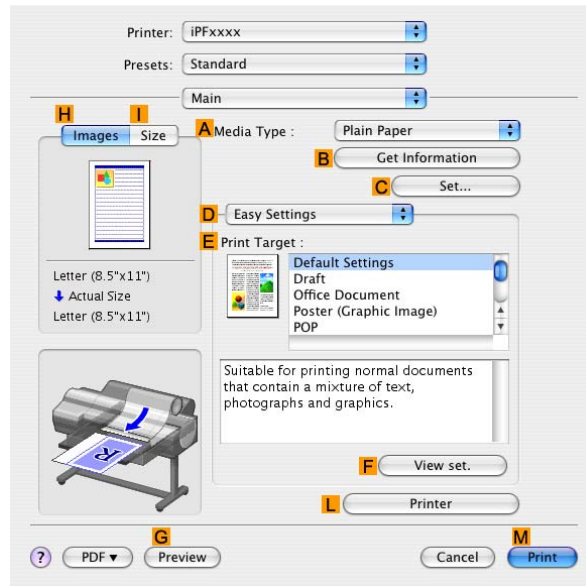


2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



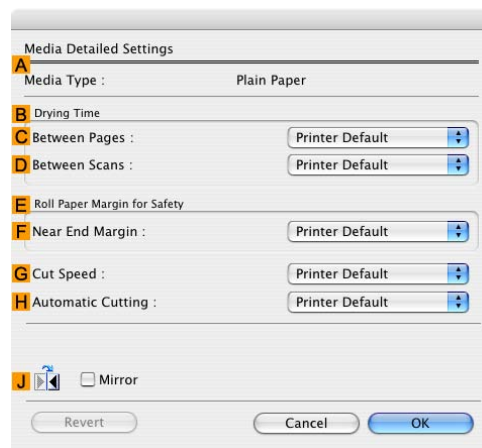
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Media Source** list.

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

10. Click **C Set** to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box.



11. To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the **H Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.



Important

- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box.

13. Confirm the print settings, and click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

■ Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9)

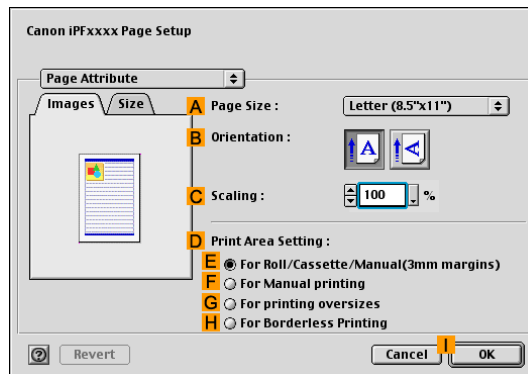
This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.



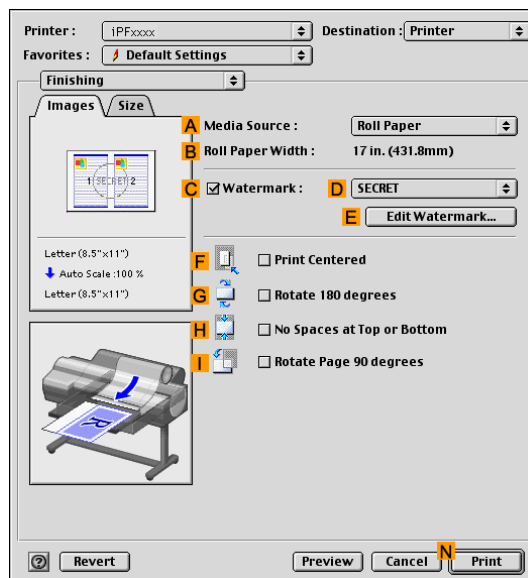
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function once disabled, or select the setting for printing a cut guideline instead.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

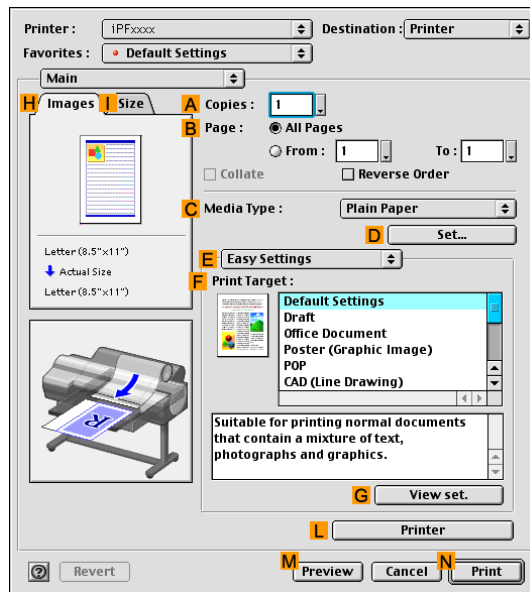


3. Choose the original size in the **A Page Size** list.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Finishing** pane.

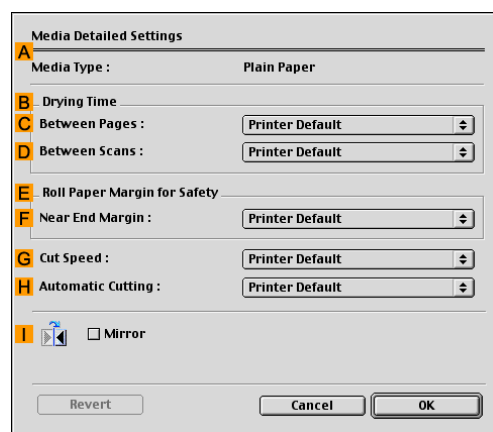


7. Make sure **Roll Paper** is selected in **A Media Source**.

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
10. Click **D Set** to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box.



- 11.** To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the **H Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.



Important

- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

- Click **OK** to close the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box.
- Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

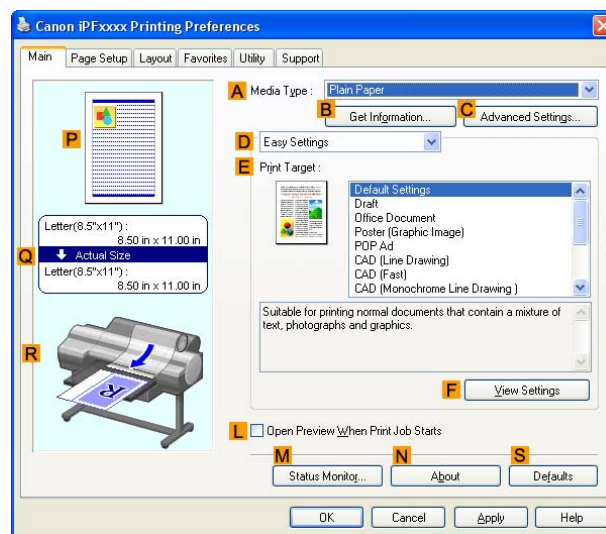
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

■ Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)

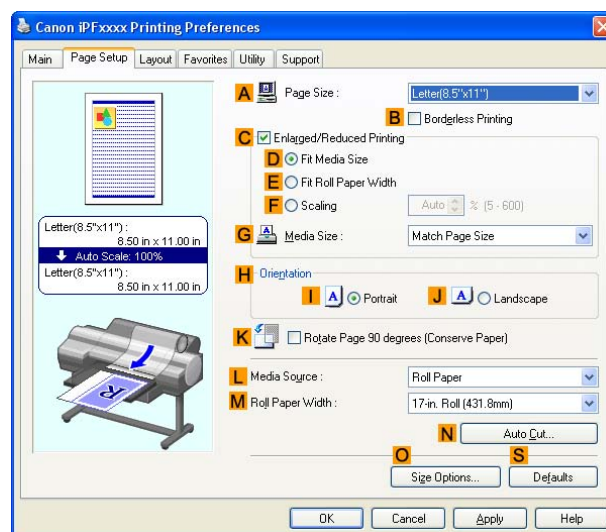
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the type of document in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. In **H Orientation**, click **J Landscape**.
9. Click **Cassette** in the **L Media Source** list.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

**Note**

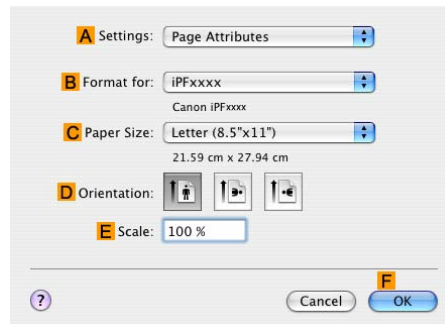
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

■ Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

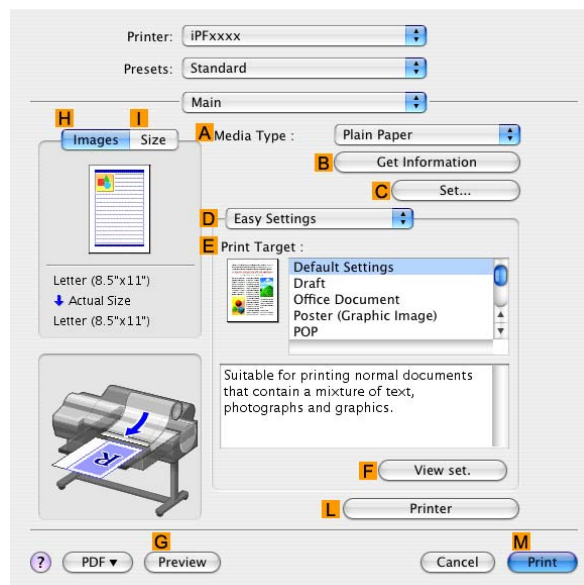
3. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. In **D Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.

5. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

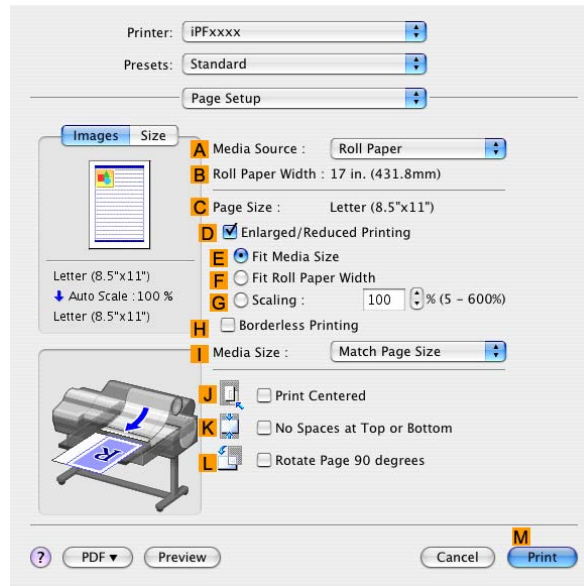
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

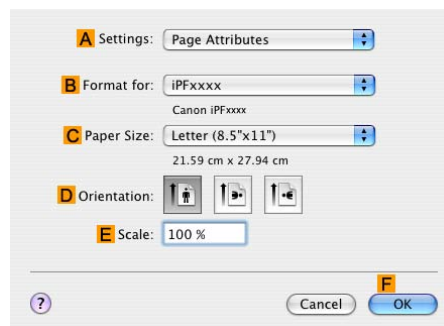
9. Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11. Click **Cassette** in the **Media Source** list.

12. Make sure **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.



Note

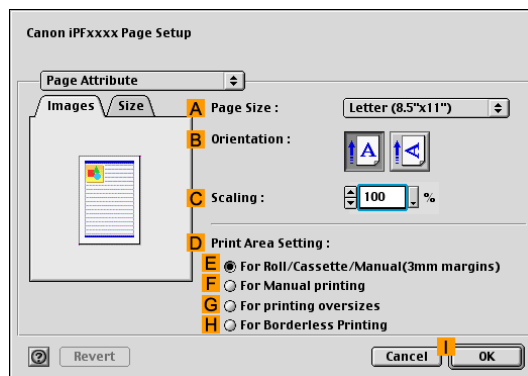
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.513)

■ Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9)

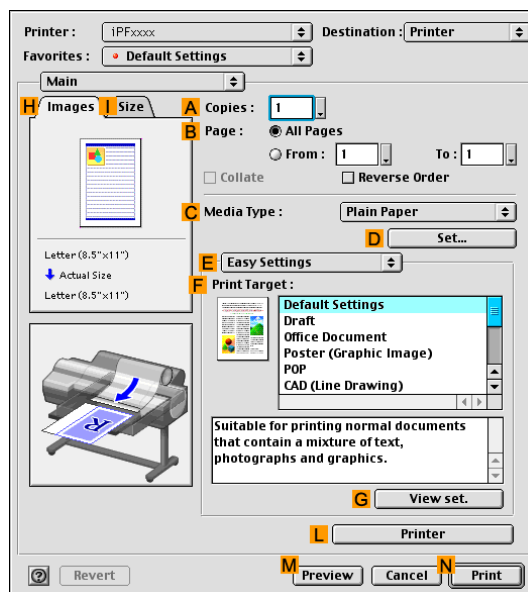
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

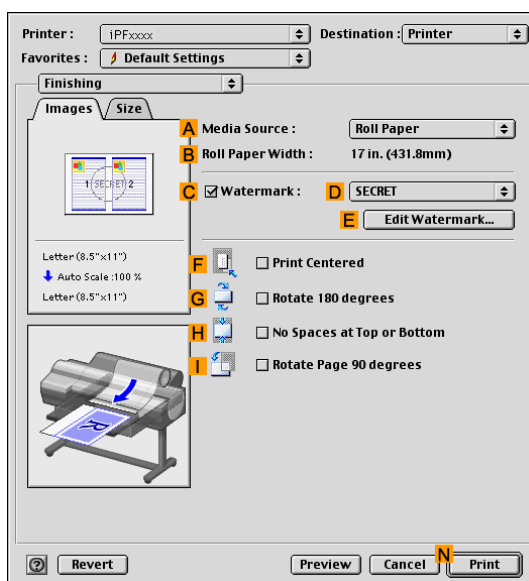


3. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. In **B Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
5. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
9. Select the printing application in the **F Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Finishing** pane.



11. Click **Cassette** in the **A Media Source** list.

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

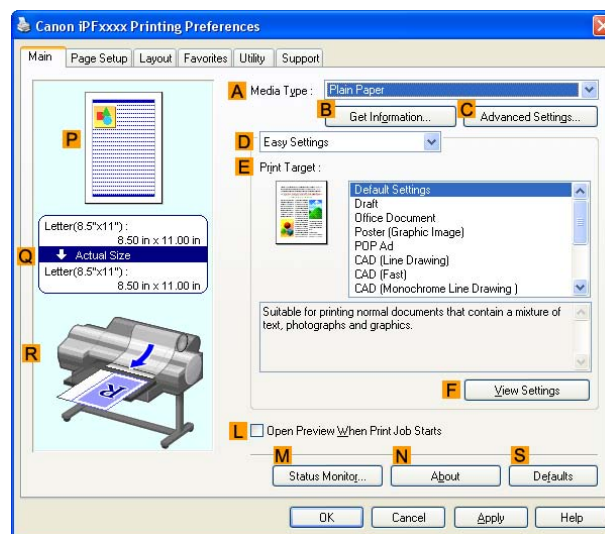
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents with a watermark (in this case, “FILE COPY”) based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing software or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper Type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



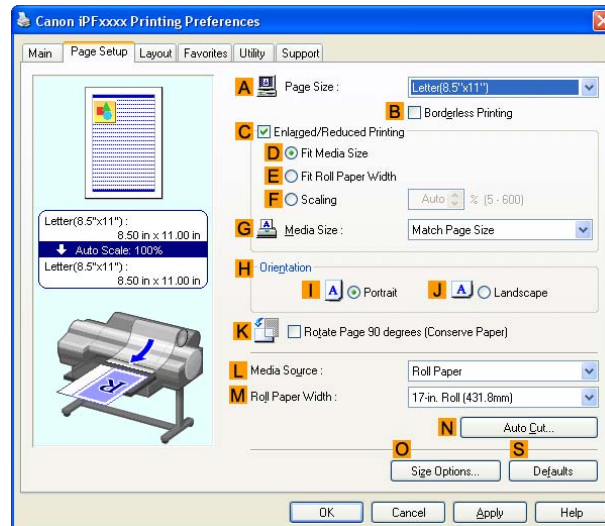
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **F View Settings**.

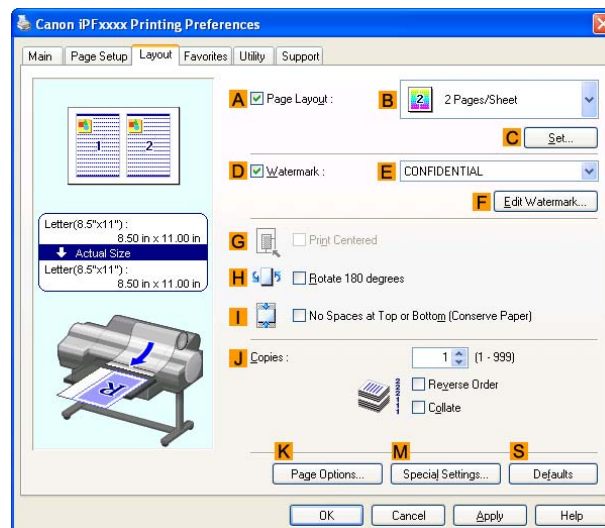
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

8. Click **Cassette** in the **L Media Source** list.

9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the **D Watermark** check box.

11. Click **FILE COPY** in the **E Watermarks** list.



Note

- To create your own, original watermark, click **F Edit Watermark**. Refer to the printer driver help for instructions on modifying watermarks to create your own.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

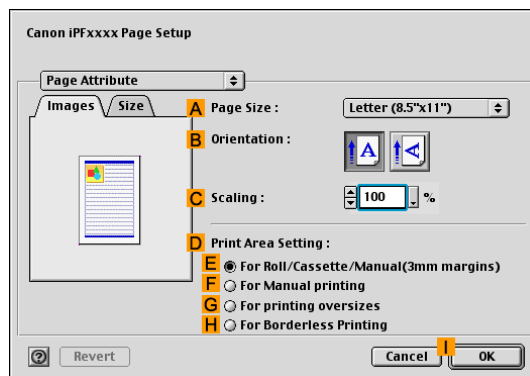
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.468)

Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9)

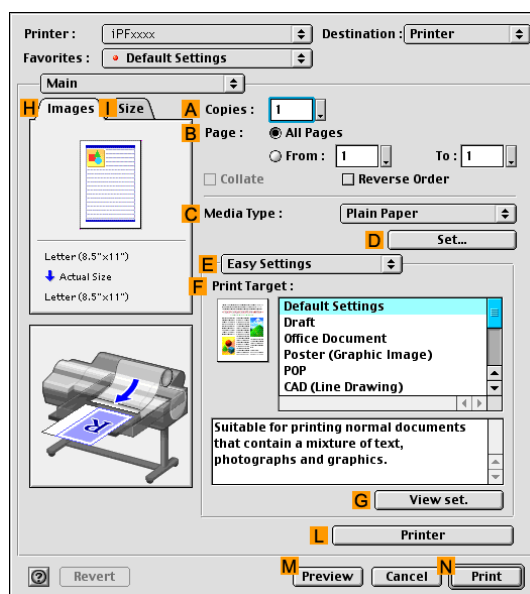
This topic describes how to print with watermarks, based on the following example of printing with a “FILE COPY” watermark.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



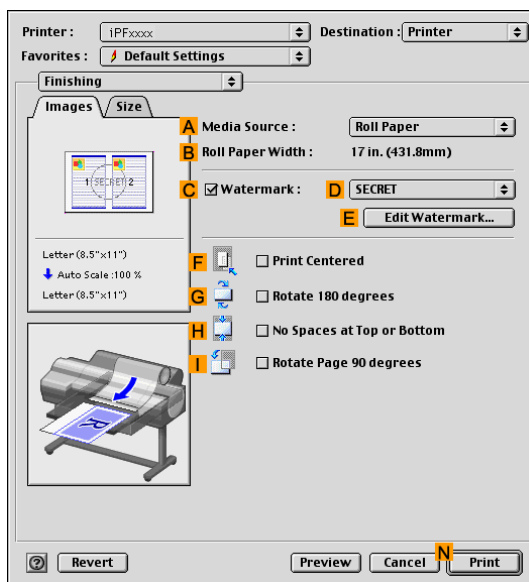
7. In the **C Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that **E Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **F Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **F Print Target** list by clicking **G View set**.

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **A Media Source** in the **Cassette** list.
11. Select the **C Watermark** check box.
12. Click **FILE COPY** in the **D Watermarks** list.



Note

- To create your own, original watermark, click **E Edit Watermark**. Refer to the printer driver help for instructions on modifying watermarks to create your own.

13. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.534)
14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

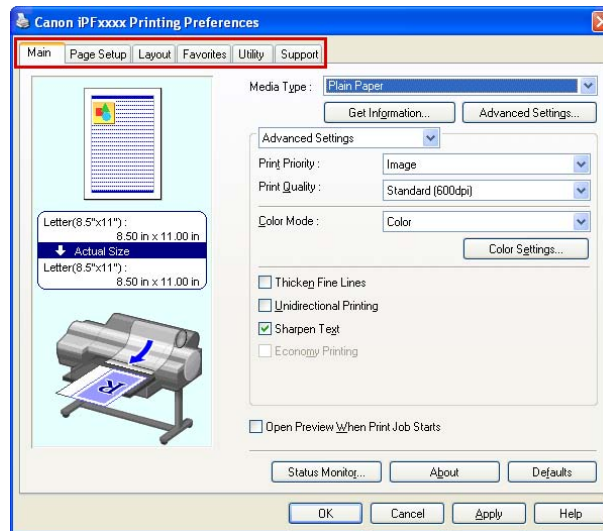
Software

Windows

Printer Driver Settings (Windows)

For instructions on accessing the Windows printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) (→P.494)
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) (→P.496)



For information on the Windows printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Sheet (Windows) (→P.475)
You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.
 - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.505)
 - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) (→P.511)
 - Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows) (→P.498)
 - Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) (→P.502)
- Page Setup Sheet (Windows) (→P.479)
You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the media size and source, and automatic cutting.
 - Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.506)

- Layout Sheet (Windows) (→P.481)

You can specify the page layout, watermarks, the orientation, the number of copies, and print processing options.

- Page Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.507)
- Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.510)

- Favorites Sheet (Windows) (→P.483)

Groups of print settings you select on each sheet can be saved in a favorite. Favorites you have added can be edited or used at the time of printing as desired.

- Utility Sheet (Windows) (→P.484)

You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

- Support Sheet (Windows) (→P.485)

You can view support information and the user's manual.

- Device Settings Sheet (Windows) (→P.486)

You can display settings for optional equipment installed on the printer and see the printer driver version.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout is a feature for freely arranging originals from various source applications on a single page as desired before printing. For details, see Free Layout Guide .

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is a feature for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

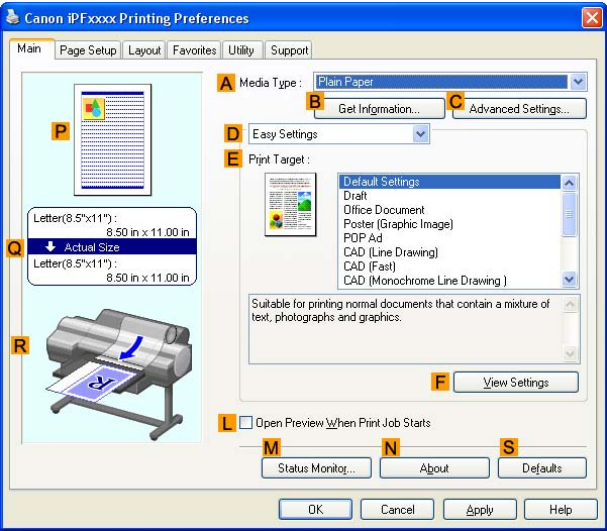
Confirming Print Settings (Windows)

There are two ways to confirm the print settings, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.468)
- Checking a print preview (→P.469)

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main** , **Page Setup** , and **Layout** sheets. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, media source, layout, and so on.

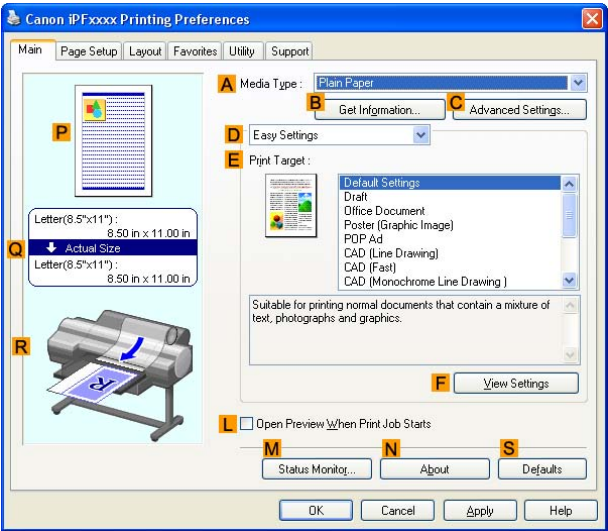


Display Area	Information Displayed
Top illustrations	Illustrations indicate the orientation, page layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information.
Middle, bordered area	The page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction are displayed.
Bottom illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.



Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings** , click **F View Settings** on the **Main** sheet to display the **View Settings** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.

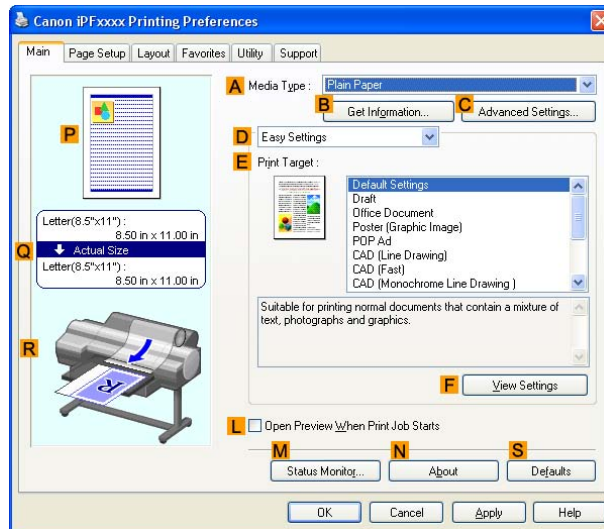
When you activate this feature, PageComposer is launched before printing. Confirming how documents will be printed this way helps prevent printing errors.

For details on print previews, see “Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows)”. (→P.470)

Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

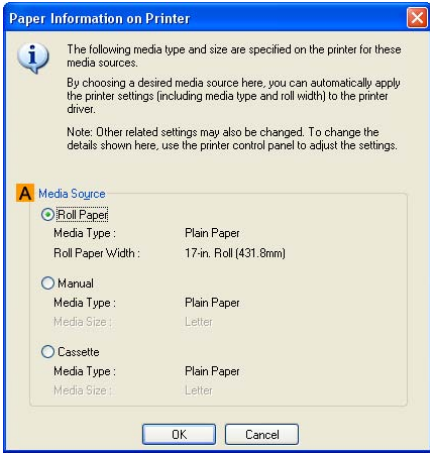
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Select the **L Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
5. When you attempt to print, the PageComposer window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)
6. In the PageComposer editing window, select the document to print and open the **Print Preview** window.
7. After confirming that the layout is just as you expected, close the **Print Preview** window.
8. In the PageComposer editing window, make sure the document to print is selected. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu.

☐ Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the media source and media type.



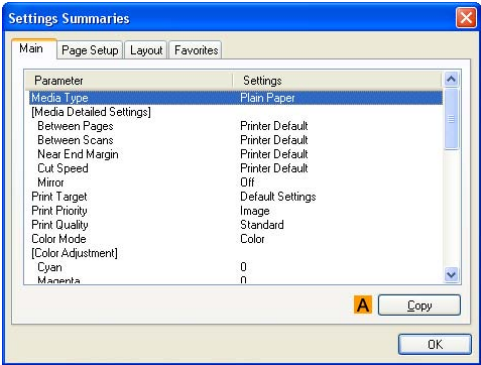
Note


- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**. (→P.475)

Setting Item	Description
Media Source	Shows the Media Source supported by the printer, as well as information about the loaded paper. To update the Media Source and media type settings in the printer driver, select the desired Media Source option and click OK .

Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Settings Summaries** dialog box enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.



Button	Corresponding Utility
 Copy	Click to copy the settings information to the clipboard. You can paste the settings information into a file created with a text editor or similar application.

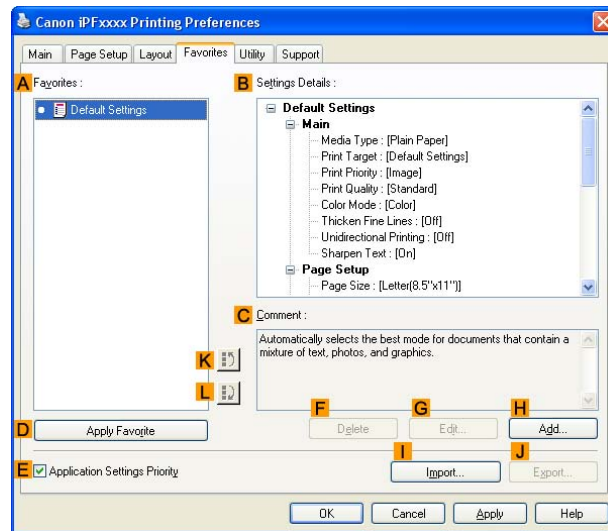
Using Favorites (Windows)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Complete the print settings.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click **H Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.
6. Complete the following settings in the **Add** dialog box.
 - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
 - Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.
 - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.

The favorite you have added is now displayed in **A Favorites**.



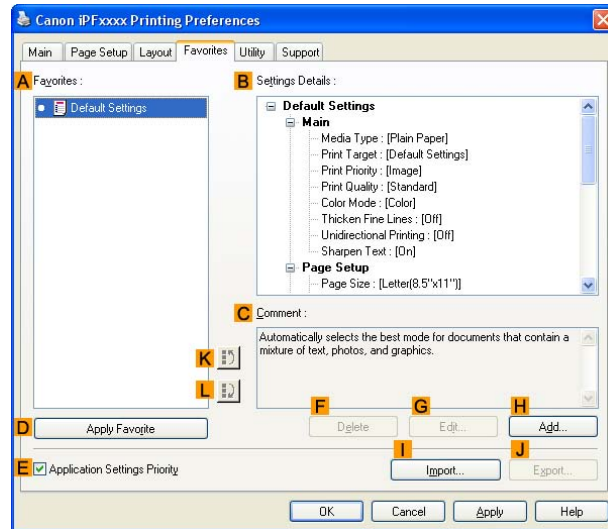
Note

- To save a favorite as a file, click **J Export** and specify the file to save.

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4. In the **A Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.



Note

- To import a favorite, click **I Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click **D Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.
6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.468)

Main Sheet (Windows)

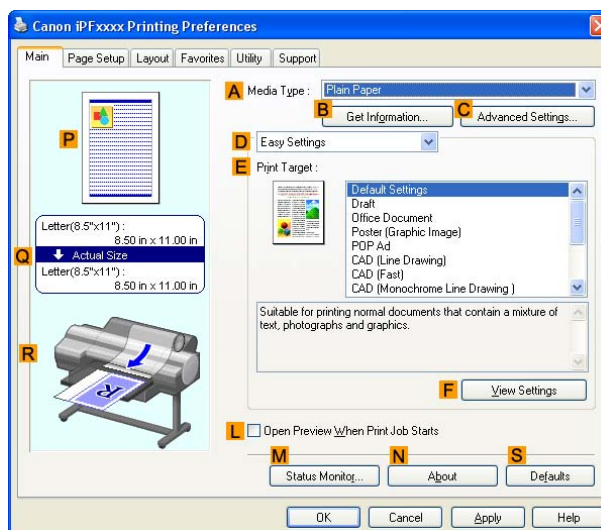
The following settings are available on the **Main** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

- On **Main** sheet, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

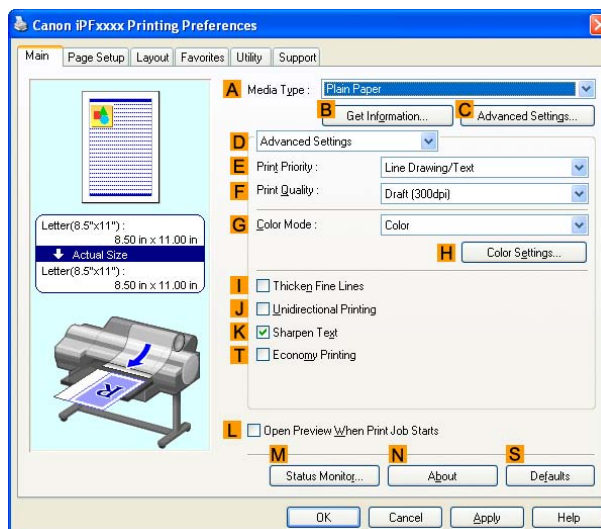
Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
	B Get Information	Click to display the Get Information dialog box, which shows media types and sizes by media source, as specified on the printer. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source, media type, and roll width.
	C Preferences	Click to display the Media Detailed Settings dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS 9) (→P.207) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS 9) (→P.211) Printing Office Documents (→P.213) Depending on the Media Type setting, some Print Target options may not be available.
	F View Settings	Click to display the View Settings dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the E Print Target list or change the order of items listed in E Print Target .
L Open Preview When Print Job Starts		Activate this option to preview the print image before printing. Confirming the Print Image Before Printing (→P.504)

Setting Item	Description
M Status Monitor	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the Email Notice settings. For details, refer to the Status Monitor help.
N About	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Configuration using Advanced Settings

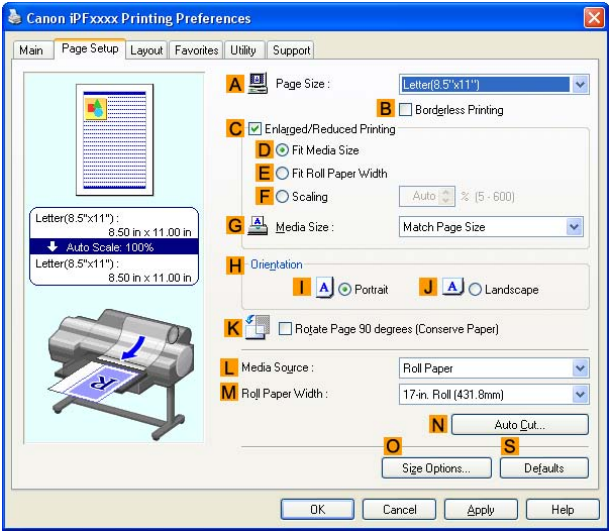


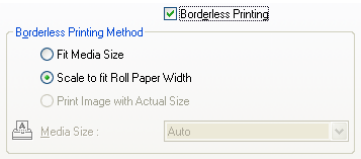
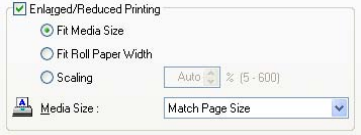
Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
	B Get Information	Click to display the Get Information dialog box, which shows media types and sizes by media source, as specified on the printer. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source, media type, and roll width.
	C Preferences	Click to display the Media Detailed Settings dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
G Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203) Depending on the Media Type setting, some Color Mode options may not be available.
	H Color Settings	Click to display the Color Settings dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.214)
I Thicken Fine Lines		Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.
J Unidirectional Printing		Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
K Sharpen Text		Activate this option to print text more sharply.

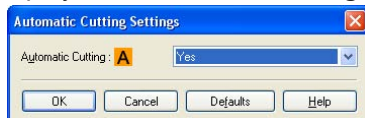
Setting Item	Description
T Economy Printing	When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the Media Type and Print Quality settings, this mode may not be available.
L Open Preview When Print Job Starts	Activate this option to preview the print image before printing. Confirming the Print Image Before Printing (→P.504)
M Status Monitor	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the Email Notice settings. For details, refer to the Status Monitor help.
N About	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Page Setup Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

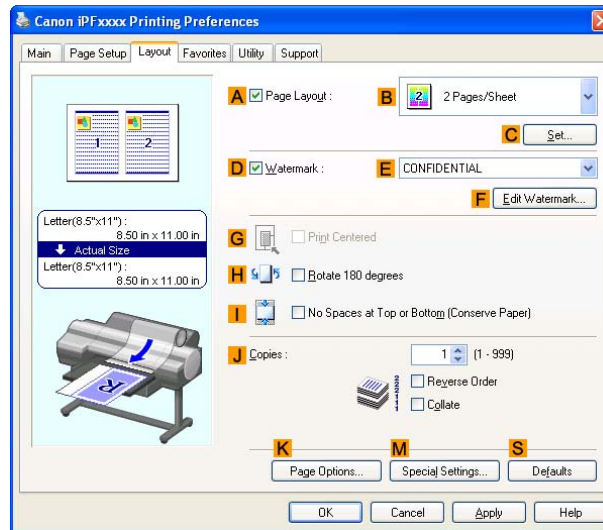


Setting Item		Description
A Page Size		Select the page size as specified in the source application. For details on available page sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.117)
B Borderless Printing 		Borderless printing is available if Roll Paper is selected in the L Media Source list. Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.327) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.329) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.309)
	D Fit Media Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Print Image with Actual Size	Prints documents at their actual size. This function is available, when you have selected the size same as the width of Roll Paper for either length or width of the document from the A Page Size list.
	G Media Size Available when Fit Media Size is selected.	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.117) Paper sizes compatible with borderless printing are shown in the list.
C Enlarged/Reduced Printing 		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.272) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.273) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.274)
	D Fit Media Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Scaling	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
	G Media Size	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.117)

Setting Item	Description
H Orientation	Choose the printing orientation. Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (→P.448)
K Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.424)
L Media Source	Choose how paper is supplied. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in Media Type in the Main sheet.
M Roll Paper Width	Choose the roll width. For details on available roll widths, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.117)
N Auto Cut	<p>You can activate or deactivate automatic cutting and printing of cut lines, as desired. Click to display the Automatic Cutting Settings dialog box.</p>  <p>Under Automatic Cutting, you can specify Yes or No and Print Cut Guideline. Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (→P.449)</p>
O Size Options	Click to display the Media Size Options dialog box, which enables you to register additional paper sizes or select the size system for use.
S Defaults	Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Layout Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Layoutsheet**. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

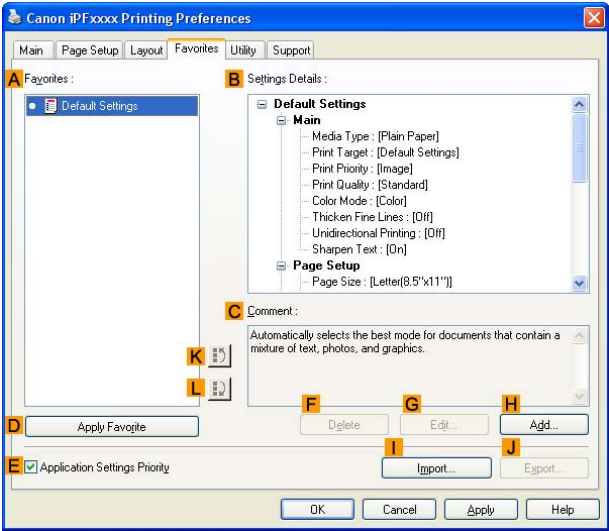


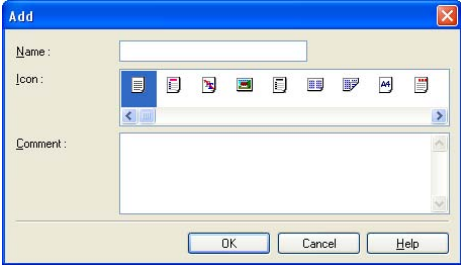
Setting Item		Description
A Page Layout		Activate this setting to select a particular page layout. Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (→P.385) Printing Posters in Sections (→P.386) Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (→P.382) Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (→P.450)
	C Set	Click to display one of the following dialog boxes depending on the selection in A Page Layout . In these dialog boxes, you can specify layout details and which pages to print, as well as other settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Page Layout Printing • Pages to Print • Free Layout Settings
D Watermark		Activating this option makes two settings available, E Watermarks and F Edit Watermark . Printing With Watermarks (→P.447)
	E Watermarks	Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.
	F Edit Watermark	Click to display the Edit Watermark dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.
G Print Centered		Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.407) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.408)
H Rotate 180 degrees		Activate this option to rotate document images by 180 degrees before printing.
I No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)		Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.425)
J Copies		Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”
	Reverse Order	Activate this option to print pages in reverse order.
	Collate	Activate this option to print complete sets in the specified quantity.

Setting Item	Description
K Page Options	Click to display the Page Options dialog box, which enables you to complete settings for printing the user name, date, or page number in the header or footer.
M Special Settings	If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Favorite Sheet (Windows)

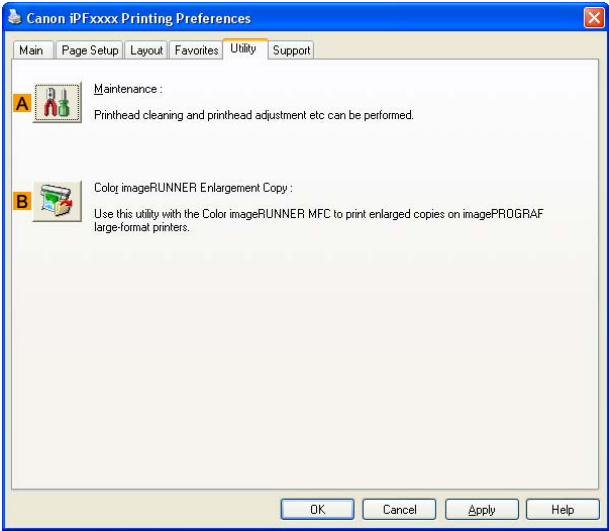
The following settings are available on the **Favorites** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item	Description
A Favorites	Printing favorites you have created are listed with Default Settings favorites. Using Favorites (→P.449)
B Settings Details	Displays details of the favorite selected in the A Favorites .
C Comment	Displays notes registered in the favorite.
D Apply Favorite	Click to change the current print settings to those of the favorite selected in the A Favorites .
E Application Settings Priority	Activate this setting to use settings values specified in the source application in preference to favorite settings selected in the A Favorites , when clicking D Apply Favorite . For details on the settings items used in preference, refer to the printer driver help.
F Delete	Click to delete the selected favorite settings from the A Favorites .
G Edit	Click to display the Edit dialog box, which enables you to change the name and icon for the favorite settings selected in the Favorites .
H Add	Click to display the Add dialog box, which enables you to add the current print settings as a favorite. <div></div>
I Import	Click to display the Open dialog box, which enables you to import favorite settings saved as a file.
J Export	Click to display the Save As dialog box, which enables you to save the favorite settings as a file.

Utility Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Utility** sheet. For details on the utilities, refer to the relevant utility help.

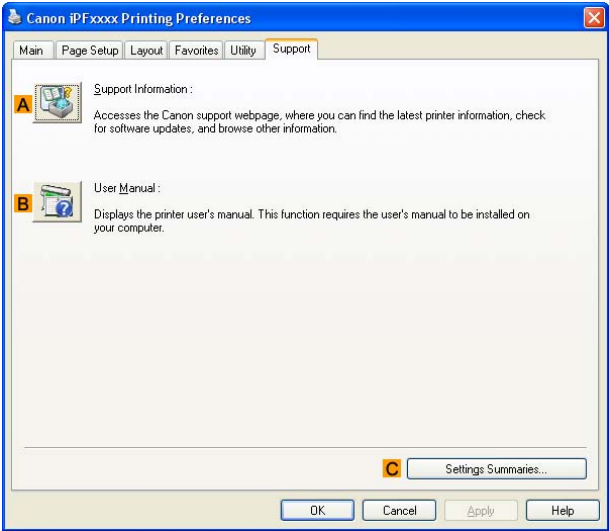


Button	Corresponding Utility
A Maintenance	Click to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) check• Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning• Head alignment adjustment• Feed amount adjustment
B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	Click to launch Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (*1) (iR enlargement copy), which enables you to create hot folders used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy and assign print settings to hot folders. Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.277)

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Support Sheet (Windows)

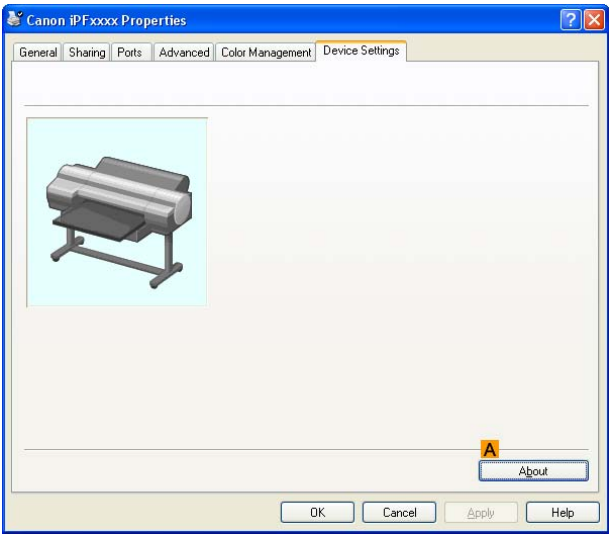
On the **Support** sheet, you can view support information and the user’s manual.



Button	Corresponding Utility
A Support Information	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B User Manual	Click to view the printer user’s manual. This function requires the user’s manual to be installed on your computer.
C Settings Summaries	Click to display the View Settings dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the Main , Page Setup , Layout , and Favorites sheets.

☐☐☐ Device Settings Sheet (Windows)

Many settings items on the printer properties sheets are controlled by Windows applications. However, the **Device Settings** sheet is for configuring the printer, and it is an extension of the printer driver. The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** sheet.



Setting Item	Description
A About	You can display version information for the printer driver.

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows)

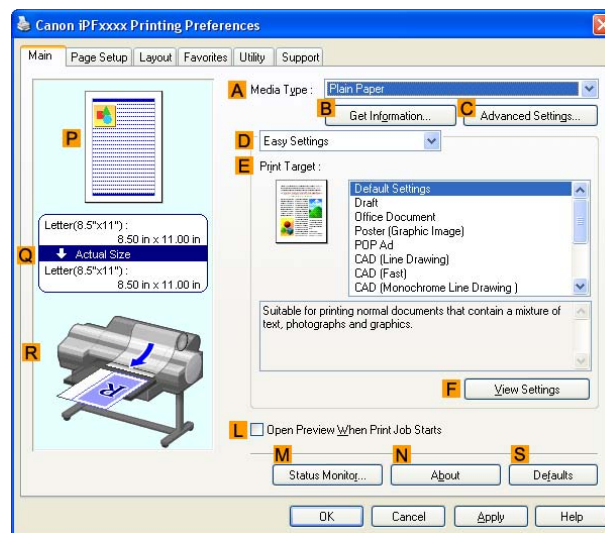
This topic describes how to use PosterArtist to compose originals from multiple applications, creating a poster layout for printing.



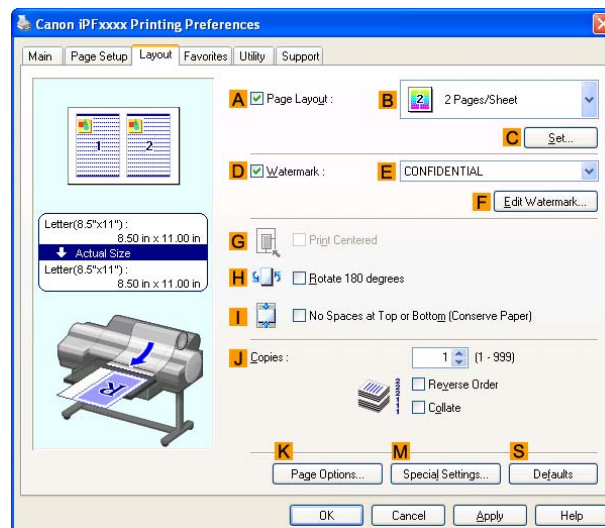
Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.494)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click in the **Edit Using PosterArtist** in the **Page Layout** list.
7. When you attempt to print, PosterArtist starts up and the PageCapture window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)

- 8.** Choose the page to load in PosterArtist.
- 9.** Edit and rearrange the image in the PosterArtist window as desired.



Important

- Without closing the PosterArtist window, repeat steps 1-8 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.



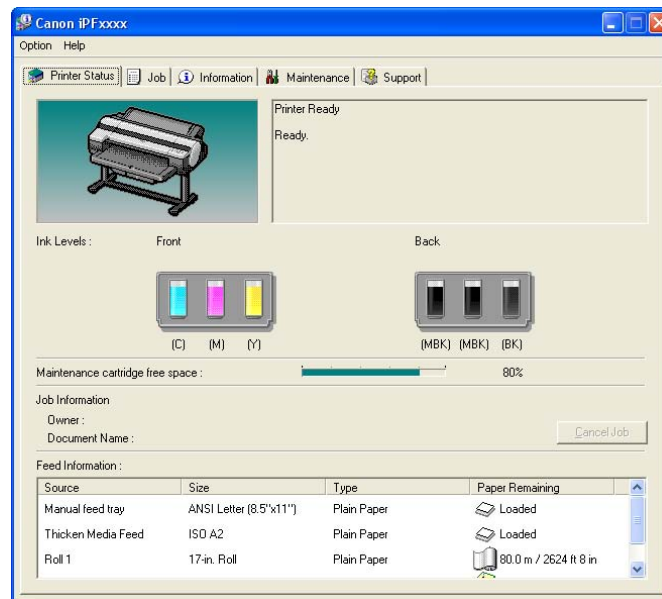
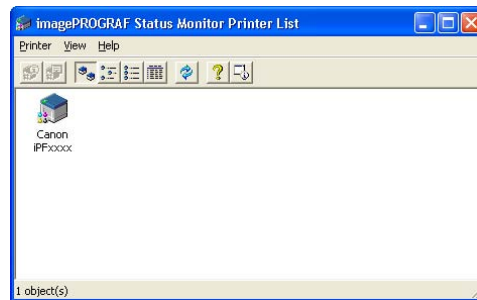
Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the PosterArtist Manual.

- 10.** Print from the PosterArtist menu.

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs. Two screens are available in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor : “Printer List” shows a list of printers, and “Status Monitor” shows details for each printer.



- You can view a list of the printers for which printer drivers have been installed on your computer, printers connected to your computer, and printers found on the network.
- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- Images of Ink Tanks are shown, with different images for various types of ink. An icon and warning message will notify you when ink levels are low.
- The type of paper loaded in each media source is identified. You can also check to see if paper has run out.
- This way, the utility enables you to check printer information and take care of printer maintenance for optimal printing results.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

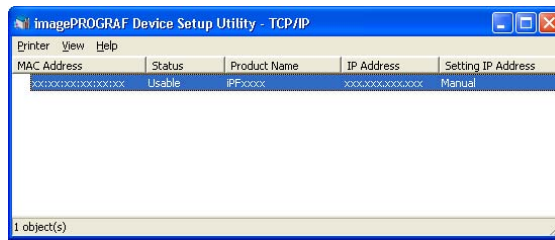


Note

- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility is a utility to establish communication between the printer and your computer by completing relevant settings. After the printer is installed, for example, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility to complete the network settings initially.



- Starting imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility will show a list of printers found on the network. In this list, select the printer (specifically, the printer's MAC address) that you want to set up, and then configure the basic settings from your computer, such as the printer's IP address and the network frame type.
- You can see which printers are online in the network by checking the printer list. Communication between your computer and these printers is possible.



Note

- We recommend that your network or printer administrator complete the setup work using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility help.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:



Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see “Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility”. (→P.491)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

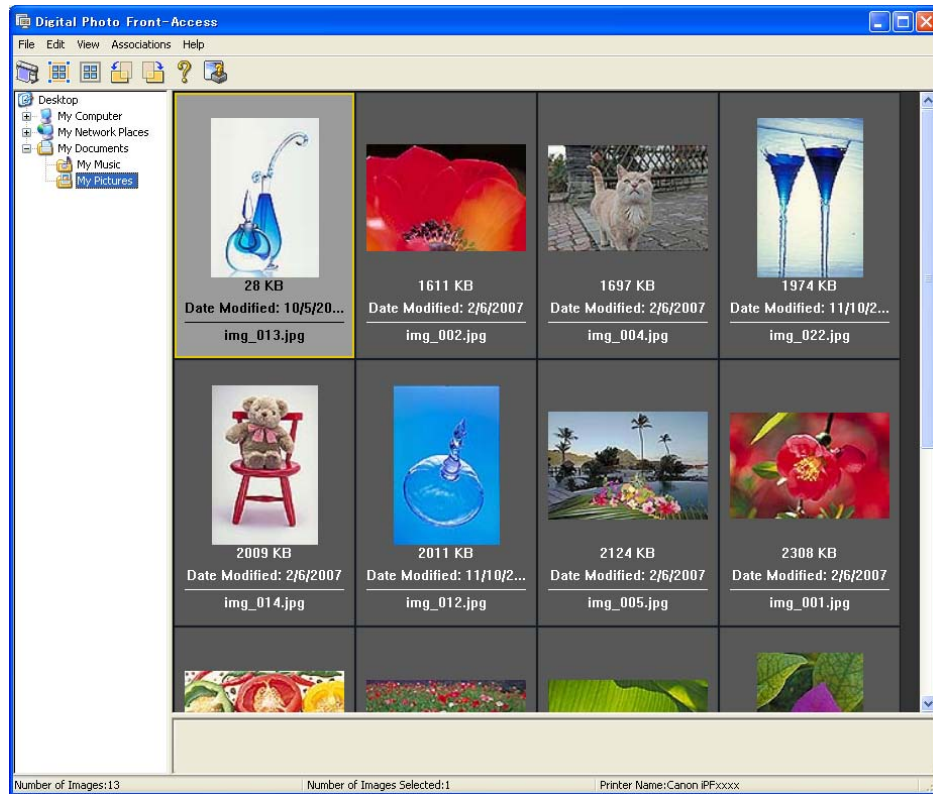


Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access is an application that links photos from Canon digital cameras and other image files on your computer with various other applications.



- Simply select an image and click the icon of the application you want to start to launch the application.
- You can also print from Digital Photo Front-Access. In short, Digital Photo Front-Access can help you manage images in many ways from editing to printing as an effective way to work with other applications.
- Digital Photo Front-Access also enables image retouching. For automatic retouching, select an image for retouching and click Image Adjustment.
- Because this application automates the workflow from retouching to display for all of your images, it can save time and work in retouching.



Note

- For details, refer to the Digital Photo Front-Access help.

■ Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)

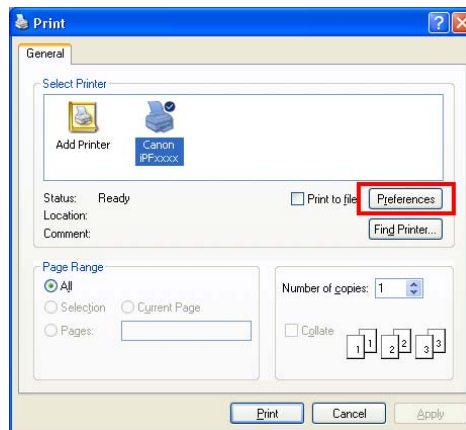
1. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.



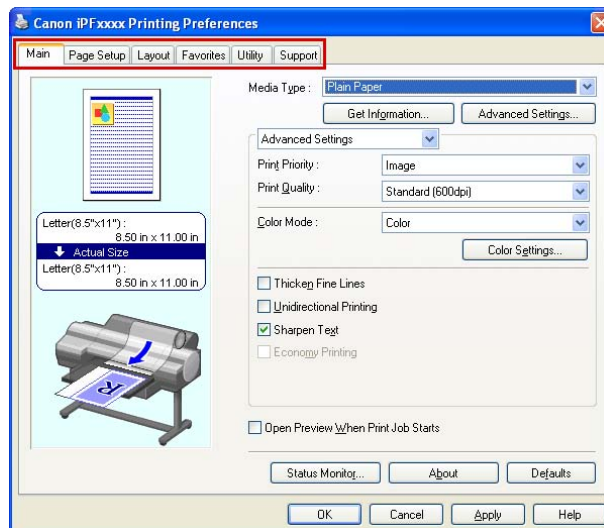
Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.

■ Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Note

- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

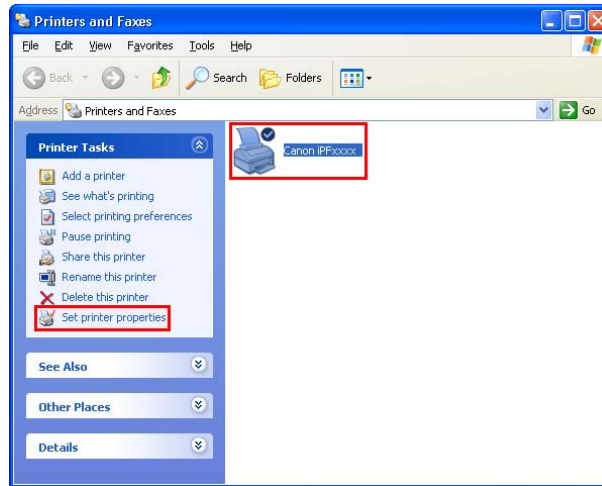


Important

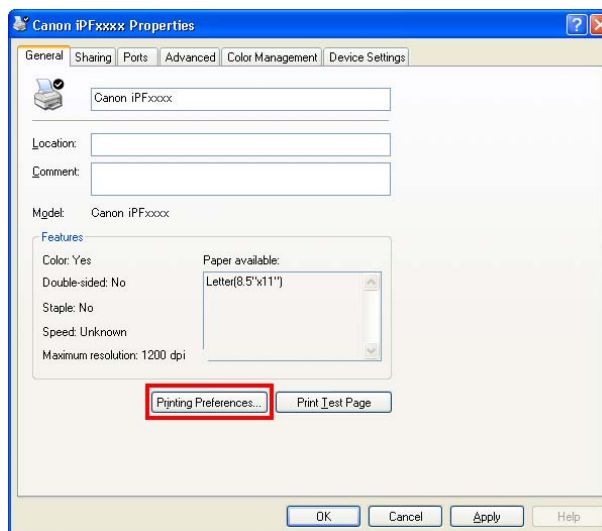
- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)”. (→P.496)

■ Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)

1. Click **start > Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



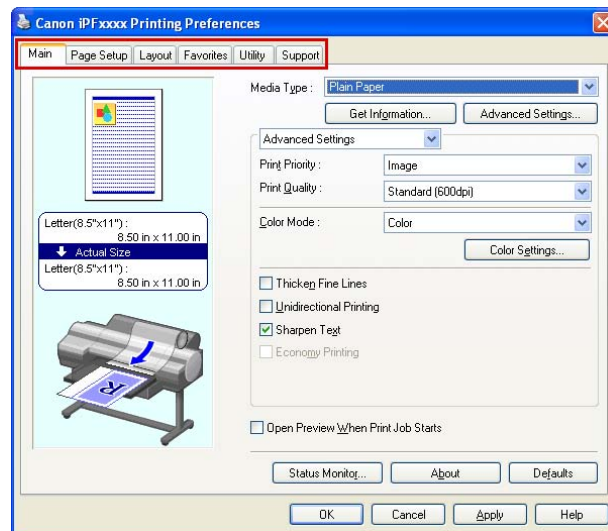
3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Note

- The **Device Settings** sheet is also an extension of the printer driver. (→P.486)

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Important

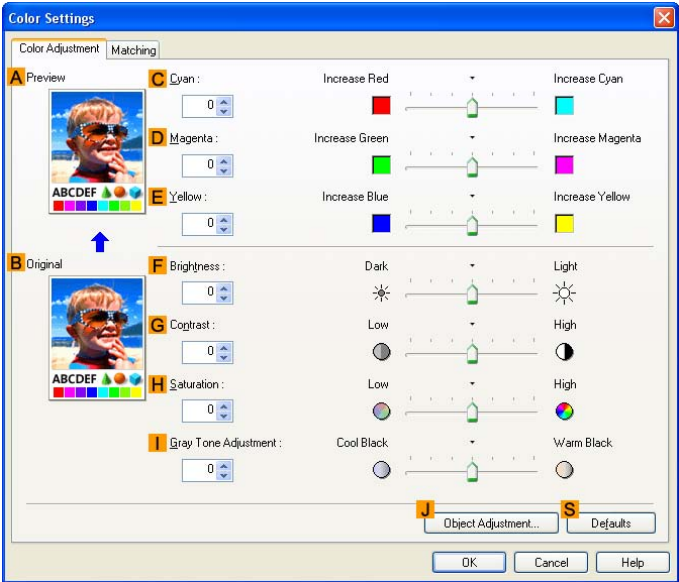
- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)”. (→P.494)

Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment : color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.475)

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the Preview image.
C Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the Contrast makes images sharper, and reducing the Contrast softens images.
H Saturation	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the Saturation setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the Saturation makes colors more subdued.
I Gray Tone Adjustment	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose Cool Black (tinged with blue), Warm Black (tinged with red), and so on.

Setting Item	Description
J Object Adjustment	Select this option to display the Object Adjustment dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.



Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



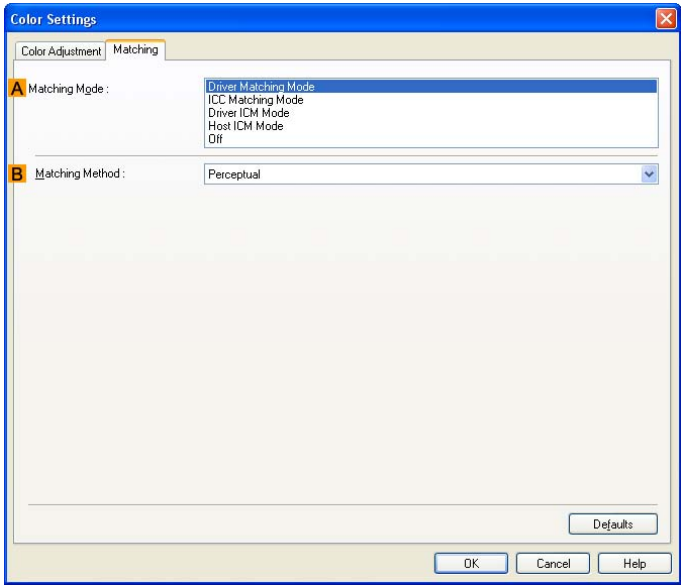
Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A Image	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B Graphics	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C Text	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Matching sheet: Driver Matching Mode

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **Matching Mode** list.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (→P.475)

Setting Item	Description
A Matching Mode	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired. Normally, select Driver Matching Mode . For color matching based on ICC profiles, select ICC Matching Mode , Driver ICM Mode , or Host ICM Mode , depending on your color matching system. If you don't want color matching using the printer driver, select No .
B Matching Method	Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various Matching Method options are available depending on your selection in Matching .

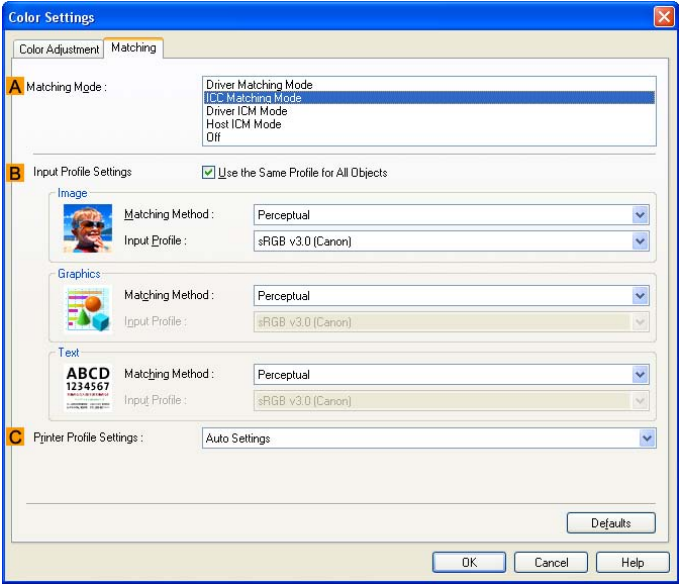


Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Matching sheet: ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode, and Host ICM Mode

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode** on the **Matching Mode** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (→P.475)

Setting Item	Description
A Matching Mode	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B Input Profile Settings	You can select Image , Graphics , or Text . You can choose Matching Method and Input Profile . Various options are available depending on your selected Matching Mode . To apply the same input profile automatically for Graphics and Text , select Use the Same Profile for All Objects . To apply separate input profiles to Graphics and Text , clear Use the Same Profile for All Objects and specify the individual settings.
C Printer Profile Settings	Specify the printer profile as desired. Normally, select Auto Settings .



Note

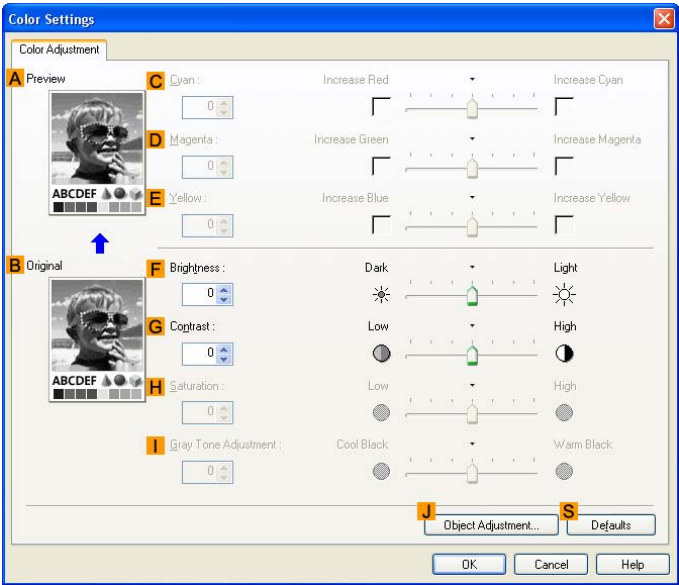
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** sheet for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment : monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** sheet for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.475)

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the Preview image.
C Cyan	Not available.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the Contrast makes images sharper, and reducing the Contrast softens images.
H Saturation	Not available.
I Gray Tone Adjustment	Not available.
J Object Adjustment	Select this option to display the Object Adjustment dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

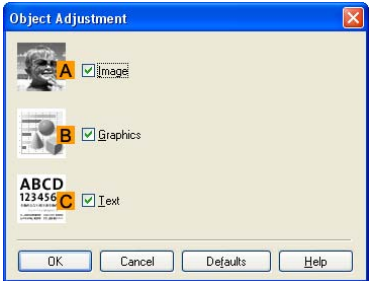


Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A Image	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B Graphics	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C Text	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Confirming the Print Image Before Printing

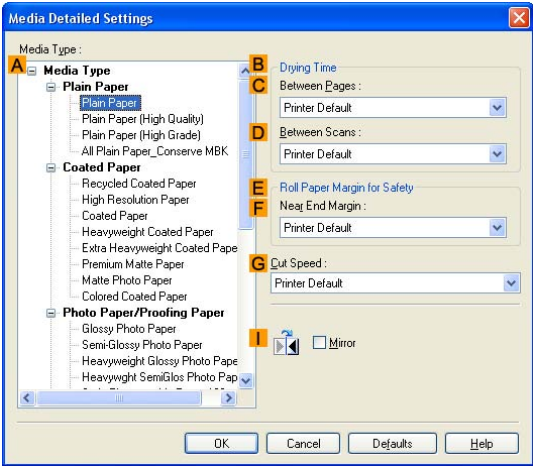
The preview screen displayed before printing enables you to see the original image just as it will be printed. Confirming the image of print jobs helps prevent printing errors.

For instructions on previewing print jobs, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- [Previewing Images Before Printing \(Windows\) \(→P.470\)](#)
- [Previewing Images Before Printing \(Mac OS X\) \(→P.517\)](#)
- [Previewing Images Before Printing \(Mac OS 9\) \(→P.537\)](#)

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



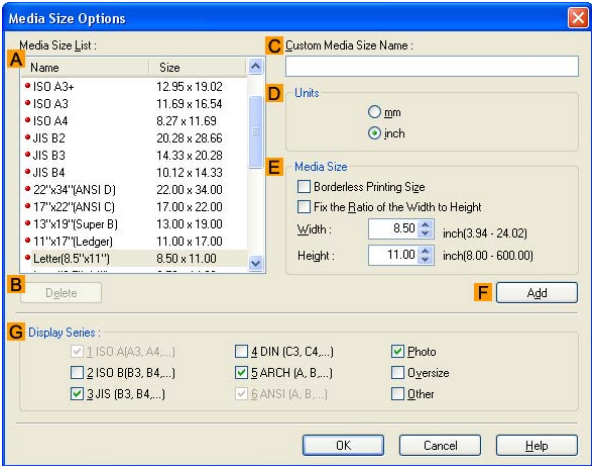
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Settings** by **Media Type**. (→P.475)

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The Drying Time setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.141)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the Near End Margin (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows)

In the **Media Size Options** dialog box, you can create and register your own **Custom Media Size**. The sizes you define are listed with standard media sizes for selection later as needed.



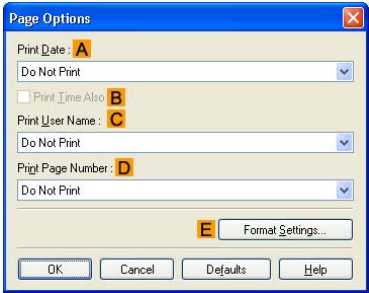
Note

- To display the **Media Size Options** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Media Size Options**. (→P.479)

Setting Item	Description
A Media Size List	Shows the names and sizes of paper that can be used with the printer driver.
B Delete	Custom media sizes created by users can be deleted from the Media Size List , as needed. However, they cannot be deleted in the following situations. <ul style="list-style-type: none">If a standard media size of the printer driver is selected.If an oversized media size is selected.If a media size in a red box is selected.
C Custom Media Size Name	You can name Custom Media Size as desired.
D Units	Specify the desired unit of measure for the Custom Media Size height and width.
E Media Size	Specify the desired Width and Height . You can make your selection from sizes that are compatible with Borderless Printing by selecting Borderless Printing Size . To maintain the aspect ratio of the Width and Height as you resize the paper, select Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height .
F Add	Enables you to register the custom media size you have specified or overwrite an existing custom media size.
G Display Series	You can limit the number of options shown in Page Size , Media Size , and Media Size List .

Page Options Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Page Options** dialog box offers the following settings.



Note

- To display the **Page Options** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Page Options**. (→P.481)

Setting Item	Description
A Print Date	Select where the date is printed, as desired. To print the time as well, select B Print Time Also .
C Print User Name	Select where the user name is printed, as desired.
D Print Page Number	Select where the page number is printed, as desired.
E Format Settings	Click to display the Format Settings dialog box, which enables you to complete format-related settings. <div></div>



Note

- If you specify the same position for multiple items, the items are printed from left to right in this order: date, user name, and page number.
- When you print multiple pages per sheet using **Page Layout Printing** or similar functions, these items will be printed for each page.

■ Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.

Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.

This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.

To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.

2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

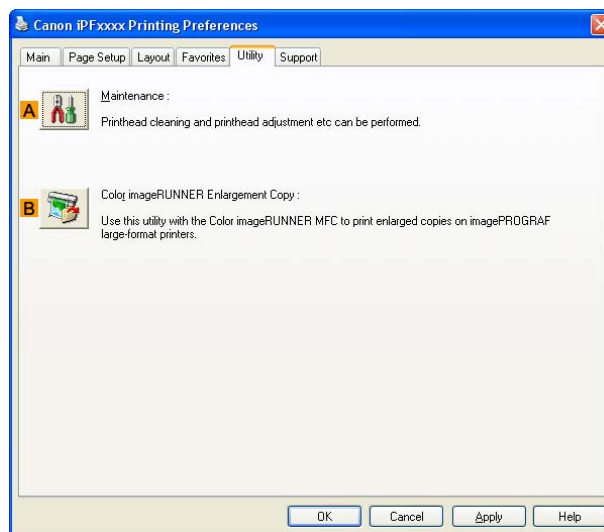
After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.496)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click **B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders. For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.

For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.

Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

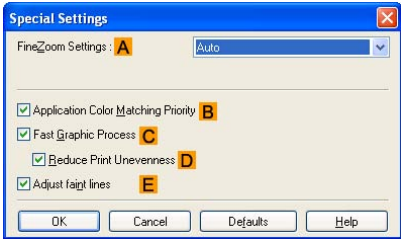


Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.



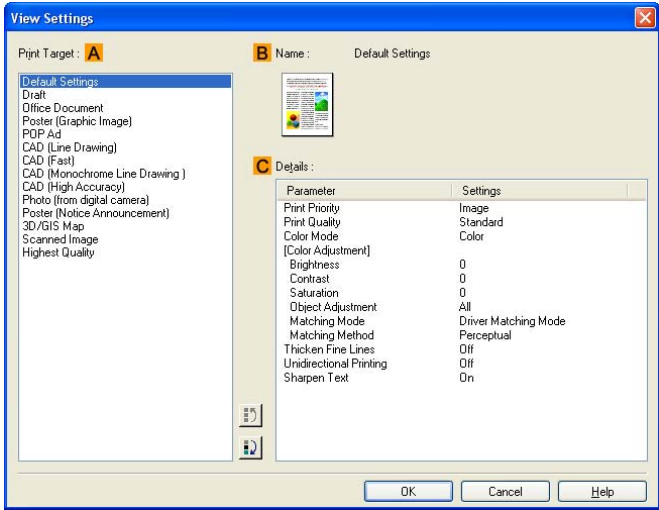
Note

- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Special Settings**. (→P.481)

Setting Item	Description
A FineZoom Settings	This function is used in large-format printing. Normally, choose Auto . If documents are not printed correctly on large-format media, it may help to select Yes , and if fine lines are not visible or if images are distorted when printed, it may help to select No .
B Application Color Matching Priority	You can give applications priority in color management.
C Fast Graphic Process	If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.
D Reduce Print Unevenness	If you are concerned about uneven colors, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer for some images.
E Adjust faint lines	If fine lines are printed in colors that do not match the colors of other shapes, clearing this option may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**. (→P.475)

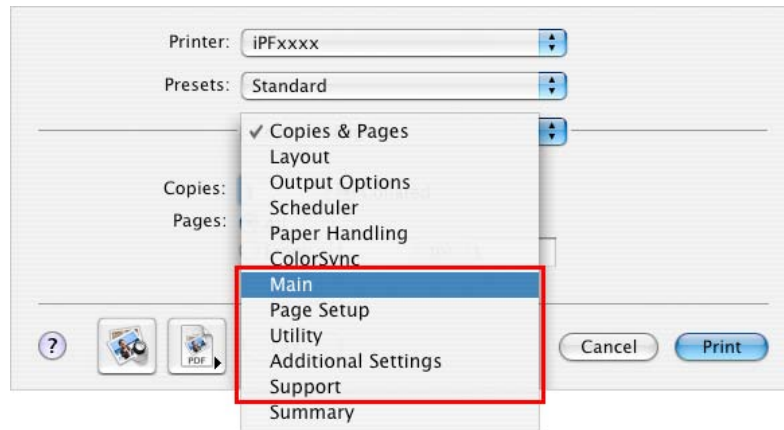
Setting Item	Description
A Print Target	Shows all Print Target options (settings items for the printing application).
B Name	Identifies the item selected in Print Target by its name and an icon.
C Details	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each listed item for the selected Print Target .

Mac OS X

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS X printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) (→P.528)



For information on the Mac OS X printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.519)
You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.
 - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) (→P.532)
 - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) (→P.533)
 - Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) (→P.529)
 - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) (→P.531)
- Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.521)
You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the media size and source, and automatic cutting.
- Utility Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523)
You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.524)
You can specify settings for how print jobs are sent to the printer.
- Support Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.525)
You can view support information and the user's manual.

With the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** feature, you can arrange originals from various source applications on a single page before printing. For details, see the Free Layout Guide .

With the **imagePROGRAF Preview** feature, you can check the layout before printing and adjust layout or size settings while viewing a preview screen. For details, see the imagePROGRAF Preview Guide .

With the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** feature, you can automatically enlarge and print scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

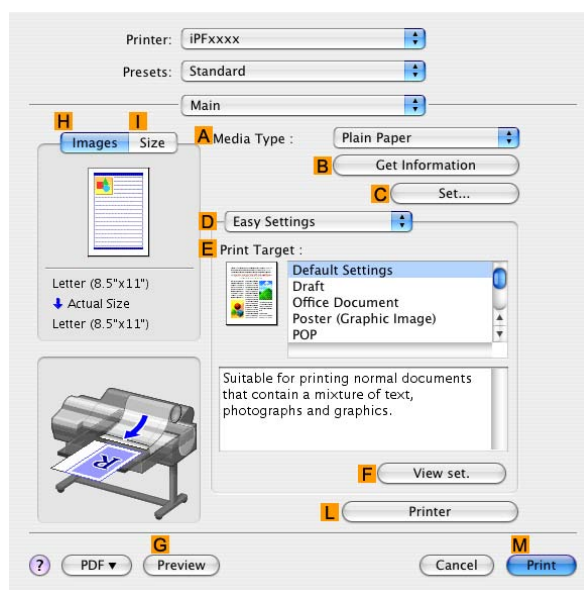
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.513)
- Checking a print preview (→P.514)

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, media source, and so on.

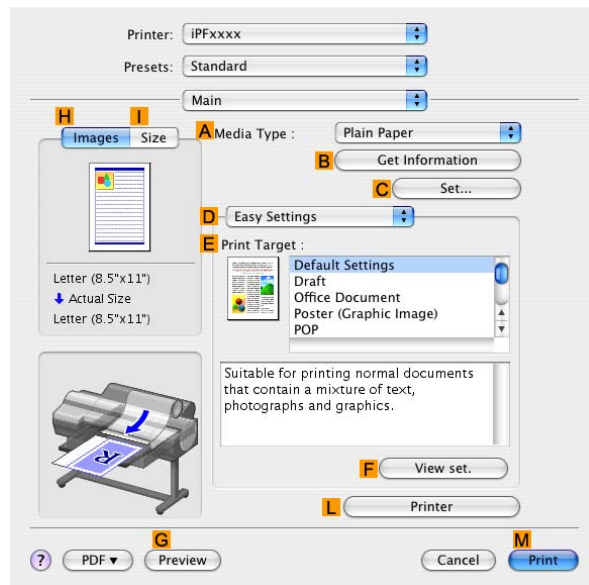


Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the H Images tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the I Size tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.



Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **F View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.

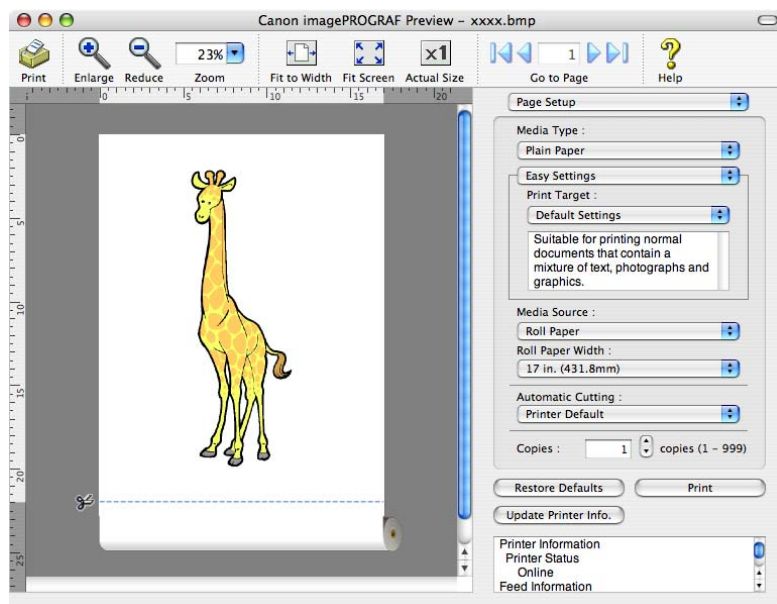
Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.

For details on print previews, see “Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

☐ Checking the Layout Before Printing

You can check the print layout on the preview screen. While viewing this screen, you can also adjust layout or size settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.

Preview (Macintosh)



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

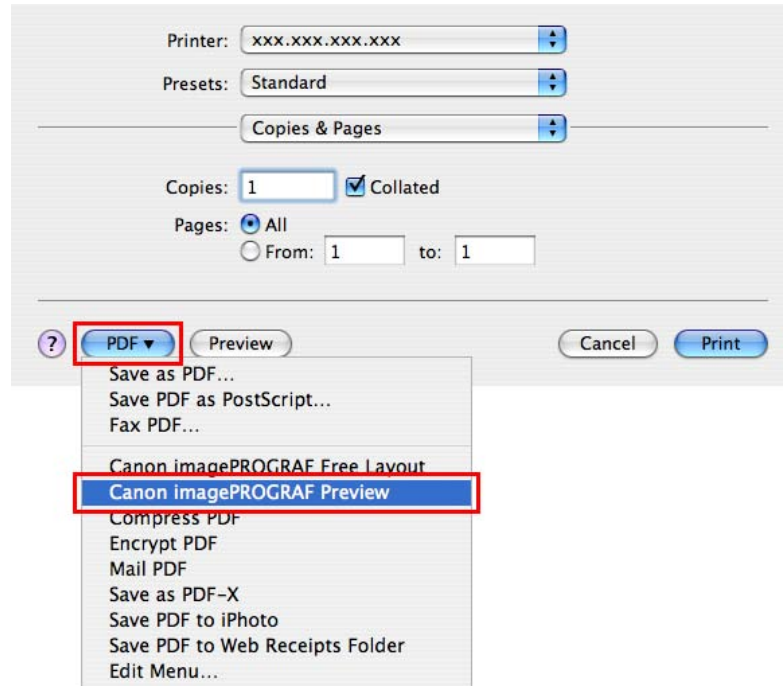
For instructions on how to check the layout before printing, refer to the following topics:

- Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.516)

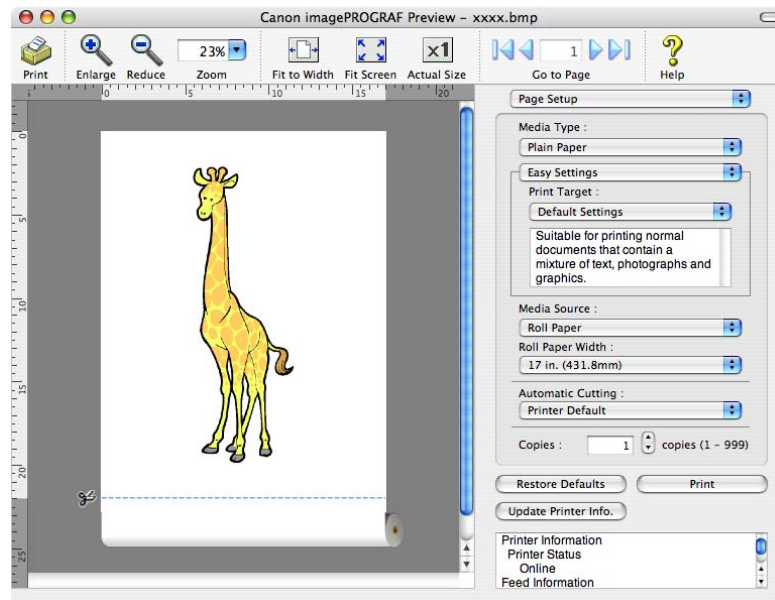
☐ Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



4. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.
5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.



Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to imagePROGRAF Preview Guide .

Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
2. Click **Preview** to open the preview window.
3. Check the layout and other aspects of the printing image, and then click **Print** to start printing.

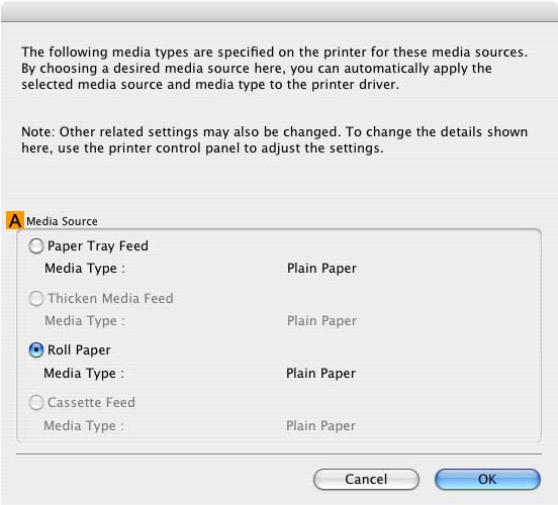


Note

- “Preview” is provided as a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

■ ■ ■ Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver media type setting.



Note

- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**. (→P.519)

Setting Item	Description
A Media Source	Shows the Media Source supported by the printer, as well as the type of paper loaded. To update the media type setting in the printer driver, select the desired Media Source option and click OK .

Main Pane (Mac OS X)

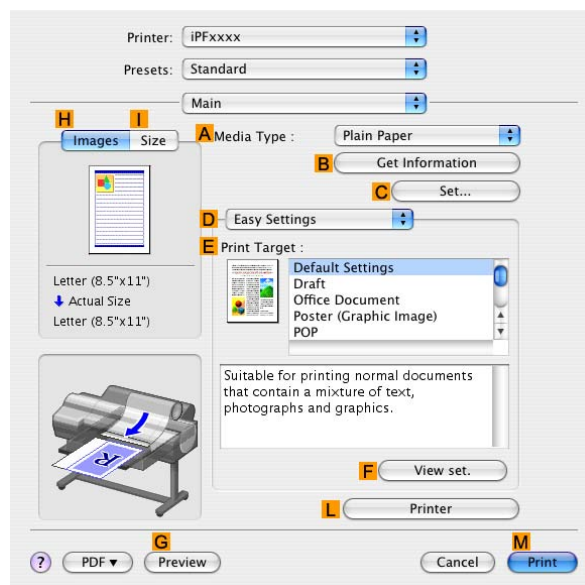
The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

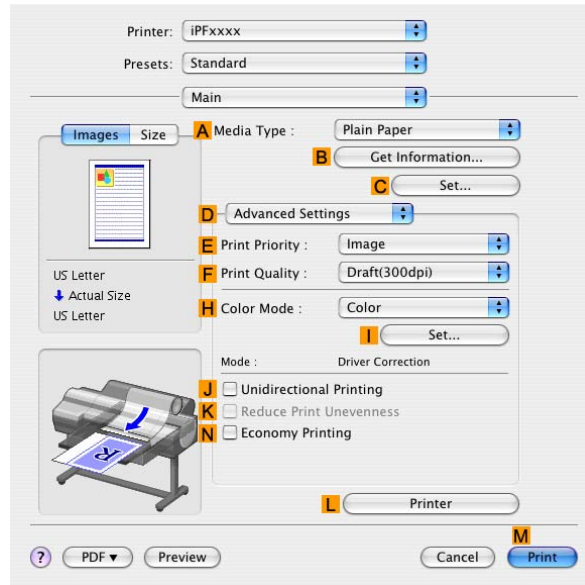
- On the **Main** pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
	B Get Information	Click to display the Get Information dialog box, which shows media types specified on the printer for each media source. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source and media type.
	C Set	Click to display the Media Detailed Settings dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.209) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.212) Printing Office Documents (→P.213)
	F View set.	Click to display the View settings dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the E Print Target list or change the order of items listed in E Print Target .
L Printer		Click to display the Printer dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

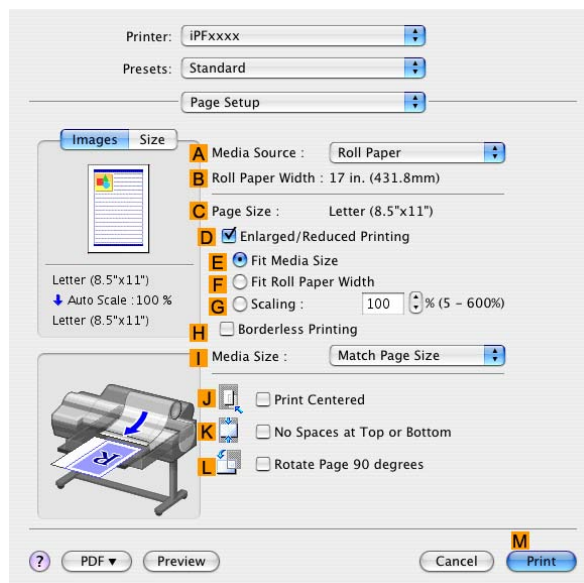
Configuration using Advanced Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
	B Get Information	Click to display the Get Information dialog box, which shows media types specified on the printer for each media source. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source and media type.
	C Set	Click to display the Media Detailed Settings dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
H Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
	I Set	Click to display the Color Settings dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.214)
J Unidirectional Printing		Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
K Reduce Print Unevenness		This option is displayed if you have selected Plain Paper in A Media Type and Office Document in E Print Priority . Activate this option for two-pass printing to reduce color shading.
N Economy Printing		When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the Media Type and Print Quality settings, this mode may not be available.
L Printer		Click to display the Printer dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

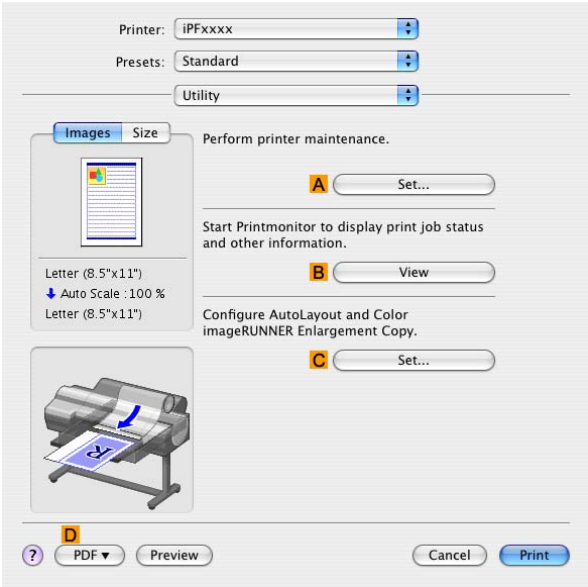


Setting Item		Description
A Media Source		Choose how paper is supplied. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in A Media Type in the Main pane.
B Roll Paper Width		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. Unknown is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.
C Page Size		Displays the size of the original, as specified in the page settings of the application. For details on page sizes available in the application.see "Paper Sizes". (→P.117)
D Enlarged/Reduced Printing		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.272) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.273) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.274)
	E Fit Media Size	Resizes the document image to match the paper size.
	F Fit Roll Paper Width	Resizes the document image to match the roll width.
	G Scaling	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of "5-600."
H Borderless Printing		Borderless printing is available if Roll Paper is selected in the A Media Source list. Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.327) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.329) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.309)
I Media Size		Choose the size of the paper you will print on. Click Display all selections for Media Size to list available sizes. For details on available paper sizes, see "Paper Sizes". (→P.117)

Setting Item	Description
J Print Centered	Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.407) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.408)
K No Spaces at Top or Bottom	Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.425)
L Rotate Page 90 degrees	Activate this setting to rotate the original 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.424)

Utility Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Utility**pane.

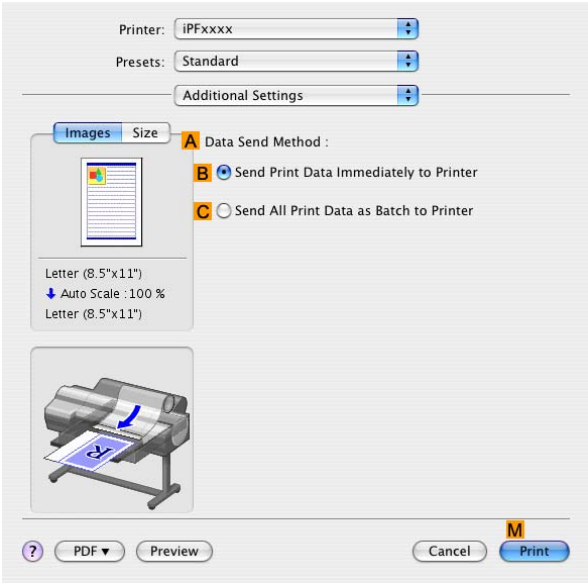


Setting Item	Description
A Set	Click to display the Printer dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning• Head alignment adjustment• Feed amount adjustment
B View	Click to start imagePROGRAF Printmonitor , which enables you to view the status of print jobs.
C Set	Click to complete the settings for Auto Arrange or Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy).

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)

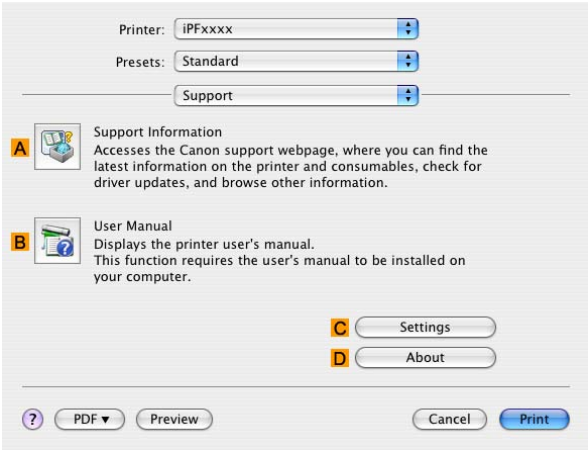
The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings**pane.



Setting Item	Description
A Data Send Method	Choose how printing data is sent to the printer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">B Send Print Data Immediately to PrinterC Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer

Support Pane (Mac OS X)

On the **Support** pane, you can view support information and the user's manual.



Button	Corresponding Utility
A Support Information	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B User Manual	Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C Settings	The settings can be saved as a file. Click to display the Export dialog box, which enables you to specify where to save the file.
D About	You can display version information for the printer driver.

Using Favorites (Mac OS X)

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.

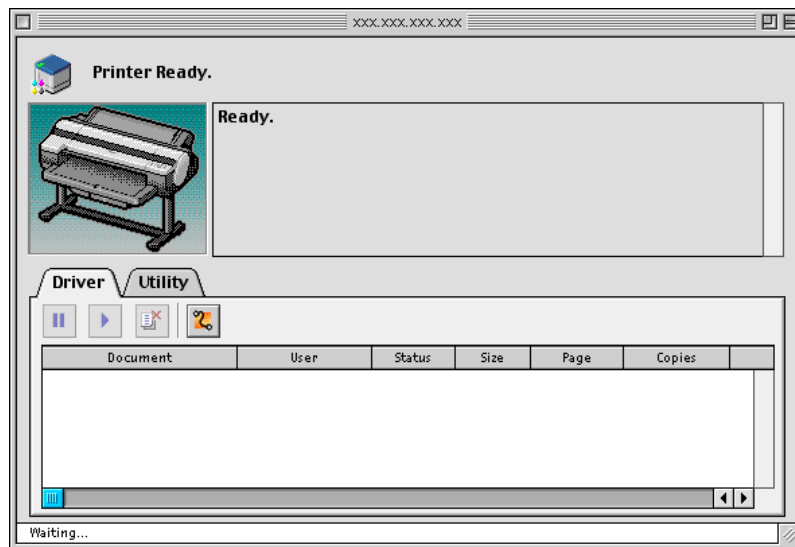
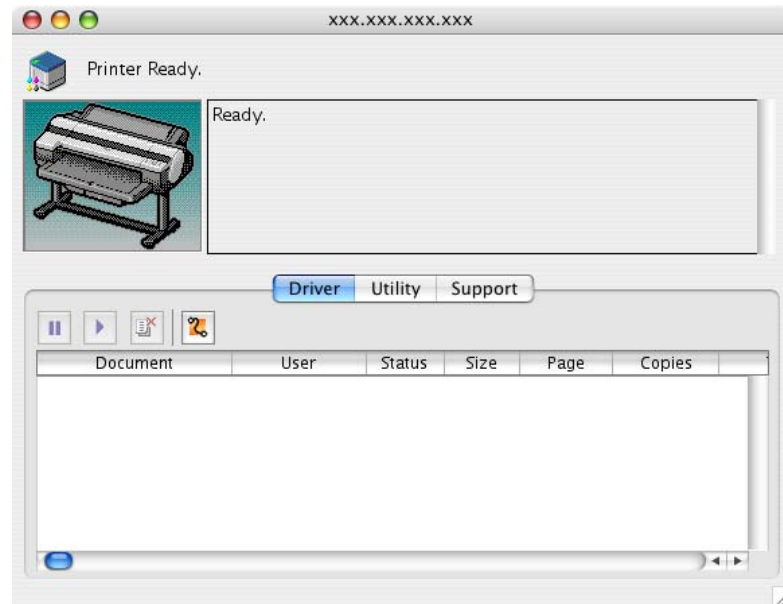


Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

**Note**

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, select the printer again as follows.
 1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
 2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
 3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu.
 4. Select the zone to search (or select ***(My Zone)** if no zones have been set up) and click the **Search** button.
Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
 5. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

■ Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)

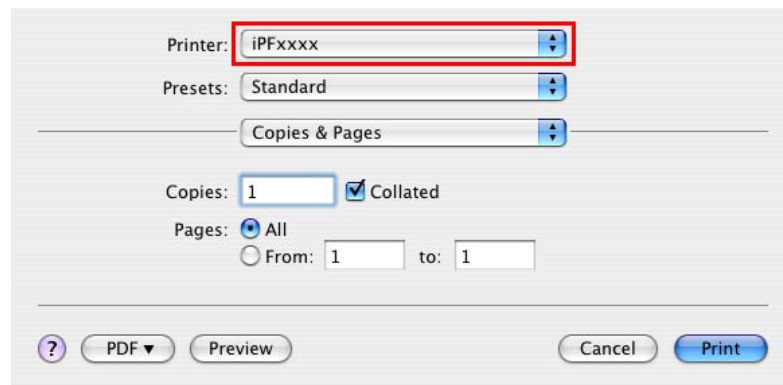
1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.



Note

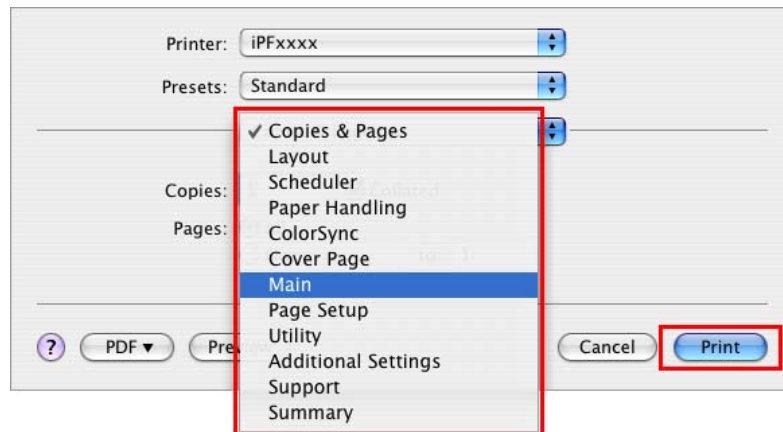
- This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.

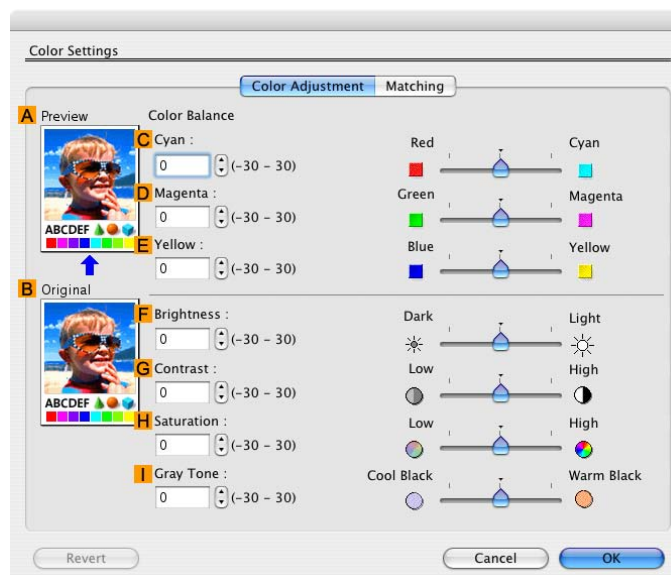


Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment pane: color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.519)

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the Preview image.
C Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the Contrast makes images sharper, and reducing the Contrast softens images.
H Saturation	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the Saturation setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the Saturation makes colors more subdued.
I Gray Tone	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose Cool Black (tinged with blue), Warm Black (tinged with red), and so on.

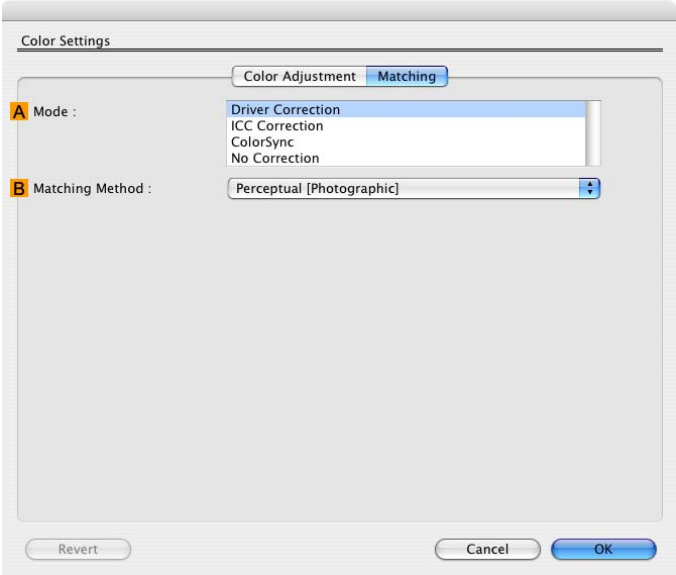


Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Matching**. (→P.519)

Setting Item	Description
A Matching Mode	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B Matching Method	Select the matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various Matching Method options are available depending on your selection in Matching .



Note

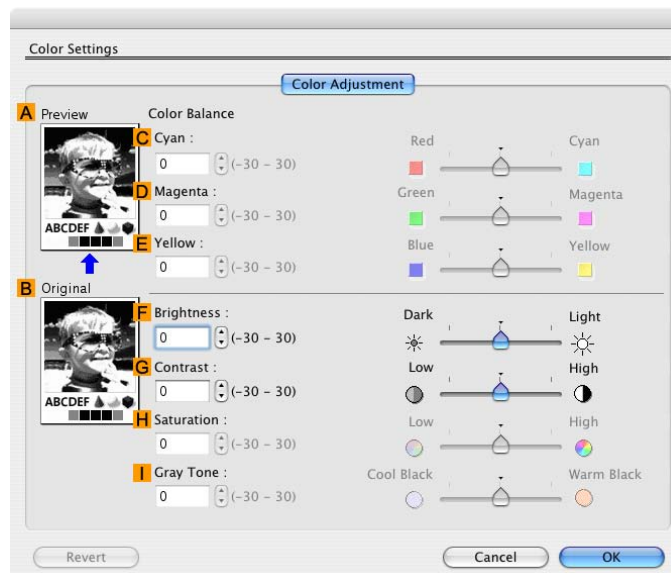
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** pane for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment pane: monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.519)

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the Preview image.
C Cyan	Not available.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the Contrast makes images sharper, and reducing the Contrast softens images.
H Saturation	Not available.
I Gray Tone	Not available.

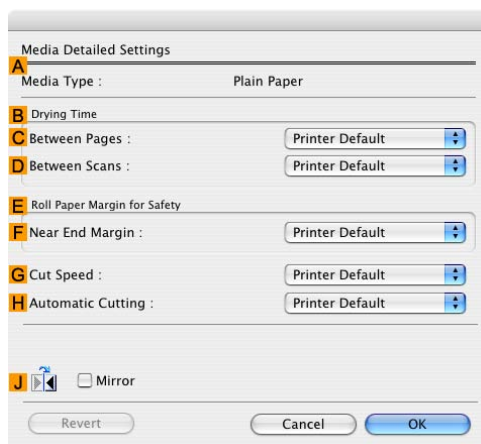


Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



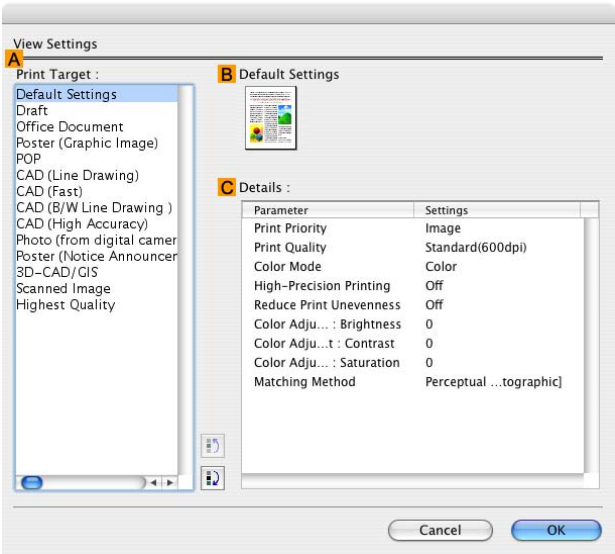
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Settings by Media Type**. (→P.519)

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The Drying Time setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.141)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the Near End Margin (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate Automatic Cutting and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, specify Yes , No , or Print Cut Guideline .
J Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**. (→P.519)

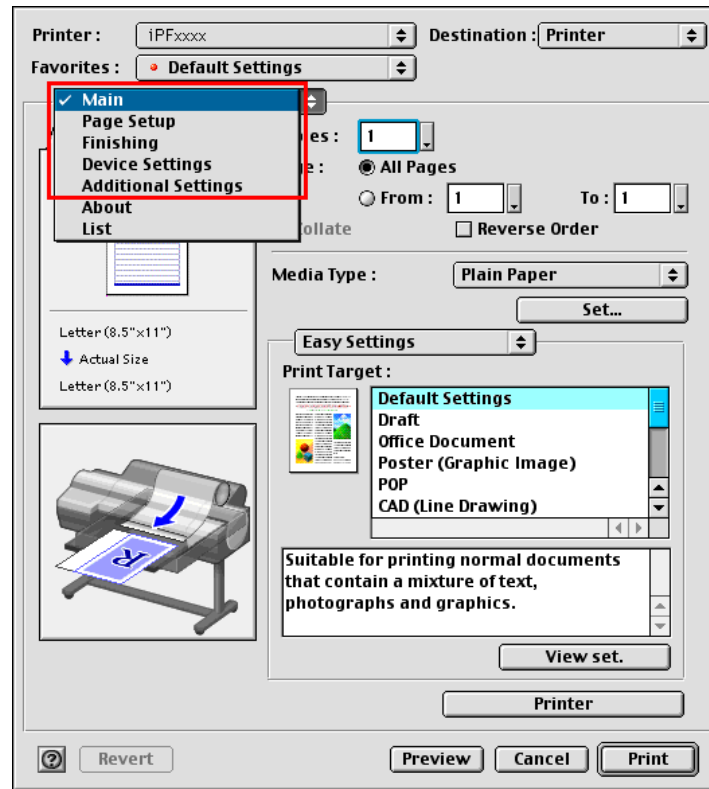
Setting Item	Description
A Print Target	Shows all Print Target options (settings items for the printing application).
B Name	Identifies the item selected in Print Target by its name and an icon.
C Details	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the Print Target list.

Mac OS 9

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS 9 printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9) (→P.550)



For information on the Mac OS 9 printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.538)
You can specify the number of copies, page range, media type, color processing, print quality, and print preview. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.
 - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) (→P.557)
 - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9) (→P.559)
 - Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9) (→P.552)
 - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9) (→P.555)
- Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.541)
You can specify the amount of enlargement or reduction, borderless printing, media size, and page layout.
- Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.543)
You can specify the media source, watermarks, and orientation.
- Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.544)
You can perform maintenance for the Printhead or feed amount.
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.545)
You can specify settings for background printing, how print jobs are sent to the printer, and notification after printing.
 - Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) (→P.558)

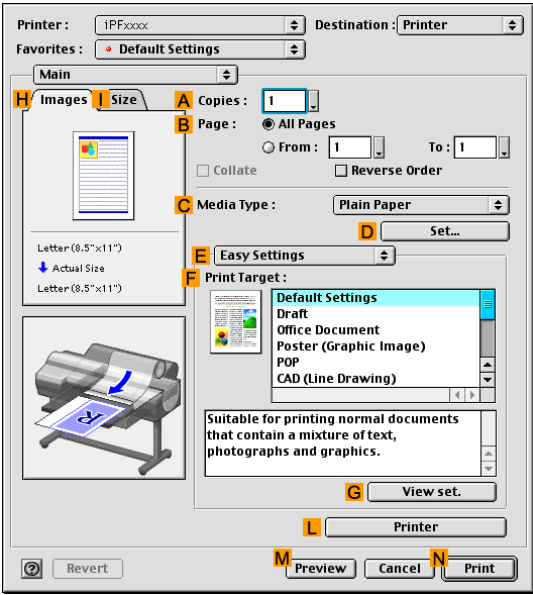
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.535)
- Checking a print preview (→P.536)

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main** , **Page Setup**, **Finishing**, **Utility** , and **Additional Settings** panes. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, media source, and so on.

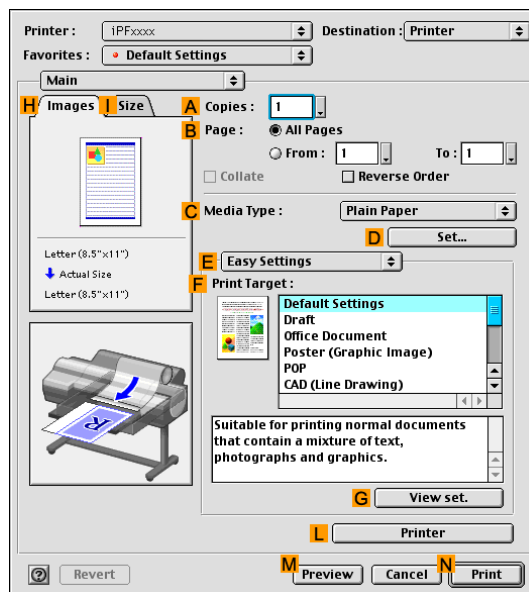


Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the H Images tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the I Size tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.



Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **G View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View set.** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.

Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.

For details on print previews, see “Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.537)

Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
2. Click **Preview** to open the preview window.
3. Check the layout and other aspects of the printing image, and then click **Print this page** to start printing.



Note

- “Preview” is provided as a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Main Pane (Mac OS 9)

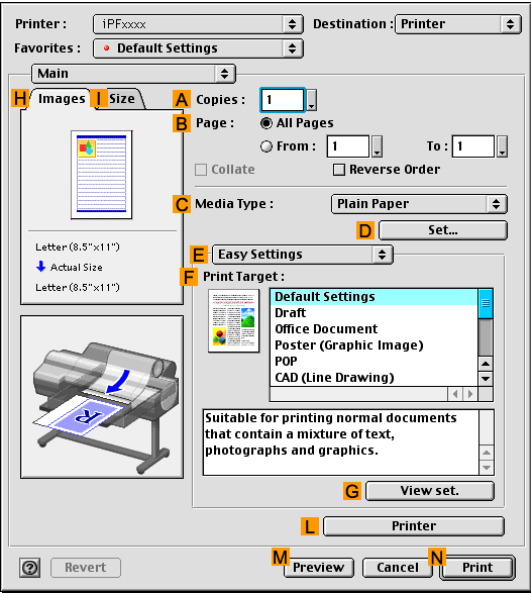
The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

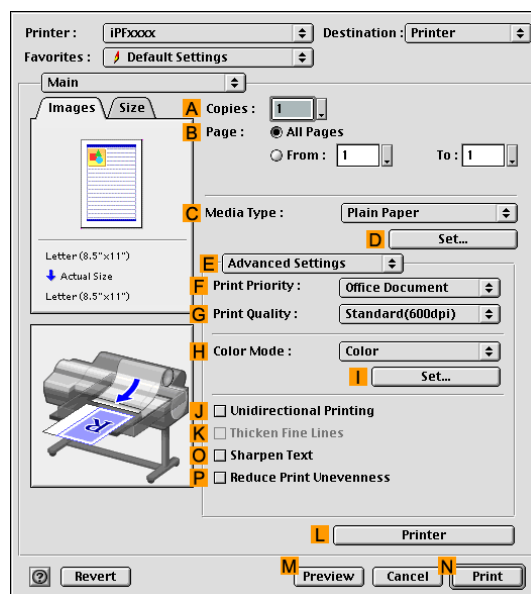
- On the Main pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Copies		Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”
B Page		Specify the pages to print. <ul style="list-style-type: none">All PagesFrom and To
C Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
	D Set	Click to display the Media Detailed Settings dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
F Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS 9) (→P.207) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS 9) (→P.211) Printing Office Documents (→P.213)
	G View set.	Click to display the View set. dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the F Print Target list or change the order of items listed in F Print Target .
L Printer		Click to display the Printer Information dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Configuration using Advanced Settings

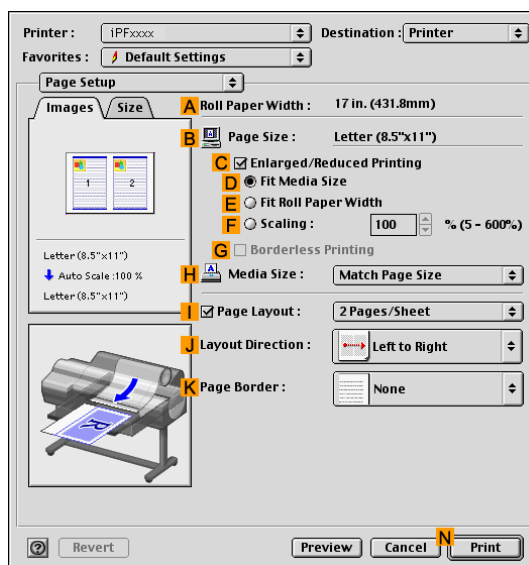


Setting Item	Description
A Copies	Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of "1-999."
B Page	Specify the pages to print. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All Pages • From and To
C Media Type	Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
D Set	Click to display the Media Detailed Settings dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
F Print Priority	Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
G Print Quality	Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
H Color Mode	Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
I Set	Click to display the Color Settings dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.214)
J Unidirectional Printing	Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results. Depending on the printing conditions, unidirectional printing may be the default setting even if you do not choose it. In this case, the printing speed will not change if you activate the setting.
K Thicken Fine Lines	Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.
O Sharpen Text	Activate this option to print text more sharply.

Setting Item	Description
P Reduce Print Unevenness	This option is displayed if you have selected Plain Paper in C Media Type and Office Document in F Print Priority . Activate this option to automatically switch between one-pass and two-pass printings, which reduces color shading. Deactivate this option for one-pass printing only.
L Printer	Click to display the Printer Information dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



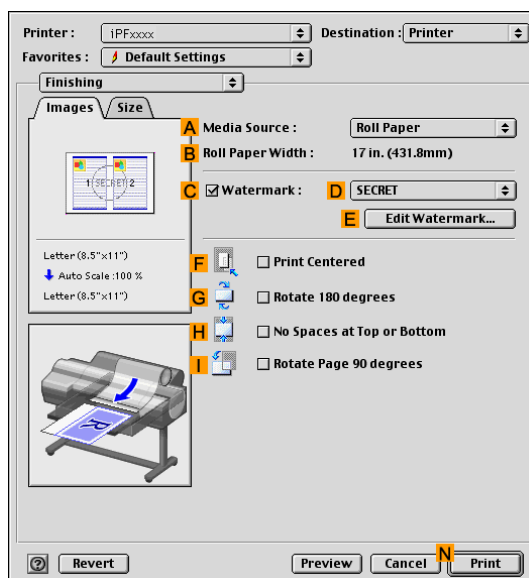
Setting Item	Description
A Roll Paper Width	Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer.
B Page Size	Displays the page size, as specified in the source application. For details on paper sizes available from the source application, see "Paper Sizes". (→P.117)
C Enlarged/Reduced Printing	Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.272) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.273) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.274)
D Fit Media Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
E Fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
F Scaling	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of "5-600."
G Borderless Printing	Borderless printing is available if Roll Paper is selected from the A Media Source list in the Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9). Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.327) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.329) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.309)
H Media Size	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see "Paper Sizes". (→P.117)
I Page Layout	Activate this option to select the page layout when printing multiple pages per sheet.(*1) Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (→P.385) Printing Posters in Sections (→P.386)

Setting Item		Description
	J Layout Direction	This setting is available when I Page Layout is selected. Here, you can specify the orientation of multiple pages to be printed on a single sheet.
	K Page Border	This setting is available when I Page Layout is selected. Here, you can specify the type of boundary line around each page of multiple pages printed on a single sheet.

*1: Selecting poster layout from the **I Page Layout** list displays a check box for specifying the pages to print.

Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9)

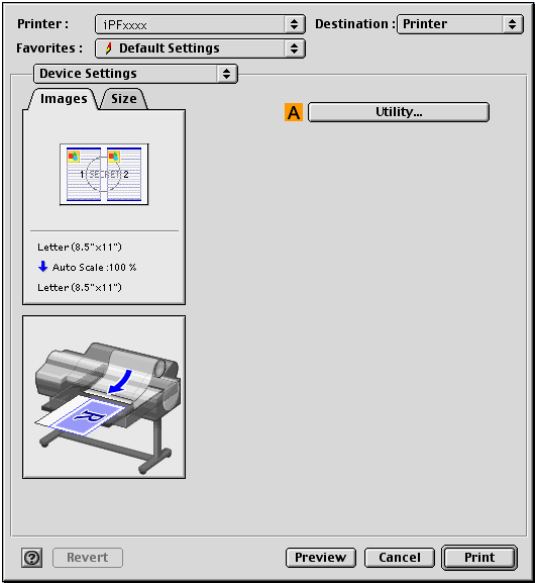
The following settings are available on the **Finishing** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A Media Source		You can choose the media source. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in C Media Type in the Main pane.
B Roll Paper Width		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. Unknown is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.
C Watermark		Activating this option makes two settings available, D Watermarks and E Edit Watermark . Printing With Watermarks (→P.447)
	D Watermarks	Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.
	E Edit Watermark	Click to display the Edit Watermark dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.
F Print Centered		Choose this option to print the document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.407) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.408)
G Rotate 180 degrees		Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 180 degrees before printing.
H No Spaces at Top or Bottom		Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.425)
I Rotate Page 90 degrees		Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.424)

Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)

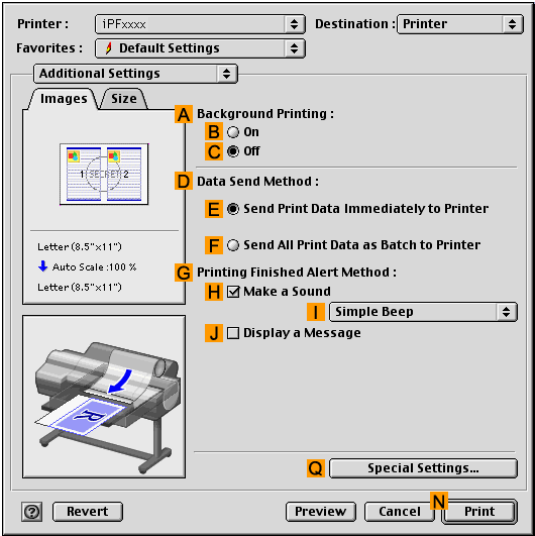
The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** pane.



Setting Item	Description
A Utility	Click to display the Printer Information dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning• Head alignment adjustment• Feed amount adjustment

Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings**pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A Background Printing		Choose the printing method. Activate this setting by clicking B On to print in the background. Deactivate this setting by clicking C Off to print in the foreground.
D Data Send Method		Choose how printing data is sent to the printer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">E Send Print Data Immediately to PrinterF Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer
G Printing Finished Alert Method		Choose how to notify when printing is finished. Specify how to be notified when printing is finished, by a tone or a message.
	H Make a Sound	Activate this setting to be notified by a tone when printing is finished. You can also choose a different tone.
	J Display a Message	Activate this setting to be notified by a dialog box when printing is finished.
Q Special Settings		If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.

☐ Using Favorites (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Complete the print settings.
4. In the **Favorites** list, click **Add Favorite** to display the **Add Favorite** dialog box.
5. Complete the following settings in the **Add Favorite** dialog box.
 - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
 - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added.
6. Click **OK** to close the **Add Favorite** dialog box.

The favorite you have added is now displayed in **Favorites**.



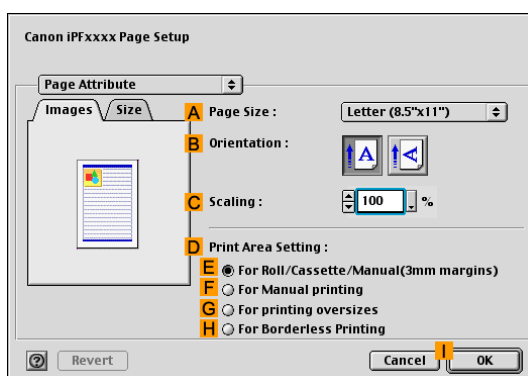
Note

- To edit the name of an existing favorite or comment, click **Edit Favorite** in the **Favorites** list to display the **Edit Favorite** dialog box.
- To save a favorite as a file, click **Export** and specify the file to save.

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. Choose the original size in the **A Page Size** list.
4. Click **I OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
6. In the **Favorites** list, choose the favorite you registered.



Note

- To import a favorite, click **Import** and specify the favorite file.
- If you select a favorite and edit it, an icon is displayed at left of the name to indicate that the settings have been changed. For details, refer to the printer driver help.

7. Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.

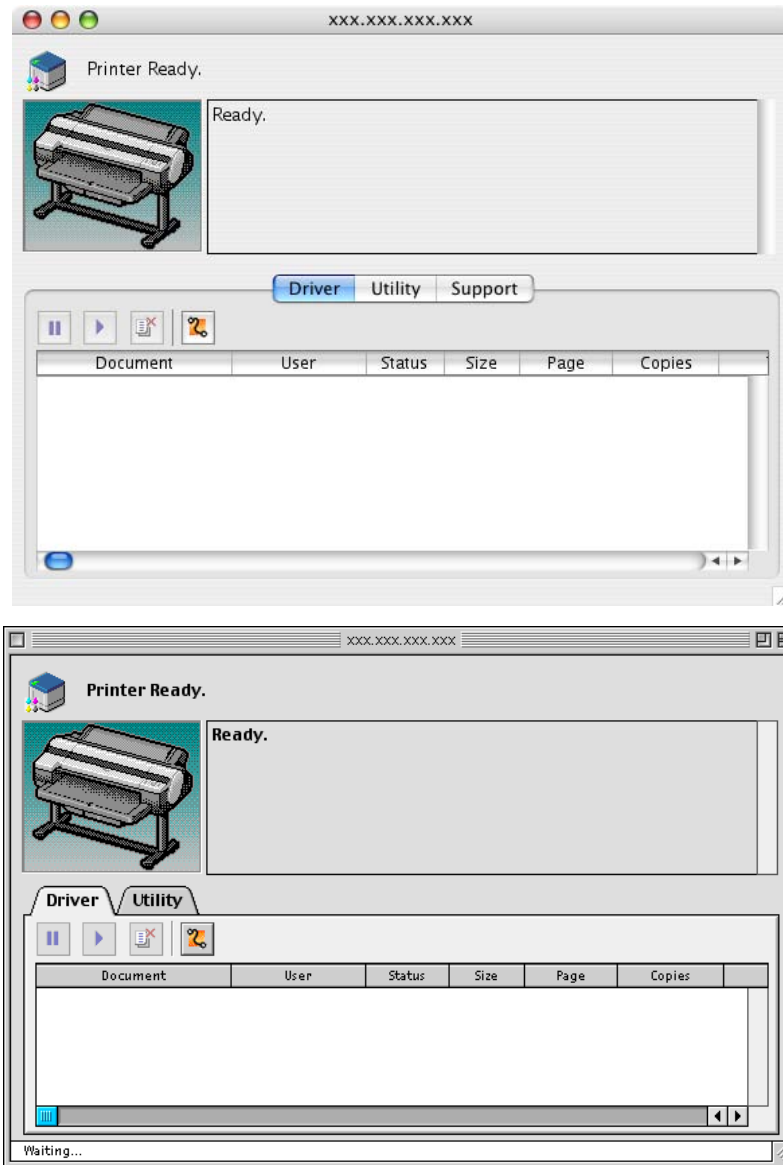


Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.535)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

**Note**

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, select the printer again as follows.
 1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
 2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
 3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu.
 4. Select the zone to search (or select ***(My Zone)** if no zones have been set up) and click the **Search** button.
Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
 5. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

■ Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9)

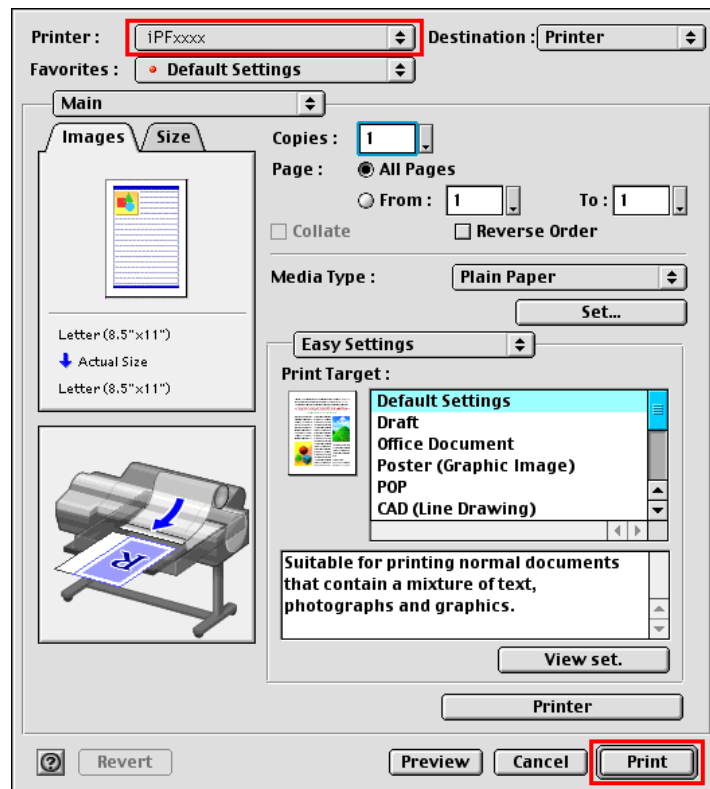
1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.



Note

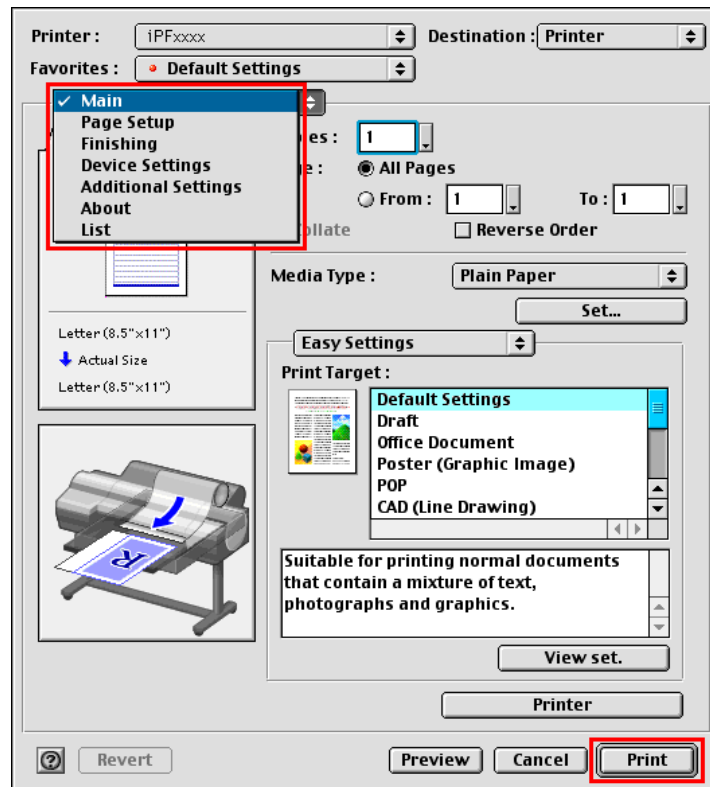
- This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print to start printing.**

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.

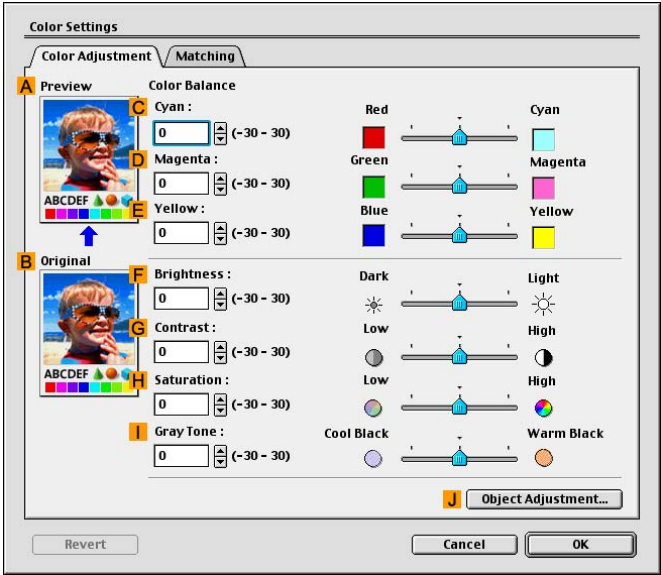


Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment pane: color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.538)

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the Preview image.
C Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the Contrast makes images sharper, and reducing the Contrast softens images.
H Saturation	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the Saturation setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the Saturation makes colors more subdued.

Setting Item	Description
I Gray Tone	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose Cool Black (tinged with blue), Warm Black (tinged with red), and so on.
J Object Adjustment	Select this option to display the Object Adjustment dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.



Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



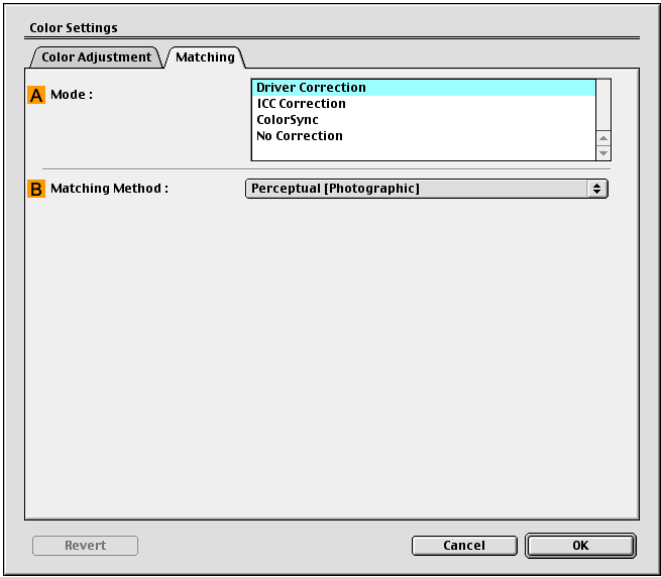
Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** pane.

Setting Item	Description
A Image	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B Graphics	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C Text	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Matching**. (→P.538)

Setting Item	Description
A Matching Mode	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B Matching Method	Select the matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various Matching Method options are available depending on your selection in Matching .



Note

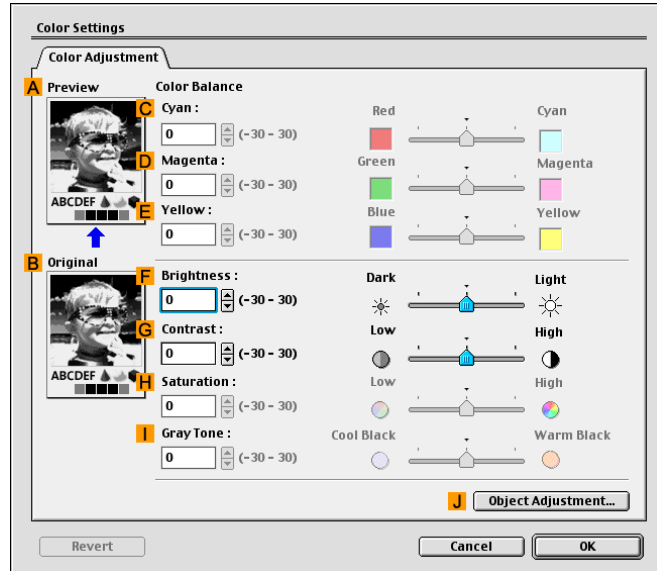
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** pane for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment pane: monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.538)

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image above is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the right of this pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image on the bottom shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the Preview image.
C Cyan	Not available.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the monitor).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the Contrast makes images sharper, and reducing the Contrast softens images.
H Saturation	Not available.
I Gray Tone	Not available.
J Object Adjustment	Select this option to display the Object Adjustment dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

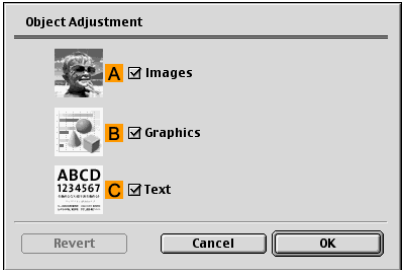


Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



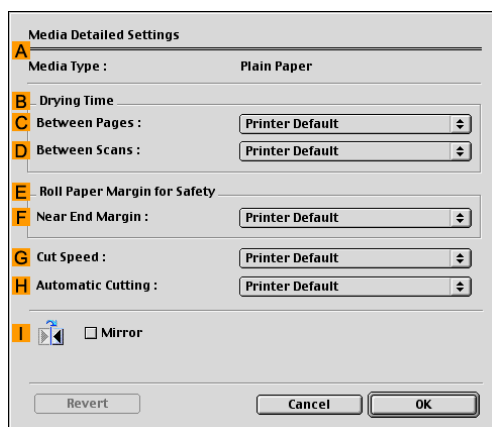
Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, on the **Color Adjustment** pane, click **Object Adjustment**.

Setting Item	Description
A Image	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B Graphics	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C Text	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



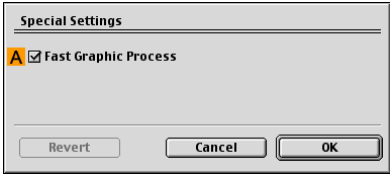
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Settings by Media Type**. (→P.538)

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The Drying Time setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.141)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the Near End Margin (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. Adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate Automatic Cutting and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, you can specify Yes or No and Print Cut Guideline .
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.


Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.



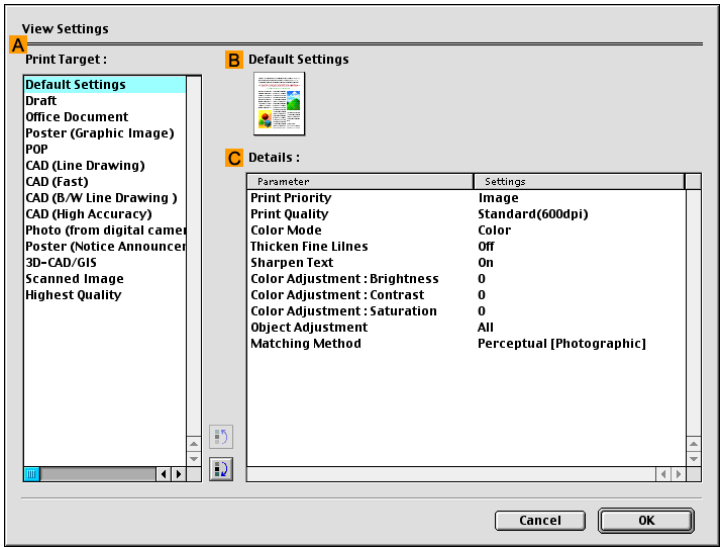
Note

- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Additional Settings** pane, click **Special Settings**. (→P.545)

Setting Item	Description
 Fast Graphic Process	If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**. (→P.538)

Setting Item	Description
A Print Target	Shows all Print Target options (settings items for the printing application).
B Name	Identifies the item selected in Print Target by its name and an icon.
C Details	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the Print Target list.

Network Setting

Network Setting

Network Environment

System requirements

The system requirements, which vary depending on your network, are as follows.

- Printing over a TCP/IP network
 - Compatible operating systems
 - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
 - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
 - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
 - Windows Vista (Home Basic/Business/Ultimate)
 - Mac OS 9.1 or later
 - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
 - Compatible computer
 - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems
- Printing over an AppleTalk network
 - Compatible operating systems
 - Mac OS 9.1 or later
 - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
 - Compatible computer
 - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems



Note

- The printer cannot be used over a LocalTalk network.
- Compatible with EtherTalk Phase 2.
- Printing over a NetWare network
 - Compatible servers
 - Novell NetWare 4.2/5.1/6.0
 - Compatible clients
 - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
 - Windows XP (Professional)
 - Compatible computer
 - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems



Note

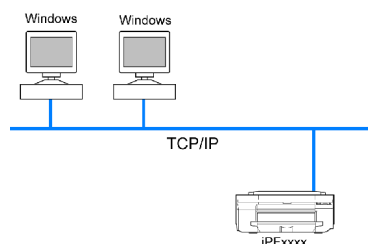
- In NetWare 6.0, iPrint is not supported.

Network environment

After confirming what type of network environment you will connect the printer to, set up the printer and computers as needed.

- Example of a Windows network

In Windows networks, print over TCP/IP.

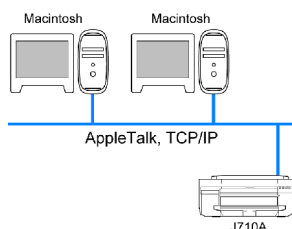


Note

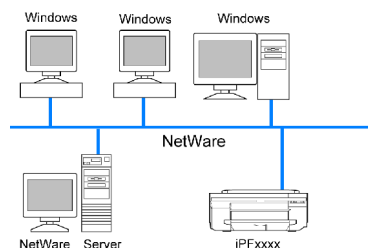
- NetBIOS is not supported.

- Example of a Macintosh network

In Macintosh networks, print over AppleTalk (EtherTalk) or TCP/IP, using Bonjour(Zeroconf) functions.



- Example of a NetWare network



Note

- Even if there is a NetWare server in your network environment, you can use both TCP/IP and AppleTalk. In this case, complete the settings for each protocol you will use.

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer

You must configure the printer's IP address before using the printer on a TCP/IP network.

The printer's IP address is configured automatically when you install the printer driver following the instructions in the Quick Start Guide.

Follow the steps below to configure the IP address by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, the printer Control Panel, or ARP or PING commands, if the IP address is changed, or if you change the printer connection mode to a network connection. For details on configuring the IP address, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (→P.492)
- Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.566)
- Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands (→P.567)



Note

- We recommend configuring the printer's IP address even if you will use the printer in other network except for TCP/IP. Configuring the printer's IP address enables you to use RemoteUI to configure the network settings and manage the printer with a web browser.
For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.570)

Initializing the Network Settings

Use RemoteUI to restore the network settings to the default values as follows.



Important

- Initializing the network settings will also restore the default value of the printer's IP address. As a result, the RemoteUI page cannot be displayed in the web browser after this procedure.
- For instructions on reconfiguring the IP address, see "Configuring the IP Address on the Printer". (→P.562)
- For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.570)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://“printer IP address or name”/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Reset to Default settings** in the lower-right corner of the **Network Interface** group.
6. After confirming the message, click **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.



Note

- You can also use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the Control Panel to restore the default network settings.
- If you use the Control Panel to initialize the network settings, press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**, and then press **▲**, **▼**, and **▶** to select **Interface Setup** → **Ethernet Driver** → **Init. Settings** → **Yes** (in this order), and finally press the **OK** button.

Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IP network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://“printer IP address or name”/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IP** group to display the **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use DHCP	Activate this setting to use DHCP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use BOOTP	Activate this setting to use BOOTP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use RARP	Activate this setting to use RARP for configuring the IP address.	Off
RAW Mode Bi-direction	Activate this setting to use Raw mode bidirectional communication.	Off
Enable DNS Dynamic Update	Activate this setting to perform DNS server registration automatically.	Off
Use Zeroconf Function	Activate this setting to use Bonjour.	On
IP Address	Specify the printer's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	Specify the printer's subnet mask.	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	Specify the printer's default gateway.	0.0.0.0
LPD Printing	Activate this setting to use LDP Printing.	On
IPP Printing	Activate this setting to use IPP Printing.	On
IPP Printer URI	Specify the URI of the printer used for IPP printing using up to 252 characters (1-252 characters). When using a standard Windows port for IPP printing, enter an URL less than 255 bytes for all characters for “http://<IP address/IPP-URI.”	printer

Item	Details	Default Setting
RAW Printing	Activate this setting to use Raw Printing.	On
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1-63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and "-" (hyphens). Do not use numbers or "-" for the first character or "-" for the last character.	NB-17FBxxxxxxxxxxxx
DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, "-" (hyphens), and "." (periods). Do not use numbers, "-", or "." for the first character, or "-" or "." for the last character.	(Blank)
Multicast DNS Service Name	Specify the printer's Multicast DNS service name, up to 63 characters. (1-63 characters) This name will be displayed when Bonjour functions are used.	Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.



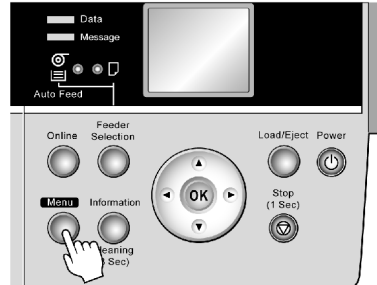
Note

- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, there must be a server that supports such protocol running in the network.
- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, the IP address obtained by this method is used first. If you cannot obtain the IP address, the address specified in **IP Address** is used.
- It takes a minute or two to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available. We recommend clearing check boxes of options you will not use.
- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers, DNS host name, and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address**, **DNS Host Name**, and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

■ Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel

This topic describes how to configure the printer's IP address on the Control Panel.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **►** button.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **IP Setting**, and then press the **►** button.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **IP Address**, and then press the **►** button.
6. After pressing **◀** or **▶** to select the input field, press the **OK** button to enable numerical input.
7. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the number, and then press the **OK** button.

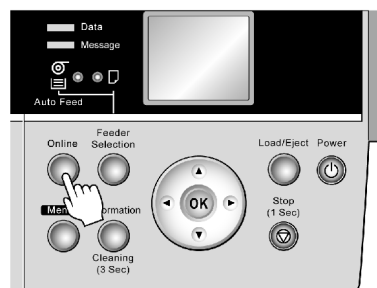


Note

- Pressing the **▲** button increases the number by 1. The maximum value is "255," after which "0" is displayed.
- Pressing the **▼** button decreases the number by 1. The minimum value is "0," after which "255" is displayed.
- Hold down **▲** or **▼** to increase or decrease the value continuously.

8. Repeat steps 6-7 to enter the IP address assigned to the printer.
9. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

If any of the settings are changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important

- Be sure to complete step 9. This will activate the values you have entered.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway on the Control Panel.



Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.

Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands

This topic describes how to configure the IP address using ARP and PING commands.

To use the ARP and PING commands, you will need to know the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel.

1. Check the printer's MAC address.

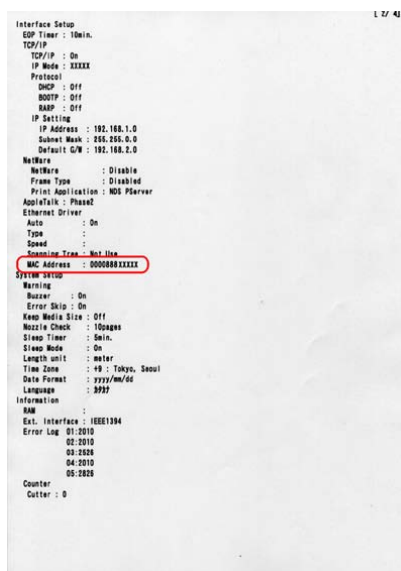
You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel as follows:

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **►** button.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **MAC Address**, and then press the **►** button.

You can also print information on the printer status, which includes the MAC address, as follows:

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Test Print**, and then press the **►** button.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Status Print**, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

The MAC address is indicated in the printer status information in the following location.



2. In Windows, open a command prompt or MS-DOS prompt, or in Mac OS X, start Terminal.
3. Execute the following command to add entries to the ARP table for managing IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses.

`arp -s [IP address] [the printer's MAC address you have verified]`

Example: `arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00-00-85-xx-xx-xx`



Note

- In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the arp command in the format “arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00:00:85:xx:xx:xx.” For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

4. Execute the following command to send the IP address to the printer and configure it.
ping [IP address as specified in the ARP command] -l 479
Example: ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx -l 479



Note

- In “-l,” the “l” is the letter “l”.
- In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the ping command in the format “ping -s 479 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.” For details, refer to the help file for the command line.



Note

- The subnet mask and default gateway will be set to “0.0.0.0.” Use RemoteUI to change the subnet mask and default gateway to match your network settings.
For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.570)

Specifying Printer-Related Information

Follow the steps below to specify device information and security settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://“printer IP address or name”/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Information** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Information** page.
5. To display the relevant settings page, click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of **Device Information** or **Security**, depending on what information you want to specify.
6. Refer to the tables of settings items for device information and security settings to complete the settings.

Device information settings items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Device Name	Specify the device name. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Location	Specify where the device is installed. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Administrator	Identify the administrator. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Phone	Specify the device administrator's contact information. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Comments(E-mail)	Enter any notes from the device administrator. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)

Security settings items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Old Password	Enter the current device password. (0-15 characters)	(Blank)
New Password	Enter a new password. (0-15 characters)	(Blank)
Confirm	Enter the new password again to confirm it. (0-15 characters)	(Blank)

Besides entering a password, you can specify other security-related information, such as IP address-based SNMP or TCP usage restrictions, MAC address-based access restrictions, or IPP authentication settings.

7. Click **OK** to activate the settings.

Using RemoteUI

Enter the printer's IP address in a web browser to display the RemoteUI page. After you log on to RemoteUI from the page, you can check and change the status of the printer and print jobs, and configure network settings.

For details on configuring printer settings for networks, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings (→P.564)
- Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings (→P.587)
- Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings (→P.572)
- Specifying Printer-Related Information (→P.569)



Note

- RemoteUI also offers many other features. You can display the ink levels, check error messages and other status information, and cancel print jobs.
- By factory default, the English screen is displayed. You can change the display language after logging on in Administrator Mode by choosing the desired language in the **Language** list.

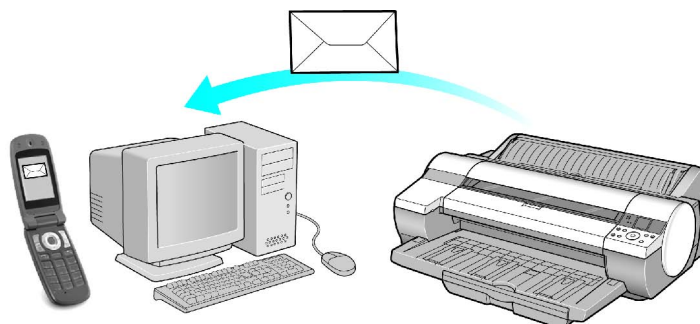


Important

- Use Netscape Navigator/Communicator 6.0 or later, Internet Explorer 5.01 or later, or Firefox 1.5 or later as a web browser. In Mac OS X, you can also use Safari 1.32 or later or Safari 2.03 or later.
- Access is not possible via a proxy server. In environments where a proxy server is used, add the printer's IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses accessed without a proxy server) in the web browser proxy server settings. (Settings may vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and cookies in the web browser.
- If you access RemoteUI with the printer name instead of its IP address, make sure the DNS settings are correctly configured.

■ Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur

The printer can notify you of the printer status by email. Even when you are away from the printer, you can know when printing is finished or if errors occur. Receive notification via email on your mobile phone or at your computer.



Use the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) function to set up email recipients and message timing. Besides being informed of finished print jobs or errors, you can also complete settings for email notification when service is needed or it's time to replace consumables. For detailed instructions, see "Specifying Printer-Related Information". (→P.569)



Note

- For details on email notification using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows), refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Network Setting (Windows)

Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the NetWare network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://“printer IP address or name”/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Frame Type		Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode		Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.	On
Print Application		Choose the print service. • Bindery PServer • RPrinter • NDS PServer • NPrinter	NDS PServer
Packet Signature		Select If Requested by Server to use packet signature.	If Requested by Server
Bindery PServer	File Server Name	Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters.	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters.	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server, up to 20 characters.	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-15 seconds)	5

Item		Details	Default Setting
RPrinter	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters.	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-5)	0
NDS PServer	Tree Name	Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server, up to 32 characters.	-
	Context Name	Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server, up to 255 characters.	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 64 characters.	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server, up to 20 characters.	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-255 seconds)	5
NPrinter	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters. Enter the advertising name of the print server designated by the NetWare print service. Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-254) Enter the printer number designated by the NetWare print service.	0

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

▣▣▣ Specifying the Printer's Frame Type

To enable communication between the printer and computers on your network, specify the Ethernet frame type in your NetWare environment.

Follow the steps below to specify the frame type by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the printer Control Panel.



Note

- You can specify the frame type by using RemoteUI if the printer's IP address is configured.



Important

- Before specifying the frame type, make sure the printer is on and connected to the network.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.491)

Specifying the frame type using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **NetWare Frame Type** list, select the frame type.
5. Make sure **ETHERNET II** is selected under **Frame Type** in **TCP/IP**.
6. In **IP Address**, enter the IP address assigned to the printer, and then enter the subnet mask in **Subnet Mask** and the default gateway in **Gateway Address**.



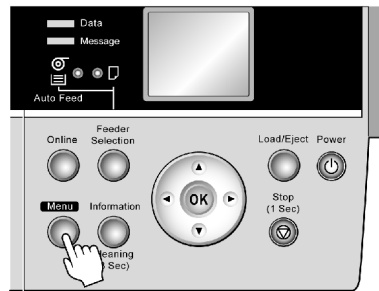
Important

- You must specify the IP address here to be able to configure NetWare protocol settings using RemoteUI.

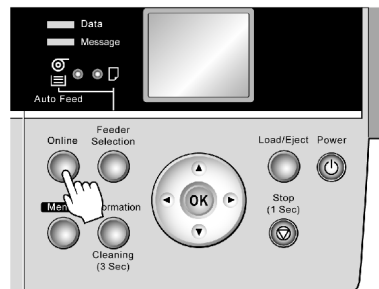
7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Specifying the frame type using the printer Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
Return to the **NetWare** menu.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Frame Type**, and then press the ► button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the frame type to use, and then press the **OK** button.
Return to the **NetWare** menu.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Service**, and then press the ► button.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired print service, and then press the **OK** button.
Return to the **NetWare** menu.
10. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
If any of the settings is changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important

- Be sure to complete step 10. This will activate the values you have entered.



Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.

■ Specifying NetWare Print Services

Before printing in a NetWare network, you must configure print services such as print servers, print queues, and so on. You can configure the print service settings from a computer using any of the following software.

- NWADMIN
- PCONSOLE
(from Novell, provided with NetWare)



Important

- If you use NWADMIN to configure the print service settings, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client software) must be installed as the client software application.
- NetWare networking is unsupported in Windows Vista.

This topic gives instructions for configuring NetWare print services. The order of this procedure may vary depending on the environment.

Choosing the type of print services

Before completing print service settings, choose the type of print service. Refer to the following descriptions as needed.



Note

- In NetWare 5.1/6.0/6.5, NDPS may also be used as the print service. If you use NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway included with NetWare. For details on configuring NDPS, refer to the NetWare documentation.
- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and Bindery
NDS and bindery are both supported. Use the mode that is compatible with your network environment.
- Queue Server Mode and Remote Printer Mode
Queue server mode and remote printer mode are both supported.
 - Queue Server Mode
When using queue server mode, all print server functions are supported, so there is no need for other print server software or hardware. In NDS queue server mode (NDS PServer), the NDS print server is used for printing. In bindery queue server mode (Bindery PServer), the bindery print server is used for printing. Note that if you use queue server mode, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface.
 - Remote Printer Mode
In remote printer mode, the printer is controlled by the NetWare print server. Thus, a NetWare print server is required. In NDS remote printer mode (NPrinter), the NDS print server is used for printing, and in bindery remote printer mode (RPrinter), the bindery print server is used for printing.

Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server

Use NWADMIN to set up the print server if NDS queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Administrator or with equivalent rights, and then start NWADMIN.
2. Run Quick Setup.
 1. Choose **Print Services Quick Setup** in the **Tools** menu.
 2. Enter a desired name in **Print Server Name**. To use an existing print server, click the button at right and choose the name from the list.
 3. Enter a desired printer name in **Name**.
 4. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use the printer in remote printer mode, choose **Parallel** in **Type**, click **Communications**, and set **Ports** to **LPT1** and **Connection Type** to **Manual Load**.
 5. Enter a desired queue name in **Name**.
 6. In **Volume**, enter the volume object (that is, the object representing the physical volume on the network) where the print queue will be created. Click the button at right to choose from a list.
 7. Complete other settings as needed and click **OK**.



Note

- The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's network settings. Note the print server name for future reference.
- When running Quick Setup, the printer is assigned printer number "0." When using the printer in queue server mode, do not change the printer number from "0."

3. Set a password.
 1. Right-click the print server created in step 2 and choose **Details**.
 2. Click **Change Password** to open the password input dialog box. Enter the password.
 3. Click **OK** to close the password input dialog box.
 4. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the details dialog box.
4. To use the printer in remote printer mode, start the print server.
To use the NetWare file server as the print server, enter "LOAD PSERVER.NLM" at the file server and press the Enter key.



Note

- This procedure is not required when using queue server mode.

Use PCONSOLE to set up the print server if bindery queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Supervisor and start PCONSOLE.
2. Switch to bindery mode.
3. If the print server has not been created, create it.
 1. In **Available Options**, select **Quick Setup** and press the Enter key.
 2. Enter the name of the new print server, the new printer, and the queue.



Note

- The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Note down the print server name for future reference.

4. Specify the printer type.
 1. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use remote printer mode, set **Printer Type** to **Parallel** and **Position** to **Manual Load**.
 2. Press the Esc key.
 3. After the confirmation message is displayed, choose **Yes** and press the Enter key.
5. Set a password.
 1. In **Available Options**, select **Print Servers** and press the Enter key.
 2. Select the print server created in step 2 and press the Enter key.
 3. Select **Password**, and press the Enter key to display the password input dialog box.
 4. Enter the password and press the Enter key.
6. Press the Esc key several times to display the dialog box for confirming that PCONSOLE is finished.
7. Click **Yes** to exit PCONSOLE.

■ Specifying NetWare Protocols

Follow the steps below to configure NetWare protocol settings other than the frame type by using RemoteUI.



Note

- For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.570)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://“printer IP address or name”/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Make sure the **Frame Type** indicates the frame type used on the NetWare network.
7. To use burst mode, choose **On** for **NCP Burst Mode**.



Note

- Burst mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, choose **On**.

8. In **Print Application**, click the print service to be used.



Note

- Only one print service selected here will be enabled. Multiple print services are not available at the same time.

9. For packet signature, click **If Requested by Server** in **Packet Signature**.
10. Complete the following settings based on the selected service.
 - If you have selected Bindery PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
 1. In **File Server Name**, enter the file server name.
 2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services." (→P.576)"
 3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services." (→P.576)"
 4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
 - If you have selected RPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
 1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services." (→P.576)"
 2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services." (→P.576)"

- If you have selected NDS PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)
 1. In **Tree Name** and **Context Name**, enter the tree and context name of the print server. Do not exceed 255 characters for the context name.
 2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.576)"
 3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.576)"
 4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
- If you have selected NPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a NDS Print Server)
 1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.576)" Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.
 2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.576)"

11. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

12. Click **Reset** to activate the settings.

For a list of NetWare protocol settings items, see "Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings". (→P.572)



Note

- If you use RemoteUI to display the print log in RPrinter or NPrinter mode, the document and user information cannot be obtained. Thus, **Document Name** only indicates **Unknown**, and the **User Name** information is identified as **RPRINTER/NPRINTER**.

■ ■ ■ Configuring NetWare Network Settings

To print over a NetWare network, configure the network environment as follows.



Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

1. Specify the Ethernet frame type for communication between the printer and computers.
For instructions, see “Specifying the Printer’s Frame Type”. (→P.574)
2. Specify the NetWare print services, including the print server and queue.
For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Print Services”. (→P.576)
3. Specify NetWare protocol details besides the frame type.
For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Protocols”. (→P.579)
After you have completed the steps above, configure each computer for printing over the NetWare network.
4. Connect to the NetWare network.
Install NetWare client software on each computer to be used for printing over the network, and log in to the NetWare server or tree. For instructions on connection, refer to the NetWare and operating system documentation.
5. Install the printer driver.
Follow the instructions of your network administrator to install the printer driver on each computer to be used for printing. When installing the printer driver, choose **Network Printer** as the printer destination, and then choose the print queue created from the NetWare print service settings.
6. Follow these steps to configure the printer port. This step is not necessary if you specified the printer destination during installation of the printer driver.
 1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
 2. Right-click the printer icon and choose **Properties**.
 3. Click the **Port** (or **Advanced**) tab to display the **Port** (or **Advanced**) sheet.
 4. As the destination port, specify the print queue created by configuring the NetWare print service settings.

⚙️ Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)

This topic describes how to specify the printer driver destination if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

The procedure described below is the configuration based on the LPR or RAW protocol using the standard TCP/IP port in Windows (**Standard TCP/IP Port**).



Important

- If you use the printer on a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
 - Configuring the IP Address on the Printer (→P.562)

1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Properties** to open the printer properties window.
3. Click the **Port** tab to display the **Port** sheet.
4. Click **Add Port** to display the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
5. In the **Available Port** list, select **Standard TCP/IP Port**.
6. Click **New Port**.
After the wizard starts, a window is displayed for the **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard**.
7. Click **Next**.
8. In **Printer Name or IP Address**, enter the printer's IP address.
9. Follow the instructions on the screen to add a printer port.
10. Click **Close** to close the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
11. Make sure the printer port you added is displayed under **Ports**, and that the port is selected.
12. Click **OK** to close the printer properties window.

Sharing the Printer in Windows

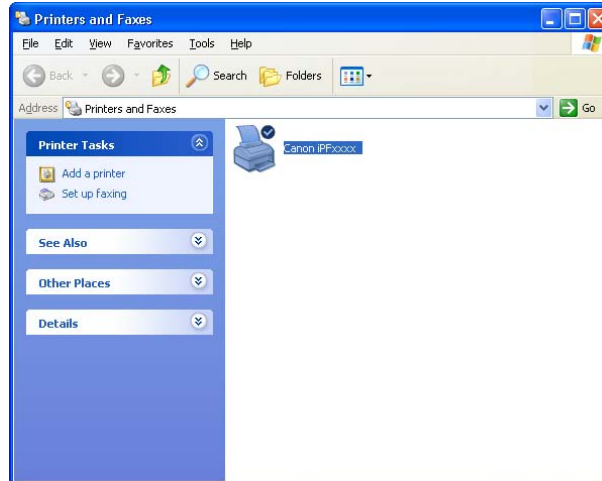
If you set up a computer as a print server in Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003, the computer can receive print jobs sent from other computers (clients) connected to it for printing. This topic describes how to share the printer in Windows.



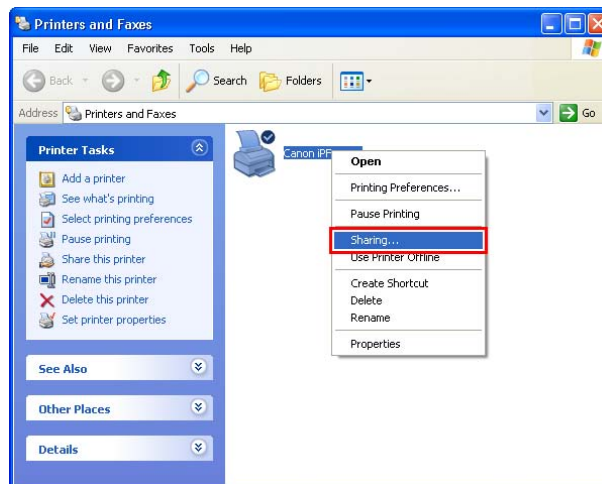
Important

- We recommend that your network administrator configure your network for printer sharing.

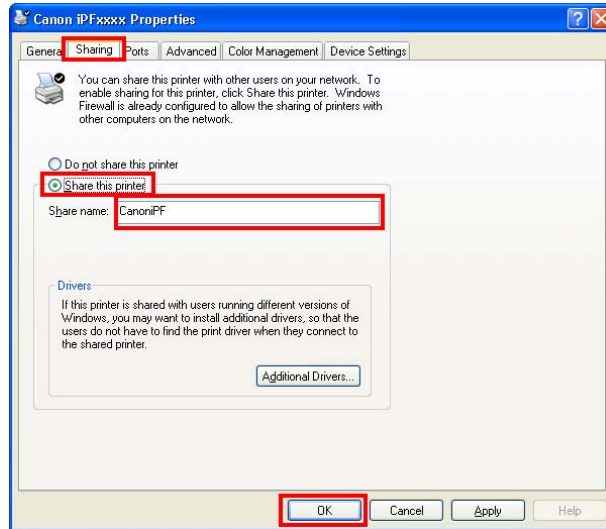
1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.



2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Sharing** to open the printer properties window.



3. On the **Sharing** sheet, click **Share this printer** and enter the shared name.



4. To print jobs from clients running other versions of Windows, click **Additional Drivers** and follow the instructions to install the printer driver of the corresponding version.

If you are prompted to choose the location of the printer driver file, insert the provided User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and specify the folder where the printer driver is located.

5. Click **OK**.



Important

- When installing the printer driver on client computers, select "Network Printer" on the connection type screen in the printer wizard, and then select the printer shared from the computer set up as the print server.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:



Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

▣▣▣ Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see “Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility”. (→P.491)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Network Setting (Macintosh)

⚙️ Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://“printer IP address or name”/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

AppleTalk Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Phase Type	Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose Phase 2 . If you will not use AppleTalk, choose Disabled .	Disabled
Name (*1)	Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ * : =	Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)
Zone (*2)	Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ : = Also avoid using “*” (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string.	*

*1: The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Chooser** in Mac OS 9 or **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is “Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx).” (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer's MAC address.)

2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer's zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk “” entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)

Specify the printer driver destination as follows if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

- If you switch to printing in an AppleTalk network, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.589)
- If you switch to printing in a TCP/IP network, or if the printer's IP address is changed, see “Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.593)
- If you switch to printing in a Bonjour network, see “Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.597)

■ Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)

To print over an AppleTalk network, activate the AppleTalk protocol and configure the destination as follows.

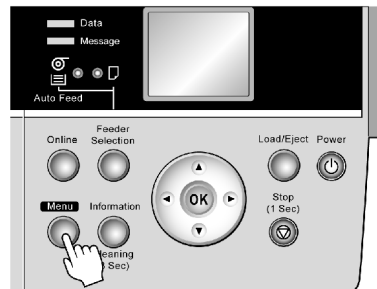
Activating AppleTalk on the printer



Important

- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



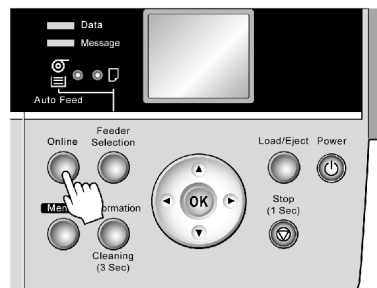
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AppleTalk**, and then press the ► button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

If any of the settings is changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important

- Be sure to complete step 5. This will activate the values you have entered.

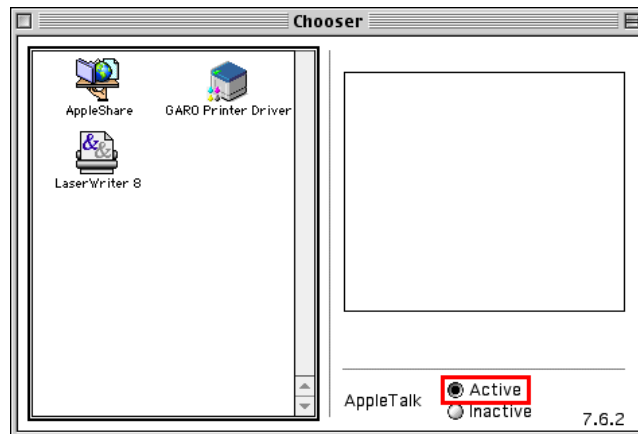


Note

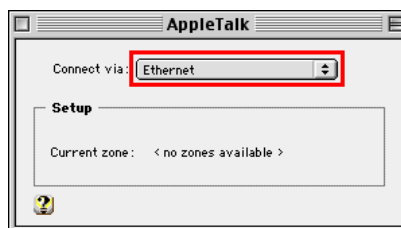
- By using RemoteUI, you can also specify the object name used by AppleTalk, as well as the printer zone name.
For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.570)

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9)

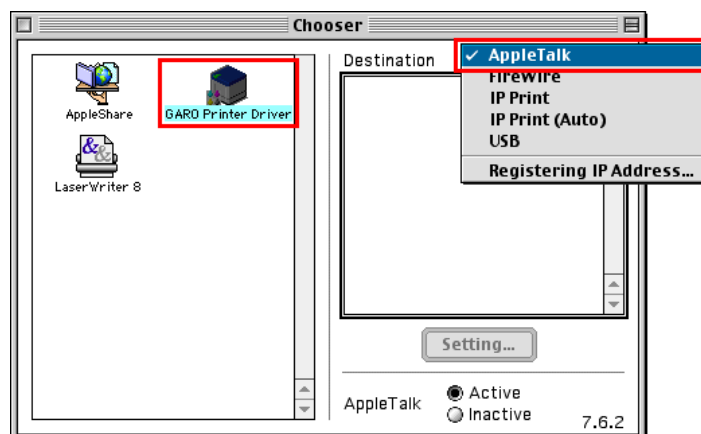
1. Choose **Chooser** from the Apple menu to display the **Chooser** window.
2. In **AppleTalk**, click **Active**.



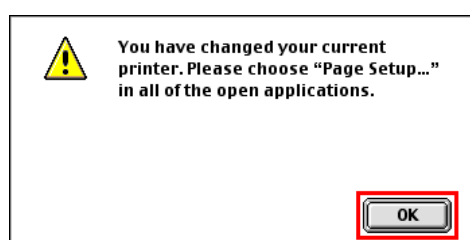
3. Close the **Chooser** window.
4. Click **AppleTalk** under **Control Panels** to display the **AppleTalk** window.
5. In **Connect via**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**.



6. Close the **AppleTalk** window and save the settings.
7. Choose **Chooser** from the Apple menu to display the **Chooser** window.
8. In the list at left, click **GARO Printer Driver**.
9. In the **Destination** list at right, select **AppleTalk**, and then select the printer in the list below.



10. Close the **Chooser** window and click **OK** after the confirmation message is displayed.



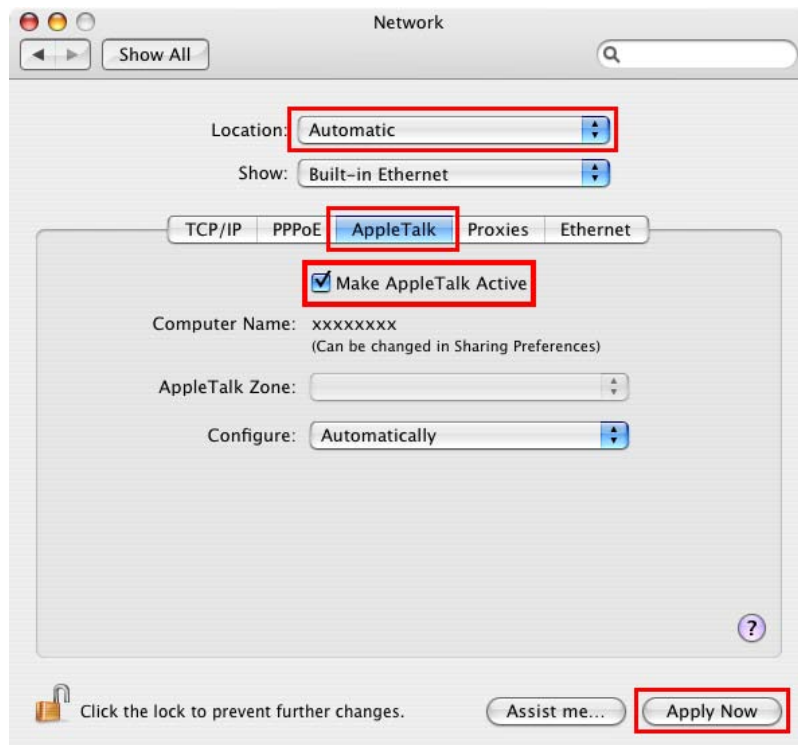
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)



Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

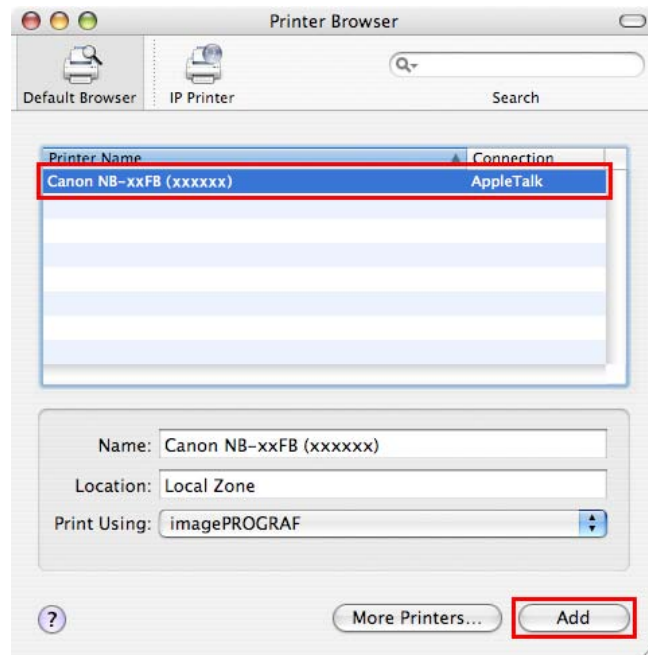
1. In **System Preferences**, click **Network** to display the **Network** window.
2. In **Show**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**. Next, click **AppleTalk**, select **Make AppleTalk Active**, and click **Apply now**.



3. Close the **Network** window and save the settings.
4. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
5. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
6. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



7. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)

Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you use the printer on TCP/IP network.

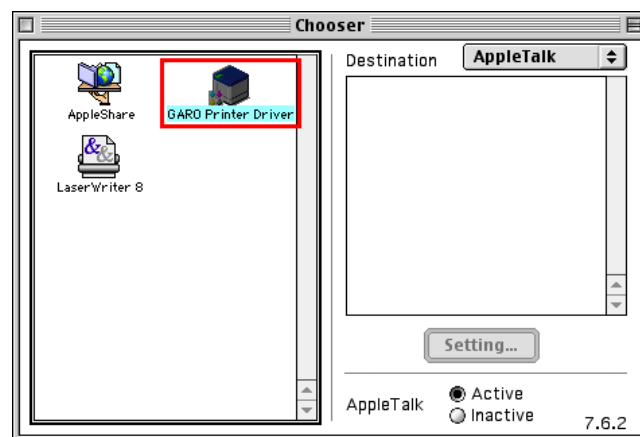


Important

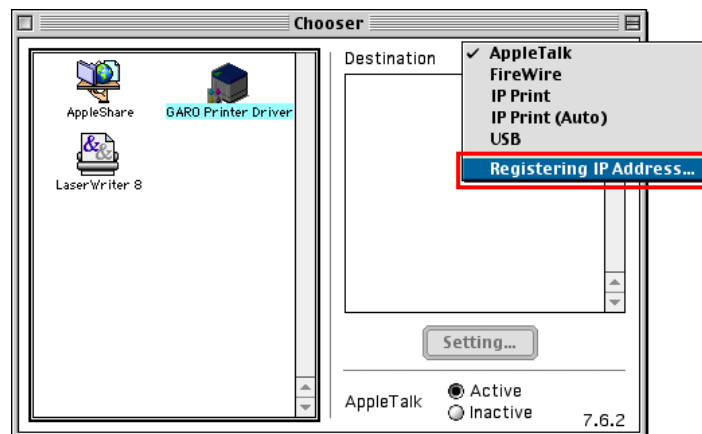
- If you use the printer on TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
 - Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.566)

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9)

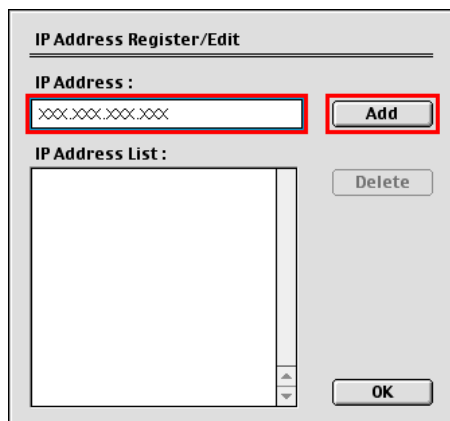
1. Choose **Chooser** from the Apple menu to display the **Chooser** window.
2. In the list at left, click **GAR0 Printer Driver**.



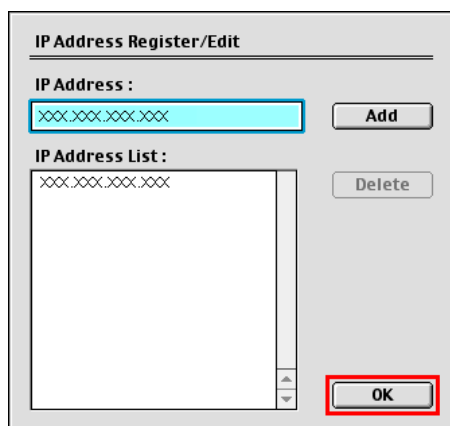
3. Click **Registering IP Address** in the **Destination** list to display the **IP Address Register/Edit** dialog box.



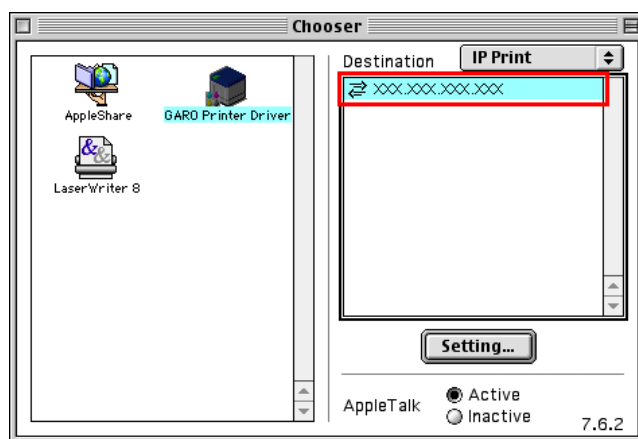
4. Enter the printer's IP address in **IP Address** and click **Add**.



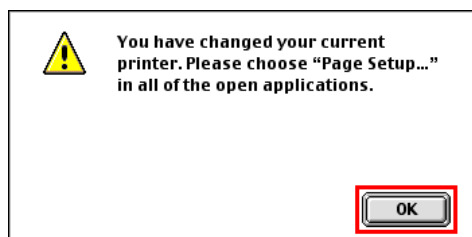
5. Click **OK** to close the **IP Address Register/Edit** dialog box.



6. In the **Destination** list, click the address you registered.



7. Close the **Chooser** window and click **OK** after the confirmation message is displayed.



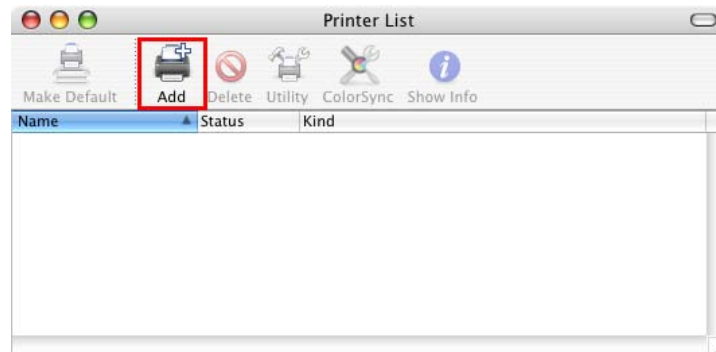
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)



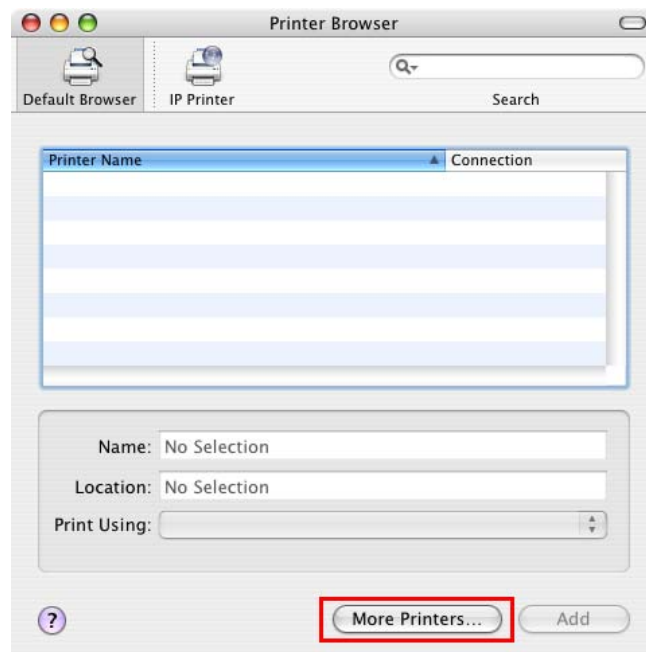
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X. If you use other versions, refer to the help for the **Printer Setup Utility** (or the **Print Center**).

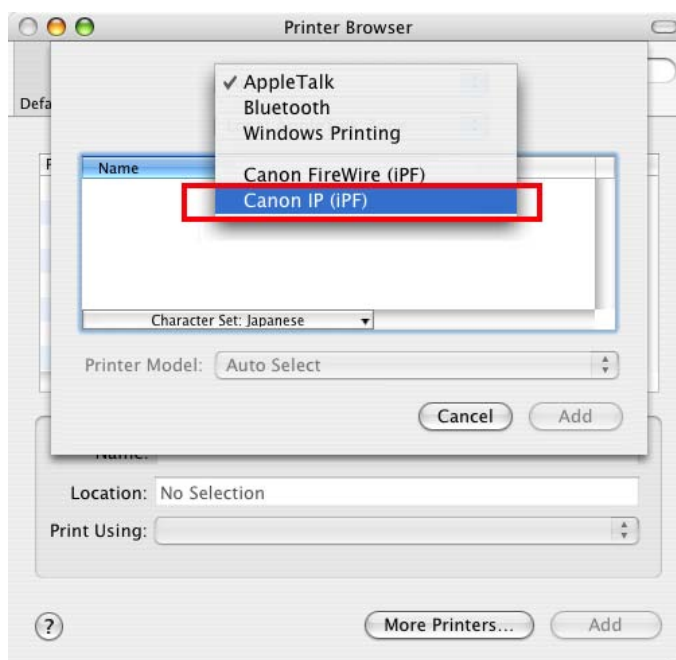
1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. Click **Add** to display the **Printer Browser** window.



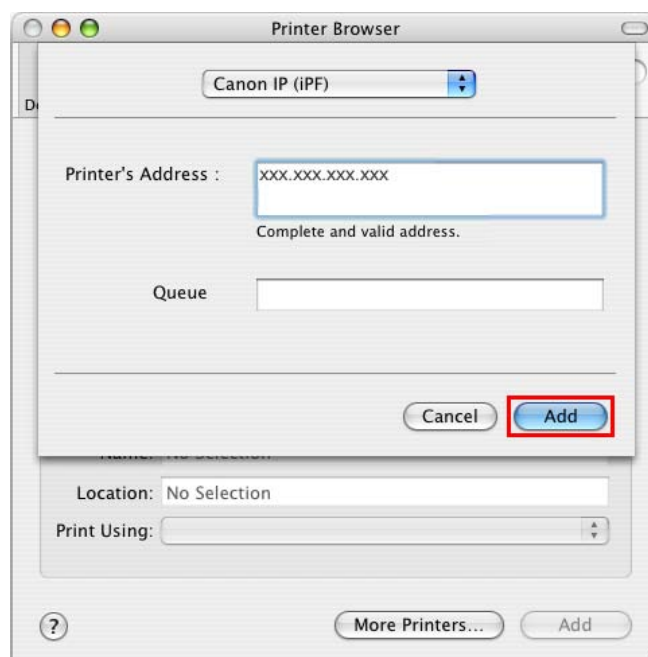
4. Click **More Printers**.



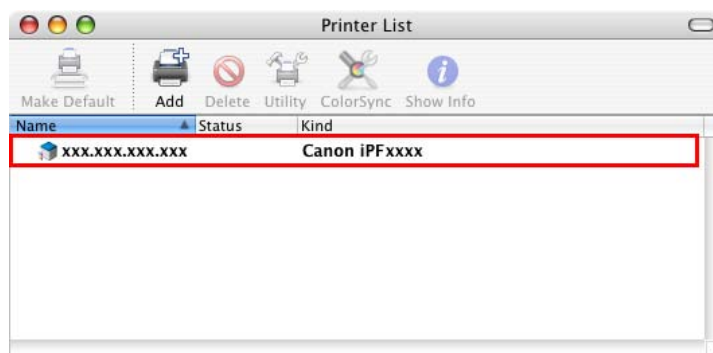
5. In the list of connection methods, click **Canon IP(iPF)**.



6. Enter the printer's IP address in **Printer's Address** and click **Add**.



7. Make sure the printer has been added, and then close the **Printer List** window.



⌘ Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)

In Mac OS X 10.2.8 and later, use Bonjour functions to easily connect the printer to the network. Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you use the printer on TCP/IP network.



Note

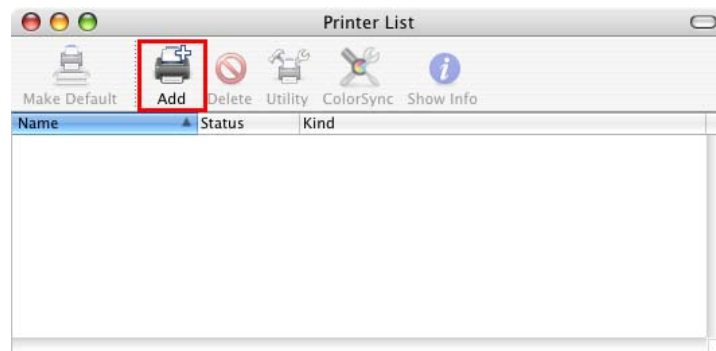
- In Mac OS 9, if the computer's TCP/IP settings have been configured, you can connect the printer to the network as easily as with the Bonjour function.
Select **IP Print (Auto)** from the **Destination** list in **Chooser** to specify the destination.



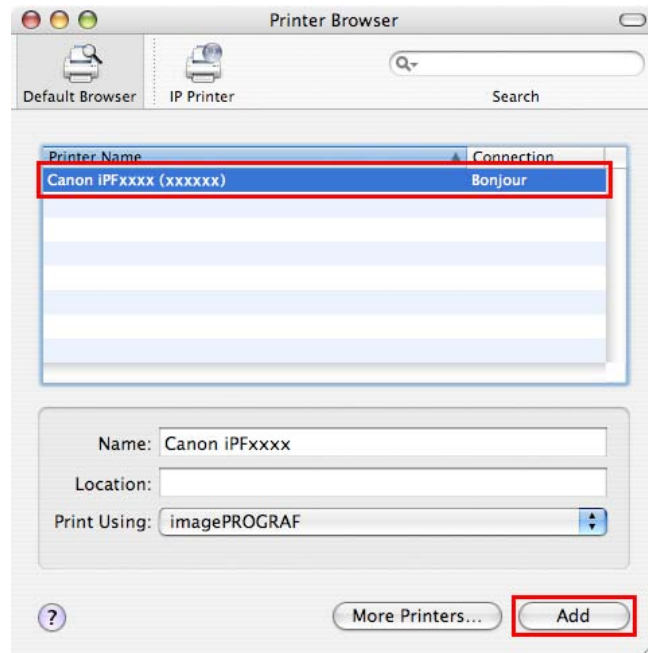
Important

- Bonjour and **IP Print (Auto)** do not support printing to a printer on other network groups that require a router for connection. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.
- By default, Bonjour is activated on the printer. The printer name as displayed in **Chooser** in Mac OS 9 or **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X is predefined as the **Multicast DNS Service Name**. You can activate or deactivate the Bonjour function or change the printer name by using RemoteUI. For instructions on changing it, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.570)

1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



4. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



Maintenance

Adjusting the Printhead

■ ■ ■ Correcting Print Misalignment

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by using a printed test pattern.

For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically”. (→P.599)

For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually”. (→P.601)

■ ■ ■ Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by printing and reading a test pattern.

There are two modes for automatic adjustment: **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj.** **Standard Adj.** will fix most slight image distortion or color misalignment, but if not, try **Advanced Adj.**

If using special media or printing does not improve even after performing automatic adjustment using advanced adjustment, try manual adjustment. For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually”. (→P.601)

Follow these steps for standard automatic adjustment of the Printhead.



1. Prepare one unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger when **Standard Adj.** is selected or five when **Advanced Adj.** is selected.

When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.

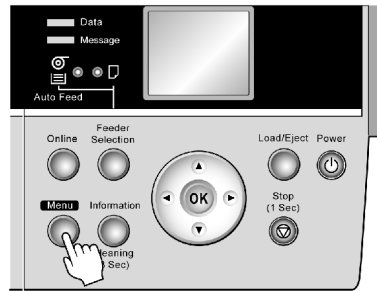
- Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.162)
- Loading Sheets Manually (→P.165)
- Loading Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.121)
- Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.124)



Note

- Use **Standard Adj.** if you have switched to another type of paper or if you want the boundaries between colors to appear as attractive as possible.
- Use **Advanced Adj.** to fine-tune the space between nozzles or colors if you have switched the printhead or if you want printed documents to appear as vivid as possible. We recommend using **Advanced Adj.** for printing at a higher level of image quality.
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.
- This function is not available for CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film or CAD Clear Film. If adjustment is not possible as expected using highly transparent film or similar media, try another type of media or adjust the Printhead alignment manually. (→P.601)

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Head Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Advanced Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.

After reading the pattern, the printer automatically adjusts the Printhead alignment.



Note

- If paper is fed automatically and no roll is loaded, select the media source and click the **OK** button. Additionally, when Cassette is selected as the paper source, choose the type and size of paper.

Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by using a printed test pattern.

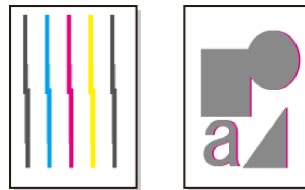
You can adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually. Normally, choose automatic adjustment. If using special media or printing does not improve even after performing automatic adjustment using advanced adjustment, try manual adjustment. For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically”. (→P.599)

Follow these steps for standard manual adjustment of the Printhead.



Note

- If **Manual Head Adj** is unusable although displayed in the menu, choose **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.** **Manual Head Adj** is available in the menu after you try **Auto Head Adj.** once.



1. When using sheets, have an unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger ready.

When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.

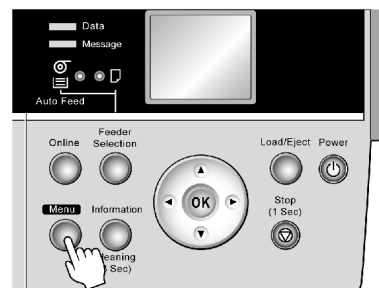
- Loading Sheets Manually (→P.165)
- Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.162)
- Loading Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.121)
- Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.124)



Note

- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for feed amount adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **►** button.

4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Manual Head Adj**, and then press the **►** button.

5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.

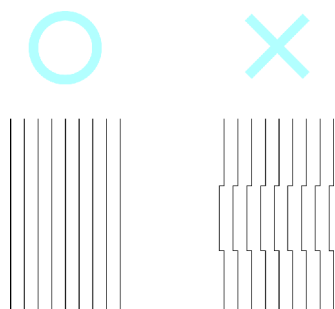


Note

- If paper is fed automatically and no roll is loaded, select the media source and click the **OK** button. Additionally, when Cassette is selected as the paper source, choose the type and size of paper.

Adjusting the Printhead

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D**, and then press the ► button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D-1**, and then press the ► button.
8. Examine test pattern **D-1** for printhead adjustment. After you determine the pattern with straight lines, press ▲ or ▼ to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- If lines seem straightest in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

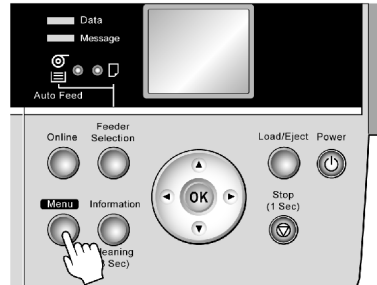
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to specify the adjustment value for **D-2** to **D-5** and **D-7** to **D-11**.
10. Press the ◀ button.
11. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Register Setting**, and then press the ► button.
12. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
The printer now goes online.

Adjusting the Printhead Height

If printed documents rub against the printer during printing or if the edge of paper is wrinkled from rubbing, it may help to raise the Printhead.

If image edges are blurred, it may help to lower the Printhead.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Height**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Printhead height, and then press the **OK** button.

Adjusting the feed amount

Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed. There are two modes for adjusting the amount paper is fed, **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj.** **Advanced Adj.** offers a wider range of adjustment than **Standard Adj.** If using **Standard Adj.** does not eliminate streaks, or if streaks are quite noticeable, try **Advanced Adj.**

Follow the steps below for standard automatic adjustment of the feed amount.

When using highly transparent media for which automatic adjustment is not supported, you must adjust the feed amount manually. For instructions on manual adjustment, see "Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually". (→P.607)



Note

- To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount. (→P.611)
- This may take some time, depending on the type of paper.

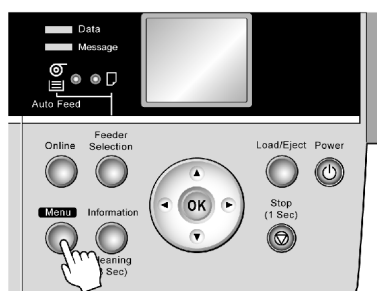


Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the feed amount in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Band Joint**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Image** or **Office Document**. (→P.203)

Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Band Joint**, and then press the **OK** button.

Follow the steps below to adjust the feed amount automatically.

1. Prepare one unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger when **Standard Adj.** is selected or two when **Advanced Adj.** is selected.

When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.

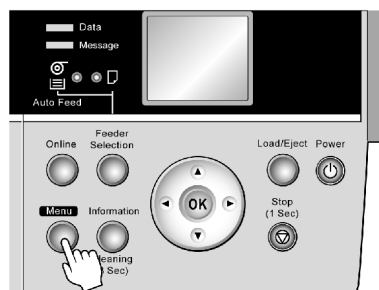
- Loading Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.121)
- Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.124)
- Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.162)
- Loading Sheets Manually (→P.165)



Note

- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Band Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Standard Adj.** or **Advanced Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

A test pattern is printed for band adjustment.

After reading the pattern, the printer automatically adjusts the feed amount and returns to online mode.



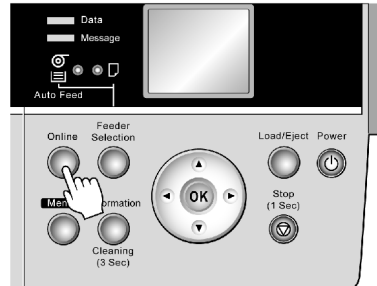
Note

- If paper is fed automatically and no roll is loaded, select the media source and click the **OK** button. Additionally, when Cassette is selected as the paper source, choose the type and size of paper.
- In some cases, the feed amount cannot be adjusted automatically. If so, choose **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Band Adj.** (→P.50)
- If printed documents are still affected by uneven contrast or banding in different colors at regular intervals after this adjustment, you can adjust the feed amount during printing. (→P.606)

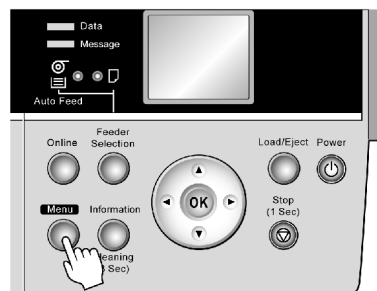
Adjusting the feed amount during printing

If, during printing, the contrast is uneven sideways across the paper or banding in different colors appears every 40 mm (1.6 in) or so, try adjusting the feed amount as follows. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different.

1. Press the **Online** button to pause printing.



2. Press the **Menu** button to display **Menu Durng Prtng.**



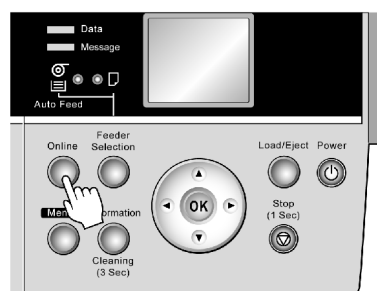
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Fine Band Adj.**, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to change the value, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- The supported range is -5 to +5.

5. Press the **Online** button to resume printing.



Note

- The **Fine Band Adj.** value set during printing is also applied to the next print job. However, the value is reset to 0 if you execute **Auto Band Adj.**, **Manual Band Adj.**, or **Adjust Length**.

Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed.

This topic describes how to adjust the feed amount manually.

When using highly transparent media for which automatic adjustment is not supported, adjust the feed amount manually. We recommend automatic adjustment for other types of media. For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically”. (→P.604)



Note

- To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount. (→P.611)

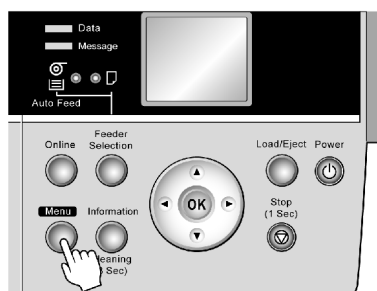


Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the feed amount in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Band Joint**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Image** or **Office Document**. (→P.203)

Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Band Joint**, and then press the **OK** button.

Follow the steps below to adjust the feed amount manually.

1. When using sheets, have two unused sheets A4/Letter-sized or larger ready.

When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.

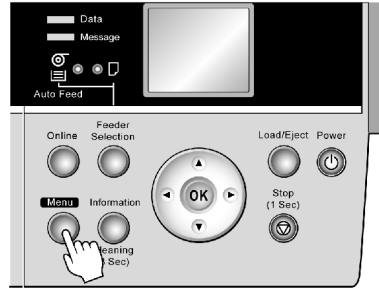
- Loading Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.121)
- Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.124)
- Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.162)
- Loading Sheets Manually (→P.165)



Note

- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Manual Band Adj**, and then press the **►** button.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

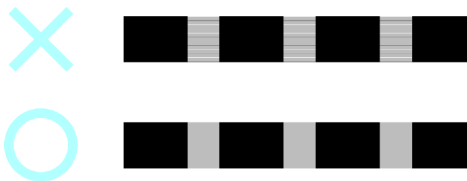
Test pattern A is printed for band adjustment.



Note

- If paper is fed automatically and no roll is loaded, select the media source and click the **OK** button. Additionally, when Cassette is selected as the paper source, choose the type and size of paper.

6. Examine test pattern A for band adjustment. After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press **▲** or **▼** to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.



Test pattern B is printed for band adjustment.



Note

- If streaks seem least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

7. Examine test pattern B for band adjustment. After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press **▲** or **▼** to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.

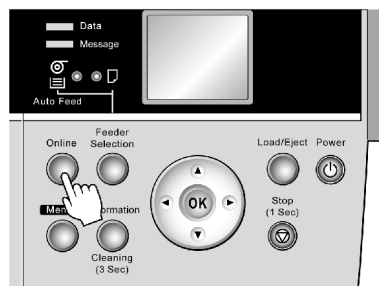
The feed amount is adjusted, and the printer goes online.

If printed documents are still affected by uneven contrast or banding in different colors at regular intervals after this adjustment, you can adjust the feed amount during printing. (→P.609)

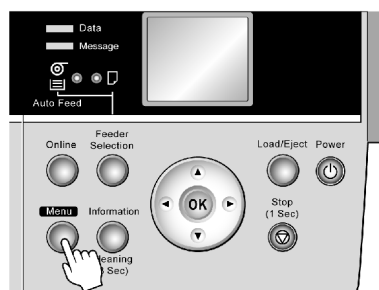
Adjusting the feed amount during printing

If, during printing, the contrast is uneven sideways across the paper or banding in different colors appears every 40 mm (1.6 in) or so, try adjusting the feed amount as follows. The results of adjustment are applied to printing in progress, enabling you to check the results immediately. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different.

1. Press the **Online** button to pause printing.



2. Press the **Menu** button to display **Menu Durng Prtng**.



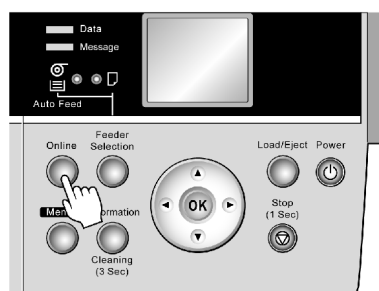
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Fine Band Adj.**, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to change the value, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- The supported range is -5 to +5.

5. Press the **Online** button to resume printing.



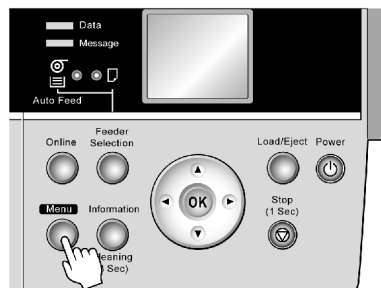
Note

- The **Fine Band Adj.** adjustment value set during printing is also applied to the next print job. However, the value is reset to 0 if you execute **Auto Band Adj.**, **Manual Band Adj.**, or **Adjust Length**.

Adjusting the Vacuum Strength

When printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if paper rubs against the printer or the edge is wrinkled from rubbing, adjusting the level of suction against paper on the Platen may improve results.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **VacuumStrngth**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the level of suction against paper on the Platen, and then press the **OK** button.



Important

- If you switch to another type of paper after printing, reset the suction level on the Platen to **Automatic**.

Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy

To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount.



Note

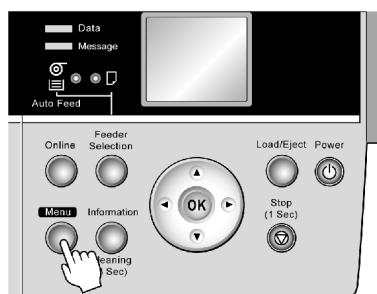
- If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed. (→P.607)



Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the measurement scale for better accuracy in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Print Length**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Line Drawing/Text**. (→P.203)
Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Length** or **Automatic**, and then press the **OK** button.

Follow these steps to adjust the scale for better accuracy.

1. When using sheets, have an unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger ready.

When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.

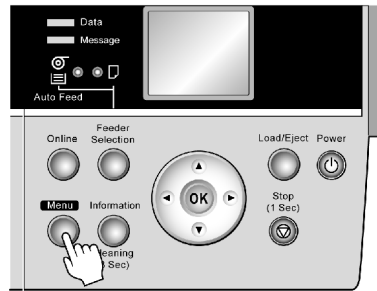
- Loading Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.121)
- Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.124)
- Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.162)
- Loading Sheets Manually (→P.165)



Note

- When loading paper, specify the correct paper type. When the paper type is not specified, the printing quality may be affected without the correct adjustment of the feeding.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for feed amount adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Adjust Length**, and then press the **►** button.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

A test pattern is printed for adjustment based on the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage. The scale bar shows "Millimeter" in 50 mm units and "Inch" in 1 inch units.



Note

- If paper is fed automatically and no roll is loaded, select the media source and click the **OK** button. Additionally, when Cassette is selected as the paper source, choose the type and size of paper.

6. Measure the length of the adjustment pattern. Calculate the difference between the measured length and actual length. Enter it as a percentage and press the **OK** button. You can adjust the value in 0.02% increments. Press **▲** to increase the value and **▼** to decrease it. If the scale is printed shorter than actual size, set the value toward the positive side; if it is printed longer, set the value toward the negative side.



Note

- You can also specify the adjustment value by selecting **Paper Details** → **Adjust. Setting**.

Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets

If printed sheets are affected by banding in different colors toward the end of the sheet (about 20-30 mm from the edge), try adjusting the feed amount of the trailing edge of sheets.



Note

- If printed documents (including documents printed on rolls) are affected by banding in different colors not only toward the end of the sheet but throughout the printed area, try adjusting the overall feed amount. (→P.604)
- This adjustment is only possible when feeding paper from the Cassette or Top Paper Feed Slot that can be set up with a margin on the trailing edge of 3 mm (0.12 in).

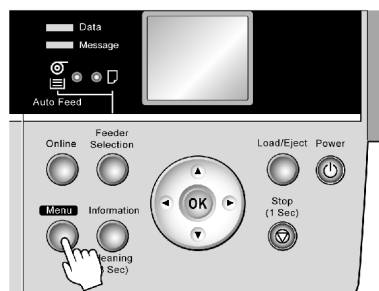
1. Load a sheet of unused paper A4/Letter-sized or larger.



Note

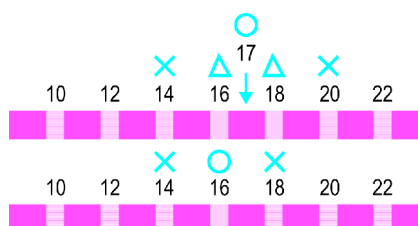
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj Far Ed Feed**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

A test pattern is printed for adjustment.



C1 is displayed on the Control Panel.

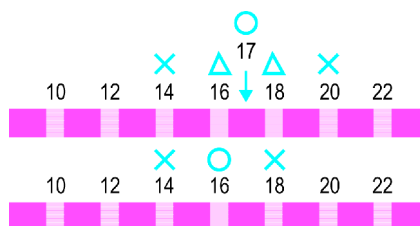


Note

- When the cassette is selected as the paper source, choose the type and size of paper.

Adjusting the feed amount

6. Examine test pattern **C1** for adjustment. After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press the ▲ or ▼ to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button. **C2** is displayed on the Control Panel.



7. Examine test pattern **C2** for adjustment. After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press the ▲ or ▼ to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button. The printer now goes back online.



Note

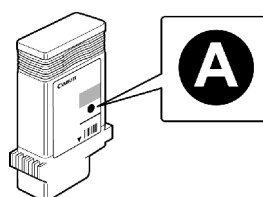
- If streaks seem least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

Ink Tanks

■ Ink Tanks

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “A” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing Ink Tank, make sure an “A” is printed on the label, along with the following Ink Tank part numbers.

- BK Ink Tank PFI-102BK
 - MBK Ink Tank PFI-102MBK
 - C Ink Tank PFI-102C
 - M Ink Tank PFI-102M
 - Y Ink Tank PFI-102Y
- 130 ml per color



Note

- For instructions on replacing Ink Tank, see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.616)

■ Replacing Ink Tanks

Compatible Ink Tank

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “A” in a black circle on the side. Request an Ink Tank with the same label when you purchase a new Ink Tank. For more information, see “Ink Tanks”. (→P.615)

Precautions when handling an Ink Tank

Take the following precautions when handling an Ink Tank.



Caution

- For safety, keep an Ink Tank out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.



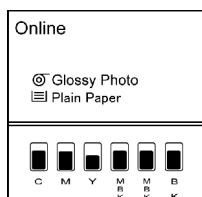
Important

- Before removing an Ink Tank from the pouch for installation, shake it gently seven or eight times. If you do not shake the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.
- Do not remove and shake an Ink Tank that has already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the ink holes of Ink Tank you remove. Handle an Ink Tank carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- We recommend using up an Ink Tank in the course of printing within six months after breaking the seal. Using an old Ink Tank may affect the printing quality.
- Do not remove the Ink Tank if the printer is not used for a long period (a month or more). Ink remaining in the printer may become clogged and cause of printing problems.
- Coverage may be uneven if you replace the ink during a print job.

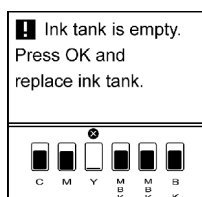
Replacing an Ink Tank

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.

You can replace Ink Tank if the Display Screen indicates the printer is **Online** or **Offline**, or if messages advise you to check the amount of ink left or replace the Ink Tank.



If a message prompts you to replace the Ink Tank, press the **OK** button. Steps 2-4 are unnecessary in this case. Go to step 5 and remove the Ink Tank.



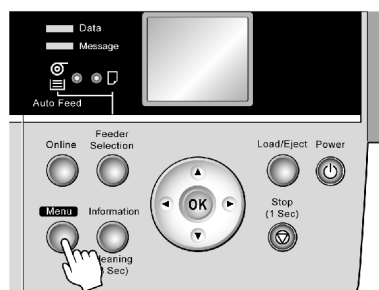
Do not remove an Ink Tank during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during printing or printhead cleaning.



Note

- Ink Tank replacement is possible even when print jobs are being canceled or if paper is being fed.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

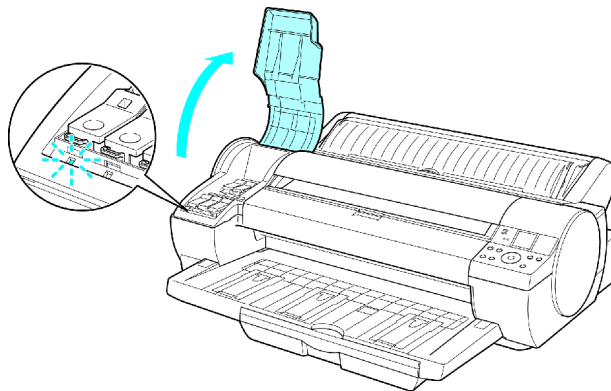


3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Rep. Ink Tank**, and then press the **►** button.

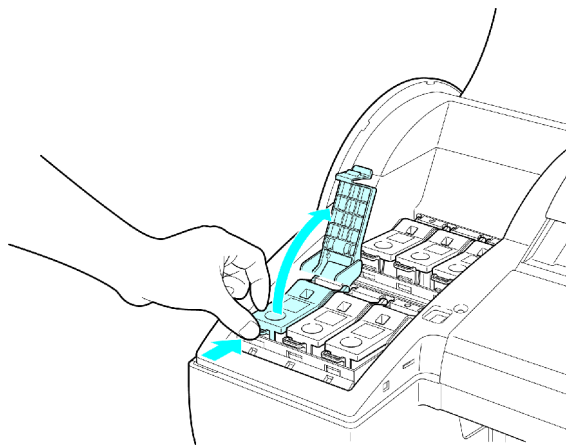
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

A message on the Display Screen advises you to open the Ink Tank Cover. Next, remove the Ink Tank.

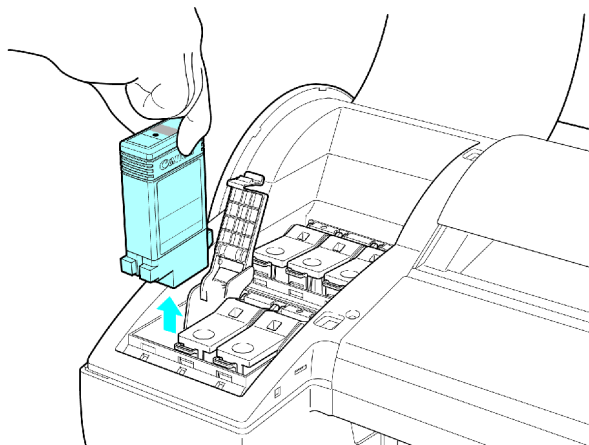
5. Open the Ink Tank Cover and check the Ink Lamp.
The Ink Lamp flashes quickly if there is no ink left.



6. Press the tip of the Ink Tank Lock Lever of the color for replacement and lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever to open it.

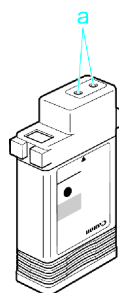


7. Hold the empty Ink Tank by the grip to remove it, and press the **OK** button.



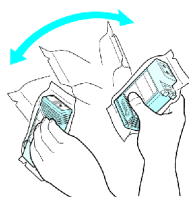
Note

- If there is still some ink left in the Ink Tank you removed, store the ink tank with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains. Put the Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.



- Dispose of used Ink Tank according to local regulations.

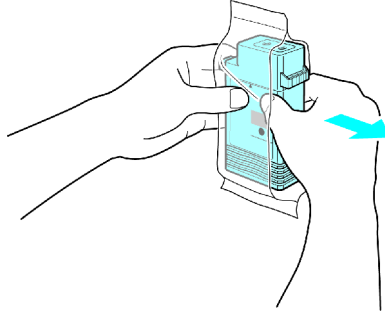
8. Before opening the pouch, shake the Ink Tank gently seven or eight times. Agitate the ink in the Ink Tank by slowly turning the Ink Tank upside-down and right side up several times.



Note

- If you do not shake the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.

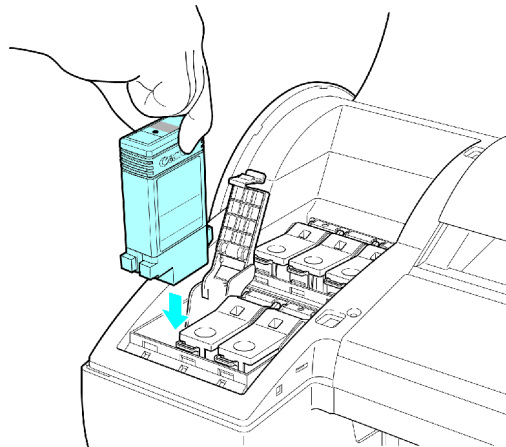
9. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.



Note

- Never touch the ink holes or metal contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Do not remove and shake an Ink Tank that has already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.

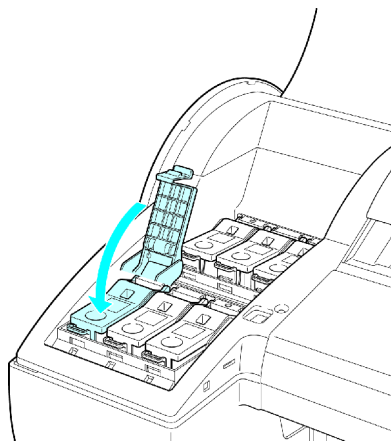
10. Press the **OK** button and insert the Ink Tank into the holder facing as shown in the figure, with the ink holes down.



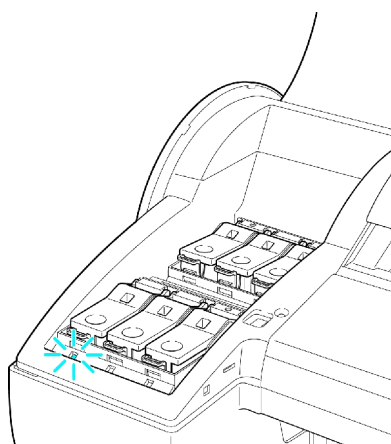
Important

- Ink Tank cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is wrong. If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank, and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

11. Close the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it clicks.



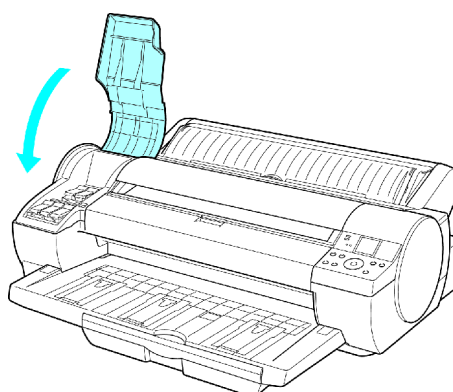
12. Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

- Ink Lamp flashes when there is little ink left.

13. Close the Ink Tank Cover.

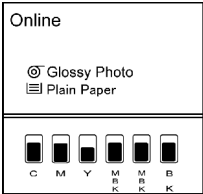


The printer returns to the mode before replacement of Ink Tank.

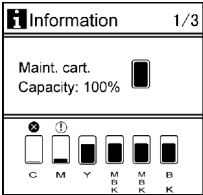
Checking Ink Tank Levels

On the Display Screen, you can check how much ink is left in the Ink Tank.

The Display Screen indicates the remaining ink levels, unless a message is displayed.



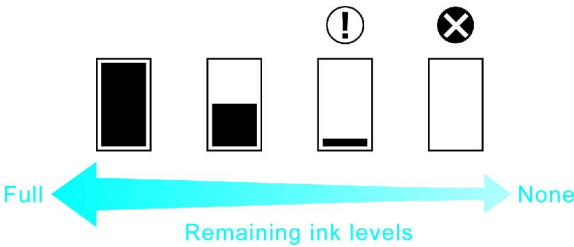
During messages, press the **Information** button to view the ink levels on the Display Screen.



These levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label on the bottom of the Display Screen.

These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: “!” if ink is low, “x” if no ink is left, and “?” if you have deactivated ink level detection.

The remaining ink level is indicated as shown below.



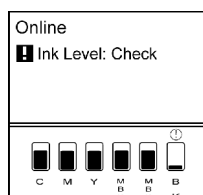
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Ink Tank, replace the Ink Tank. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining ink levels, or after tasks that consume a lot of ink such as large-format printing or head cleaning, check the remaining levels and replace Ink Tank as needed. (→P.616)

When to Replace Ink Tanks

Replace or prepare to replace Ink Tank in the following situations.

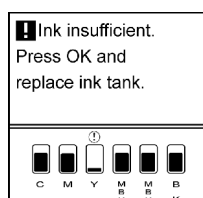
If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen

When there is little ink left, the **Message lamp** is lit and **Ink Level: Check** is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but prepare to replace the Ink Tank. (→P.622)



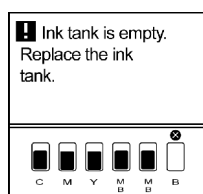
Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink

If little ink is left, there may not be enough for large-format printing, head cleaning, and maintenance, which require a lot of ink. In this case, replace or prepare to replace the Ink Tank before maintenance.



If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When ink runs out, the **Message lamp** flashes, a message regarding Ink Tank replacement is shown on the Display Screen, and printing is disabled. Replace the Ink Tank at this point.

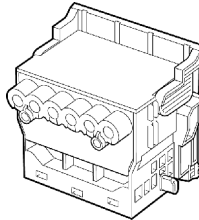


Printheads

■ ■ ■ Printhead

This is a replacement Printhead for the printer.

- Printhead PF-03



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Printhead, see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.627)

■ ■ ■ Checking the Print Quality

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.

For instructions, see “Checking for Nozzle Clogging”. (→P.625)

■ ■ ■ Improving the Print Quality

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles. Clean the Printhead if the printed test pattern was faint.

For instructions on cleaning the Printhead, see “Cleaning the Printhead”. (→P.626)

■ ■ ■ Checking for Nozzle Clogging

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.



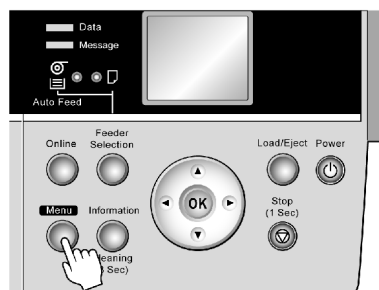
Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.50)

1. Load unused paper.

- Loading Roll on the Roll Holder (→P.121)
- Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.124)
- Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.162)
- Loading Sheets Manually (→P.165)

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the ► button.

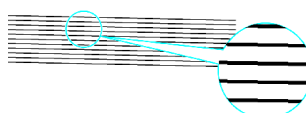
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Nozzle Check**, and then press the ► button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

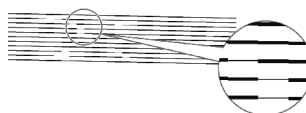
The printer goes online and prints a test pattern.

6. Check the printing results.

If the horizontal lines are not faint or incomplete, the nozzles are clear.



If some sections of the horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, the nozzles for those colors are clogged.



If horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, follow the steps below and check again for nozzle clogging.

- Clean the Printhead. (→P.626)
- Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.



Note

- If you repeat these steps several times but the horizontal lines are still faint or incomplete, contact your Canon dealer.

Cleaning the Printhead

Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.

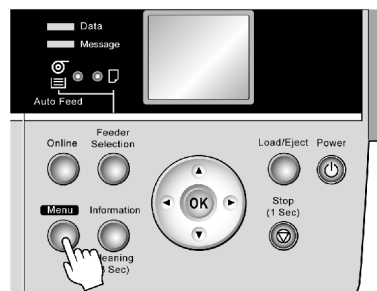


Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.50)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.
- Printhead cleaning is not possible if POP Board (1.5 mm [0.06 in] thick) is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot. Remove the paper before cleaning.

Cleaning the Printhead

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the **►** button.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.

- **Head Cleaning A**

Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about four minutes to complete.

- **Head Cleaning B**

Use **Head Cleaning B** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem. It takes about five minutes to complete.

The printhead is cleaned, and the printer goes online.

4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.625)



Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** two or three times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.



Caution

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or Ink Tanks during cleaning.

Replacing the Printhead

When to replace the Printhead

Replace the Printhead in the following situations.

- If the printing quality does not improve even after two cycles of **Head Cleaning B** from the printer menu
- If the Display Screen indicates **Open top cover and replace the printhead**.
- If your Canon dealer has advised you to replace the Printhead

Compatible Printhead

For information on the compatible Printhead, see “Printhead”. (→P.624)

Precautions when handling the Printhead

Take the following precautions when handling the Printhead.



Caution

- For safety, keep the Printhead in a place inaccessible for children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- Do not touch the Printhead immediately after printing. The Printhead becomes extremely hot, and there is a risk of burns.



Important

- Avoid dropping or shaking the Printhead. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the nozzles of the Printhead you remove. Handle the Printhead carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not open the Printhead pouch until immediately before installation. After removing the Printhead from the pouch, install it right away. If the Printhead is left after the pouch is opened, the nozzles may dry out, which may affect printing quality.
- If you need to store a Printhead temporarily before installation, do not keep the nozzles and metal contacts (→P.631) facing down. If the nozzles or metal contacts are damaged, it may affect the printing quality.
- Never attempt to take apart or modify a Printhead. This may damage the printer.
- Never touch the Printhead nozzles or the metal contacts. This may cause printing problems.

Replacing the Printhead

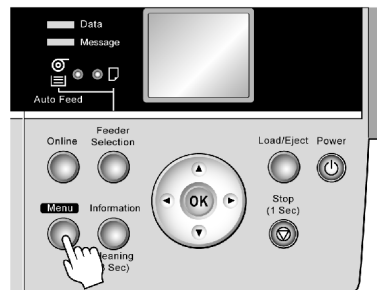
Follow the steps below to replace the Printhead. Failure to follow this procedure may cause ink leak from the Printhead, which may cause stains.



Note

- Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low.
- Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement.
- Choose **On** in **Auto Print** to have the printer automatically adjust the Printhead alignment after replacement of the Printhead. (→P.50)

1. If the roll is not ejected because of the cutting method selected, cut it manually and remove it. (→P.449)
2. Clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.644)
3. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

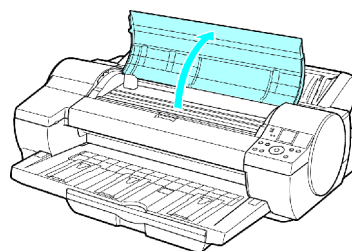


4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **►** button.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Replace P.head**, and then press the **►** button.
6. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Ink is now filled.

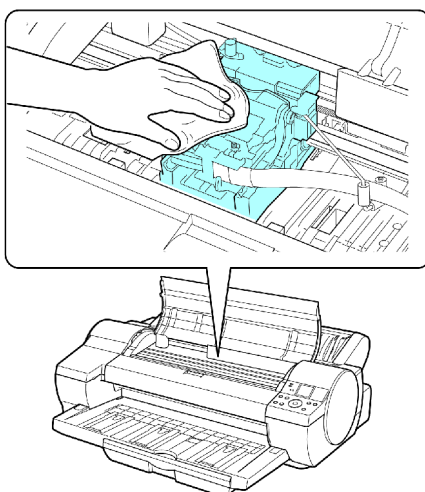
After about three minutes, a message is shown on the Display Screen instructing you to open the Top Cover.

7. Open the Top Cover.



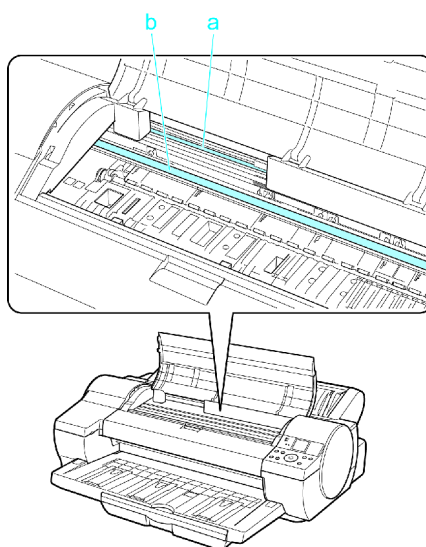
Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Printhead replacement.

8. If the Printhead Fixer Cover or Printhead Fixer Lever is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.



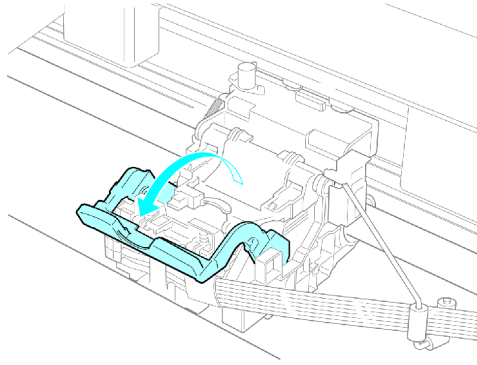
Important

- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

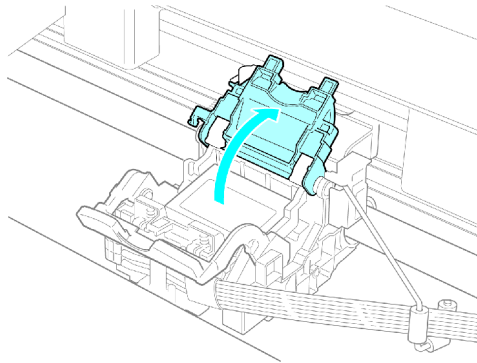


- Never touch the metal contacts of the Carriage. This may damage the printer.

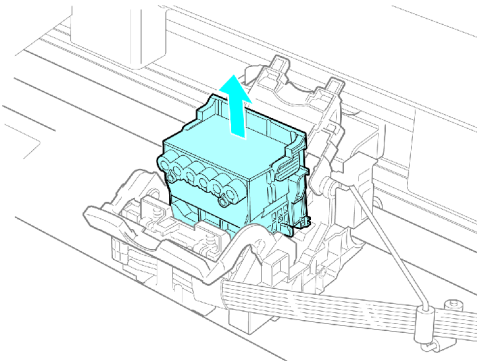
9. Pull the Printhead Fixer Lever forward all the way to open it completely.



10. Pull up the Printhead Fixer Cover to open it completely.



11. Remove the used Printhead.



Caution

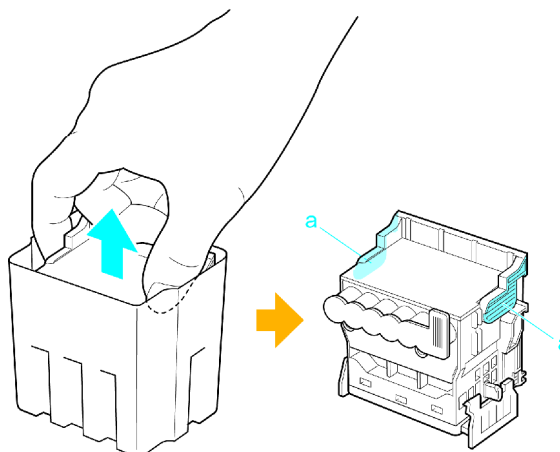
- When replacing the Printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before replacing it. The metal parts of the Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts.



Note

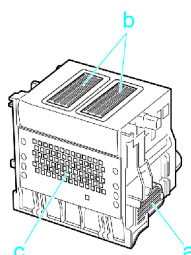
- Dispose of the used Printhead in accordance with local regulations.

12. Holding the new Printhead by the grips (a), remove it from the case.

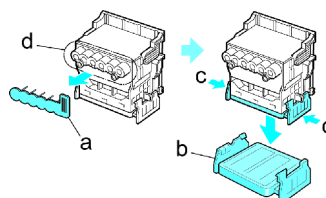


Important

- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips (a). Never touch the nozzles (b) or the metal contacts (c). This may damage the Printhead and affect printing quality.



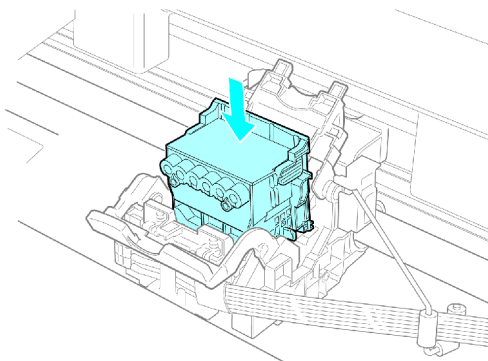
13. While firmly holding the Printhead you have removed, use your other hand to remove the orange Safety Cap 1 (a). Squeeze the grips (c) of Safety Cap 2 (b) and pull it down to remove it.



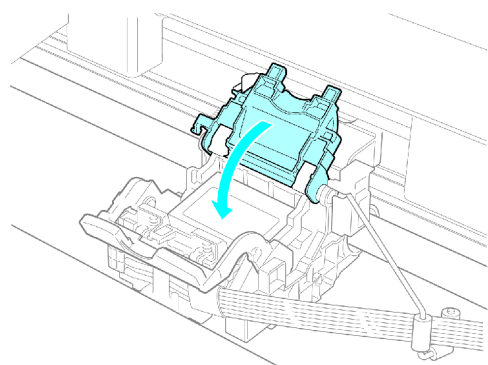
Important

- Safety Cap 1 (a) may be coated with ink to protect the Printhead. Be careful not to touch areas other than the grips.
- Never touch the ink supply section (d). This may cause printing problems.
- The inside surface of Safety Cap 2 (b) is coated with ink to protect the nozzles. Handle it carefully to avoid touching the nozzles or spilling ink. Spilled ink may cause stains. The Printhead contains ink to protect the nozzles. If this ink is accidentally spilled, it may stain the printer or surrounding area. We recommend removing the Safety Cap 2 (b) on top of the Printhead package or safely out of the way. Wipe off any spilled ink with a dry cloth. This ink is non-toxic.
- Do not reattach the Safety Cap or protective material. Dispose of these materials in accordance with local regulations.

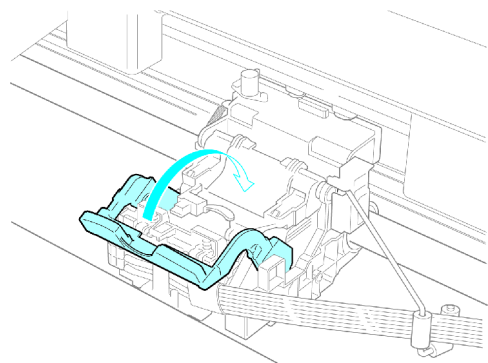
- 14.** With the nozzles facing down and the metal contacts toward the back, insert the Printhead into the Carriage. Making sure that the metal contacts do not touch the Carriage, carefully push the printhead firmly into the carriage.

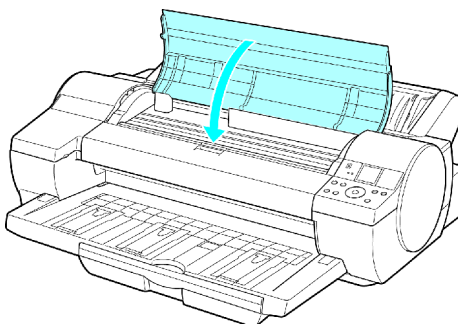


- 15.** Pull the Printhead Fixer Cover down toward the front to lock the Printhead in place.



- 16.** Push the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the back of the printer until it clicks.



17. Close the Top Cover.

Ink now fills the system.

After about ten minutes, the Printhead alignment will be automatically adjusted, and the printer will go online.

If no paper has been loaded, a message is displayed requesting you to load paper.

**Important**

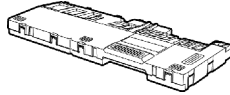
- Never remove an Ink Tank while the system is filling with ink.
- If **Auto Print** is **Off** in the printer menu, the Printhead alignment will not be adjusted. In this case, adjust the alignment after Printhead replacement by accessing **Auto Head Adj.** in **Advanced Adj.** (→P.599)

Maintenance Cartridge

■ ■ ■ Maintenance Cartridge

This is a replacement Maintenance Cartridge for the printer.

- Maintenance Cartridge MC-16



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, see “Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.634)

■ ■ ■ Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

Compatible Maintenance Cartridge

For information on the compatible Maintenance Cartridge, see “Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.634)

Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge

Take the following precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.



Caution

- For safety, keep the Maintenance Cartridge out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.



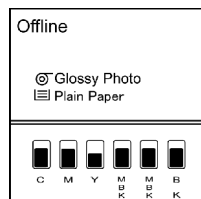
Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except to replace it.
- To prevent ink from leaking from a used Maintenance Cartridge, avoid dropping the cartridge or storing it at an angle. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Ink adheres to the top of the Maintenance Cartridge after it has been used. Handle the Maintenance Cartridge carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

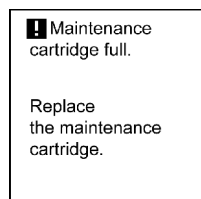
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.

You can replace the Maintenance Cartridge if the Display Screen indicates the printer is **Offline** or if messages advise you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge.



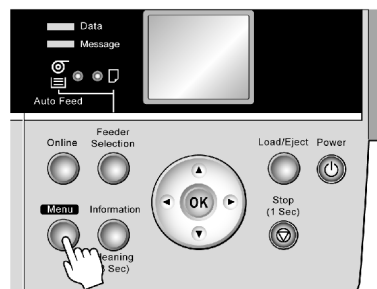
If a message prompts you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, press the **OK** button. Steps 2-5 are unnecessary in this case. Go to step 6 and remove the Maintenance Cartridge.



Do not replace the Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, during Printhead cleaning, or while ink is being filled.

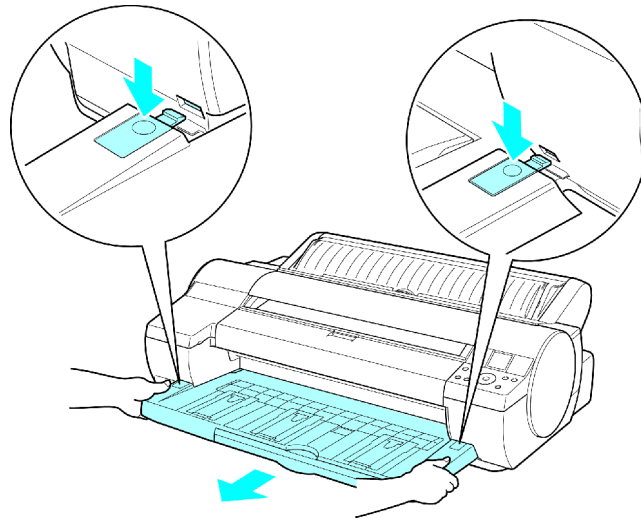
If you pause printing to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, it may cause the printed images to be blurry.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

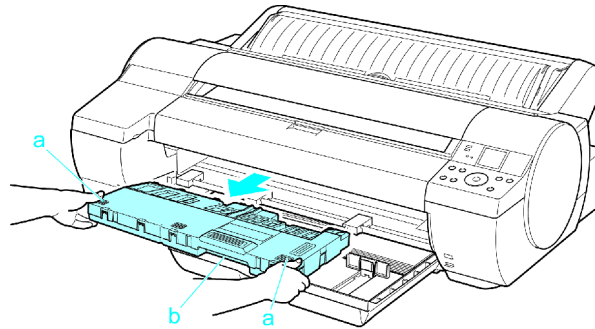


3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **►** button.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Repl. maint cart**, and then press the **►** button.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Holding the Output Tray on both sides by the far end, press the button to release the lock, and then remove the tray.



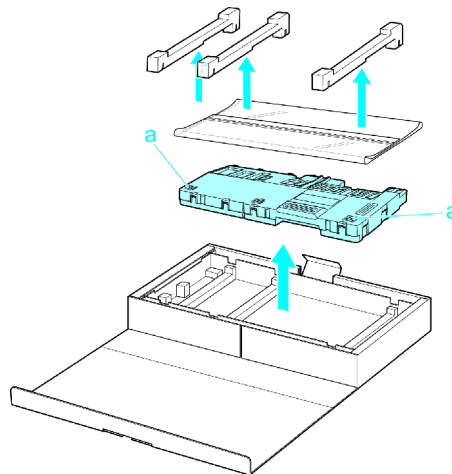
7. Hold the handle (b) of the used Maintenance Cartridge and pull out the cartridge. Grasp the handles on both sides (a) and keep the cartridge level as you remove it.



Important

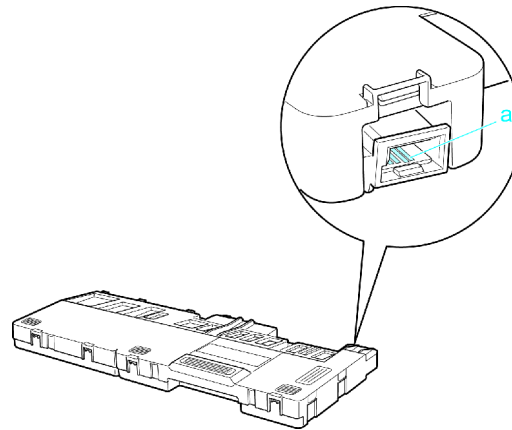
- Used Maintenance Cartridge is heavy. Always grasp the cartridge handles on both sides firmly and keep the cartridge level during removal and storage. If you drop a used Maintenance Cartridge or store it at an angle, ink may leak and cause stains.
- The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is recorded on each printer. Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

- 8.** Open the plastic bag of the new Maintenance Cartridge and remove the packaging material. Holding the handles on both sides (a), remove the cartridge.

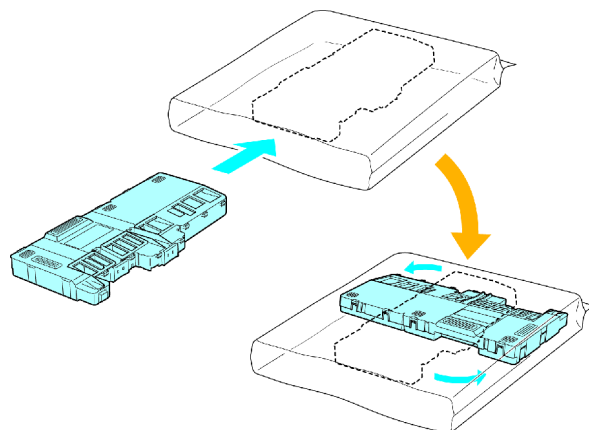


Important

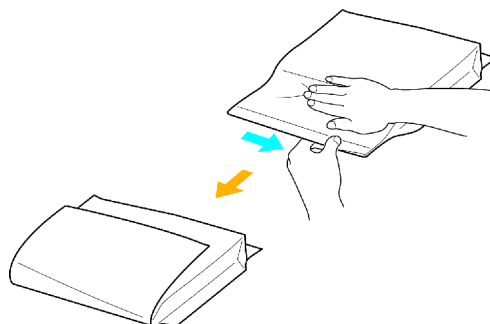
- Never touch the metal contacts (a). This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.



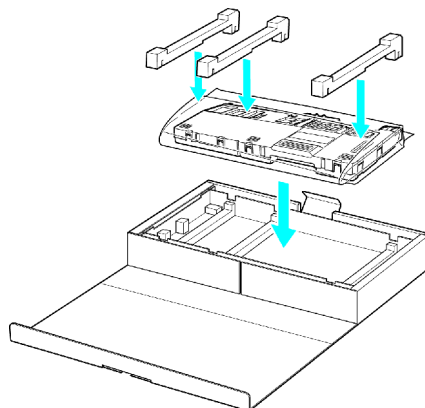
- 9.** Keeping the used Maintenance Cartridge level, put it in the plastic bag that was in the box, as shown.



- 10.** Expel air in the plastic bag and seal the zipper. Fold the plastic bag in half.



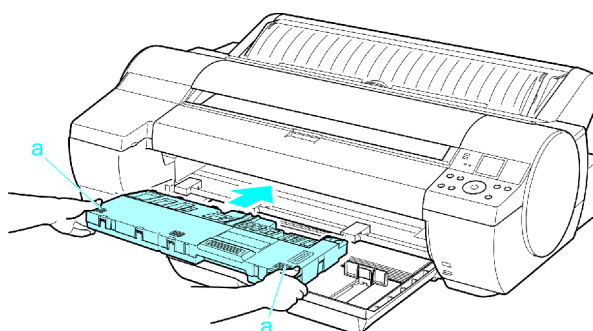
- 11.** Put the used Maintenance Cartridge and packaging material in the box for storage, just like the new Maintenance Cartridge was, keeping it level.



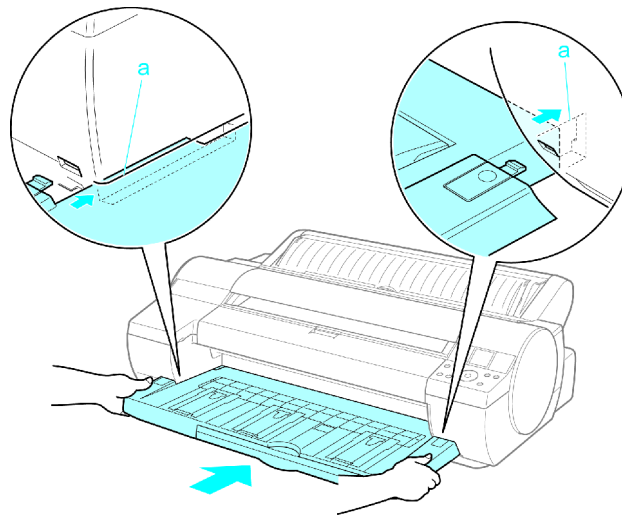
Important

- Always put the used Maintenance Cartridge back in the box and store the box on a flat surface. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- In accordance with its active and ongoing policy to protect the environment, Canon collects used Maintenance Cartridge. Follow the instructions provided with the new Maintenance Cartridge that describe how to process the used Maintenance Cartridge.

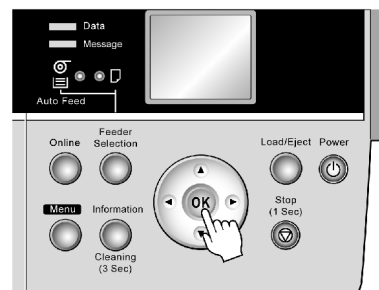
- 12.** Holding the handles on both sides of the new Maintenance Cartridge (a), insert it completely, keeping it level.



- 13.** Hold the Output Tray on both sides by the near end. Aligning the Output Tray with the guides (a), insert it into the printer until it locks in place.



- 14.** Press the **OK** button.



The printer returns to the mode before replacement of the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed advising you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, printing is not possible. Make sure that the Maintenance Cartridge is installed correctly.

If a print job was in progress when the Maintenance Cartridge was replaced, printing is resumed.



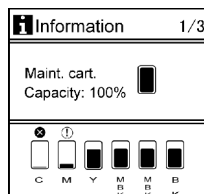
Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during about the first five seconds after the printer goes back online. This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.
- If you replace the Maintenance Cartridge when the printer is off, do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during about the first five seconds after you turn the printer on again after replacement. This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.

■ ■ ■ Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity

The Maintenance Cartridge absorbs excess ink from borderless printing, printhead cleaning, and other processes. You can confirm the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge by checking the Maintenance Cartridge capacity shown on the Display Screen.

Press the **Information** button to display the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge on the Display Screen.



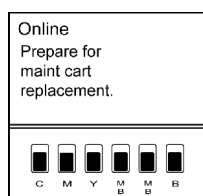
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge, or before tasks that deplete much of the capacity such as head cleaning or preparations to move the printer, check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and replace the Maintenance Cartridge as needed. (→P.634)

■ ■ ■ When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Replace or prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge in the following situations.

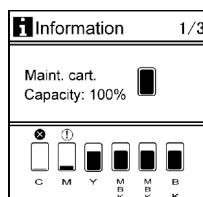
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low, the **Message lamp** is lit and **Prepare for maint cart replacement.** is displayed. You can continue to print, but check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one. (→P.640)



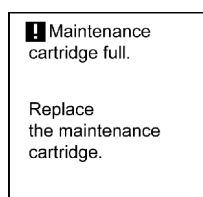
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted

Printhead cleaning, Printhead replacement, and preparations to transfer the printer deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (In particular, preparing to move the printer depletes a lot of the capacity.) To check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity, press the **Information** button. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge and perform related maintenance as needed.



If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is full, the **Message lamp** flashes and a message to replace the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen. Printing is disabled, and you cannot replace the Printhead or transfer the printer. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one.



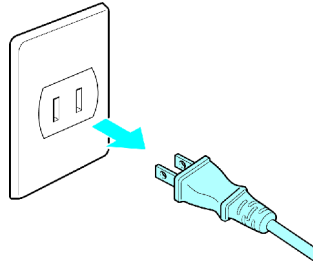
Cleaning the Printer

■ Cleaning the Printer Exterior

Clean the printer regularly to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.

About once a month, clean the printer exterior.

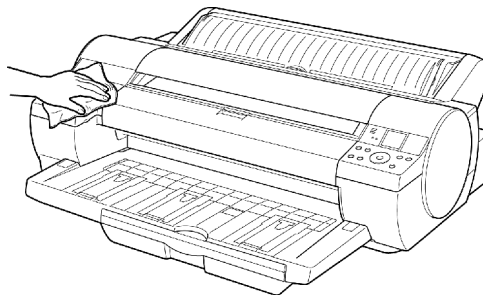
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.19)
2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.



Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe the exterior surfaces of the printer. Dry the surfaces with a dry cloth.



Caution

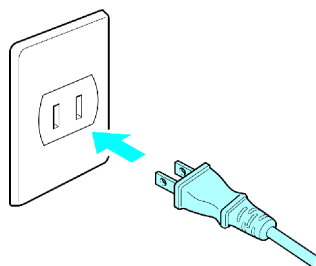
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.



Important

- If the Output Tray is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Output Tray even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

4. Plug the power cord into the outlet.



■ Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

Clean inside the Top Cover about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. Also clean inside the Top Cover in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

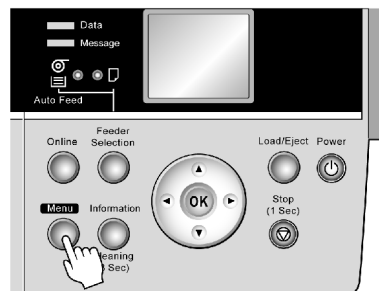
- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After you have used up a roll
- After borderless printing
- After printing on small paper
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of cutting debris
- If you have replaced the roll
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of paper dust



Important

- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. We recommend always cleaning the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.
- If the Output Tray is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Output Tray even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

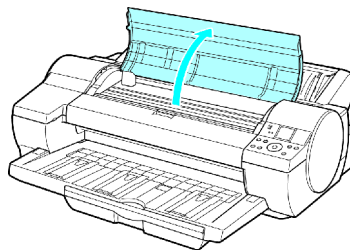


2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **►** button.

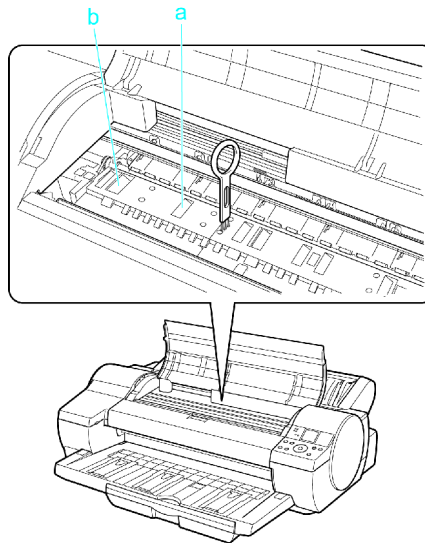
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Clean Platen**, and then press the **►** button.

4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Open the Top Cover.



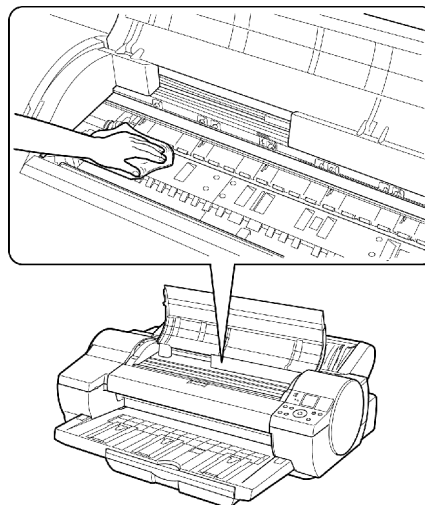
- 6.** If paper dust has accumulated in the Vacuum holes (a) on the Platen or in the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (b), use the Cleaning Brush, provided with the printer, to wipe it away.



Note

- If the Cleaning Brush is dirty, rinse it in water.

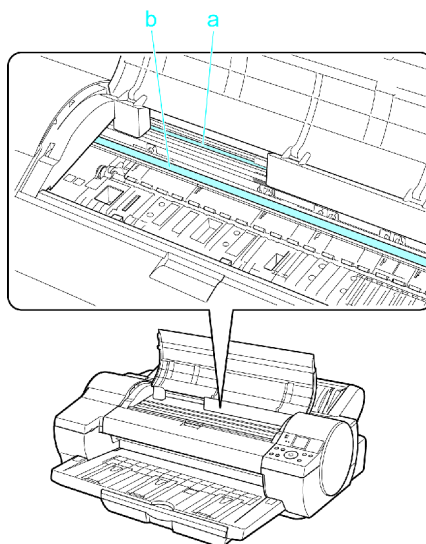
- 7.** Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe inside the Top Cover to clean it. Wipe away any ink residue on the Platen as a whole, the Paper Retainer, and the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves.



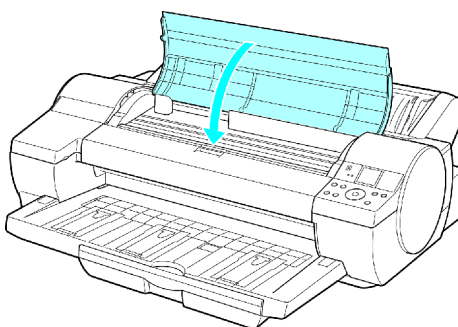


Important

- Do not use a dry cloth to wipe inside the Top Cover. This may create a static charge, which may attract dust and affect the printing quality.
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.
- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



8. Close the Top Cover.



■ Cleaning the Paper Retainer

Clean the Paper Retainer about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. Also clean the Paper Retainer in the following situations to ensure the printer offers a comfortable working environment.

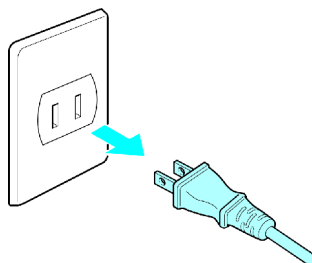
- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After printing on small paper



Caution

- During cleaning, use a type of paper that does not generate much dust from cutting, such as Plain Paper. It may affect the printing quality if you use film or other media that are more likely to generate debris when cut, or that have a surface finish that may come off.

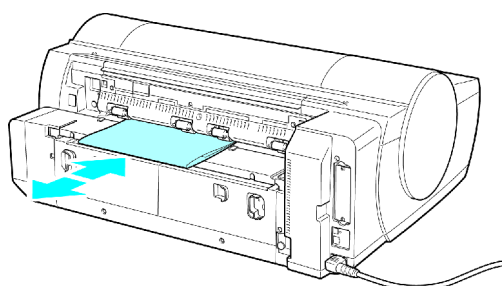
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.19)
2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.



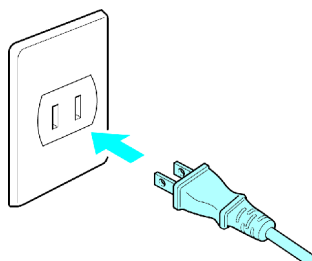
Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning and maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3. Remove the Roll Feed Unit. (→P.153)
4. Fold a sheet of Plain Paper two or three times (a) and insert it under the Paper Retainer (b) behind the printer to wipe the entire surface of the Paper Retainer clean.



5. Reinstall the Roll Feed Unit. (→P.154)
6. Plug the power cord into the outlet.



■ Cleaning the Pick Up Roller

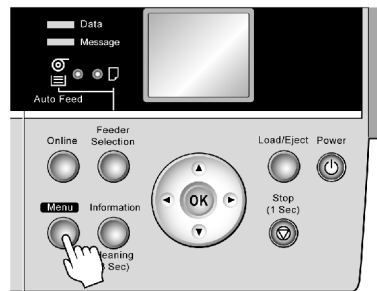
Cleaning the Pick Up Roller may solve feeding problems when using the Cassette.



Note

- The menu option **Clean Roller** is not displayed after you have started supplying paper from a roll or the tray. Remove the paper to access **Clean Roller**.
- **Clean Roller** is not available unless plain paper is used.

1. Load a sheet of Letter-size plain paper in the Cassette. (→P.87)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press ►.
 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Clean Roller**, and then press ►.
 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
- The paper is fed to clean the Pick Up Roller, and the printer goes online.

■ Cleaning the Printhead

Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.

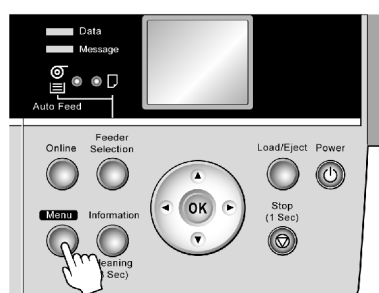


Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.50)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.
- Printhead cleaning is not possible if POP Board (1.5 mm [0.06 in] thick) is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot. Remove the paper before cleaning.

Cleaning the Printhead

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the **►** button.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.

- **Head Cleaning A**

Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about four minutes to complete.

- **Head Cleaning B**

Use **Head Cleaning B** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem. It takes about five minutes to complete.

The printhead is cleaned, and the printer goes online.

4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.625)



Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** two or three times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.



Caution

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or Ink Tanks during cleaning.

Other Maintenance

Preparing to Transfer the Printer

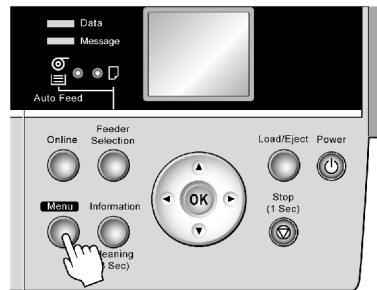
To protect the internal parts in transit, always follow the steps below before transferring the printer to a new location. Refer to the Quick Start Guide for details on packing the printer and installing it after transfer.



Note

- It is not possible to prepare the printer for transfer if the Display Screen prompts you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge or check the remaining capacity. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge before transfer preparations. (→P.634)
- Do not tilt the printer in transit. Ink inside the printer may leak and cause stains. If it is necessary to stand the printer up or tilt it, contact your Canon dealer.

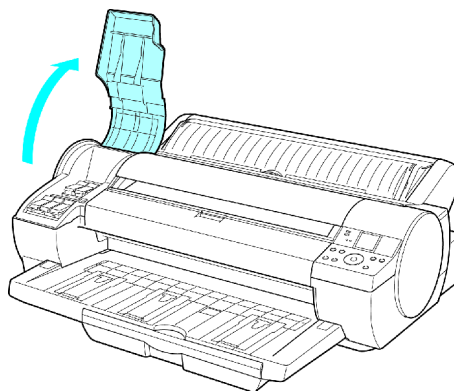
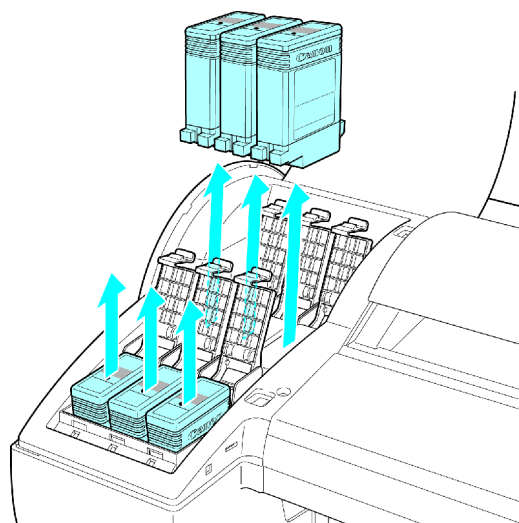
1. Remove the paper.
 - Rolls (→P.128) (→P.123)
 - Sheet (→P.176) (→P.196)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Move Printer**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

The printer now starts preparing for transfer.

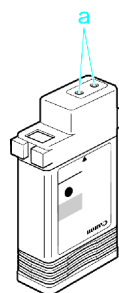
If a message is shown on the Display Screen requesting you to open the Ink Tank Cover, follow the procedure starting with step 6.

6. Open the Ink Tank Cover.**7.** Open the Ink Tank Lock Lever and remove every Ink Tank.

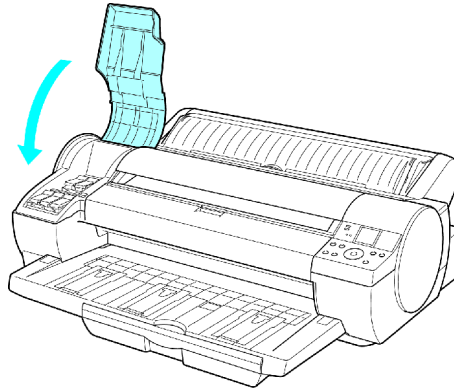
Put the Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.

**Note**

- Store the Ink Tank you removed with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.



8. Close every Ink Tank Lock Lever, and close the Ink Tank Cover.



At this point, ink is drawn out from inside the tubes.



Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during this process.

When the suction is finished, **Turn Power Off!!** is displayed.

9. Press the **Power** button and turn off the printer.

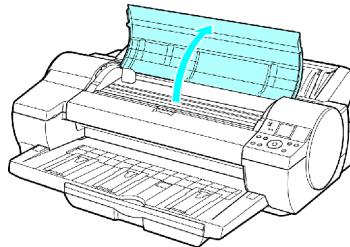


Important

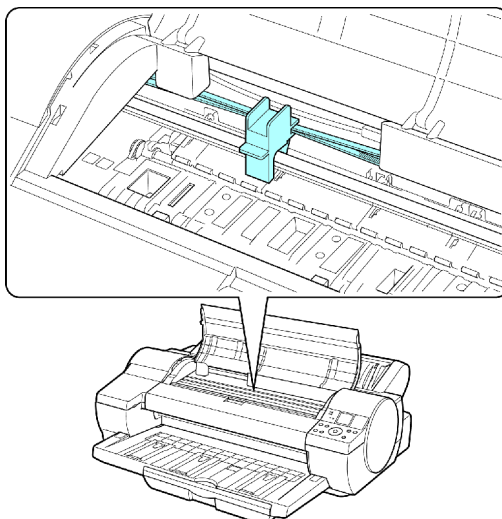
- Turn off the printer before you unplug it. It may damage the printer if you unplug it before it is off and transfer it in that state. If you accidentally unplug the printer, plug it in again, reinstall the Ink Tanks, wait until the printer comes online, and follow this procedure again.

10. Disconnect the power cord and interface cable.

11. Open the Top Cover.

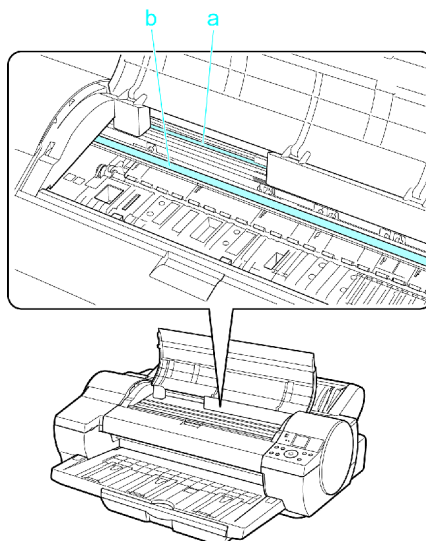


- 12.** Grasp the Belt, insert it between the Belt Stopper, and affix the Belt Stopper to the Carriage Shaft.



Important

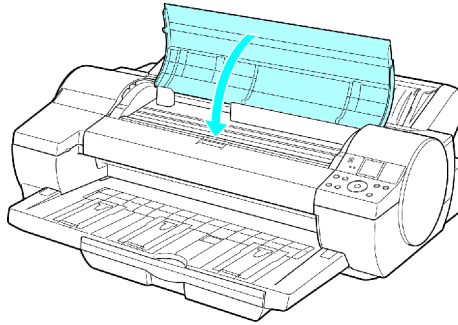
- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



Note

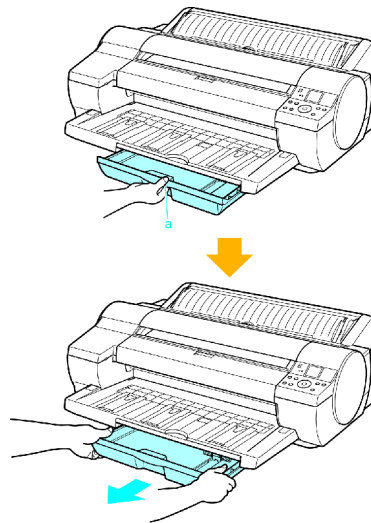
- Here, the Belt Stopper is the one that was removed and stored after initial installation.

- 13.** Close the Top Cover.

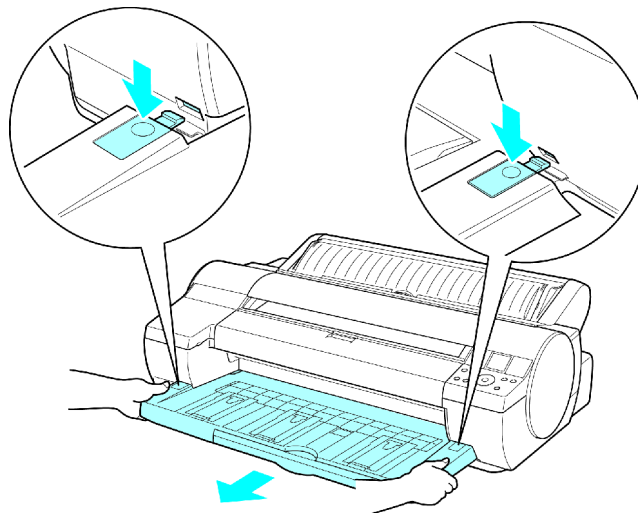


- 14.** Tape down printer covers to secure them, in the reverse order of tape removal during installation.

- 15.** Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.



- 16.** Holding the Output Tray on both sides by the far end, press the button to release the lock, and then remove the tray.



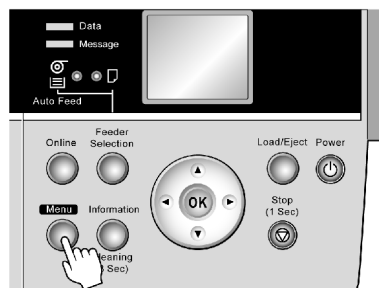
- 17.** Repack the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, and printer in shipping materials, and then package them in a shipping box.

Updating the Firmware

Update the printer firmware to take advantage of new and improved printer functions.

Confirming the firmware version

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Information**, and then press **►**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **System Info**, and then press the **►** button.

The firmware version is displayed.

Updating the firmware

To obtain the latest firmware, visit the Canon website. If the firmware available online is newer than the installed firmware, update the printer firmware. For details on downloading and updating the firmware, visit the Canon website.

Troubleshooting

Frequently Asked Questions

■ Frequently Asked Questions

This section presents frequently asked questions and answers. To view more detailed explanations, click the hyperlinks in the answer column.

Question	Answer
How do I print on a roll?	When printing on rolls, after loading the roll, specify the paper type and length, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. ⇒Loading and Printing on Rolls (→P.82)
How do I print manually?	When printing manually, specify the paper type and size in the printer driver, and then load the paper. ⇒Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.89)
How do I print on sheets in the cassette?	When printing from the cassette, load the paper, and then complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size. ⇒Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Cassette (→P.87)
How do I switch between printing on a roll and printing manually?	You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the Feeder Selection button. ⇒Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source (→P.120) ⇒Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source (→P.161) ⇒Selecting the Cassette as the Paper Source (→P.160)
How do I change the paper type or size?	Specify the type and size of paper, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifying it in the Printer Driver ⇒Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (→P.658) • Specifying it on the Control Panel <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selecting the paper type ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.130) ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Tray) (→P.173) ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette) (→P.172) Selecting the Paper Size ⇒Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) (→P.131) ⇒Selecting the Paper Size (Tray) (→P.194) ⇒Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette) (→P.174)
How do I cut the roll paper after printing?	You can wait until ink dries before cutting the roll, and you can cut rolls at a desired position. ⇒Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls (→P.135)

Question	Answer
How do I print without borders?	<p>Borderless printing is possible on rolls. You can also specify borderless printing in the printer driver by adjusting the original size to match the paper size. Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.</p> <p>⇒Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.327)</p> <p>⇒Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.329)</p> <p>⇒Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.309)</p>
How do I print an A4 original enlarged on A2 paper?	<p>In the printer driver, you can adjust the original image to match the paper size or width, or you can specify enlargement or reduction before printing as desired.</p> <p>⇒Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.272)</p> <p>⇒Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.273)</p> <p>⇒Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.274)</p>
How do I print without wasting paper?	<p>To conserve paper, you can specify in the printer driver to rotate originals 90 degrees or to print without top and bottom margins.</p> <p>⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.424)</p> <p>⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.425)</p>
How do I print without wasting all the blank space on the right side when printing an A4-sized original at A3 size?	<p>By specifying to rotate originals 90 degrees in the printer driver, you can print at A4 size to fill the width of A3 paper.</p> <p>⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.424)</p>
How do I print in landscape (or portrait) orientation?	<p>You can print originals that are in landscape (or portrait) orientation automatically enlarged to fit the roll width. This is an easy way to create vertical or horizontal banners.</p> <p>⇒Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) (→P.360)</p>
How do I print on a custom paper size?	<p>You can specify custom sizes temporarily in the printer driver.</p> <p>⇒Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.361)</p>
How do I register custom paper sizes?	<p>You can add desired sizes (Custom Media Sizes) in the Size Options dialog box of the printer driver.</p> <p>⇒Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.361)</p>
How do I print lines thicker?	<p>By specifying Thicken Fine Lines in the printer driver, you can print fine lines thicker to make them easier to see.</p> <p>⇒Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)</p>
How do I modify how colors are printed?	<p>You can adjust colors as desired in the printer driver before printing.</p> <p>⇒Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.214)</p>

Question	Answer
How do I use printer driver settings again in subsequent jobs?	By saving settings information in a favorite, you can apply the settings again before printing anytime as needed. ⇒Using Favorites (→P.449)
Can I use the printer in combination with a Color imageRUNNER ?	The printer can be used for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER . ⇒Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.275)
How do I print enlargements of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER ?	By using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy), you can automatically print enlargements of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER . ⇒Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.275)

■ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you replace the paper, complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size.

For instructions on configuring paper settings in the printer driver, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.97)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.99)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.101)

Printing does not start

■ ■ ■ The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is not on.	Make sure the power cord is securely plugged in, all the way. Press the Power button to turn the printer on.
The printer is not selected in the printer driver. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, select the printer by clicking Select Printer or Printer in the printing dialog box and try printing again.
	In Mac OS X, select the printer by clicking Printer Setup Utility (or Print Center) and try printing again.
	In Mac OS 9, select the printer in Chooser and try printing again.
The print job is paused. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, restart the print job as follows. 1. Select the printer icon in the Printers and Faxes (or Printers) window. 2. Clear Pause Printing in the File menu to restart the print job.
	In Mac OS X, restart the print job as follows. 1. Open the Printer Setup Utility (or the Print Center). 2. Select the printer, and then Start Jobs in the Printers menu to restart the print job.
	In Mac OS 9, restart the print job as follows. 1. Open imagePROGRAF Printmonitor . 2. Choose Resume Printing in the File menu to restart the print job.

■ ■ ■ The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is offline.	Press the Online button on the Control Panel to bring the printer online.

■ ■ ■ The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink

Cause	Corrective Action
When the printer was turned off previously, some cleaning operation was terminated.	Wait until the system has been filled with ink. This process may take about ten minutes.

Cannot print over a network

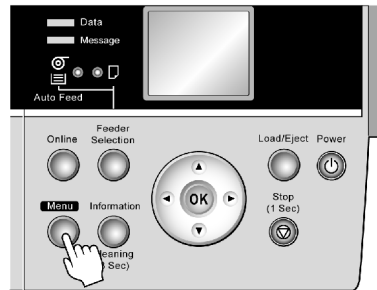
Cannot connect the printer to the network

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>The Ethernet cable is not connected correctly to the printer's Ethernet port.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure the printer is connected to the network with the correct Ethernet cable, and then turn the printer on. For instructions on connecting the cable, refer to the Quick Start Guide. 2. Make sure the Link indicator is lit. The Link indicator is green if the printer is connected via 100 Base-TX and orange if connected via 10Base-T. If the Link indicator is not lit, check the following points. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the hub is on. • Make sure the end of the Ethernet cable is connected correctly. Insert the Ethernet cable until it clicks and locks in place. • Make sure there is no problem with the Ethernet cable. If there is any problem, replace the Ethernet cable. • Check the communication mode with the hub. Although the printer normally detects the hub communication mode and transmission rate automatically (in auto negotiation mode), sometimes the hub settings cannot be detected. In this case, configure the connection method manually, specifying the communication mode in use. (→P.661)

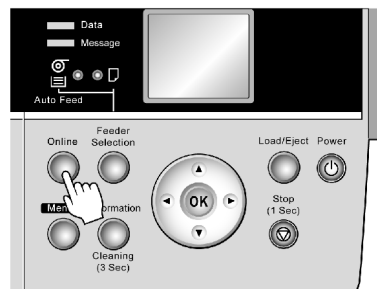
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually

This topic gives instructions for configuring the communication mode manually.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press ►.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press ►.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Detect**, and then press ►.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press **OK**.
Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Comm.Mode**, and then press ►.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the communication mode, and then press the **OK** button.
Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Type**, and then press ►.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Ethernet type, and then press **OK**.
Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Spanning Tree**, and then press ►.
11. Press ▲ or ▼ to enable or disable spanning tree support, and then press **OK**.
Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
12. Press the **Online** button.
After the confirmation message is displayed, press **OK**.
The printer will now restart.



❏ Cannot print over a TCP/IP network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's IP address is not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.492) or see "Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel". (→P.566)
The printer's TCP/IP network settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings". (→P.564)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)". (→P.582)

❏ Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks

Cause	Corrective Action
The AppleTalk protocol is not enabled on the printer.	Activate AppleTalk on the printer. For details, see "Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings". (→P.587)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's AppleTalk settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)". (→P.589) or see "Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)". (→P.597)
The computer and printer are not on the same network.	Due to the nature of Bonjour, you cannot print if the printer is on another network behind a router. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.

Cannot print over a NetWare network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's NetWare settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. In particular, make sure a valid frame type is selected. For details, see "Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings". (→P.572)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring NetWare Network Settings". (→P.581)
The NetWare server and services are not configured correctly.	<p>Check the following points.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure the NetWare file server is running. 2. Make sure there is enough free disk space on the NetWare file server. Insufficient disk space may prevent you from processing large print jobs. 3. Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm that the print service is configured correctly and the print queue is available. 4. If data transmission to a printer on another subnet fails, deactivate NCP burst mode in that printer's network protocol settings. 5. If the printer is used in queue server mode, specify "Other/Unknown" as the printer type.

The printer stops during a print job

■ An error message is shown on the Display Screen

Status	Corrective Action
An error message is displayed during printing.	Check the error message and take action as necessary. (→P.698)
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job, and paper could not be fed because the trailing edge was taped to the roll.	Remove the portion of roll paper that was used and insert a new roll. (→P.128) (→P.123) (→P.82)

■ The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper

Status	Corrective Action
The leading edge of the roll paper was cut to straighten it.	This operation is normal. The printer cuts the leading edge of the roll to straighten it and ejects the scraps when Trim Edge First in the printer menu is On or when Trim Edge First is Automatic and the leading edge is slanted. The printer is ready to print after this initial preparation. When Off is selected under Trim Edge First , the edge is not cut and scraps are not removed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and make sure the Printhead is in good condition for printing. (→P.625) Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.626)
A print job was received from an incompatible printer driver.	Use the correct imagePROGRAF printer driver for the printer and try printing again.
The printer is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Problems with the printing quality

■ Printing is faint

Cause	Corrective Action
You may be printing on the wrong side of the paper.	Print on the printing surface.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.625)
Because the printer was left without Ink Tanks installed for some time, ink has become clogged in the ink supply system.	After the Ink Tank has been installed for 24 hours, run Head Cleaning B . (→P.626)
Paper is jammed inside the Top Cover.	Follow the steps below to remove the jammed piece of paper inside the Top Cover. 1. Press the Online button to bring the printer offline. 2. Open the Top Cover and make sure the Carriage is not over the Platen. 3. Remove any scraps of paper inside the Top Cover. 4. Close the Top Cover. For tips on clearing paper jams, refer to the following topics. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette (→P.177) • Clearing Jammed Roll Paper (→P.144) • Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray (→P.182)
During borderless printing, the ink was not dry enough before cutting.	Specify a longer drying period in the printer menu, in Roll DryingTime in Paper Details . (→P.50)
Printing may be faint if Print Quality in Advanced Settings in the printer driver is set to Standard or Draft .	In Advanced Settings in the printer driver, choose Highest or High in Print Quality . (→P.203)

Paper rubs against the Printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver. (*1)	Make sure the same paper type is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.172) (→P.130) (→P.173)
	Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. 1. Hold down the Stop button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
Paper has been loaded incorrectly, causing it to wrinkle.	Reload the paper. (→P.162) (→P.124) (→P.165)
The Printhead is set too low.	In Head Height , choose Automatic . (→P.603)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a VacuumStrngth setting of Strong , or Strongest . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in Head Height to High . (→P.610) (→P.603)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or film-based media, choose a VacuumStrngth setting of Standard , Strong , or Strongest . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in Head Height to High . (→P.610) (→P.603)
	When printing on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 in) thin or thinner, choose a VacuumStrngth setting of Weakest . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in Head Height to High . (→P.610) (→P.603)
	If edges of the paper curl and become soiled when printing on rolls of glossy photo paper, in Media Detailed Settings in the printer driver, set Near End Margin to 20mm .

*1: Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer.

The edges of the paper are dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (→P.644)
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same paper type is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.172) (→P.130) (→P.173)
	Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. 1. Hold down the Stop button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
The paper is wrinkled or warped.	Straighten out the wrinkles or curls and reload the paper. Do not use paper that has been printed on previously. (→P.162) (→P.124) (→P.165)
A cut line is printed because the function to reduce cutting dust has been activated.	If this function is not needed, deactivate CutDustReduct. through the printer menu. (→P.50)
The Printhead is set too low.	In Head Height , choose Automatic . (→P.603)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a VacuumStrngth setting of Strong or Strongest . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in Head Height to High . (→P.610) (→P.603)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or film-based media, choose a VacuumStrngth setting of Standard , Strong , or Strongest . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in Head Height to High . (→P.610) (→P.603)
	If edges of the paper curl and become soiled when printing on rolls of glossy photo paper, in Media Detailed Settings in the printer driver, set Near End Margin to 20mm .
The Output Tray is soiled.	Clean the Output Tray. (→P.642)

■ ■ ■ The surface of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (→P.647)
You are using a paper that does not dry easily.	Specify a time of about a minute in Roll DryingTime .

■ ■ ■ The back side of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (→P.644)
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (→P.647)

■ ■ ■ Banding in different colors occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll is not loaded correctly in the Roll Feed Unit.	Remove the roll and reload it. (→P.124)
The paper feed amount is not adjusted correctly.	Adjust the feed amount. (→P.604)
Printing does not proceed smoothly because print jobs are interrupted during transmission.	Exit other applications and cancel other print jobs.
In the printer menu, Print Length is specified in Feed Priority .	To adjust the feed amount, specify Band Joint in Feed Priority in the printer menu. (→P.604)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.599)
Streaks may occur if you set the Print Quality too low.	Choose a higher level of Print Quality in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver and try printing again. (→P.203)

■ ■ ■ The contrast becomes uneven during printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (→P.604)
	Execute Fine Band Adj. during printing. (→P.604)

Colors in printed images are uneven

Cause	Corrective Action
Line Drawing/Text is selected when printing images in many solid colors.	Specify Image in the printer driver.
You are printing on paper that curls easily.	Printed colors may appear uneven on the leading edge of paper that is susceptible to curling. Increase the level of vacuum holding the paper against the Platen or specify a margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) or more for the leading edge. (→P.610)
If you use Glossy Paper, art paper or Coated Paper, color shading may appear at the rear edges of the paper.	In Advanced Settings of the printer driver, choose Highest or High in Print Quality . (→P.203)
Printed colors may be uneven if you set the Print Quality too low.	Choose a higher level of Print Quality in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver. (→P.203)
Color may be uneven between dark and light image areas.	Select Unidirectional Printing in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver.
When using Borderless Printing, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may not be even at the edges.	Specify No in Auto Cut in the printer driver before printing. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
	Choose a higher level of Print Quality in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver. (→P.203)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.599)
Drying documents stacked on each other may cause uneven colors.	To avoid uneven colors, we recommend drying each sheet separately.

Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper

For paper-specific troubleshooting tips to improve the printing quality, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)

Lines are misaligned

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead alignment is not adjusted.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.599) (→P.601)

The length of printed images is inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer menu, Band Joint is specified in Feed Priority .	To ensure the feed amount matches the paper size, select Print Length in Feed Priority in the printer menu and enter the amount for adjustment in Adjust Length . You can adjust the feed amount in 0.02% increments. (→P.50)

Documents are printed in monochrome

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Advanced Settings of the printer driver, Monochrome , Monochrome (Photo) , Monochrome (BK ink) , or Monochrome Bitmap is specified in Color Mode .	In the Advanced Settings of the printer driver, specify Color in Color Mode and try printing again.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the color ink nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.625)

Printed colors are inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
Color adjustment has not been activated in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver.	In the Advanced Settings of the printer driver, access Color Settings in Color Mode to adjust colors.
Colors have not been adjusted on the computer or monitor.	Refer to the computer and monitor documentation to adjust the colors.
	Adjust the settings of the color management software, referring to the software documentation as needed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.625)
In the printer driver, Application Color Matching Priority is not selected.	Click Special Settings on the Layout sheet of the printer driver and select Application Color Matching Priority in the dialog box.
Printhead characteristics gradually change through repeated use, and colors may change.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.599) (→P.601)
Color may change slightly even on the same model of printer if you use a different version of the firmware or printer driver, or when you print under different settings or in a different printing environment.	Follow these steps to prepare the printing environment. 1. Use the same version of firmware, printer driver, and other software. 2. Specify the same value for all settings items.

Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen suction is too strong.	Set VacuumStrngth to Weakest . (→P.610)
The Printhead is set too high.	Lower the Printhead. (→P.603)

Documents are printed crooked

Cause	Corrective Action
Skew Skew Check Lv. has been set to Loose or Off .	Choose Standard in Skew Check Lv.
Width Detection has been set to Off .	Choose On in Width Detection .

Fine Scratches Appear on Glossy Paper from the Cassette

Cause	Corrective Action
When glossy paper is fed from the cassette, paper dust or other debris on the guides or in the paper path that turns paper around may damage the surface of glossy paper.	It may help prevent scratches from the paper path if you print glossy paper from the Top Paper Feed Slot instead. (→P.89)

Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper

Cause	Corrective Action
A document was removed after printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot without pressing the Load/Eject button.	Following the instructions, press the Load/Eject button, remove the paper, and then press the OK button.
	Wipe away any soiling on the rollers. (→P.644) (→P.647)

Line thickness is not uniform (Windows)

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Special Settings dialog box of the Windows printer driver, Fast Graphic Process is selected.	Open the printer driver's Properties dialog box from Print in the application software's File menu, and try printing following the steps below. 1. Remove the check from Open Preview When Print Job Starts in the Main sheet. 2. Remove the check from Page Layout in the Layout sheet. 3. Click the Special Settings button in the Layout sheet to open the Special Settings dialog box, and remove the check from Fast Graphic Process .

Thin lines are not printed after switching to Economy Printing mode

Cause	Corrective Action
You have selected Economy Printing in the printer driver before printing.	Clear the Economy Printing check box in the printer driver and try printing again.

Installation problems

■ The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly

In Windows, the device interface driver may not be installed correctly in some cases if you connected the IEEE 1394 cable before installing the printer driver.

If so, reinstall the IEEE 1394 device interface driver and the printer driver as follows.



Important

- This procedure is based on an example for Windows XP. The name of the wizard may be different in other operating systems.

1. Right-click **My Computer** and choose **Properties** to display the **System Properties** window.
2. On the **Hardware** sheet, click **Device Manager** to display the **Device Manager** window.
3. Right-click **Other Devices** icon and choose **Properties**.
4. On the **Driver** sheet, click **Update Driver** to start the **Hardware Update Wizard** (or the **Upgrade Device Driver Wizard**.)
5. Follow the instructions on the screen.
6. When the window is displayed to choose the source for driver installation, select the CD-ROM drive. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer and follow the instructions on the screen.
The device/interface driver is installed.
The device is detected, and the **New Hardware Wizard** (or **Add New Hardware Wizard**) is started.
7. Follow the instructions on the screen.
8. When the window is displayed to choose the source for driver installation, select the printer driver folder.
Choose the CD-ROM drive > **Driver** > **WinXP_2K** > **Driver**, and click **OK**. (For Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003)
9. Follow the instructions on the screen.
The printer driver is installed.

Removing Installed Printer Drivers

Follow the steps below to remove installed printer drivers and utilities.

Removing printer drivers (Windows)

Remove the printer driver as follows.



Note

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs > Canon Printer Uninstaller > imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Uninstaller** to display the **Delete Printer** window.
2. Select the printer in the list and click **Delete**.
3. Click **Yes** in the **Warning** message dialog box.
4. Make sure that the printer has been removed from the list, and click **Exit**.

Removing Printer Drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor as follows.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Start the printer driver installer included in the User Software CD-ROM.
For Mac OS X, open **OS X** and double-click **iPF Driver Installer X**.
For Mac OS 9, open **OS 9** and double-click **iPF Driver Installer 9**.
3. In the upper-left menu, choose **Uninstall**, and click **Uninstall**.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs > imagePROGRAF Status Monitor > Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs > imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility > Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Clearing jammed paper

Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

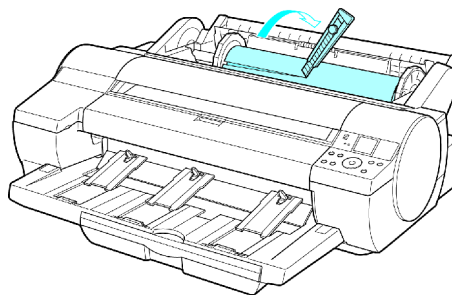
If paper from a roll becomes jammed, **Paper jam.** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.



Note

- For instructions on removing a paper jam from a roll if the scrap of paper remains in the Paper Feed Slot, see “Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)”. (→P.148)

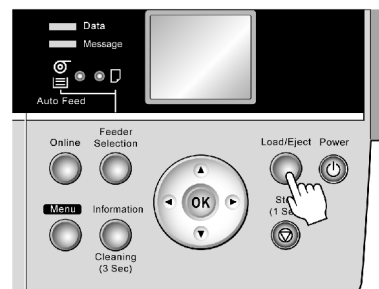
1. Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover. Use a store-bought cutter or the like to cut the paper of the loaded roll.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid scratching the printer.

2. Press **Load/Eject** button.

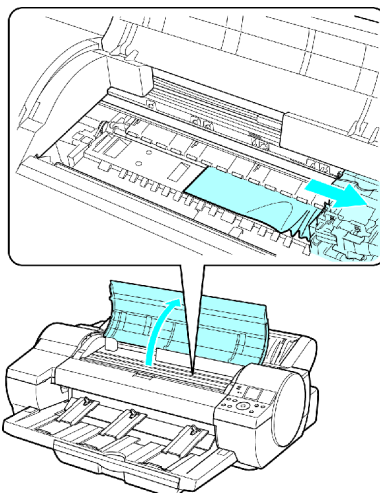


Clearing jammed paper

3. Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

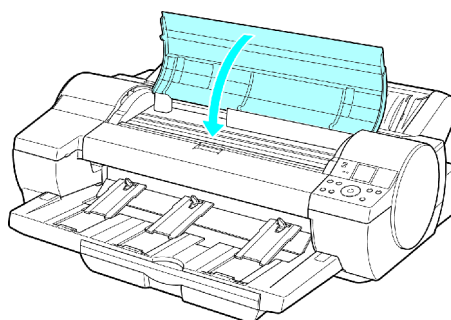
1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.



2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.

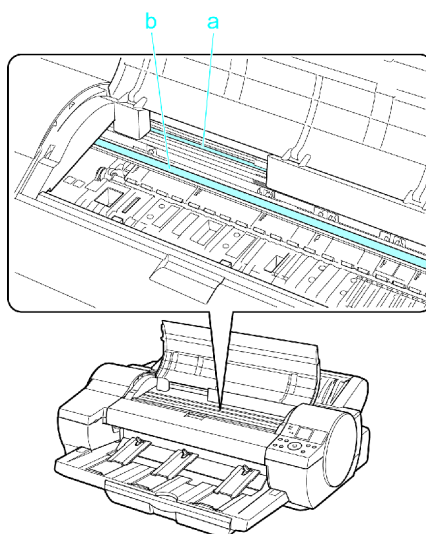
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.



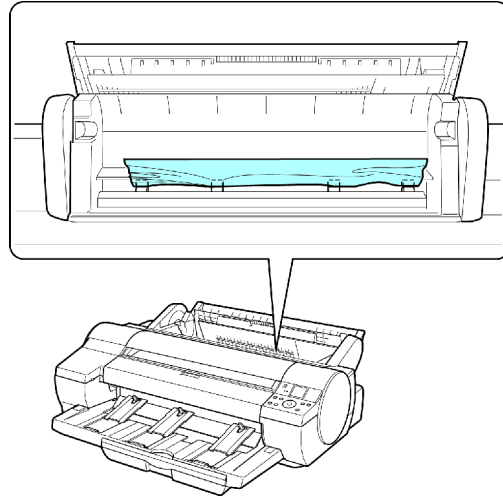
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

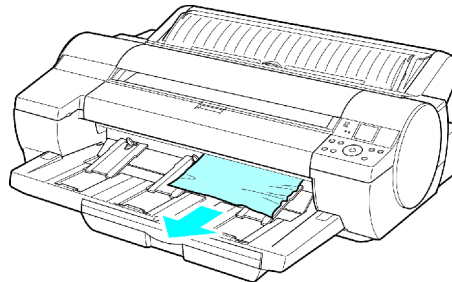


- If paper from a roll is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot

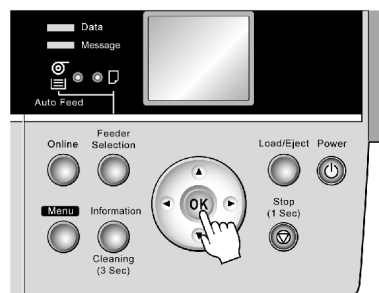
1. Open the Roll Feed Unit Cover.
2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.678), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.



- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray
Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



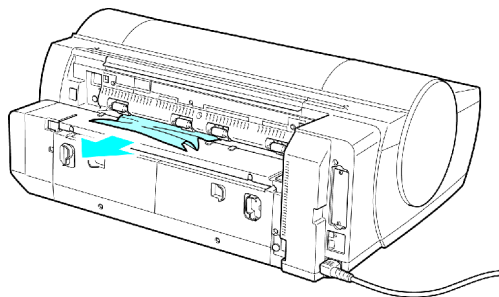
4. Press OK.



Clearing jammed paper

If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

- 1.** Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer. (→P.153)
- 2.** Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



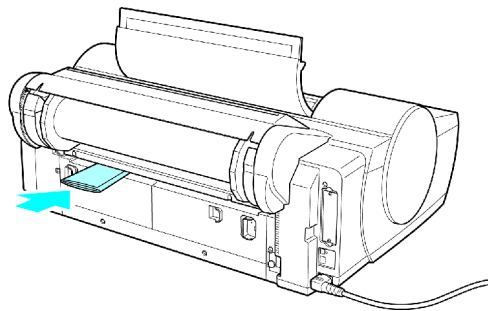
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

- 3.** Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer again. (→P.154)

Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)

Follow these steps to remove any scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot after you clear jammed sheets or roll paper.

1. Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the Paper Tray lamp.
2. Press the **Load/Eject** button.
A screen is displayed for paper type selection.
3. Select POP Board and press the **OK** button.
A screen is displayed for paper size selection.
4. Select the desired size and press the **OK** button.
Instructions for feeding POP Board are shown on the Control Panel, but instead of following them, follow this procedure to remove the jammed paper.
5. Open the Top Cover.
6. Fold an A4 sheet lengthwise four times and insert it through the gap of the Back Cover. Push the scrap out toward the Platen.

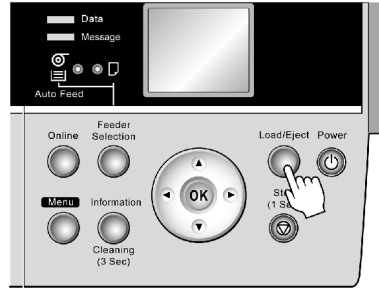


7. Remove the scrap when it is pushed out onto the Platen.
8. If any scraps remain inside the Paper Feed Slot, repeat steps 6 and 7.
9. Close the Top Cover.
10. Turn the printer off. (→P.19)

Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray

If a sheet loaded manually becomes jammed, **Paper jam.** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

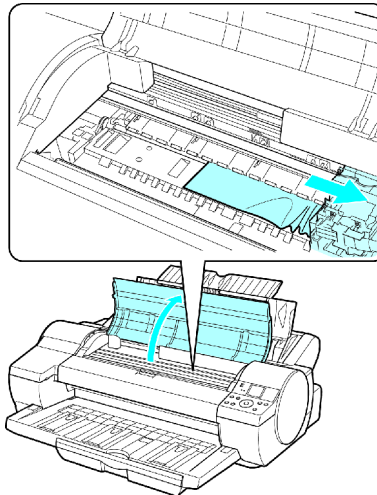
1. Press **Load/Eject**.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

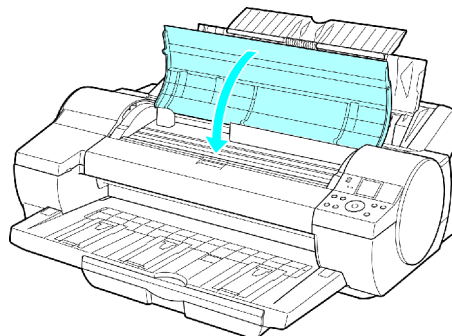
1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side manually.



2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.

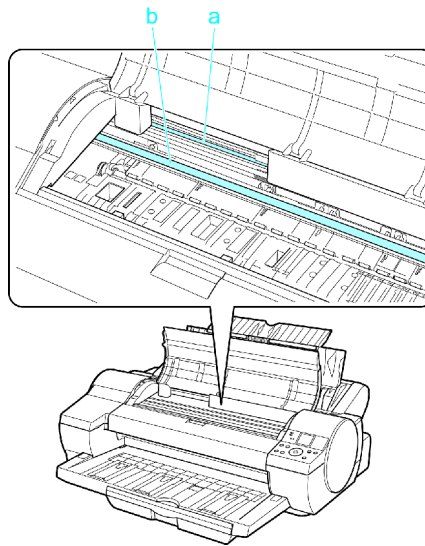
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.



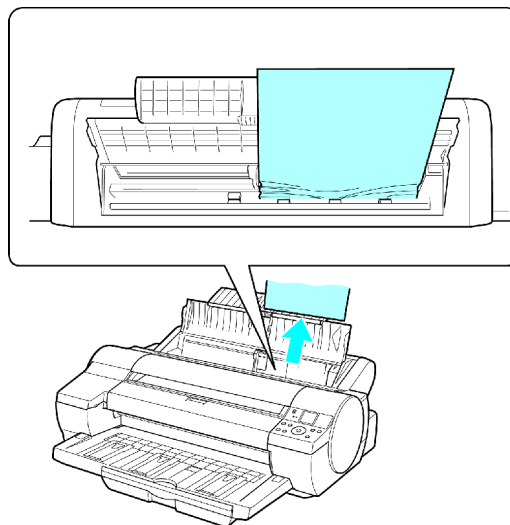
**Important**

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



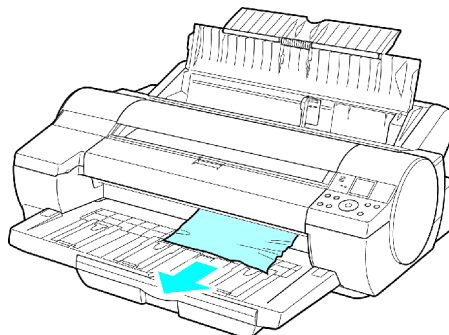
- If paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot of the Top Paper Feed Slot
Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.682), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.



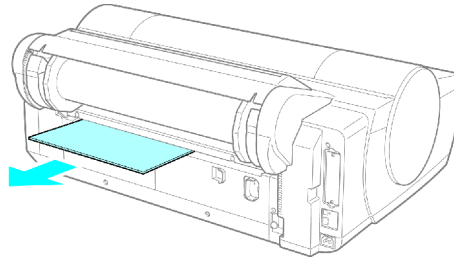
- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray
Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

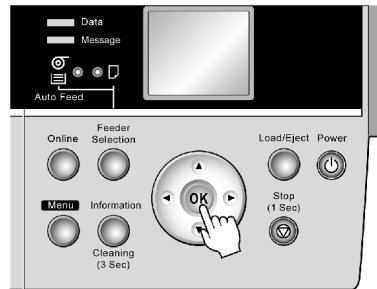


Clearing jammed paper

- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer
Remove the jammed paper from the back.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

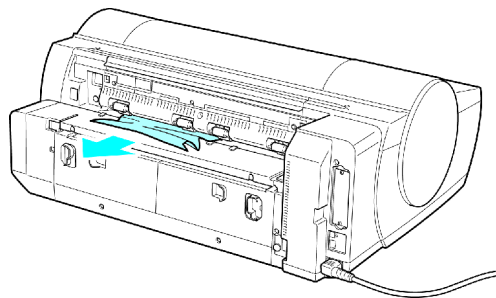


3. Press **OK** button.



If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

1. Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer.
(→P.153)
2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer again.
(→P.154)

Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette

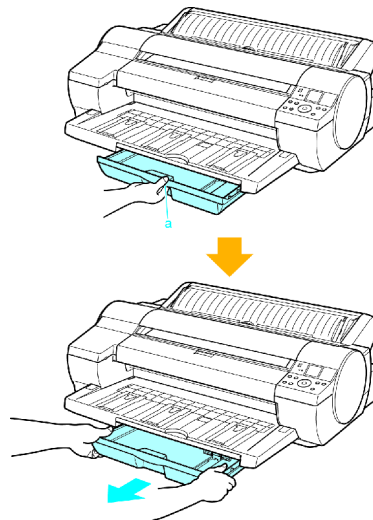
If paper from the Cassette becomes jammed, the following messages are shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. How to clear the paper jam varies depending on the message.

- **Cannot detect paper** (→P.177)
- **Paper jam.** (→P.179)

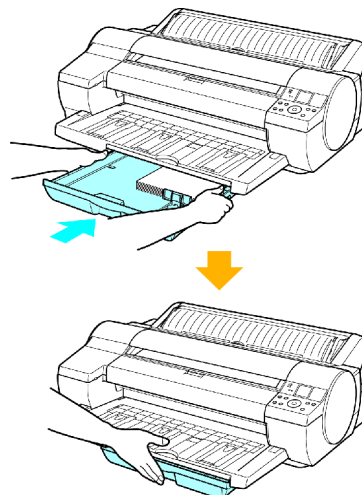
If Cannot detect paper is displayed

If paper is jammed in the paper feed slot of the cassette

1. Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.



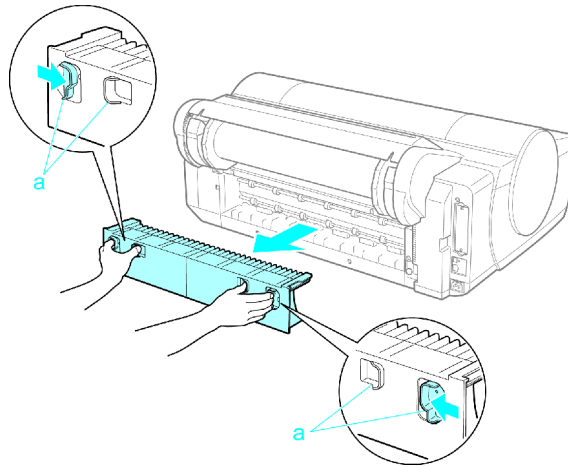
2. Clear any jammed paper from the paper feed slot of the Cassette.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
3. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, insert it firmly into the printer.



Clearing jammed paper

If paper is jammed in the back of the printer

1. While squeezing the two levers (a) at two positions on the Back Cover, remove the Back Cover from the printer.

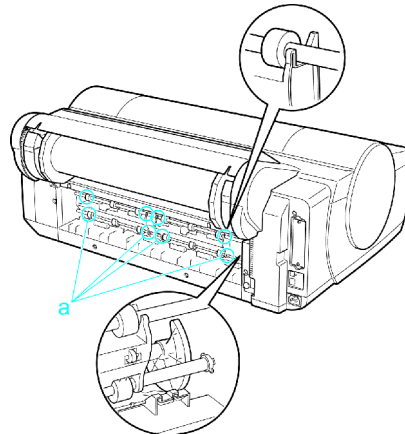


2. Remove the jammed paper from the back.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

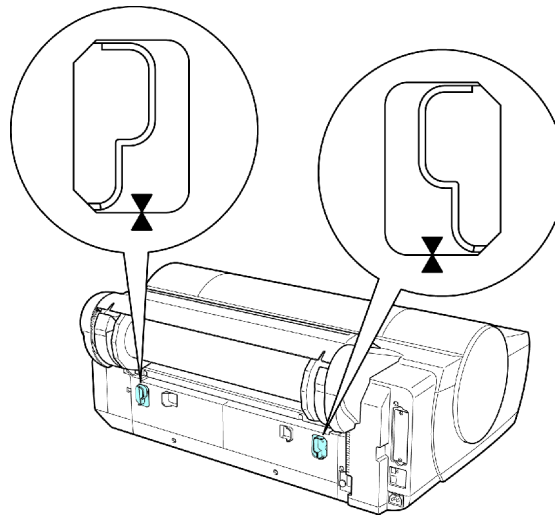


Caution

- Do not touch the areas in the printer indicated by (a). If the grease that coats these parts is accidentally wiped away, it may cause feeding problems.

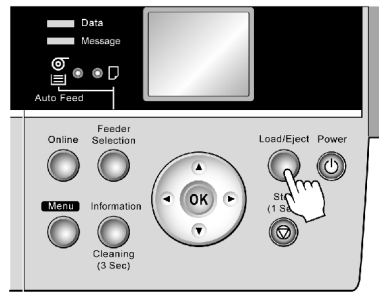


3. After attaching the Back Cover, push the lower part of the levers at two positions so that the levers are aligned with the marks on the Back Cover.



If Paper jam. is displayed

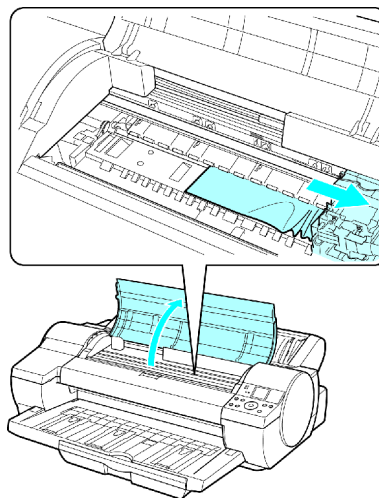
1. Press Load/Eject.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

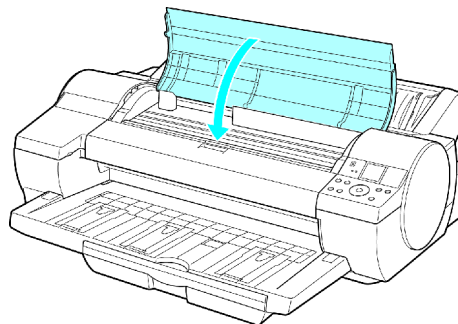
1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.



2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.

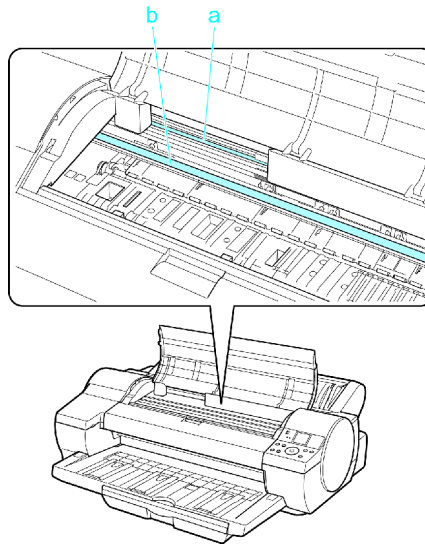
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.



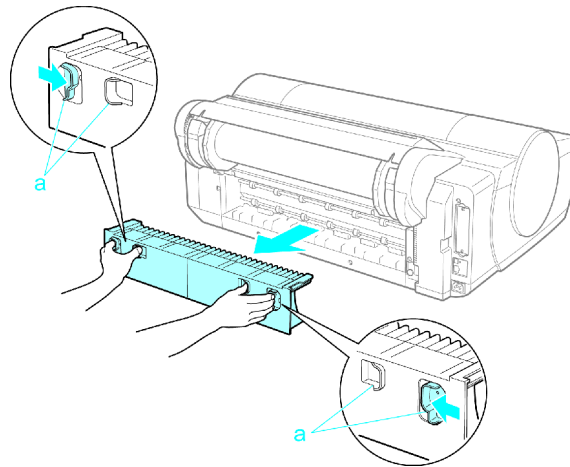
**Important**

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer

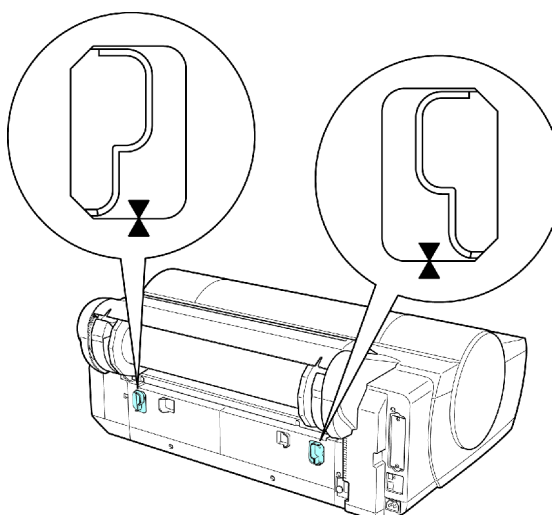
1. While squeezing the two levers (a) at two positions on the Back Cover, remove the cover from the printer.



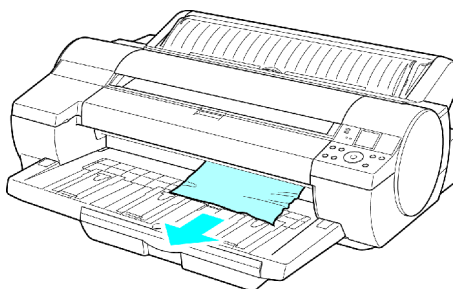
2. Remove the jammed paper from the back.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

Clearing jammed paper

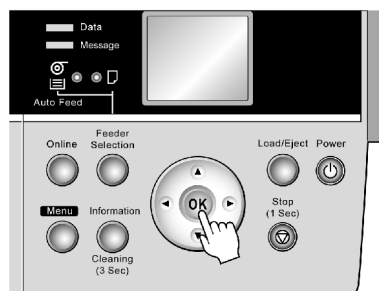
3. After attaching the Back Cover, push the lower part of the levers at two positions so that the levers are aligned with the marks on the Back Cover.



- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray.
 1. Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



3. Press **OK**.



HP-GL/2 problems

■ Lines or images are missing in the HP-GL/2 data that was printed.

Cause	Corrective Action
The memory is full.	Check the size of the data in the print job.
A GL/2 command not supported by this printer was received.	Check the print job and settings.

■ With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned.

Cause	Corrective Action
The plotter origin is incorrect.	Check the printing commands.

■ Lines Are Printed Too Thick or Thin During HP-GL/2 Printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The Line Width setting in the main menu is incorrect.	Confirm the selection in Line Width . If fine lines are printed faint, setting ThickenFineLines to On in the main menu will print the lines more distinctly. (→P.50)

■ HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color).

Cause	Corrective Action
The color mode is incorrect.	On the printer Control Panel, check the color mode setting. (→P.50)

For optimal printhead performance, the printer consumes trace amounts of color ink even in monochrome mode.

■ HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time.

Cause	Corrective Action
Large print jobs with a lot of data take longer to print.	On the printer Control Panel, set Input Resolution to 300dpi . (→P.50)

■ The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is analyzing the print job.	Either wait a while for printing to resume, or on the printer Control Panel, set Input Resolution to 300dpi . (→P.50)

Replotting with HP-GL/2 jobs is not possible.

Cause	Corrective Action
The data was lost because of replotting.	Data for replotting is lost after the following operations. In this case, send the print job again. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The memory buffer was cleared from the Control Panel. • The printer was turned off. • The printer has received a new HP-GL/2 print job. • Printing has been canceled

Printed Colors in Line Drawings are Inaccurate During HP-GL/2 Printing

Cause	Corrective Action
AdjustFaintLines in the main menu is set to On .	Selecting Off may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

If the Printer makes a strange sound

■ ■ ■ If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound

The following sounds do not indicate a problem with the printer.

- There is a sound of vacuum from the Platen
To prevent paper from rising, paper is held against the Platen by suction from Vacuum holes under it.
- Roll paper makes a fluttering sound during printing
There may be a fluttering sound when large paper is advanced.
- If you suddenly hear the tone for cleaning operations
At regular intervals, for printer maintenance, cleaning operations will begin automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode.

In other cases, contact your Canon dealer.

Other problems

■ The printer consumes a lot of ink

Cause	Corrective Action
Many full-page color images are printed.	In print jobs such as photos, images are filled with color. This consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
Head Cleaning B is used often.	Head Cleaning B consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer. Unless the printer has been moved or stored for a long period or you are troubleshooting Printhead problems, we recommend not performing Head Cleaning B , to the extent possible.
You have just finished initial installation, when more ink is consumed to fill the system.	After initial installation or at the first-time use after transfer, ink flows into the system between the Ink Tank and Printhead, which may cause the ink level indicators to drop to 80%. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.

■ A message to check the Maintenance Cartridge is not cleared after you replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has not detected the new Maintenance Cartridge.	Remove the new Maintenance Cartridge you have just installed and insert it again firmly.
	Restart the printer.

■ Paper is not cut straight

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is bent or curled at the cut position.	Straighten out any curling by the edges of the paper.
Paper rises by the ends of the cut position before it is cut.	Reload the paper correctly.

■ Paper cannot be cut

Cause	Corrective Action
The printed document became caught on a foreign object by the Output Tray, which lifted the document. The Cutter passed under the paper.	Remove the foreign object by the Output Tray to enable the printer to eject the printed document, keeping it level.
In the printer driver, No or Print Cut Guideline is specified in Auto Cut .	Specify Yes in Auto Cut in the printer driver.
In MAIN MENU , Eject or Manual is specified in Cutting Mode .	Specify Automatic in Cutting Mode in MAIN MENU .

■ Depression on the leading edge is left

Cause	Corrective Action
Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge.	When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting TrimEdge Reload to On or Automatic so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing.

■ Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper

Cause	Corrective Action
A document was removed after printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot without pressing the Load/Eject button.	Following the instructions, press the Load/Eject button, remove the paper, and then press the OK button.
	Wipe away any soiling on the rollers. (→P.644) (→P.647)

■ The printer does not go on

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is unplugged.	Plug the power cord into the outlet, and then turn on the printer.
The specified voltage is not supplied.	Check the voltage of the outlet and breaker. For information on the specified voltage, see "Specifications". (→P.74)

■ Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll paper is warped.	Straighten out curls and reload the roll.
The roll was pulled out by force when it had been advanced before printing, and this action closed the Paper Feed Slot.	Hold down the Load/Eject button for a while and reload the roll.

■ Cannot load sheets in the tray

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the Feeder Selection button to activate the Paper Tray lamp.

■ The Front Tray Guides are in the Front Paper Feed Slot.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper cannot be ejected because the roll was advanced when the Front Tray Guides were in the Front Paper Feed Slot.	On the Control Panel, momentarily select POP Board on the screen for selection of the media type. The Front Paper Feed Slot will rise, so lift the Vertical Paper Guides and store them toward the front.

Ink level detection

Ink level detection will be deactivated if you load ink tanks once emptied.

Ink level detection

Ink Tanks specified for this printer feature an ink level detection function to prevent the ink from running out during printing, which prevents printer damage. (→P.615)

This function will not work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. As a result, printing stops. Thus, before using refill ink tanks, you must cancel the ink level detection.

Printing with the ink level detection canceled may lead to printer damage and printing problems. Canon Inc. is not liable for any damage that may occur as a result of refilling ink.

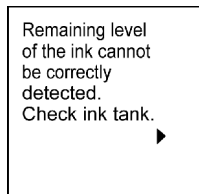


Caution

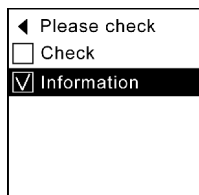
- After ink level detection has been disabled, this function cannot be reactivated for the currently loaded Ink Tank. To use ink level detection again, replace the Ink Tank with a new ink tank specified for use with the printer.
- Repeatedly removing and inserting an Ink Tank may damage the connection between the Ink Tank and the printer, which may cause ink leakage from the Ink Tank and damage the printer.

Disabling Ink Level Detection

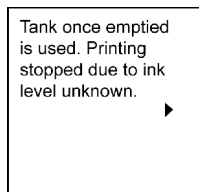
1. On the Display Screen, a message indicates that the ink level cannot be detected.



2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Information**, and then press the **OK** button.

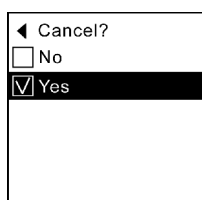


A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen about disabling ink level detection.

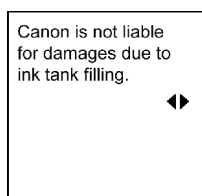


3. Press **▶** and check the message on the Display Screen.

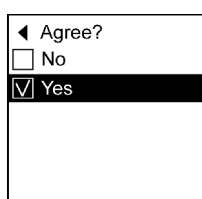
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



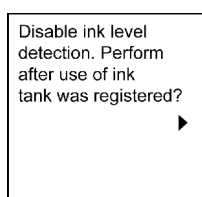
A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen.



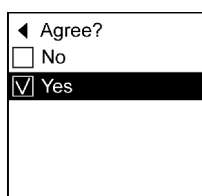
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



A confirmation message about updating ink information is shown on the Display Screen.



6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



Ink level detection is now disabled, and the printer goes online.

Error Message

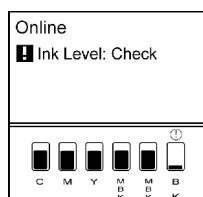
Responding to Messages

■ Responding to Messages

Warning messages

Warning messages are shown on lines 2-4 of the Display Screen.

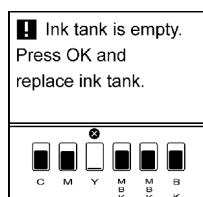
Although warning messages do not prevent printer operation, you should check the message and take the appropriate action. (→P.698)



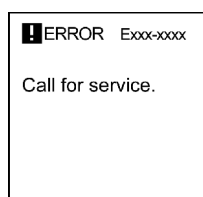
Error messages (if action can be taken)

Error messages are indicated on the Display Screen if you must respond before the printer can resume operation.

Check the message and take the appropriate action. (→P.698)



Error messages (if no action can be taken)



In the following situations, turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring power.

If the message is still displayed, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

- The error message is displayed with the following instructions: **Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again.**
- "ERROR" is displayed, followed by the error code and **Call for service.**

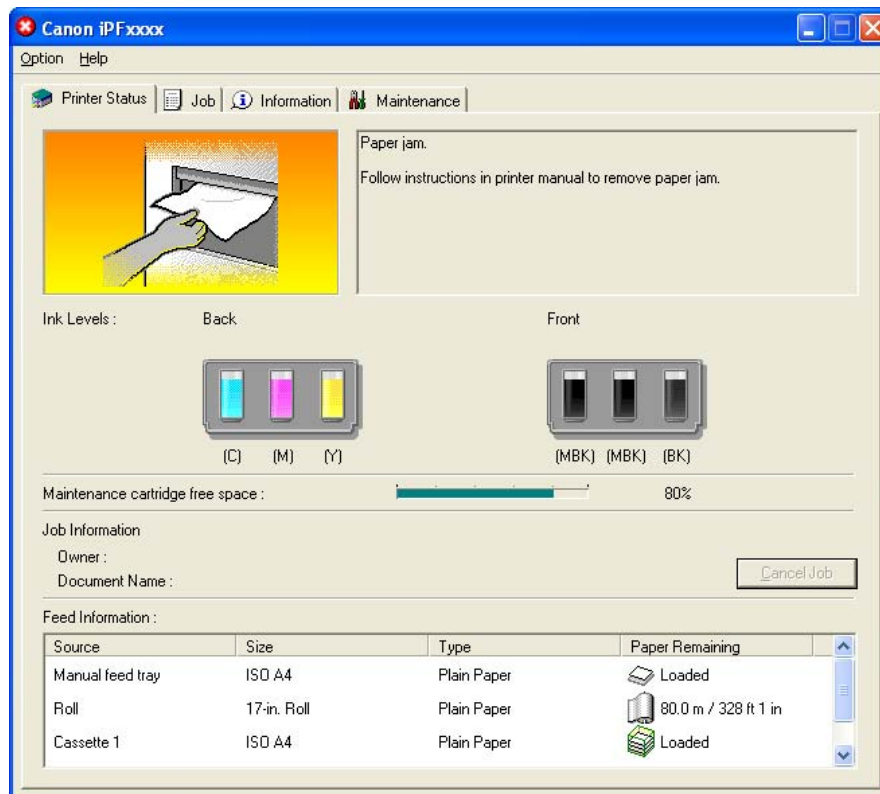
Other Messages

These messages do not prevent printer operation. Check the information on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. Messages requiring special attention are as follows:



Note

- Messages are also displayed in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh).



■ ■ ■ Error Messages

Warning messages

Warning messages are shown on lines 2-4 of the Display Screen.

Although warning messages do not prevent printer operation, you should check the message and take the appropriate action.

- **GARO Wxxxx** (x represents a number) (→P.718)
- **GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full.** (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904) (→P.717)
- **GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.** (→P.717)
- **GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.** (→P.717)
- **Ink Level: Check** (→P.710)
- **End of paper feed.** (→P.707)
- **This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.** (→P.717)
- **Prepare for parts replacement.** (→P.718)
- **Parts replacement time has passed.** (→P.719)
- **Problem with Printhead** (→P.715)
- **Prepare for maint cart replacement.** (→P.716)
- **Paper Mismatch** (→P.700)
- **Paprr Size Mismatch** (→P.701)
- **Paprr Type Mismatch** (→P.700)

Error messages (if action can be taken)

Check the message and take the appropriate action.

- **Ink tank is empty.** (→P.712)
- **Ink insufficient.** (→P.711)
- **No ink tank loaded.** (→P.710)
- **Ink tank error.** (→P.712)
- **Top cover is open.** (→P.718)
- **Sheet printing is selected.** (→P.703)
- **Media Type not compatible with cassette.** (→P.702)
- **No cassette loaded** (→P.702)
- **Cannot feed paper.** (→P.704)
- **Insufficient paper for job** (→P.702)
- **This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.** (→P.717)
- **Use another paper.** (→P.713)
- **This paper cannot be used.** (→P.701)
- **Cannot print as specified.** (→P.713)
- **Manual printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.** (→P.704)
- **Wrong paper feed slot for this paper type.** (→P.703)
- **Cannot adjust band.** (→P.713)
- **Unknown file.** (→P.718)
- **Borderless printng not possible.** (→P.705)
- **Printhead error** (→P.715)
- **PHead needs cleaning.** (→P.714)
- **Cannot adjust printhead.** (→P.713)
- **Multi-sensor error** (→P.719)
- **Maintenance cartridge problem.** (→P.716)
- **Maintenance cartridge full.** (→P.716)

- **No maintenance cartridge.** (→P.716)
- **No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.** (→P.716)
- **Paper Mismatch** (→P.700)
- **Paper jam.** (→P.708)
- **Paper loaded askew.** (→P.706)
- **Paprr Size Mismatch** (→P.701)
- **Paper size not detected.** (→P.706)
- **Paprr Type Mismatch** (→P.700)
- **Cannot feed paper.** (→P.707)
- **Cannot cut paper.** (→P.708)
- **Cannot detect paprr** (→P.707)
- **Roll printing is selected.** (→P.703)
- **Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.** (→P.703)
- **The roll is empty.** (→P.709)
- **Roll feed unit err** (→P.709)
- **No Roll Feed Unit.** (→P.709)

Error messages (if no action can be taken)

- **Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx** (x represents a letter or number) (→P.719)
- **ERROR Exxx-xxxx** (x represents a letter or number) (→P.718)

Other Messages

These messages do not prevent printer operation. Check the information on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. Messages requiring special attention are as follows:

- **Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.** (→P.712)
- **There is no data.** (→P.717)

Messages regarding paper

■ Paper Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
You printed a test pattern for printer adjustment on several sheets, but sheets of different types or sizes of paper were used.	When printing a test pattern, use sheets of the same type and size of paper.
The paper settings for the cassette on the printer do not match the settings in the printer driver.	Adjust both settings so that they match and try printing again.

■ Paper Type Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same type of paper is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.82) (→P.89) (→P.87)
	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver. 1. Hold down the Stop button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Either change the type of paper specified in the printer driver settings or replace the loaded paper and change the paper type setting on the printer.
	Press the Online button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

*Printing will continue if you have set **Detect Mismatch** to **Warning** or **None**.

■ ■ ■ Paper Size Mismatch

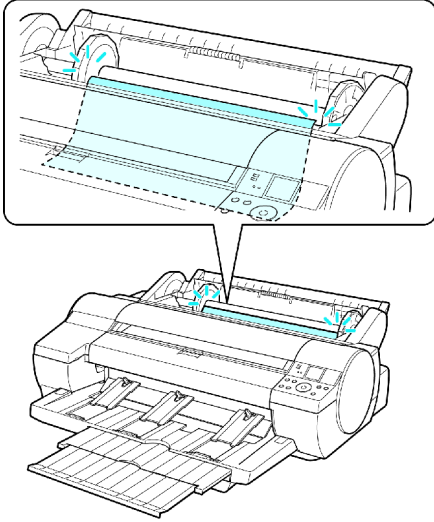
Cause		Corrective Action
The paper size as specified on the printer does not match the size specified in the printer driver.	If you have selected Fit Roll Paper Width in the printer driver settings and Warning in Detect Mismatch in the printer menu:	Printing resumes after the warning message is displayed. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality. Try printing again after adjusting the paper size as specified in the printer driver and the size specified on the printer so that they match.
	If you have selected Fit Roll Paper Width in the printer driver settings and Pause in Detect Mismatch in the printer menu:	Follow the steps below to ensure the paper size matches on the printer and in the printer driver. 1. Hold down the Stop button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Load paper of the same size as you have specified in the printer driver. 3. Change the paper size in the printer driver and try printing again.
		Press the Online button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

■ ■ ■ This paper cannot be used.

Check supported paper sizes.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too large for the printer.	Load paper of the correct size. (→P.117)
The loaded paper is too small for the printer.	Load paper of the correct size. (→P.117)
Paper has been loaded that is too small to print the test pattern for printhead adjustment or nozzle checking.	Load unused paper A4/Letter-sized or larger. More than one sheet may be required depending on the adjustment.

■ ■ ■ Insufficient paper for job

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>The printer has received a print job longer than the amount of roll paper left.</p> 	<p>Follow the steps below to replace the roll.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the roll. (→P.128) (→P.123) 2. Load a roll with enough paper left. (→P.121) (→P.124) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper type. (→P.130) 4. Specify the paper length, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll and you have deactivated the automatic detection function of the remaining roll paper. (→P.131) <p>Hold down the Stop button for a second or more to cancel printing.</p> <p>Press the Online button to resume printing. However, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document.</p>

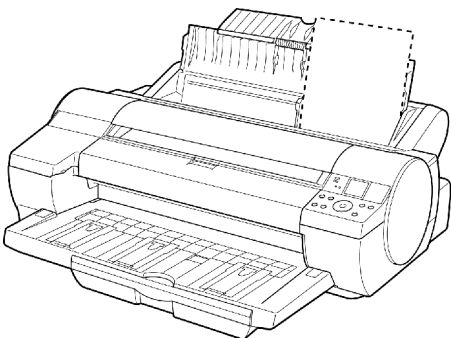
■ ■ ■ Media Type not compatible with cassette.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>The printer has received a print job specifying the Cassette as the media source, but this paper is not compatible with the Cassette.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure you are using the correct printer driver for the printer. 2. Load paper compatible with the Cassette, change the printer driver settings to match it, and try printing again. For details on supported paper, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)

■ ■ ■ No cassette loaded

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>The Cassette is not fully inserted.</p>	<p>Remove the Cassette and reinsert the Cassette firmly, all the way.</p>

Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>A print job for rolls was received when a sheet is loaded.</p> 	<p>Press the OK button and remove the sheet. (→P.176) Load a roll and try printing again. (→P.82)</p>
	<p>Hold down the Stop button for a second or more to cancel printing.</p>

Roll printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a roll, but no roll is loaded.</p>	<p>Load a roll and try printing again.</p>
	<p>To print on a sheet instead, hold the Stop button for more than a second to cancel printing, load a sheet, and then print. (→P.89)</p>

Sheet printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a sheet, but no sheet is loaded.</p>	<p>Load a sheet and try printing again.</p>
	<p>To print on a roll instead, hold the Stop button for more than a second to cancel printing, load a roll, and then print. (→P.82)</p>

Wrong paper feed slot for this paper type.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>The Paper Feed Slot where paper is loaded does not match the Paper Feed Slot specified as the paper source.</p>	<p>Try printing again after changing the settings in the printer driver so that the Paper Feed Slot where paper is loaded matches the Paper Feed Slot specified as the paper source. (→P.89)</p>

Manual printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for manually printing on sheets was sent when a roll is loaded.	Hold down the Stop button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	Load paper of the type and size you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.89)
	Hold down the Stop button for a second or more to cancel printing. Change the printer driver settings to match the roll already loaded, and then try printing again.

Cannot feed paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper has come out of the printer.	Remove the paper, press the Load/Eject button, and reload the paper.
A paper jam has occurred.	Press the Load/Eject button, remove the jammed paper, and reload paper.
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

❏ Borderless printing not possible.

Check roll width and spacers.

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is loaded askew.	Insert the paper and Spacer for Borderless Printing firmly all the way into the printer.
	When using A1 or A2 rolls, attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing before loading the roll. (→P.150)
	When using sizes other than A1 or A2, remove the Spacer for Borderless Printing before loading the roll. (→P.150)
The paper loaded is not compatible with borderless printing.	Load paper compatible with borderless printing and try printing again. Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
Because paper expands or contracts depending on the environment of use, it may become narrower or wider than the supported width for borderless printing.	Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)

Check supported paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not compatible with borderless printing.	Follow these steps to change the settings of the print job to enable borderless printing. 1. Hold down the Stop button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Make sure the correct printer driver for the printer is selected and try printing again. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
	If you press the Online button and continue printing, the document will be printed with a border.

■ Paper loaded askew.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew.	Follow these steps to reload a roll. 1. Press the Load/Eject button and remove the crooked paper. 2. Press the Load/Eject button and reload the roll. (→P.124)
	Follow these step to reload a sheet. 1. Press the Load/Eject button and remove the crooked paper. (*1) 2. Press the Load/Eject button and reload the sheet. (→P.165)

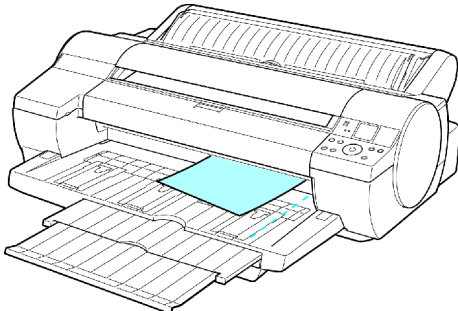
*1 You can remove paper loaded in the Top Paper Feed Slot without pressing the **Load/Eject** button.



Note

- To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose **Off** or **Loose** in the **Skew Check Lv.** setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams if paper is crooked when printed. Also, the Platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

■ Paper size not detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded.</p> 	<p>Reload paper straight, in the correct position. (→P.124) (→P.165)</p>

❏ Cannot detect paper

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper has come out of the printer.	Remove the paper that has come out of the printer, press the Load/Eject button, and reload the paper. (→P.82) (→P.89)
A paper jam occurred in the printer.	Remove the jammed paper, press the Load/Eject button, and reload paper. (→P.144) (→P.182) (→P.177)
The roll cannot be correctly detected.	Rewind the roll manually until the paper caught in the rollers is completely out of the rollers. Press the Load/Eject button and reload the roll.

❏ End of paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
You are pressing the ▲ button on the Control Panel and trying to rewind the roll to the edge.	Release the ▲ button.

❏ Cannot feed paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The sheet cannot be fed correctly.	Reload the sheet straight, in the correct position. (→P.165)

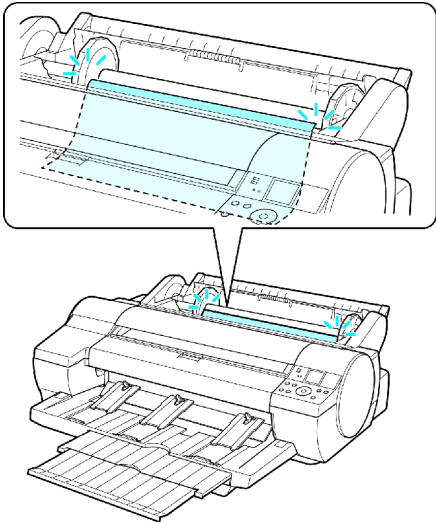
Paper jam.

Cause	Corrective Action
A paper jam occurred in the printer during printing.	Press the Load/Eject button and remove the jammed paper. (→P.144) (→P.182)
You have loaded and printed on a roll when sheets are selected as the paper source on the Control Panel.	Press the Load/Eject button, remove the roll, and load a sheet. Otherwise, select the roll as the media source on the Control Panel and reload the roll.

Cannot cut paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
There are sheets left on the Output Tray.	Remove the paper.
There is a foreign object by the Output Tray, obstructing the Cutter Unit.	Remove the foreign object.
You are not using the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper.	Use the printer only where the recommended environmental conditions for the paper are met. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions for paper, see “Types of Paper”. (→P.112)
You are using paper that is not compatible with automatic cutting.	Cut the roll manually. (→P.135)
The Cutter Unit stops in the middle of cutting.	Move the Cutter Unit to the left, and then remove the roll paper. If the roll cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit, cut the roll manually. (→P.135)
In other cases, the Cutter Unit may be damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

■ The roll is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>There is no more paper left on the roll.</p> 	<p>Follow the steps below to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the roll. (→P.128) (→P.123) 2. Load the new roll. (→P.124) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper type. (→P.130) 4. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper length. (→P.131)

■ Roll feed unit err

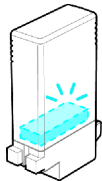
Cause	Corrective Action
The Roll Feed Unit is not working.	<p>Turn off the printer, remove the Roll Feed Unit momentarily, and then reinstall it.</p> <p>(→P.153) (→P.154)</p>
	<p>If the message is still displayed after you do this, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.</p>

■ No Roll Feed Unit.

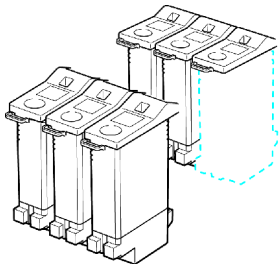
Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job that specifies rolls, but the Roll Feed Unit is not installed.	<p>Install the Roll Feed Unit and resend the print job.</p> <p>(→P.154)</p>

Messages regarding ink

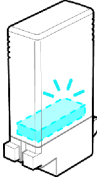
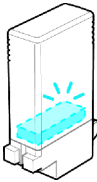
■ Ink Level: Check

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>Not much ink is left.</p> 	<p>Prepare a new Ink Tank. We recommend replacing the Ink Tank with a new Ink Tank at this point if you plan to print large-format or high-quantity jobs.</p>

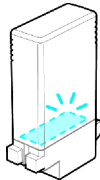
■ No ink tank loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer.</p> 	<p>Load or reload the Ink Tank. (→P.616)</p>
<p>There is a problem with the Ink Tank.</p>	<p>Replace it with a new Ink Tank. (→P.616)</p>

Ink insufficient.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>The ink level is low, so you cannot clean the Printhead.</p> 	<p>Press the OK button and replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank. (→P.616)</p>
<p>The ink level is low, so there may not be enough ink to finish printing.</p> 	<p>Press the OK button and replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank. (→P.616)</p> <p>You can print until the ink runs out by pressing the Online button. However, if the ink runs out during printing, the following situation will occur depending on the position of the leading edge when it passes through the printer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ink tank is empty. is displayed and printing stops. Press the Stop button to cancel printing, or press the OK button, replace the ink tank that is low with a new one, and continue printing. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different. (→P.616) 2. Ink tank empty. Canceling printing of this page. is displayed and printing stops. After the paper is ejected, press the OK button and replace the ink tank that is low with a new one. (→P.616)

■ ■ ■ Ink tank is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>There is no ink left.</p> 	<p>Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (→P.616)</p>

■ ■ ■ Ink tank error.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>The Ink Tank in the printer is incompatible.</p>	<p>Load an Ink Tank specified for use with the printer. (→P.616)</p>

■ ■ ■ Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
<p>Ink level detection cannot work correctly if you use refill ink tanks.</p>	<p>The refill ink tank can no longer be used. See the section “Ink level detection” and take the appropriate action. (→P.694)</p>

Messages regarding printing or adjustment

Use another paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead and feed amount cannot be adjusted when highly transparent film is loaded.	For automatic Printhead adjustment, we recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film. (→P.599)
	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.607)

Cannot print as specified.

Press Load/Eject and replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Press the Load/Eject button and switch to paper A4/Letter, vertical, or larger.

Press Load/Eject and replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Press the Load/Eject button and load a roll at least 10 inches (254 mm) wide.

Cannot adjust band.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.625) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.626)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for feed amount adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.607)

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.625) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.626)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for Printhead adjustment.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.599)

Messages regarding printheads

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.625) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.626)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for Printhead adjustment.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.599)

Cannot adjust band.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.625) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.626)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for feed amount adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.607)

PHead needs cleaning.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Specify Printhead cleaning options. (→P.626) If the message is still displayed after Head Cleaning B , contact the Canon dealer for assistance.

Problem with Printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are becoming clogged.	If printing is faint, clean the Printhead. (→P.626)

Printhead error

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible Printhead has been installed.	Install a Printhead specified for use with the printer. (→P.627)
There is a problem with the Printhead.	Open the Top Cover. If the Carriage is over the Platen, replace the Printhead with a new one. (→P.627)
	If, after opening the Top Cover, you see that the Carriage is not over the Platen, follow the steps below. 1. Close the Top Cover and press the Online button. 2. Replace the Printhead. (→P.627)

Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge

■ ■ ■ No maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is not installed.	Install the Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.634)

■ ■ ■ Prepare for maint cart replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is almost full.	You can continue to print, but prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge to use when the message for replacement is displayed.

■ ■ ■ No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge cannot absorb enough ink for Printhead cleaning or other operation.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.634)

■ ■ ■ Maintenance cartridge full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is full.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.634)

■ ■ ■ Maintenance cartridge problem.

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible or used Maintenance Cartridge has been installed.	Install a Maintenance Cartridge specified for use with the printer. (→P.634)

Messages regarding HP-GL/2

■ ■ ■ This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a HP-GL/2 print job that cannot be printed on the paper that has been advanced.	Replace the paper with a type compatible with HP-GL/2. For details on paper compatible with HP-GL/2, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.112)
	The printer may continue printing, but the printing quality may be affected. Check the printing results.

■ ■ ■ GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer memory is full.	Because the entire print job could not be received, the printer may not be able to print the entire original. Check the printing results.

■ ■ ■ GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.

Cause	Corrective Action
A parameter specified in a HP-GL/2 command is out of the supported range.	Check the print job.

■ ■ ■ GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received an unsupported HP-GL/2 command.	Check the print job.

■ ■ ■ There is no data.

Cause	Corrective Action
The data was lost because of replotting.	Data for replotting is lost after the following operations. In this case, send the print job again. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The memory buffer was cleared from the Control Panel. • The printer was turned off. • The printer received a new print job.

Other Messages

■ ■ ■ GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the print job.	Try printing again, using the correct printer driver.
	It is also possible to continue printing in this state. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results.

■ ■ ■ Top cover is open.

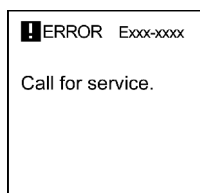
Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has detected that the Top Cover is open.	Open the Top Cover fully, remove any foreign objects, and close the Top Cover again.
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

■ ■ ■ ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

In the following situations, turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring power.

If the message is still displayed, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

- “ERROR” is displayed, followed by the error code and **Call for service.**



■ ■ ■ Unknown file.

Cause	Corrective Action
Invalid data format.	Check the print job and resend it.

■ ■ ■ Prepare for parts replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is almost time to replace consumables for which service is required.	If Parts replacement time has passed. is displayed, you can continue to use the printer for some time. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Parts replacement time has passed.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is past the recommended time to replace consumables for which service is required.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Multi-sensor error

Cause	Corrective Action
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Roll feed unit err

Cause	Corrective Action
The Roll Feed Unit is not working.	Turn off the printer, remove the Roll Feed Unit momentarily, and then reinstall it. (→P.153) (→P.154)
	If the message is still displayed after you do this, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

No Roll Feed Unit.

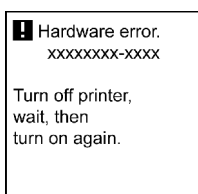
Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job that specifies rolls, but the Roll Feed Unit is not installed.	Install the Roll Feed Unit and resend the print job. (→P.154)

Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

In the following situations, turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring power. However, keep the printer off and remove the roll if the last portion of roll paper was used during a print job and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll. If tape and the Belt Stopper have not been removed from inside the Top Cover, turn off the printer, open the Top Cover, and remove the tape and Belt Stopper before restoring power.

If the message is still displayed, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

- The error message is displayed with the following instructions: **Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again.**



Index

A

- A message to check the Maintenance Cartridge is not cleared after you replace the Maintenance Cartridge.....692
- About This User Manual.....1
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9).....550
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)528
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)494
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows).....155, 496
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9).....545
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)524
- Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets.....613
- Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver214
 - Color Adjustment.....214
 - Color Mode.....214
 - Matching.....215
- Adjusting the feed amount.....604
- Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically604
 - Adjusting the feed amount during printing.....606
- Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually607
 - Adjusting the feed amount during printing.....609
- Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy.....611
- Adjusting the Printhead599
- Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically ...599
- Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually601
- Adjusting the Printhead Height.....603
- Adjusting the Vacuum Strength610
- An error message is shown on the Display Screen664
- Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder150
 - Attaching the Spacer for Borderless Printing ...151
 - Mounting the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment ...150
 - Removing the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment..150
 - Removing the Spacer for Borderless Printing ..151
- Basic Environmental Performance79
 - Packaging materials79
 - Printer.....79
- Basic Printing Workflow.....82
- Borderless Printing327
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size309, 331
 - Borderless Printing309, 331
 - Borderless Printing Method309, 331
 - Print Image with Actual Size.....310, 332
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)316, 338
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X).....313, 335
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)311, 333
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width329
 - Borderless Printing329
 - Borderless Printing Method329
 - Scale to fit Roll Paper Width.....330
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9).....347
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)344
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)342
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)356
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)353
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows).....351
- Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size....327
 - Borderless Printing327
 - Borderless Printing Method327
 - Fit Media Size.....328
- Borderless printing not possible.705
 - Check roll width and spacers.705
 - Check supported paper.705

C

- Canceling print jobs.....103
- Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 9109
 - Canceling background print jobs.....109
 - Canceling foreground print jobs110
- Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X.....107

B

- Back10
- Banding in different colors occurs668

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel	103	Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9)	552
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows.....	105	Color Adjustment pane: color	552
Cannot adjust band.	713, 714	Matching pane.....	554
Cannot adjust printhead.	713, 714	Object Adjustment dialog box.....	553
Cannot connect the printer to the network	660	Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X)	529
Cannot cut paper.	708	Color Adjustment pane: color	529
Cannot detect paper.....	707	Matching pane.....	530
Cannot feed paper.....	704, 707	Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9)	555
Cannot load sheets in the tray.....	693	Color Adjustment pane: monochrome	555
Cannot print as specified.....	713	Object Adjustment dialog box.....	556
Cannot print over a NetWare network	663	Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X).....	531
Cannot print over a network	660	Color Adjustment pane: monochrome	531
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network.....	662	Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows)	498
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks ..	662	Color Adjustment : color	498
Carriage.....	14	Matching sheet: Driver Matching Mode.....	500
Cassette	18	Matching sheet: ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode, and Host ICM Mode	501
Centering originals	407	Object Adjustment dialog box.....	499
Checking for Nozzle Clogging	625	Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows)	502
Checking Ink Tank Levels.....	622	Color Adjustment : monochrome	502
Checking the Layout Before Printing.....	515	Object Adjustment dialog box.....	503
Preview (Macintosh).....	515	Colors in printed images are uneven.....	669
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) ..	516	Configuring NetWare Network Settings.....	581
Checking the Print Quality.....	624	Configuring the Communication Mode Manually....	661
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity	640	Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh).....	589
Choosing a Paper for Printing	202	Activating AppleTalk on the printer	589
If the paper type is not listed for selection	202	Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9).....	590
Media type.....	202	Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)	591
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9)	224	Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh).....	597
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X).....	221	Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh).....	593
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)	219	Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9).....	593
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover	644	Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)	595
Cleaning the Paper Retainer	647	Configuring the IP Address on the Printer	562
Cleaning the Pick Up Roller	648	Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands	567
Cleaning the Printer.....	642	Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	492, 586
Cleaning the Printer Exterior	642	Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel	566
Cleaning the Printhead.....	626, 649	Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh).....	588
Cleaning the Printhead.....	626, 649	Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)	582
Clearing jammed paper	675	Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings	587
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot) ...	148, 679	Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings	572
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette ...	177, 683		
If Cannot detect paper is displayed	177, 683		
If Paper jam. is displayed	179, 686		
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray ..	182, 197, 680		
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper	144, 675		

Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings	564
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)	535
Checking a preview of the settings.....	535
Checking a print preview	536
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X).....	513
Checking a preview of the settings.....	513
Checking a print preview	514
Confirming Print Settings (Windows).....	468
Checking a preview of the settings.....	468
Checking a print preview	469
Confirming the Print Image Before Printing	504
Conserving roll paper	424
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins	425
No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)	425
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9)	431
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X).....	428
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)	426
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees	424
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	424
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9)	438
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X)	435
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)	433
Control Panel.....	16, 19
Correcting Print Misalignment	599
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing.....	449
Automatic Cutting	449
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9)	454
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X).....	452
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows).....	451
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically	134

D

Depression on the leading edge is left	693
Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper	133
Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9).....	544
Device Settings Sheet (Windows)	486
Digital Photo Front-Access.....	493
Documents are printed crooked	671
Documents are printed in monochrome	670

E

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur	571
End of paper feed.....	707
Enhanced Printing Options.....	202
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)	718
Error Message	696
Error Messages	698
Error messages (if action can be taken).....	698
Error messages (if no action can be taken).....	699
Other Messages	699
Warning messages.....	698

F

Favorites Sheet (Windows)	483
Feeding Paper from the Roll Feed Unit.....	152
Feeding Roll Paper Manually	132
Fine Scratches Appear on Glossy Paper from the Cassette	672
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)	233
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X).....	230
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)	227
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS 9)	241
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS X).....	238
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Windows).....	236
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9)	249
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X)	246
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows)	244
Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9)	543
Frequently Asked Questions	656
Front	8

G

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number).....	718
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.....	203
Advanced Settings	203
Color Settings.....	205
Enhancing Printing Quality	206

Print Priority	203
Print Quality	204
GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.	717
GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.	717
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)	717

H

Handling Paper	111
Handling rolls	120
Handling sheets	160
Handling sheets for paper feed slots	185
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)	719
How to use this manual	1
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color).	689
HP-GL/2 Printing	440
HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time.	689
HP-GL/2 problems	689
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing	4

I

IEEE 1394 Expansion Board	73
If the Printer makes a strange sound	691
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs	671
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	490
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)	526, 548
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)	489
Improving the Print Quality	624
Initializing the Network Settings	563
Ink insufficient.	711
Ink level detection	694
Disabling Ink Level Detection	694
Ink level detection	694
Ink Level: Check	710
Ink Tank Cover (Inside)	15
Ink tank error.	712
Ink tank is empty.	712
Ink Tanks	615
Installation problems	673
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	491, 585
Installing the Roll Feed Unit	154
Insufficient paper for job	702
Introduction	1

L

Layout Sheet (Windows)	481
Line thickness is not uniform (Windows)	672
Lines are misaligned	670
Lines Are Printed Too Thick or Thin During HP-GL/2 Printing	689
Lines or images are missing in the HP-GL/2 data that was printed.	689
Loading and Printing on Rolls	82
Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Cassette	87
Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot	89
Loading Roll on the Roll Holder	121
Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit	124
Loading Sheets in the Cassette	162
Loading Sheets Manually	165, 186
Loading heavyweight paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot	168, 189
Loading paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot	165, 186

M

Mac OS 9	534
Mac OS X	512
Main Menu Operations	30
Accessing Menus	31
Executing menu commands	34
Specifying menu items	32
Specifying numerical values	33
Main Menu Settings	50
Adjust Printer	55
GL2 Settings	54
Information	60
Interface Setup	56
Maintenance	57
Media Menu	51
Paper Details	52
System Setup	58
Main Menu Settings (During Printing)	61
Information	61
Main Pane (Mac OS 9)	538
Configuration using Advanced Settings	539
Configuration using Easy Settings	538
Main Pane (Mac OS X)	519
Configuration using Advanced Settings	520
Configuration using Easy Settings	519

Main Sheet (Windows)	475	No maintenance cartridge	716
Configuration using Advanced Settings.....	477	No Roll Feed Unit	709, 719
Configuration using Easy Settings	475		
Maintenance	599	O	
Maintenance Cartridge	634	Optional accessories	71
Maintenance cartridge full.	716	Other Maintenance	650
Maintenance cartridge problem.	716	Other Messages	718
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper		Other problems.....	692
Orientation	448	Other useful settings	447
Mirror	448	Output Stacker	200
Orientation.....	448	Output Stacker Precautions	201
Rotate 180 degrees.....	448		
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper		P	
Orientation (Mac OS 9)	460	Page Options Dialog Box (Windows)	507
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper		Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9)	541
Orientation (Mac OS X)	458	Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X)	521
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper		Page Setup Sheet (Windows)	479
Orientation (Windows)	456	Paper	111
Manual printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.....	704	Paper Size.....	111
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box		Paper Type	111
(Mac OS 9)	159, 557	Paper cannot be cut	692
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box		Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box	
(Mac OS X).....	158, 532	(Mac OS X).....	518
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box		Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box	
(Windows)	157, 505	(Windows)	471
Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows).....	506	Paper is not cut straight.....	692
Media Type not compatible with cassette.....	702	Paper jam.	708
Menu Structure.....	35	Paper loaded askew.	706
Main Menu.....	35	Paper Mismatch	700
Main menu during printing.....	49	Paper rubs against the Printhead.....	666
Submenus	48	Paper size not detected.....	706
Messages regarding HP-GL/2	717	Paper Sizes	117
Messages regarding ink	710	Rolls	119
Messages regarding paper.....	700	Sheets	117
Messages regarding printheads	714	Paprr Size Mismatch	701
Messages regarding printing or adjustment	713	Paprr Type Mismatch.....	700
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge ...	716	Parts replacement time has passed	719
Multi-sensor error	719	PHead needs cleaning.	714
		Prepare for maint cart replacement.....	716
N		Prepare for parts replacement.....	718
Network Environment	560	Preparing to Transfer the Printer	650
Network environment	561	Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9).....	537
System requirements	560	Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X)	517
Network Setting	560	Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows)	470
Network Setting (Macintosh)	587	Print Area.....	80
Network Setting (Windows)	572	Rolls	81
No cassette loaded.....	702	Sheets	80
No ink tank loaded.....	710		
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.....	716		

Print quality and color settings	202	Printing from Mac OS X.....	93
Printed colors are inaccurate.....	671	Printing from the application software	94
Printed Colors in Line Drawings are Inaccurate During HP-GL/2 Printing.....	690	Registering the printer.....	93
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9).....	534	Printing from Windows	92
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)	512	Printing in Monochrome	217
Printer Driver Settings (Windows)	466	Printing Line Drawings in Monochrome.....	218
Printer Menu Operations	29	Printing Photos in Monochrome	217
Printer Modes	21	Printing is faint.....	665
Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel.....	25	Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9)	389
Mode transition.....	22	Printing Large Posters (Windows).....	387
Modes.....	21	Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)	256, 445
Offline, and state of the Control Panel	24	Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X).....	212, 254, 443
Online, and state of the Control Panel	23	Easy Settings	212
Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel	25	Print Target.....	212
Printer parts.....	8	Print targets for line drawings and text.....	212
Printer Specifications.....	74	Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)	252, 441
Printhead	624	Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS 9)	211
Printhead error	715	Easy Settings	211
Printheads	624	Print Target.....	211
Printing at full size	307	Print targets for line drawings and text.....	211
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9)	325	Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other	382
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X).....	322	Free Layout (Windows)	382
Printing at Full Size (Windows)	320	imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh).....	383
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes	360	Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X).....	393
Printing CAD Drawings.....	440	Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)	391
Printing does not start	659	Printing Multiple Pages Continuously.....	384
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER.....	275	Roll paper (banner)	384
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X).....	279	Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9)	398
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.	280	Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X).....	396
Registering a hot folder on your computer	279	Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)	395
Scanning the original and print an enlargement	280	Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet.....	385
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows).....	277, 508	Page Layout	385
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.	278, 509	Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9)	405
Registering a hot folder on your computer	277, 508	Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X).....	402
Scanning the original and print an enlargement	278, 509	Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows).....	400
Printing enlargements or reductions.....	272	Printing Office Documents.....	213
Printing from Mac OS 9	95	Easy Settings	213
Printing from the application software	96	Print Target.....	213
Selecting the printer	95	Print targets for office documents.....	213
		Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9)	262
		Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X).....	260

Printing Office Documents (Windows).....	258	Register a Custom Media Size.....	378
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes	361	Print the banner.....	379
Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver	361	Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9)	378
Specifying custom media sizes for temporary use.....	361	Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X).....	375
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9)	368	Print the banner.....	376
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X).....	366	Register a Custom Page Size	375
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)	362	Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)	371
Printing by using Custom Media Size.....	363	Creating the banner in the application.....	372
Printing by using Custom Size	362	Printing the banner	372
Printing on Oversized Paper	307	Registering a Custom Media Size	371
Oversize	307	Printing With Watermarks.....	447
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets	91	Watermark.....	447
Paper Size.....	91	Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9)	464
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets	91	Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows).....	462
Rolls and Sheets	91	Problem with Printhead	715
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls	407	Problems with the printing quality.....	665
Centering originals relative to roll paper width	407	Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper	670
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9)	414		
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)	411	R	
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)	409	Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls	140
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets	408	Reducing Originals that Exceed the Maximum Supported Size for the Cassette	276
Centering originals on sheets.....	408	Page Size	276
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9)	421	Reducing Originals that Exceed the Maximum Supported Size for the Cassette (Windows)	281
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X).....	419	Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.....	712
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)	417	Removing Heavyweight Paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot.....	196
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9).....	269	Removing Installed Printer Drivers.....	674
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)	209, 266	Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows)	674
Easy Settings	209	Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)	674
Print Target.....	209	Removing printer drivers (Windows)	674
Print targets for photos and images	209	Removing Printer Drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)	674
Printing Photos and Images (Windows)	264	Removing Paper from the Cassette	175
Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS 9)	207	Removing Roll from the Roll Feed Unit	128
Easy Settings	207	Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder	123
Print Target.....	207	Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot.....	176, 195
Print targets for photos and images	207	Removing the Roll Feed Unit	153
Printing Posters in Sections	386		
Page Layout	386		
Printing procedure	82		
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)	360		
Fit Roll Paper Width	360		

Replacing Ink Tanks	616
Compatible Ink Tank.....	616
Precautions when handling an Ink Tank.....	616
Replacing an Ink Tank.....	617
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge	634
Compatible Maintenance Cartridge.....	634
Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.....	634
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge	633
Replacing the Printhead	627
Compatible Printhead.....	627
Precautions when handling the Printhead.....	627
Replacing the Printhead	628
When to replace the Printhead.....	627
Replotting with HP-GL/2 jobs is not possible.	690
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.....	274
Enlarged/Reduced Printing	274
Scaling.....	274
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9)	288
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X).....	285
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)	283
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width	273
Enlarged/Reduced Printing	273
Fit Roll Paper Width	273
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)	297
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X).....	294
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)	292
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size	272
Enlarged/Reduced Printing	272
Fit Media Size.....	272
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)	304
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X).....	302
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)	300
Responding to Messages.....	696
Error messages (if action can be taken).....	696
Error messages (if no action can be taken).....	696
Other Messages	697
Warning messages.....	696
Roll Feed Unit Cover (Inside)	13
Roll feed unit err	709, 719
Roll Holder Set	72, 149

Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot	693
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.....	703
Roll printing is selected.	703
Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper	672, 693

S

Selecting the Cassette as the Paper Source.....	160
Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette)	174
Selecting the Paper Size (Tray).....	194
Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette).....	172
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll).....	130
Selecting the Paper Type (Tray).....	173, 193
Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source.....	120
Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source.....	161, 185
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)	472
Sharing the Printer in Windows	583
Sheet printing is selected.	703
Software	466
Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9).....	558
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)	510
Specifications	74
Ink.....	75
Interface	75
Maximum stacking capacity	78
Paper.....	76
Paper capacity (Cassette).....	78
Printer.....	74
Printing performance.....	75
Specifying NetWare Print Services.....	576
Choosing the type of print services	576
Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server	577
Specifying NetWare Protocols.....	579
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver	658
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9)	101
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X).....	99
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)	97
Specifying Printer-Related Information.....	569
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls	135
Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing)	136
Manual (when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit)	137
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position).....	139

Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls.....	141	The surface of the paper is dirty.....	668
Mac OS 9	143	There is no data.	717
Mac OS X.....	142	Thin lines are not printed after switching to Economy Printing mode	672
Windows.....	141	This paper cannot be used.....	701
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll).....	131	This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.	717
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type.....	574	Tiling and multiple pages per sheet.....	382
Specifying the frame type using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	574	Top Cover (Inside)	11
Specifying the frame type using the printer Control Panel.....	575	Top cover is open.	718
Stand	71	Tray Feed Area.....	12
Status Print.....	64	Troubleshooting.....	656
Checking the information in the Status Print report	64	Turning the Printer On and Off	19
Printing Status Print Reports	64	Turning the printer off	20
Submenu Display	62	Turning the printer on	19
GL2 Settings.....	63	Types of Paper	112
Information of the loaded paper	62	Updating paper information	115
Printer information	63	Viewing the Paper Reference Guide	112
Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels.....	62		
Support Pane (Mac OS X).....	525	U	
Support Sheet (Windows)	485	Unknown file.	718
Switching Modes	26	Updating the Firmware	655
Switching the Printer Online/Offline.....	26	Confirming the firmware version.....	655
Switching to Menu Mode	28	Updating the firmware	655
		Use another paper.....	713
		Using Favorites	449
		Favorites.....	449
		Using Favorites (Mac OS 9)	546
		Printing using the favorite.....	547
		Registering a favorite	546
		Using Favorites (Mac OS X).....	525
		Using Favorites (Windows)	473
		Printing using the favorite.....	474
		Registering a favorite	473
		Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals	450
		Edit Using PosterArtist	450
		Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows)	487
		Using RemoteUI	570
		Using the Output Stacker	200
		Utility Pane (Mac OS X)	523
		Utility Sheet (Windows)	484

T

The back side of the paper is dirty	668
The contrast becomes uneven during printing	668
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up	659
The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink	659
The edges of the paper are dirty	667
The Front Tray Guides are in the Front Paper Feed Slot.	693
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly	673
The length of printed images is inaccurate.....	670
The printer consumes a lot of ink	692
The printer does not go on	693
The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent.....	659
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper	664
The printer stops during a print job.....	664
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)	689
The roll is empty.	709

V

Vents18

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application
(Mac OS 9)559

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application
(Mac OS X).....533

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application
(Windows)511

Viewing Videos of Explanations3

W

When to Replace Ink Tanks.....623

 Before print jobs and maintenance that
 consume a lot of ink623

 If a message for checking the ink is shown
 on the Display Screen623

 If a message for ink replacement is shown
 on the Display Screen623

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge641

 If a message for checking the Maintenance
 Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen641

 If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge
 replacement is shown on the Display Screen ..641

 When much of the Maintenance Cartridge
 capacity is depleted.....641

Windows.....466

With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned.....689

Wrong paper feed slot for this paper type.703

